

# World Journal of *Obstetrics and Gynecology*

*World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016 February 10; 5(1): 1-139





## Editorial Board

2012-2016

The World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology Editorial Board consists of 178 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in obstetrics and gynecology. They are from 40 countries, including Australia (6), Austria (2), Belgium (5), Brazil (5), Canada (2), Chile (1), China (9), Egypt (3), Finland (2), France (2), Germany (1), Greece (11), Hungary (1), India (3), Iran (3), Israel (6), Italy (13), Japan (6), Jordan (2), Lithuania (1), Malaysia (1), Mexico (1), Moldova (1), Netherlands (3), Nigeria (1), Norway (2), Poland (1), Portugal (1), Qatar (1), Saudi Arabia (3), Serbia (1), Slovenia (1), South Korea (3), Spain (4), Sweden (2), Thailand (3), Turkey (8), United Kingdom (10), United States (46), and Venezuela (1).

### EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

Bo Jacobsson, *Gothenburg*

### GUEST EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS

Wing P Chan, *Taipei*  
Chie-Pein Chen, *Taipei*  
Shi-Yann Cheng, *Yulin*  
Song-Nan Chow, *Taipei*  
Peng-Hui Wang, *Taipei*

### MEMBERS OF THE EDITORIAL BOARD



#### Australia

Ashwini Chand, *Melbourne*  
Steven D Fleming, *Brisbane*  
Ankit Jain, *Coffs Harbour*  
Marjan Khajehei, *Como*  
Gavin Sacks, *Sydney*  
Jing Sun, *Brisbane*



#### Austria

Susanne Huber, *Vienna*  
Edgar Petru, *Graz*



#### Belgium

Marc FD Baay, *Antwerp*  
Christophe Blockeel, *Brussels*  
Yves Jacquemyn, *Edegem*  
Ekaterine Tskitishvili, *Liege*  
Jan Baptist Vermorken, *Edegem*



#### Brazil

Carlos KB Ferrari, *Barra do Garças*  
Wellington P Martins, *Ribeirão Preto*  
Fernando M Reis, *Belo Horizonte*  
Maria Inês Rosa, *Criciúma*  
Cicero de Andrade Urban, *Curitiba*



#### Canada

Emmanuel Bujold, *Québec*  
Paul James Hoskins, *Vancouver*



#### Chile

Patricio E Donoso, *Santiago*



#### China

Cherng-Jye Jeng, *Nanjing*  
Jian-Xin Li, *Nanjing*  
Ernest Hung Yu Ng, *Hong Kong*  
Dan Xie, *Guangzhou*



#### Egypt

Hesham E Abdel-Hady, *Mansoura*  
Ahmed S El Hefnawy, *Mansoura*  
Ahmed Nasr, *Assiut*



#### Finland

Johan O Fellman, *Helsinki*

Kari Juhani Syrjanen, *Turku*



#### France

Cherif Y Akladios, *Strasbourg*  
Souhail Alouini, *Orleans*



#### Germany

Safaa H Al-Hasani, *Luebeck*



#### Greece

Georgios P Artsinevelos, *Athens*  
Byron Asimakopoulos, *Alexandroupolis*  
Anastasios Athanasopoulos, *Patra*  
Panagiotis Christopoulos, *Athens*  
Christos R Iavazzo, *Athens*  
Ioannis E Messinis, *Larissa*  
Athanasios PG Papatsoris, *Athens*  
Kitty Pavlakis, *Athens*  
Konstantinos A Toulis, *Thessaloniki*  
Panagiotis PT Tsikouras, *Alexandroupolis*  
Menelaos Zafrakas, *Thessaloniki*



#### Hungary

Jozsef Gabor Joo, *Budapest*



#### India

Chinmoy K Bose, *Kolkata*  
Pralhad Kushtagi, *Mangalore*

Niraj N Mahajan, *Mumbai*



**Iran**

Hossein Fallahzadeh, *Yazd*  
Abbas A Ghaderi, *Shiraz*  
Ramesh Omranipour, *Tehran*



**Israel**

Zeev Blumenfeld, *Haifa*  
Sorina Grisaru-Granovsky, *Jerusalem*  
Alexander Ioscovich, *Jerusalem*  
Marwan Odeh, *Nahariya*  
Eyal Sheiner, *Beer-Sheva*  
Johnny S Younis, *Tiberias*



**Italy**

SML Chamayou, *Sant'Agata Li Battiati*  
Federico Cocolini, *Bergamo*  
Erich Cosmi, *Padua*  
Vassilios Fanos, *Cagliari*  
Roberta Granese, *Messina*  
Anna Maria Marconi, *Milano*  
Filippo Murina, *Milan*  
Felice Petraglia, *Siena*  
Giuseppe Rizzo, *Rome*  
Emilio Sacco, *Rome*  
Giulio Aniello Santoro, *Treviso*  
Andrea Tinelli, *Lece*  
Emanuela Turillazzi, *Foggia*



**Japan**

Madoka Furuhashi, *Nagoya*  
Takeshi Maruo, *Kobe*  
Kaei Nasu, *Oita*  
Yuzuru Niibe, *Sagamihara*  
Kenzo Sonoda, *Fukuoka*  
Yoshihito Yokoyama, *Hiroaki*



**Jordan**

Moamar I Al-Jefout, *Mutah*  
Zouhair O Amarin, *Irbid*



**Lithuania**

Linus Rovas, *Klaipeda*



**Malaysia**

Geok Chin Tan, *Kuala Lumpur*



**Mexico**

Alfonso Dueñas-González, *Mexico City*



**Moldova**

Fanuel Lampiao, *Blantyre*



**Netherlands**

Marieke J Claas, *Utrecht*  
Wendy Koster, *Utrecht*  
Arnold-Jan Kruse, *Maastricht*



**Nigeria**

Chibuikwe O Chigbu, *Enugu*



**Norway**

Andrej M Grijbovski, *Oslo*  
Svein Rasmussen, *Bergen*



**Poland**

Andrzej Winciewicz, *Kielce*



**Portugal**

Renato Manuel Natal Jorge, *Porto*



**Qatar**

Sajjad ur Rahman, *Doha*



**Saudi Arabia**

Ismail Al-Badawi, *Riyadh*  
Mamdoh Eskandar, *Abha*  
Hans-Juergen Schulten, *Jeddah*



**Serbia**

Miroslava G Gojnic Dugalic, *Belgrade*



**Slovenia**

Spela Smrkolj, *Ljubljana*



**South Korea**

Kwang-Hyun Baek, *Seongnam*  
Min Hyung Jung, *Seoul*  
Sue Kyung Park, *Seoul*



**Spain**

J de la Torre Fernandez de Vega, *Tenerife*  
Antonio Pinero Madrona, *Murcia*  
Santiago Palacios, *Madrid*

Faustino R Perez-Lopez, *Zaragoza*



**Sweden**

Eva Marie Wiberg-Itzel, *Stockholm*



**Thailand**

Pisake NA Lumbiganon, *Khon Kaen*  
Vorapong Phupong, *Bangkok*  
Viroj Wiwanitkit, *Bangkok*



**Turkey**

Metin Akbulut, *Denizli*  
Cem Baykal, *Istanbul*  
Husnu Celik, *Elazig*  
Cem Dane, *Istanbul*  
Polat Dursun, *Ankara*  
Erdin Ilter, *Istanbul*  
Mehmet Kefeli, *Samsun*  
Kamile Kukula, *Antalya*



**United Kingdom**

Mohamed Abdel-fattah, *Aberdeen*  
Suha Deen, *Nottingham*  
Stergios K Doumouchtsis, *London*  
Mona A El-Bahrawy, *London*  
Alaa A El-Ghobashy, *Wolverhampton*  
Ayman AA Ewies, *Birmingham*  
Myra S Hunter, *London*  
Paul D Losty, *Liverpool*  
Tim Mark Reynolds, *Burton-on-Trent*  
Ariel Zosmer, *London*



**United States**

Mukhtar H Aliyu, *Nashville*  
M Robyn Andersen, *Seattle*  
Priya R Bhosale, *Houston*  
Donald P Braun, *Zion*  
Chunxia Cao, *Gainesville*  
Wally A Carlo, *Birmingham*  
Linda R Chambliss, *Phoenix*  
Teresa P Diaz-Montes, *Baltimore*  
Steven M Donn, *Ann Arbor*  
Omar F Duenas, *New York*  
Marilyn B Escobedo, *Oklahoma*  
Robert Freedman, *Detroit*  
Sergio G Golombek, *Valhall*  
Michael P Goodman, *Davis*  
Diane M Harper, *Kansas*  
Matthew H Ho, *Los Angeles*  
Patricia B Hoyer, *Tucson*  
Mei-Hua Huang, *Los Angeles*  
William W Hurd, *Cleveland*  
Gabor B Huszar, *New Haven*  
Amer K Karam, *Los Angeles*  
Justin P Lavin, *Akron*  
Linda E May, *Kansas*  
Zaher Merhi, *Bronx*  
Nash S Moawad, *Gainesville*  
Lisa Eileen Moore, *Albuquerque*  
Robert D Moore, *Atlanta*

David Gardner Mutch, *St. Louis*  
Nihar R Nayak, *Palo Alto*  
Anita L Nelson, *Manhattan Beach*  
Farr Nezhat, *New York*  
Robert W Powers, *Pittsburgh*  
Werner Schaefer, *Pittsburgh*  
Gerald Phillip Schatten, *Pittsburgh*  
Danny Joseph Schust, *Columbia*

Hen Yitzhak Sela, *New York*  
Elizabeth S Ginsburg, *New York*  
Sherri Lynn Stewart, *Atlanta*  
Robert S Tan, *Houston*  
Ping Tang, *Rochester*  
Ihab Mohammed Usta, *New York*  
Jian-Jun Wei, *Chicago*  
Xiuquan Zhang, *Salt Lake*

Chengquan Zhao, *Pittsburgh*  
Yulian Zhao, *Baltimore*  
Wenxin Zheng, *Tucson*



**Venezuela**

María E Aponte-Rueda, *Caracas*





### EDITORIAL

- 1 Clinical applicability of immunotherapy of cervical intraepithelial neoplasia  
*Koeneman M, Kruitwagen R, Kruse AJ*

### REVIEW

- 5 Update on human papillomavirus vaccination: Where are we now?  
*Chapman-Davis E, Dockery LE, Griffith K, Stroup C*
- 16 Human papilloma virus vaccination: Review article and an update  
*Maleki Z*
- 28 MicroRNAs: New players in endometriosis  
*Mari-Alexandre J, Barceló-Molina M, Olcina-Guillem M, García-Oms J, Braza-Boils A, Gilabert-Estellés J*
- 39 Pathobiological role of MUC16 mucin (CA125) in ovarian cancer: Much more than a tumor biomarker  
*Piché A*

### MINIREVIEWS

- 50 Implications of multigene testing for hereditary breast cancer in primary care  
*Trivedi MS, Crew KD*
- 58 Amniocentesis: A contemporary review  
*Connolly KA, Eddleman KA*
- 66 Thyroid disease in pregnancy: A review of diagnosis, complications and management  
*Moore LE*
- 73 Role of ultrasound imaging in advancing treatment of female patients with pelvic floor mesh complications  
*Singh W, Wadhwa H, Halgrimson W, Kocjancic E*
- 78 Evaluation of sentinel lymph nodes in vulvar, endometrial and cervical cancers  
*Emerson J, Robison K*
- 87 Apoptosis and endometrial receptivity: Relationship with *in vitro* fertilization treatment outcome  
*Antsiferova YS, Sotnikova NY*

- 97      Review of the current surgical management of vulval cancer  
*Platt SL, Manley KM, Murdoch JB*
- 102     Imperative for improvements and international convergence of intrapartum fetal monitoring: A bird's eye view  
*Sholapurkar SL*
- 110     Overview of embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma of cervix in women over 40-year-old  
*Razakanaivo M, Nguyen NP, Thariat J, Molinie V, Vlastos AT, Verschraegen C, Vinh-Hung V*

**ORIGINAL ARTICLE****Basic Study**

- 118     Alpha1B adrenoceptor expression is a marker of reduced survival and increased tumor recurrence in patients with endometrioid ovarian cancer  
*Deutsch D, Deen S, Entschladen F, Coveney C, Rees R, Zänker KS, Powe DG*

**Observational Study**

- 127     Variation in use of menopausal hormone treatment on risk of health outcomes  
*Khoo SK, Tripcony L*

**SYSTEMATIC REVIEWS**

- 134     Postpartum intrauterine device contraception: A review  
*Rezai S, Bisram P, Nezam H, Mercado R, Henderson CE*

## Contents

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*  
Volume 5 Number 1 February 10, 2016

### ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*,  
Wellington P Martins, MD, Departamento de Ginecologia e Obstetrícia da  
Faculdade de Medicina de Ribeirão Preto, Universidade de São Paulo, Ribeirão  
Preto, CEP: 14049-900, São Paulo, Brazil

### AIM AND SCOPE

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology* (*World J Obstet Gynecol*, *WJOG*, online ISSN 2218-6220, DOI: 10.5317) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

*WJOG* covers topics concerning pregnancy complications, obstetric surgical procedures, diagnostic imaging, endoscopy, reproductive endocrinology, tumors, pelvic diseases, evidence-based medicine, epidemiology and nursing.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJOG*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

### INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology* is currently no indexing/abstracting.

### FLYLEAF

I-III Editorial Board

### EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Responsible Assistant Editor: *Xiang Li*  
Responsible Electronic Editor: *Huan-Liang Wu*  
Proofing Editor-in-Chief: *Lian-Sheng Ma*

Responsible Science Editor: *Jin-Xin Kong*  
Proofing Editorial Office Director: *Xiu-Xia Song*

#### NAME OF JOURNAL

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*

#### ISSN

ISSN 2218-6220 (online)

#### LAUNCH DATE

June 10, 2012

#### FREQUENCY

Quarterly

#### EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

**Bo Jacobsson, MD, PhD, Professor**, Department Obstetrics and Gynecology, Sahlgrenska University Hospital/Ostra, SE-416 85 Gothenburg, Sweden

#### EDITORIAL OFFICE

Jin-Li Wang, Director  
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director  
*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*

Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,  
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,  
Beijing 100025, China

Telephone: +86-10-85381891

Fax: +86-10-85381893

E-mail: [editorialoffice@wjnet.com](mailto:editorialoffice@wjnet.com)

Help Desk: <http://www.wjnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjnet.com>

#### PUBLISHER

Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

8226 Regency Drive,

Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA

Telephone: +1-925-223-8242

Fax: +1-925-223-8243

E-mail: [bpgoffice@wjnet.com](mailto:bpgoffice@wjnet.com)

Help Desk: <http://www.wjnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjnet.com>

#### PUBLICATION DATE

February 10, 2016

#### COPYRIGHT

© 2016 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. Articles published by this Open-Access journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited, the use is non commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license.

#### SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in journals owned by the Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG) represent the views and opinions of their authors, and not the views, opinions or policies of the BPG, except where otherwise explicitly indicated.

#### INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS

Full instructions are available online at [http://www.wjnet.com/2218-6220/g\\_info\\_20100722175812.htm](http://www.wjnet.com/2218-6220/g_info_20100722175812.htm).

#### ONLINE SUBMISSION

<http://www.wjnet.com/esps/>

## Clinical applicability of immunotherapy of cervical intraepithelial neoplasia

Margot Koeneman, Roy Kruitwagen, Arnold-Jan Kruse

Margot Koeneman, Roy Kruitwagen, Arnold-Jan Kruse,  
Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Maastricht University  
Medical Center, 6202 AZ Maastricht, the Netherlands

Margot Koeneman, Roy Kruitwagen, Arnold-Jan Kruse,  
GROW - School for Oncology and Developmental Biology,  
Maastricht University, 6202 AZ Maastricht, the Netherlands

Author contributions: Koeneman M, Kruitwagen R and  
Kruse AJ conceived the issues which formed the content of the  
manuscript and wrote the manuscript.

Conflict-of-interest statement: The authors have no conflicts of  
interest.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was  
selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external  
reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons  
Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which  
permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-  
commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms,  
provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-  
commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Arnold-Jan Kruse, MD, PhD, Department  
of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Maastricht University Medical  
Center, Postbus 5800, 6202 AZ Maastricht,  
the Netherlands. [arnoldjankruse@hotmail.com](mailto:arnoldjankruse@hotmail.com)  
Telephone: +31-43-3874242

Received: June 29, 2015

Peer-review started: July 1, 2015

First decision: September 30, 2015

Revised: October 10, 2015

Accepted: November 10, 2015

Article in press: November 11, 2015

Published online: February 10, 2016

for CIN may currently be imiquimod, because of its  
established role in other human papillomavirus (HPV)-  
induced genital conditions, its promising treatment  
efficacy in high-grade CIN, and its off-label availability.  
Although imiquimod cannot yet replace the current gold  
standard treatment for CIN [*i.e.*, large loop excision of  
the transformation zone (LLETZ)] in all patients, it may  
be considered in subgroups of patients; for example,  
young women who may wish to become pregnant in the  
future, or patients with recurrent CIN lesions in whom  
a second LLETZ is to be avoided. Immunotherapy of  
CIN could be extended to post-treatment vaccination,  
in order to prevent new HPV infections and disease  
recurrence.

**Key words:** Cervix; Cervical intraepithelial neoplasia;  
Large loop excision of the transformation zone; Immuno-  
therapy; Regression; Human papillomavirus

© **The Author(s) 2016.** Published by Baishideng Publishing  
Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Immunotherapy for cervical intraepithelial  
neoplasia (CIN) is discussed in light of the natural  
history of CIN. The pros and cons of the current  
standard therapy (large loop excision of the trans-  
formation zone) and immunotherapy, potential side  
effects, and available evidence supporting the use of  
immunotherapy in CIN are addressed.

Koeneman M, Kruitwagen R, Kruse AJ. Clinical applicability  
of immunotherapy of cervical intraepithelial neoplasia. *World  
J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 1-4 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/1.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.1>

### Abstract

Immunotherapy for cervical intraepithelial neoplasia  
(CIN) has not yet reached clinical applicability, but  
seems sensible and shows promising preliminary results.  
One of the most promising forms of immunotherapy

### IMMUNOTHERAPY OF CERVICAL INTRAEPITHELIAL NEOPLASIA

Cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN) is caused by

infection with human papillomavirus (HPV). Low-grade lesions are primarily caused by low-risk HPV types and are the result of productive infections, in which viral replication takes place<sup>[1,2]</sup>. Most of these lesions are effectively cleared by the host immune response<sup>[3]</sup>. High-grade lesions are primarily caused by the more oncogenic high-risk HPV types (mainly HPV-16 and -18) and are the result of a transforming infection of cells of the squamocolumnar junction. In these infections, normal viral gene expression is deregulated: Overexpression of early viral genes in the basal cell layers leads to uncontrolled cell proliferation and cell immortalization, and makes the cell susceptible to chromosomal instability. Subsequent viral integration and epigenetic effects further enhance early viral gene expression and genomic instability, resulting in a proliferating cell population with chromosomal aberrations and leading ultimately to cervical carcinogenesis<sup>[1,2]</sup>. However, not all HPV infections lead to high-grade CIN, and not all high-grade CIN lesions lead to cervical cancer. Spontaneous regression of high-grade CIN occurs in approximately 20%-40% of high-grade lesions, while approximately 30% of high-grade CIN progresses to cervical cancer<sup>[4-7]</sup>. This suggests that the development of HPV-induced cervical pathology not only depends on the cellular changes induced by HPV infection, but is in fact determined by complex interactions among viral factors, functional cellular mechanisms, and the immune system. Clearance of HPV infection and HPV-induced lesions is mediated by the innate and adaptive immune system<sup>[3]</sup>. This immune response is a largely local process and depends on the individual characteristics of the host's immune system, but is also influenced by characteristics of the virus and the infectious process. HPV utilizes several effective immune evasion strategies, and infection leads to active downregulation of immune responses. This leads to persistent HPV infections and HPV-induced cervical lesions in a subset of patients. In patients who are unable to clear the infection, HPV resides in the host epithelium for a long time, leading to alteration of cellular processes as previously described, with neoplastic progression as a result.

Ideally, lesions that will regress spontaneously should be differentiated from those that will persist or progress into invasive disease, thus allowing for watchful waiting in the subgroup of patients in which spontaneous regression is expected. Biomarkers could be used to predict the natural history of CIN lesions. Indeed, a recent review identified several promising biomarkers in this regard, but none have yet reached clinical implementation<sup>[8]</sup>. As the natural history of high-grade CIN currently remains unpredictable, treatment of high-grade CIN is advised. Currently, the standard therapy for high-grade CIN lesions is surgical excision, which is usually done by large loop excision of the transformation zone (LLETZ). LLETZ is an effective treatment modality, but has two important disadvantages. First, residual and recurrent disease occurs

frequently. Recent studies show residual and recurrent disease rates of 14%-23% after treatment for high-grade CIN or persistent low-grade CIN. Persistent or recurrent high-grade CIN occurred in 3%-10% of these patients<sup>[9-13]</sup>. Second, LLETZ is associated with an important long-term complication, namely a two-fold increase in premature birth seen in pregnancies after a LLETZ procedure, most probably as a result of cervical insufficiency<sup>[14,15]</sup>. Although some biomarkers may be promising for regression risk prediction, a considerable number of high-grade CIN lesions will not regress spontaneously, making effective treatment modalities necessary. To reduce unnecessary surgical treatment, alternative non-invasive treatment modalities for high-grade CIN are being studied. Since high-grade CIN is the result of an HPV infection that is not adequately cleared by the infected host, immunotherapy of CIN may be an effective alternative to conventional surgical treatment and/or watchful waiting.

Several forms of immunotherapy have been studied for the treatment of high-grade CIN, with varying results. These include both systemic forms of immunotherapy, such as therapeutic vaccines, interferon, and cyclooxygenase-2 inhibitors, and local forms of immunotherapy, such as topical or intralesional interferons and imiquimod<sup>[4,16-21]</sup>. Some agents show therapeutic effects, but none have yet reached clinical applicability. This is due to limited evidence, generally modest treatment results, and a high rate of side effects. We currently consider imiquimod (Aldara) to be the most promising form of immunotherapy for high-grade CIN. Imiquimod is a Toll-like receptor agonist with antiviral and anti-tumor properties. It is readily available for off-label use; its efficacy in several HPV-induced genital conditions, such as genital warts and vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia, is already established; and recent studies show promising results in the treatment of high-grade CIN. Lin *et al.*<sup>[19]</sup> studied imiquimod treatment of genital HPV infections and both vaginal intraepithelial neoplasia (VAIN) and CIN lesions. They showed significantly more HPV clearance in 26 patients treated with 12 doses of imiquimod cream than in a historic control group (65% vs 30%). A limited number of 6 patients with high-grade VAIN or CIN lesions were treated with imiquimod, of which four (66%) showed disease remission. Treatment efficacy of imiquimod in high-grade CIN was more systematically studied by Grimm *et al.*<sup>[4]</sup> in a placebo-controlled randomized controlled trial. They included 59 patients with high-grade CIN, who were treated with one to three applications of imiquimod per week for 16 wk. Significantly more histologic regression and remission was observed in the imiquimod group (73% vs 39%).

Although promising, it is unlikely that imiquimod will completely replace LLETZ as the standard treatment strategy for high-grade CIN. The efficacy of imiquimod and other immunotherapies has not yet reached that of LLETZ. Furthermore, imiquimod treatment is labor-intensive and time-consuming, and



is associated with frequent, albeit generally mild-to-moderate, side effects. Moreover, imiquimod and other forms of immunotherapy may treat current cervical lesions and HPV infections, but do not protect against new infections. The risk of future CIN and cervical carcinoma therefore persists. Recent new insights in the pathophysiology of high-grade CIN suggest that disease recurrence after LLETZ may in fact be the result of incomplete resection of the transformation zone in combination with persistent or new HPV infection. Herfs *et al.*<sup>[22]</sup> demonstrated that high-grade CIN may originate exclusively from cells of the squamocolumnar junction. If their observations are correct, disease recurrence could be effectively be prevented by complete resection of the squamocolumnar junction. Alternatively, adjuvant vaccination may provide protection against future infections and disease recurrence. Indeed, the first trial on this topic shows a significant decrease in disease recurrence after LLETZ in combination with quadrivalent HPV vaccination<sup>[13]</sup>.

In summary, immunotherapy of CIN has not yet reached clinical applicability, but seems sensible and shows promising preliminary results. One of the most promising forms of immunotherapy in CIN may currently be imiquimod, because of its established role in other HPV-induced genital conditions, its promising treatment efficacy in high-grade CIN, and its off-label availability. Although imiquimod cannot yet replace LLETZ as the current gold standard treatment for CIN in all patients, it may be considered in subgroups of patients, such as young women who may wish to become pregnant in the future, or patients with recurrent CIN lesions in whom a second LLETZ is to be avoided. Immunotherapy of CIN could be extended to post-treatment vaccination, in order to promote disease recurrence and prevent new HPV infections.

We advocate further research in the field of immunotherapy in CIN and are currently conducting a trial on the efficacy of 5% imiquimod cream in high-grade CIN [topical treatment with Imiquimod of high-grade CIN (TOPIC) trial; ClinicalTrials.gov identifier: NCT02329171]. This study also includes assessment of side effects, disease recurrence, and quality of life. Further research is also needed on the efficacy of post-treatment HPV vaccination. A combination of immunotherapy for present lesions and vaccination to prevent disease recurrence may provide a good treatment alternative to current surgical treatment for high-grade CIN in selected patients.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **Moody CA**, Laimins LA. Human papillomavirus oncoproteins: pathways to transformation. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2010; **10**: 550-560 [PMID: 20592731 DOI: 10.1038/nrc2886]
- 2 **Doorbar J**, Quint W, Banks L, Bravo IG, Stoler M, Broker TR, Stanley MA. The biology and life-cycle of human papillomaviruses. *Vaccine* 2012; **30** Suppl 5: F55-F70 [PMID: 23199966 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2012.06.083]
- 3 **Stanley MA**. Epithelial cell responses to infection with human papillomavirus. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2012; **25**: 215-222 [PMID: 22491770 DOI: 10.1128/CMR.05028-11]
- 4 **Grimm C**, Polterauer S, Natter C, Rahhal J, Hefler L, Tempfer CB, Heinze G, Stary G, Reinthaller A, Speiser P. Treatment of cervical intraepithelial neoplasia with topical imiquimod: a randomized controlled trial. *Obstet Gynecol* 2012; **120**: 152-159 [PMID: 22914404 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e31825bc6e8]
- 5 **Munk AC**, Gudlaugsson E, Ovestad IT, Lovslett K, Fiane B, Hidle Bv, Kruse AJ, Skaland I, Janssen EA, Baak JP. Interaction of epithelial biomarkers, local immune response and condom use in cervical intraepithelial neoplasia 2-3 regression. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **127**: 489-494 [PMID: 23017821 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2012.09.010]
- 6 **Trimble CL**, Piantadosi S, Gravitt P, Ronnett B, Pizer E, Elko A, Wilgus B, Yutzy W, Daniel R, Shah K, Peng S, Hung C, Roden R, Wu TC, Pardoll D. Spontaneous regression of high-grade cervical dysplasia: effects of human papillomavirus type and HLA phenotype. *Clin Cancer Res* 2005; **11**: 4717-4723 [PMID: 16000566]
- 7 **McCredie MR**, Sharples KJ, Paul C, Baranyai J, Medley G, Jones RW, Skegg DC. Natural history of cervical neoplasia and risk of invasive cancer in women with cervical intraepithelial neoplasia 3: a retrospective cohort study. *Lancet Oncol* 2008; **9**: 425-434 [PMID: 18407790 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(08)70103-7]
- 8 **Koeneman MM**, Kruitwagen RF, Nijman HW, Slangen BF, Van Gorp T, Kruse AJ. Natural history of high-grade cervical intraepithelial neoplasia: a review of prognostic biomarkers. *Expert Rev Mol Diagn* 2015; **15**: 527-546 [PMID: 25703310 DOI: 10.1586/14737159.2015.1012068]
- 9 **Baloglu A**, Uysal D, Bezircioglu I, Bicer M, Inci A. Residual and recurrent disease rates following LEEP treatment in high-grade cervical intraepithelial lesions. *Arch Gynecol Obstet* 2010; **282**: 69-73 [PMID: 19940997 DOI: 10.1007/s00404-009-1298-3]
- 10 **Lubrano A**, Medina N, Benito V, Arencibia O, Falcón JM, Leon L, Molina J, Falcón O. Follow-up after LLETZ: a study of 682 cases of CIN 2-CIN 3 in a single institution. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 2012; **161**: 71-74 [PMID: 22177836 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejogrb.2011.11.023]
- 11 **Sarian LO**, Derchain SF, Andrade LA, Tambascia J, Morais SS, Syrjänen KJ. HPV DNA test and Pap smear in detection of residual and recurrent disease following loop electrosurgical excision procedure of high-grade cervical intraepithelial neoplasia. *Gynecol Oncol* 2004; **94**: 181-186 [PMID: 15262139]
- 12 **Serati M**, Sisto G, Carollo S, Formenti G, Riva C, Cromi A, Ghezzi F. Risk factors for cervical intraepithelial neoplasia recurrence after conization: a 10-year study. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 2012; **165**: 86-90 [PMID: 22771223 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejogrb.2012.06.026]
- 13 **Kang WD**, Choi HS, Kim SM. Is vaccination with quadrivalent HPV vaccine after loop electrosurgical excision procedure effective in preventing recurrence in patients with high-grade cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN2-3)? *Gynecol Oncol* 2013; **130**: 264-268 [PMID: 23623831 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2013.04.050]
- 14 **Crane JM**. Pregnancy outcome after loop electrosurgical excision procedure: a systematic review. *Obstet Gynecol* 2003; **102**: 1058-1062 [PMID: 14672487]
- 15 **Kyrgiou M**, Koliopoulos G, Martin-Hirsch P, Arbyn M, Prendiville W, Paraskevaidis E. Obstetric outcomes after conservative treatment for intraepithelial or early invasive cervical lesions: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Lancet* 2006; **367**: 489-498 [PMID: 16473126]
- 16 **de Vos van Steenwijk PJ**, Ramwadhoebe TH, Löwik MJ, van der Minne CE, Berends-van der Meer DM, Fathallah LM, Valentijn AR, Oostendorp J, Fleuren GJ, Hellebrekers BW, Welters MJ, van Poelgeest MI, Melief CJ, Kenter GG, van der Burg SH. A placebo-controlled randomized HPV16 synthetic long-peptide vaccination study in women with high-grade cervical squamous intraepithelial lesions. *Cancer Immunol Immunother* 2012; **61**: 1485-1492 [PMID: 22684521 DOI: 10.1007/s00262-012-1292-7]
- 17 **Kawana K**, Adachi K, Kojima S, Taguchi A, Tomio K, Yamashita A, Nishida H, Nagasaka K, Arimoto T, Yokoyama T, Wada-Hiraike O,

- Oda K, Sewaki T, Osuga Y, Fujii T. Oral vaccination against HPV E7 for treatment of cervical intraepithelial neoplasia grade 3 (CIN3) elicits E7-specific mucosal immunity in the cervix of CIN3 patients. *Vaccine* 2014; **32**: 6233-6239 [PMID: 25258102 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2014.09.020]
- 18 **Machado FA**, Abdalla DR, Montes L, Etchebehere RM, Michelin MA, Murta EF. An evaluation of immune system cell infiltrate in the cervical stroma of patients with grade III cervical intraepithelial neoplasia after treatment with intralesional alpha-2B interferon. *Eur J Gynaecol Oncol* 2014; **35**: 20-25 [PMID: 24654456]
  - 19 **Lin CT**, Qiu JT, Wang CJ, Chang SD, Tang YH, Wu PJ, Jung SM, Huang CC, Chou HH, Jao MS, Lai CH. Topical imiquimod treatment for human papillomavirus infection in patients with and without cervical/vaginal intraepithelial neoplasia. *Taiwan J Obstet Gynecol* 2012; **51**: 533-538 [PMID: 23276555 DOI: 10.1016/j.tjog.2012.09.006]
  - 20 **Pachman DR**, Barton DL, Clayton AC, McGovern RM, Jefferies JA, Novotny PJ, Sloan JA, Loprinzi CL, Gostout BS. Randomized clinical trial of imiquimod: an adjunct to treating cervical dysplasia. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2012; **206**: 42.e1-42.e7 [PMID: 21907959 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2011.06.105]
  - 21 **Kietpeerakool C**, Srisomboon J. Medical treatment of cervical intraepithelial neoplasia II, III: an update review. *Int J Clin Oncol* 2009; **14**: 37-42 [PMID: 19225922 DOI: 10.1007/s10147-008-0795-x]
  - 22 **Herfs M**, Somja J, Howitt BE, Suarez-Carmona M, Kustermans G, Hubert P, Doyen J, Goffin F, Kridelka F, Crum CP, Delvenne P. Unique recurrence patterns of cervical intraepithelial neoplasia after excision of the squamocolumnar junction. *Int J Cancer* 2015; **136**: 1043-1052 [PMID: 24839092 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.28978]

**P- Reviewer:** Vetvicka V **S- Editor:** Ji FF **L- Editor:** A  
**E- Editor:** Wu HL



## Update on human papillomavirus vaccination: Where are we now?

Eloise Chapman-Davis, Lauren E Dockery, Kendall Griffith, Caroline Stroup

Eloise Chapman-Davis, Lauren E Dockery, Kendall Griffith, Caroline Stroup, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Gynecologic Oncology, Tufts University School of Medicine, Tufts Medical Center, Boston, MA 02111, United States

**Author contributions:** Chapman-Davis E and Dockery LE contributed equally to this work with literature search, text and tables; Griffith K and Stroup C contributed to literature search and tables in certain sections of the review; Chapman-Davis E and Dockery LE made several critical corrections and revisions until the submitted version was achieved.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** The above-mentioned authors of this manuscript hereby declare that they do not have any conflict-of-interest (including but not limited to commercial, personal, political, intellectual, or religious interests) related to the work submitted herein.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Dr. Eloise Chapman-Davis, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Division of Gynecologic Oncology, Tufts University School of Medicine, Tufts Medical Center, 800 Washington Street #232, Boston, MA 02111, United States. [eloise.chapman@gmail.com](mailto:eloise.chapman@gmail.com)  
 Telephone: +1-617-6366058  
 Fax: +1-617-6363258

Received: June 29, 2015

Peer-review started: July 3, 2015

First decision: September 22, 2015

Revised: October 16, 2015

Accepted: November 24, 2015

Article in press: November 25, 2015

Published online: February 10, 2016

### Abstract

Infection with human papillomavirus (HPV) is the major cause of pre-invasive and invasive lesions of the urogenital tract, resulting in morbidity and mortality worldwide. HPV-related infection is responsible for most cases of cervical cancer, a leading cause of cancer death in women worldwide. Developed countries have screening programs in place to detect precancerous lesions at early stages; in resource-limited settings however, HPV related diseases are often identified in advanced stages. This is due to limitations in the availability and roll out of effective screening programs. The relatively recent availability of the HPV vaccine has provided a new public health opportunity to decrease the incidence of HPV-related disease. The high mortality rates seen in developing countries could be reduced through effective implementation of HPV vaccination programs. Large trials have proven the efficacy of bivalent, quadrivalent vaccine and most recently 9-valent vaccine. Uptake in vaccination remains low due to multiple barriers including lack of education, lack of access, and costs. New strategies are being assessed to increase access, increase knowledge and reduce costs that may result in feasible vaccination programs worldwide. The goal of this article is to review the effectiveness and safety of the current HPV vaccines available, vaccine delivery strategies, cost effectiveness, and efforts to improve the acceptability. A literature search was conducted through PubMed using the terms "HPV vaccination, and safety, and males, and acceptability and strategies, and cost effectiveness," focusing on articles published between 2006 and 2015. The most relevant and larger scale trials were evaluated for discussion.

**Key words:** Human papillomavirus; Vaccines; Cervical cancer; Cancer prevention; Public health

© The Author(s) 2016. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Human papilloma virus (HPV) represents the major cause of pre-invasive and invasive lesions of the urogenital tract. This article will review the efficacy, safety and approval of the currently available vaccines against HPV including the bivalent, quadrivalent and nine-valent vaccines. Indications for use in men, immunocompromised individuals and older cohorts will also be discussed. Additionally a summary of worldwide vaccination practices, cost effectiveness, vaccination and methods to improve vaccination uptake and acceptance will be reviewed.

Chapman-Davis E, Dockery LE, Griffith K, Stroup C. Update on human papillomavirus vaccination: Where are we now? *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 5-15 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/5.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.5>

## INTRODUCTION

Worldwide, cervical cancer is the fourth most frequent cancer in women affecting almost 500000 women each year and is the most common cause of cancer death among women in developing countries<sup>[1]</sup>. About 70% of the global burden falls in areas with low resources including sub-Saharan African countries<sup>[1]</sup>. Infection by certain types of human papillomavirus (HPV) is required for almost all cases of cervical cancer. HPV is the most commonly sexually transmitted infection not only in the United States but worldwide<sup>[1,2]</sup>.

In the United States, 79 million people are currently infected with HPV and 14 million people are newly infected each year. Additionally, 26000 of all new oral and urogenital related cancers are attributed to HPV annually, of which approximately 17000 are in women and approximately 9000 are in men<sup>[2]</sup>. More than 4000 women die of cervical cancer each year in the United States, and as many as 93% of these cancers could be prevented by screening and HPV vaccination<sup>[3]</sup>.

Infection with HPV is implicated in the development of not only cervical cancer, but also many other cancers including anal, vaginal, vulvar, penile, oropharyngeal carcinomas and oral cancers. HPVs are a family of deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) viruses that infect skin or mucosal cells. There are over 100 types of HPV and > 40 types infect the anogenital tract. At least 13 types are considered oncogenic (16, 18, 31, 33, 35, 39, 45, 51, 52, 56, 58, 59, 68)<sup>[1,2]</sup>.

Universal access to HPV vaccination, screening and treatment services are crucial in reducing the overall burden of HPV related diseases. The incidence and mortality from cervical cancer has not decreased as significantly in developing countries as it has in the United States following the introduction of the Papanicolaou smear<sup>[4]</sup>. There are many obstacles to screening, generally attributed to a lack of infrastructure and resources, as a result of technical, medical and financial

constraints<sup>[4]</sup>. Lack of awareness and education among women and health care providers have also been reported to play a role<sup>[4]</sup>. Therefore a critical public health need is being addressed with the introduction of HPV vaccines as a major strategy for the prevention of not only cervical cancer but all HPV-related diseases.

The objective of this article is to review updated information regarding HPV vaccine approval, availability and safety, review the major trials of bivalent, quadrivalent and 9-valent vaccines, discuss implementation concerns including vaccine delivery strategies, cost-effectiveness of HPV vaccination and efforts to improve vaccine acceptability worldwide.

## DISCUSSION

### Vaccine development and rationale

Given the endemic nature of HPV infection, attempts have been made at the prevention of HPV-related sequelae such as high-grade cervical lesions and deaths due to cervical cancer with the introduction of HPV vaccines. The lifetime risk of genital infection with an oncogenic strain of HPV is thought to be greater than 80%, however in immunocompetent individuals 90% of infections become undetectable without intervention<sup>[5]</sup>. The risk of developing squamous cell carcinoma of the cervix is approximately 400 times higher following infection with HPV-16 and 250 times higher following infection with HPV-18 as compared to those not infected. HPV types 16, 18, 31, 33, 45, 52, and 58 account for approximately 90% of all HPV positive squamous cell carcinomas<sup>[1]</sup>. Wagner *et al*<sup>[6]</sup> reviewed publications investigating the genotype-specific prevalence of HPV-related cervical, vulvar and vaginal disease in women worldwide. Based on the results of these studies, HPV genotypes 16, 18, 31, 33, 45, 52, 58 are responsible for 90% of all cervical cancers providing rationale for the utilization of the 9-valent L1 VLP vaccine (9vHPV) vaccine. However, a lack of data regarding genotype-specific prevalence exists in several regions of the world with the highest age-standardized incidences rates of cervical cancer<sup>[6]</sup>. A study by Clifford *et al*<sup>[7]</sup> examined the global prevalence of HPV types in cytologically normal women. Their findings demonstrate heterogeneity in the distribution of HPV types globally. Although HPV 16 prevalence is higher in sub-Saharan Africa than Europe, these women are less likely to be infected with HPV 16 than European women<sup>[7]</sup>. Additionally, HPV 35, 45, 52, 56, and 58 (other high-risk types) and low-risk types were more prevalent in women with HPV infection in sub-Saharan Africa<sup>[7]</sup>. While this study is limited in representation of sub-Saharan countries ( $n = 1$ ), it addresses the need for prevalence-specific screening and vaccination with vaccine choice (quadrivalent, bivalent, or 9-valent) tailored to regional HPV prevalence.

Much like vaccination for other communicable diseases, administration of HPV vaccines in HPV-naïve individuals attempts to provide herd-immunity for



Table 1 Phase III efficacy in women

	Future I	Future II	Patricia	CVT	Broad spectrum HPV vaccine study
Vaccine	Gardasil®	Gardasil®	Cervarix®	Cervarix®	Gardasil®
Funding	Merck and Co., Inc.	Merck and Co., Inc.	GlaxoSmithKline	National Cancer Inst.	Merck and Co., Inc.
Number enrolled	6463	12167	18729	7466	14215
Number of countries	16	13	14	1	14
Duration of trial	4 yr	4 yr	4 yr	4 yr	4 yr
Age (yr)	16-24	15-26	15-25	18-25	
Lifetime sexual partners	< 4	< 4	< 6	No restriction	< 4
Exclusions	Pregnancy, history of abnormal Pap smear or genital warts	Pregnancy, history of abnormal Pap smear	Pregnancy, breastfeeding, history of colposcopy, autoimmune disease/immunodeficiency, HPV 16/18-associated CIN2+ at enrollment	Pregnancy, breastfeeding, history of immunosuppression, hysterectomy, hepatitis A vaccination	Prior abnormal Pap smear, > 4 lifetime sexual partners, no prior abnormal finding on cervical biopsy
Primary endpoint	Incidence of vaccine-type HPV associated CIN1-3, AIS or cancer, combined incidence of vaccine-type HPV associated anogenital warts, VIN/VaIN1-3 or cancer	HPV 16 or 18 associated CIN2/3	Incidence of HPV 16 or 18 CIN2 or greater	HPV 16 or 18 persistent infection (12 mos.) or HPV 16 or 18 associated CIN2+	High-grade cervical, vulvar, and vaginal disease
Mean follow-up time	3 yr	3 yr	14.8 mo		
Immunogenicity	99.5% seroconversion after 3 doses	99% seroconversion to vaccine-associated HPV types	99.5% seroconversion rates in women aged 15-25 yr		Non-inferior to quadrivalent vaccine

CVT: Costa Rica HPV Vaccine Trials; HPV: Human papillomavirus; VIN/VaIN: Vulvar/vaginal intraepithelial neoplasia.

future generations and thus lower the burden of HPV-related disease. The median time from HPV infection to seroconversion is approximately 8-12 mo, however because HPV infection is restricted to the intraepithelial layer of the mucosa it does not induce a strong immune response<sup>[1]</sup>. Failure to develop a sufficient cell-mediated immune response leads to persistent infection and increased risk of progression to CIN 2 to 3<sup>[1]</sup>. The most type-specific HPV antibodies are directed against the L1 HPV viral protein providing a target for vaccine development.

### Vaccine efficacy and safety

To date, two vaccines (bivalent and quadrivalent) against HPV have been approved for use in over 100 countries for the prevention of HPV-related disease.

Both vaccines are composed of non-infectious virus-like particles (VLPs). The quadrivalent vaccine (Gardasil®) targets HPV 6, 11, 16, 18, aimed at prevention of the two most oncogenic HPV types (types 16 and 18) which cause > 70% of cervical cancer worldwide, and types 6 and 11 which are responsible for approximately 90% of genital warts<sup>[8]</sup>. The bivalent vaccine (Cervarix®) contains purified viral proteins of HPV types 16 and 18, targeting only the oncogenic subtypes<sup>[1]</sup>. In the United States, the quadrivalent vaccine is administered on a 3-dose schedule (0, 2, and 6 mo), however in other countries, it is approved for a 2-dose schedule for girls and boys aged 9-13 years. The bivalent vaccine is given on a 2-dose schedule for boys and girls aged 9-14 years. Those > 15 years should

receive a 3-dose schedule<sup>[1]</sup>.

**Efficacy:** Four Phase III efficacy trials were performed for the quadrivalent and bivalent HPV vaccines. These studies were designed to demonstrate efficacy in preventing incident vaccine-related HPV infection and preneoplastic lesions caused by incident persistent infections related to the subtypes of HPV in vaccines. The FUTURE I and FUTURE II trials evaluated Gardasil® while the PATRICIA and Costa Rica HPV Vaccine Trials (CVT) evaluated Cervarix®. All of the trials were large, blinded, and randomized controlled trials of young women (mean age 20). With the exception of the CVT, all studies were company-sponsored and multicenter involving multiple trial sites globally<sup>[9]</sup>.

The FUTURE II and PATRICIA trials used a precancer primary endpoint of cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN) 2/3, adenocarcinoma in situ, or cervical cancer associated with HPV 16/18. FUTURE I had an additional endpoint of HPV6/11/16/18-associated CIN1+ and external genital lesions including vulvar/vaginal intraepithelial neoplasia (VIN/VaIN). Among the trials, the median age at enrollment ranged from 15-26 years. Clinical trial details are described in Table 1 with an overall vaccine efficacy of > 99% between 14 mo and 3 years of follow up<sup>[9-13]</sup> (Table 1).

Many genotypes exist of both oncogenic (high risk) and genital wart causing (low risk) HPV. Partial cross-protection against non-vaccine oncogenic HPV types has been reported, however the clinical relevance is undetermined. While HPV types 16 and 18 are respon-



sible for 70% of global cervical cancer; oncogenic HPV types 31, 33, 45, 52, and 58 cause approximately 20% additional cervical cancer cases. A 9vHPV vaccine containing HPV types 6, 11, 16, 18, 31, 33, 45, 52, 58 has the potential to prevent up to 90% of all cervical cancers globally<sup>[14]</sup>.

The Broad Spectrum HPV Vaccine Study conducted a large Phase II/III clinical trial to assess efficacy, immunogenicity, and safety of the 9vHPV vaccine. The endpoints of this trial were to prove non-inferiority of anti-HPV 6/11/16/18 antibody response, and superior efficacy in HPV 31/33/45/52/58-related clinical outcomes for the 9vHPV vaccine as compared to the quadrivalent vaccine. In addition, a non-inferiority assessment was conducted assessing the percent risk reduction for 9vHPV vs quadrivalent vaccine<sup>[14]</sup>.

Results showed that 9vHPV vaccine was efficacious in preventing high-grade cervical, vulvar and vaginal disease related to the 5 new HPV subtypes. Additionally the 9vHPV vaccine generated a non-inferior antibody response to HPV 6/11/16/18 as compared to the quadrivalent vaccine<sup>[14,15]</sup>. The United States FDA licensed the 9vHPV vaccine for use in 2014 under the name Gardasil<sup>®</sup>9<sup>[14]</sup>.

Studies have been evaluated to determine potential benefit of 9vHPV vaccine in the United States and abroad. A population-based evaluation of the subtypes of HPV in women with CIN2+ was performed in the United States. Approximately 50% of lesions were attributable to HPV 16/18, while 25% of lesions were attributable to HPV 31/33/45/52/58. Older women and racial/ethnic minorities with CIN2+ diagnosed were more likely to have subtypes other than HPV 16/18<sup>[16]</sup> and would potentially benefit from the extended coverage. Serrano *et al.*<sup>[17]</sup> conducted a study evaluating the potential impact of the 9vHPV vaccine on cervical cancer prevention in 4 countries (Brazil, Mexico, India and China). Based on the proportion of invasive cervical cancers attributable to HPV types 31/33/45/52/58, they estimated an increase in prevention of invasive cervical cancer by 12%-19% across the 4 countries<sup>[17]</sup>. This represents a potential target for significant decrease in HPV-related cancers worldwide if adopted into use globally.

**Safety:** Multiple studies<sup>[18-20]</sup> have established the safety of the 2 major HPV vaccines currently approved. A large post-licensure trial was performed evaluating the safety of the quadrivalent vaccine among females aged 9-26 years which revealed no significant increased risk of Guillan-Barré Syndrome, stroke, venous thromboembolism, appendicitis, seizures, syncope, allergic reaction or anaphylaxis<sup>[18]</sup>. A study evaluating post vaccination risk intervals in females revealed same-day syncope and skin infections at the site of vaccination as the only risks associated with recent vaccination<sup>[19]</sup>. A study performed in Australia of > 380000 doses of quadrivalent HPV vaccine given in school-aged girls identified 35 possible hypersensitivity reactions to the

vaccine. Further evaluation of these 35 individuals revealed only 3 cases of true hypersensitivity reactions and most individuals tolerated subsequent doses of vaccine<sup>[20]</sup>.

### Vaccine approval

In the United States, Gardasil<sup>®</sup> is approved for females only between ages 9-26 while Cervarix<sup>®</sup> carries FDA approval for women ages 9-25. In countries such as Canada and Australia, the HPV vaccines are currently licensed for use in women up to age 45<sup>[21]</sup>. In Australia, the quadrivalent vaccine was added to the National Immunisation Program in 2007 and the bivalent vaccine added in 2008<sup>[22]</sup>. The VIVIANE study, a Phase 3 multinational, double-blind, randomized controlled trial is currently underway to evaluate the efficacy, safety and immunogenicity of the Cervarix<sup>®</sup> vaccine in women older than 25 years. Enrollment was stratified by age into 3 groups. The primary endpoint was vaccine efficacy against 6-mo persistent infection or CIN1+ associated with HPV 16/18. Interim analysis found significant vaccine efficacy against the primary combined endpoint overall and specifically in the 26-35 and 36-45 year age groups<sup>[21]</sup>. A study conducted in Germany and Poland assessed the immunogenicity of Cervarix<sup>®</sup> in women aged 15-55. Schwarz *et al.*<sup>[23]</sup> evaluated immune responses in serum and cervicovaginal secretions 6 years after the first dose of vaccine in women ages 15-25, 26-45, and 46-55 years who received 3 doses of vaccine. After 6 years all women across all age groups were seropositive for HPV 16 and > 97% were seropositive for HPV 18 indicating a sustained immune response regardless of age at administration<sup>[23]</sup>.

Interim data from the VIVIANE study establishes safety and efficacy in preventing primary acquisition of target HPV at any age<sup>[21]</sup>, while Schwarz *et al.*<sup>[23]</sup> demonstrate equivalent immunogenicity in all age groups; however issues addressing cost-effectiveness still need to be addressed in order to best use resources to achieve the maximum benefit to the population. The optimal target range for intervention likely still remains in women ages 9-26, however future studies using 9vHPV vaccine may prove cost effective in preventing invasive cervical cancer in the older populations with the addition of HPV types 31/33/45/52/58.

**HPV vaccination of males:** HPV infection is most well known for causing cervical cancer in women; however it is also responsible for other cancers, some of which are in men. In 2002, while nearly 100% of the 492800 cervical cancers were attributable to HPV, 90% of anal cancers, 40% of penile cancers, 12% oropharyngeal cancers and 3% of the mouth cancers worldwide were attributable to HPV infection<sup>[24]</sup>. HPV infection with non-oncogenic strains 6 and 11 can also cause genital warts which affect both men and women. Thus, men can also benefit from vaccination with the HPV vaccine, both to decrease their rates of cancer and genital warts, and to decrease their transmission of the virus to their male

and female partners.

Efficacy of the quadrivalent vaccine in males was established in a study by Giuliano *et al.*<sup>[25]</sup>. A randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind multi-center trial was conducted in 4055 males aged 16-26 years with the primary efficacy objective of demonstrating reduction of the incidence of external genital lesions related to HPV 6, 11, 16, or 18. An observed efficacy of 65.5% was noted in the intention-to-treat population while an efficacy of 90.4% was noted in the per-protocol group against lesions related to HPV 6, 11, 16, or 18<sup>[25]</sup>. Studies have also been conducted to measure the immune response to the vaccine in boys. A non-inferiority immunogenicity study was performed to establish the efficacy of the quadrivalent HPV vaccine in adolescent boys and girls from age 10-15. The resulting immune response in boys was found to be similar to their female counterparts<sup>[26]</sup>. These studies ultimately led to FDA approval for use of HPV vaccine in males ages 9-26 in 2010. Safety data in males has been similar to that documented in the female cohort. The most common side effects associated with vaccination include headache, pain at injection site, itching, redness, swelling and bruising<sup>[25]</sup>.

A study by Bogaards *et al.*<sup>[27]</sup> in the Netherlands recently looked at the benefit of including boys 12 years of age in the HPV vaccination program. The authors found that in order to prevent one additional case of anal, penile or oropharyngeal cancer among men, 795 boys would need to be vaccinated<sup>[27]</sup>. Alternatively, if vaccine coverage among girls increased from 60% to 90%, the burden of HPV related cancer in men would be reduced by 66%. This data suggests that even if vaccination increased dramatically just for girls, it would not influence the burden of anal cancer that is found primarily in men having sex with men. Therefore vaccination of boys may provide additional benefit although the cost effectiveness of this strategy comes into question<sup>[27]</sup>.

In the United States, the HPV vaccine is recommended for routine vaccination at age 11 or 12 for both boys and girls. "Catch up vaccination" is also recommended for females aged 13 through 26 and males aged 11 through 21 who have not been previously vaccinated, for men who have sex with men and men who are immune-compromised through age 26<sup>[28]</sup>.

Despite these recommendations, vaccination rates remain low among adolescent boys. In 2013, HPV vaccination among adolescent boys was 34.6% and in men who have sex with men aged 18-26, vaccination was significantly lower<sup>[29]</sup>. In a study of 428 gay and bisexual men aged 18-26, Reiter *et al.*<sup>[30]</sup> found that only 13% of the study population had received any doses of vaccine. Another study by Meites *et al.*<sup>[31]</sup> evaluated data from the 2011 National HIV behavioral surveillance system of 3221 men who have sex with men aged 18-26 and found that only 4.9% reported receiving 1 or more HPV vaccine doses. Rates of HPV vaccination also vary widely by state and region in the United States. For men, the rate of vaccine initiation and completion was

8.5% and 2.2% in the Northeast, 6.7% and 1.6% in the West and 4.9% and 1.4% in the South. For women, the rate was 58.7% and 45.6% in the Northeast, 39.0% and 24.8% in the West and 30.4% and 17.7% in the South<sup>[32]</sup>.

### HPV vaccination in the immunocompromised:

Given the high rates of HPV infection and HPV associated cancers in HIV positive and other immunocompromised populations, HPV vaccination should be considered in these groups<sup>[33]</sup>. Several different bacterial and viral vaccines are recommended for use in solid organ transplant patients, including pneumococcal, influenza, hepatitis A virus, hepatitis B virus, diphtheria, and tetanus vaccines. These patients have diminished, but often effective, immune responses, with no major consequences<sup>[33,34]</sup>. Given that HPV VLPs represent highly immunogenic proteins as seen by the degree of humoral response in immunocompetent women, the HPV vaccine causes adequate response in even immunocompromised individuals<sup>[33]</sup>. The benefit of vaccination preventing reactivation of HPV remains unknown.

Individuals with HIV are known to be at significant risk for persistent HPV infection and the sequelae associated with persistent infection, including neoplasia and malignancy<sup>[35]</sup>. Vaccine safety and immunogenicity in at-risk populations has been studied among men, women, and children with HIV<sup>[35-39]</sup>. A randomized clinical trial found the vaccine to be safe and immunogenic in 126 HIV-infected children aged 7-12 years. By 18 mo 94%-99% had antibody to HPV 6, 11 and 16 while 76% had antibody to HPV 18<sup>[37]</sup>. Weinberg *et al.*<sup>[38]</sup> examined immunogenicity of 3 vs 4 doses of the quadrivalent vaccine in children aged 7-12 years with HIV. Following three doses the immune response to HPV 6, 11, and 16 were sufficient, however seropositivity remained lower for HPV 18. In the cohort receiving a fourth dose of vaccine, seropositivity of HPV 18 increased to levels equivalent to HPV 6, 11, and 16<sup>[38]</sup>. Another study of 109 HIV-infected males also found the vaccine to be immunogenic and well tolerated. Responses appeared to be higher for males on antiretroviral therapy as compared to those not receiving treatment<sup>[39]</sup>. In a study by Kahn *et al.*<sup>[35]</sup>, the quadrivalent HPV vaccine was shown to be safe and immunogenic in HIV positive women aged 16-23 who were previously HPV seronegative<sup>[35]</sup>.

In the United States, vaccination is currently recommended by the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices through age 26 years for immunocompromised persons who have not been vaccinated previously or who have not completed the 3-dose series<sup>[34]</sup>.

### HPV vaccination programs and cost effectiveness

In 2014, the World Health Organization (WHO) released updated recommendations for HPV vaccination in countries where preventing cervical cancer is a public health priority and where it is both feasible and financially sustainable to introduce the vaccine. The

WHO recommended that in these countries, girls aged 9-13 be the primary target group for vaccination, prior to becoming sexually active<sup>[40]</sup>. As of June 2015, 82 countries worldwide had introduced vaccination programs. Most of the vaccination programs are directed at pre-teen and teenage children, and some specifying vaccination for females only. There are multiple countries identified by the WHO statistics that have HPV vaccination programs (Table 2). These include 12 African countries, 2 Eastern Mediterranean countries, 31 European countries, 3 South-East Asian countries, and 15 Western Pacific countries. Additionally, 7 more countries have plans to introduce vaccination programs in the coming years<sup>[41]</sup>.

The WHO recommends evaluating cost effectiveness of HPV vaccination prior to implementation in countries. Studies have suggested that the most important determinant of cost effectiveness of HPV vaccination is the vaccine price, cost effectiveness threshold utilized, and whether or not screening is assumed to be in place<sup>[42]</sup>. In settings with established cervical cancer screening programs, under certain assumptions, studies have shown that HPV vaccination can reduce incidence and mortality of cervical cancer and incidence of abnormal pap tests and precancerous lesions that typically require costly follow up<sup>[42-44]</sup>. These models assume that early vaccination will lead to starting screening at later ages, and at reduced frequency, ultimately saving money in the long term.

Unfortunately in low and middle-income countries these studies have been more limited due to many different issues these countries face. There has been conflicting data within the same countries in terms of evidence of cost effectiveness<sup>[42]</sup>. This may be due to varied models used and assumptions made. In a review evaluating cost effectiveness of HPV vaccination in low and middle-income countries, introduction of HPV vaccines was found to be cost effective in 22 studies for girls aged 12 and younger<sup>[42]</sup>. Almost all these studies assumed three-dose vaccine coverage of > 70%, life long protection and did not assess delivery and program costs. Pooled results across all these studies suggest that even in countries where screening may be limited or non-existent, vaccination may be even more cost effective as long as the price for the vaccine is low<sup>[42]</sup>. Reasons for these conclusions include the competitive prices given for vaccines relative to the income level of the country, donor funding availability and high cervical cancer burden found in these countries with limited treatment options. Savings resulting from improved screening and HPV vaccination ultimately will depend on the actual costs in a given country.

### **HPV vaccine acceptability**

Although the FDA has approved the HPV vaccine in the United States since 2006, vaccination rates have varied across countries and populations within countries<sup>[45]</sup>. Both developing and developed countries such as the United States (34% full coverage) and France (28.5%

full coverage) have shown poor complete uptake rates<sup>[45]</sup>. Reasons for this include lack of knowledge and education in both adolescents and parents, cost associated with vaccine, lack of access to primary care or providers that offer vaccination and lack of provider recommendation<sup>[46-48]</sup> (Table 3).

Despite the relatively low vaccine coverage in the United States, a study did show that the prevalence of HPV subtypes 6, 11, 16, and 18 in cervicovaginal specimens in females aged 14-19 decreased from 11.5% in the pre-vaccine era to 5.1% in the vaccine era. Whereas in other age groups, the prevalence did not differ significantly between the two time periods<sup>[49]</sup>. In the United States, HPV awareness and knowledge are increasing compared to previous national surveys of HPV knowledge, with 68% of the adult population reporting knowledge of both HPV and the HPV vaccine<sup>[48]</sup>. However, this number is not consistent across populations and states. Globally, similar problems exist<sup>[46-48,50]</sup>. In the Uyghur population of China, younger women and those with a lower educational level were less likely to understand the correlation between HPV and cervical cancer<sup>[47]</sup>.

Multiple studies have addressed the barriers to HPV vaccination especially as it relates to education. Barriers identified include lack of access to schooling, as well as cultural and linguistic differences<sup>[51]</sup>. Many of the adult population site obstacles to vaccination due to limited education, resulting in poor parental knowledge, holding jobs with difficult work hours, and childcare difficulties<sup>[52]</sup>. Many studies have focused on educating both patients and parents to increase awareness and vaccine acceptance; however the best method of delivery of these materials remains to be seen. Tools used in the past include educational sessions and focus groups, the media, videos, school-wide vaccination programs, and flyers<sup>[50-57]</sup> (Table 3).

School-based education has been attempted as a method to optimize uptake of the HPV vaccine. In a Korean study, fifth-grade girls and boys underwent a 2-h education session regarding the connection between HPV and cancer, as well as the effectiveness of the HPV vaccine. Awareness that "HPV vaccine can prevent cervical cancer" was significantly related to intention to obtain the HPV vaccine among both boys and girls<sup>[50]</sup>.

A lower HPV vaccination rate has been seen among minority populations in the United States. Studies have shown poor vaccination rates among Black, Latina, and Asian girls in comparison to Caucasian girls<sup>[53]</sup>. Efforts have been focused on addressing individual populations to help increase acceptability. An educational video addressing HPV and vaccination was utilized as an intervention to a primarily underserved, lower income Black and Hispanic population of women. Acceptance of individual vaccination, mandatory HPV vaccination and support for school vaccination all increased significantly after the video based on survey responses<sup>[54]</sup>.

In a study performed in Canada, parents were

Table 2 Worldwide vaccination protocols

	Country	Vaccine in schedule (as of December 31, 2014)	Year of introduction in entire country	Target population	Schedule
Africa	Botswana	No	2015	Girls 9-13 yr	3 doses
	Lesotho	Yes	2012	9-14 yr	3 doses
	Malawi	No	2015	Girls 9-13 yr	3 doses
	Rwanda	Yes	2011		3 doses
	Seychelles	Yes	2014	Girls 10-12 yr	
Americas	South Africa	Yes	2014	9 yr	2 doses
	Argentina	Yes	2011	11 yr	3 doses
	Barbados	Yes	2014	11 yr	2 doses
	Brazil	Yes	2014	9-14 yr	2 doses
	Canada	Yes	2009		3 doses
	Colombia	Yes	2012	9-17 yr	3 doses
	Ecuador	Yes	2014	9 yr	2 doses
	Guyana	Yes	Not available	Special groups	3 doses
	Mexico	Yes	2012	10 yr	2 doses
	Panama	Yes	2008	10 yr	3 doses
	Paraguay	Yes	2013	10 yr	3 doses
	Peru	Yes	2011	10 yr	3 doses
	Suriname	Yes	2013	9 yr	
	Trinidad and Tobago	Yes	2013	Females 11-45 yr, males 11-26 yr	3 doses
	United States	Yes	2006	11-26 females, 11-21 males (26 if high risk)	3 doses
	Uruguay	Yes	2013	12 yr	3 doses
Eastern Mediterranean	Bahrain	No			
	Libya	Yes	2013	15 yr	3 doses
Europe	Andorra	Yes	2014	12 yr	
	Austria	Yes	2008	9 yr	3 doses
	Belgium	Yes	2011	12 yr (13-14 in Wallonia)	3 doses
	Czech Republic (the)	Yes	2012	13 yr	
	Denmark	Yes	2007	12 yr	3 doses
	Finland	Yes	2013	11-12 yr	
	France	Yes	2006	Girls 11-14 yr	3 doses
	Germany	Yes	2007	Girls 12-17 yr	3 doses
	Greece	Yes	2009	11-18 yr	3 doses
	Hungary	Yes	2014	12 yr	
	Iceland	Yes	2011	12 yr	3 doses
	Ireland	Yes	2010	Girls 12-13 yr	3 doses
	Israel	Yes	2010	13 yr (or women 9-45 yr)	3 doses
	Italy	Yes	2009	Girls 12 yr	3 doses
	Latvia	Yes	2010	12 yr	3 doses
	Luxembourg	Yes	2008	12-18 yr	
	Malta	Yes	2013	12 yr	3 doses
	Monaco	Yes	2006	14 yr	3 doses
	Netherlands (the)	Yes	2010	12 yr	2 doses
	Norway	Yes	2009	Girls 12 yr	3 doses
	Portugal	Yes	2008	10-13 yr	3 doses
	San Marino	Yes	2008	11 yr	
	Slovenia	Yes	2009	11-12 yr	2 doses
	Spain	Yes	2007	12 yr	3 doses
	Sweden	Yes	2010	Girls 10-12 yr	3 doses
	Switzerland	Yes	2006	Girls 11-14 yr	3 doses
	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	Yes	2009	12 yr	3 doses
	United Kingdom	Yes	2008	12-13 yr	2 doses
	Uzbekistan	No	2015		
South-East Asia	Bhutan	Yes	2009	Girls 12 yr	3 doses
Western Pacific	Australia	Yes	2007	10-15 yr	
	Brunei Darussalam	Yes	2012	13 yr	3 doses
	Cook Islands	Yes	2011	9 yr	
	Fiji	Yes	2013	13 yr	
	Japan	Yes	2011	13 yr	3 doses
	Malaysia	Yes	2010	Girls 13 yr	3 doses
	Marshall Islands (the)	Yes	2009	11-12 yr	
	Micronesia (Federated States of)	Yes	2010	9 yr	3 doses
	New Zealand	Yes	2009	12 yr (and other eligible individuals)	3 doses
	Palau	Yes	2008	9-26 yr	3 doses
	Philippines (the)				2 doses
	Singapore	Yes	2010	Girls 9-26 yr	3 doses

**Table 3 Possible interventions to increase human papillomavirus vaccine uptake**

Ref.	Year	Country	Objectives	n	Outcome	Target population	Educational tools
Chapman <i>et al</i> <sup>[54]</sup>	2010	United States	Evaluation of a video-based educational tool to increase HPV vaccine acceptability	256	Vaccine acceptability increased following intervention	Women aged 18-60	8 min video
Kennedy <i>et al</i> <sup>[55]</sup>	2011	United States	Improvement of HPV vaccine educational materials and determination of efficacy	411	Increase in likelihood of vaccination of children and favorable view of HPV vaccine	Parents of girls 11-18 yr of age	Educational flyer
Kobetz <i>et al</i> <sup>[51]</sup>	2011	Haiti	Assessment of women's knowledge and beliefs regarding cervical cancer and HPV		Need for culturally and linguistically appropriate educational initiatives	Haitian immigrant women in Miami, FL	Focus groups
Kester <i>et al</i> <sup>[56]</sup>	2014	United States	Evaluation of the effects of a brief education session on HPV awareness	131	Higher vaccination intent among intervention group	18-26 yr old females and males	5-10 min education session
Kim <sup>[50]</sup>	2015	South Korea	Assessment of knowledge of HPV relation to cancer in children	117	HPV education at elementary school would be helpful	Fifth-grade girls and boys	2 h education session
Nodulman <i>et al</i> <sup>[57]</sup>	2015	United States	Evaluation of feasibility of increased immunization rates through middle school vaccination programs	117	Low acceptance of middle school vaccination by adolescents, parents and stakeholders	Middle school stakeholders, nurses, parents, adolescents, administrators	Middle school vaccination program

HPV: Human papillomavirus.

**Table 4 Evaluation of barriers to human papillomavirus vaccination**

Ref.	Year	Country	Target population	Objectives	n	Identified barriers to vaccination
Mortensen <sup>[46]</sup>	2010	Denmark	Women aged 16-26	Evaluation of reasons for acceptance or rejection of HPV vaccine following general vaccine availability	794	Cost, lack of information about the benefits of vaccination, and lack of knowledge about HPV
Ogilvie <i>et al</i> <sup>[58]</sup>	2010	Canada	Parents with daughters in 6 <sup>th</sup> grade	Determination of parental factors associated with receipt of the HPV vaccine in a publicly funded school-based HPV vaccine program	2025	Lack of knowledge regarding the HPV vaccine
Kobetz <i>et al</i> <sup>[51]</sup>	2011	United States	Haitian immigrant women in Miami, FL	Assessment of women's knowledge and beliefs regarding cervical cancer and HPV		Lack of education
Jeudin <i>et al</i> <sup>[53]</sup>	2014	United States	Black and Latina populations	Identification of barriers to uptake of HPV vaccination among low-income and minority girls		Lack of access to primary care, lack of provider recommendation, lack of parental knowledge
Kim <sup>[50]</sup>	2015	South Korea	Fifth-grade girls and boys	Assessment of children's knowledge regarding HPV and association with cancer	117	Lack of HPV knowledge, lack of HPV education in schools
Abudukadeer <i>et al</i> <sup>[47]</sup>	2015	China	Women in Xinjiang province	Assessment of knowledge and perception of cervical cancer	5000	Lack of knowledge about cervical cancer
Blake <i>et al</i> <sup>[48]</sup>	2015	United States	National Cancer Institute's 2013 Health Information National Trends Survey Data	Assessment of population knowledge regarding HPV and the HPV vaccine as well as socioeconomic disparities	3185	Lack of HPV awareness and knowledge
Nodulman <i>et al</i> <sup>[57]</sup>	2015	United States	Middle school stakeholders, nurses, parents, adolescents, administrators	Increase of immunization rates through middle school vaccination programs	117	Lack of knowledge about HPV vaccine

HPV: Human papillomavirus.

interviewed to assess which factors were the most important barriers to vaccinating their children. The study was performed in a publicly funded, school-based

HPV vaccine program, to remove the barriers of access and cost. Despite this, the main reasons for not vaccinating female children were concerns about vaccine



safety, preference to wait until the daughter is older, and not having enough information to make an informed decision<sup>[58]</sup>. Based on this study it is apparent that even when financial and health care barriers are removed, parental acceptance of vaccination remains critical in improving vaccine uptake (Table 4).

It has been shown that countries using school-based vaccination programs have the most success in uptake. Countries such as Australia, United Kingdom, and Portugal have achieved coverage rates as high as 80%<sup>[52]</sup>. Denmark has reached one of the highest vaccination rates (> 80%) through aggressive administration by general practitioners<sup>[52]</sup>. In Rwanda, government-mandated HPV vaccine coverage achieved over 90% coverage among teenage girls<sup>[59]</sup>. Programs that have achieved mass vaccination coverage rates have been able to show reduction in HPV viral prevalence in the form of high grade precancerous lesions and overall disease burden.

**Vaccination strategies:** Overall strategies to achieve mass vaccination continue to point towards a comprehensive approach. Continuing to raise awareness about cervical cancer and its relationship to HPV while addressing misconceptions and safety concerns to a wide range of audiences through education and health communication programs remains essential. All strategies should to be country-specific and take into account not only women, but communities, health professionals and delivery methods that provide the highest likelihood of exposure to the general public. In many developing countries, older children and adolescents are rarely routinely vaccinated or routinely evaluated by primary health care providers. New systems will need to be created including a focus on school-based immunization programs, and creating partnership programs focusing on adolescent health and sexual reproductive health programs.

## CONCLUSION

Development of HPV vaccines has created opportunities to reduce cervical cancer rates and morbidity associated with other HPV related diseases. These vaccines have been found helpful in both countries with effective screening programs and those without. Financing for HPV vaccination programs will require involvement of global partners in both the private and public sector. Ongoing research regarding long term safety and efficacy of HPV vaccines will need to be evaluated in a variety of populations including those areas with high HIV prevalence. More information is needed regarding the duration of vaccine protection, long-term efficacy in males, potential need for boosters, and efficacy of two dose regimens in older girls that may reduce the overall costs of the vaccine. If uptake in vaccination increases worldwide, it may lead to increased possibilities of developing prevention and screening programs due to a

subsequent decline in disease incidence.

## REFERENCES

- Human papillomavirus vaccines: WHO position paper, October 2014. *Wkly Epidemiol Rec* 2014; **89**: 465-491 [PMID: 25346960]
- Dunne EF, Markowitz LE, Saraiya M, Stokley S, Middleman A, Unger ER, Williams A, Iskander J. CDC grand rounds: Reducing the burden of HPV-associated cancer and disease. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2014; **63**: 69-72 [PMID: 24476977]
- Benard VB, Thomas CC, King J, Massetti GM, Doria-Rose VP, Saraiya M. Vital signs: cervical cancer incidence, mortality, and screening - United States, 2007-2012. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2014; **63**: 1004-1009 [PMID: 25375072]
- Safaian M, Solomon D, Castle PE. Cervical cancer prevention-cervical screening: science in evolution. *Obstet Gynecol Clin North Am* 2007; **34**: 739-760, ix [PMID: 18061867 DOI: 10.1016/j.ogc.2007.09.004]
- Trimble CL, Frazer IH. Development of therapeutic HPV vaccines. *Lancet Oncol* 2009; **10**: 975-980 [PMID: 19796749 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(09)70227-X]
- Wagner M, Bennetts L, Patel H, Welner S, de Sanjose S, Weiss TW. Global availability of data on HPV genotype-distribution in cervical, vulvar and vaginal disease and genotype-specific prevalence and incidence of HPV infection in females. *Infect Agent Cancer* 2015; **10**: 13 [PMID: 25987893 DOI: 10.1186/s13027-015-0008-y]
- Clifford GM, Gallus S, Herrero R, Muñoz N, Snijders PJ, Vaccarella S, Anh PT, Ferreccio C, Hieu NT, Matos E, Molano M, Rajkumar R, Ronco G, de Sanjosé S, Shin HR, Sukvirach S, Thomas JO, Tunsakul S, Meijer CJ, Franceschi S. Worldwide distribution of human papillomavirus types in cytologically normal women in the International Agency for Research on Cancer HPV prevalence surveys: a pooled analysis. *Lancet* 2005; **366**: 991-998 [PMID: 16168781 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(05)]
- Garland SM, Steben M, Singhs HL, James M, Lu S, Railkar R, Barr E, Haupt RM, Joura EA. Natural history of genital warts: analysis of the placebo arm of 2 randomized phase III trials of a quadrivalent human papillomavirus (types 6, 11, 16, and 18) vaccine. *J Infect Dis* 2009; **199**: 805-814 [PMID: 19199546 DOI: 10.10086/597071]
- Schiller JT, Castellsagué X, Garland SM. A review of clinical trials of human papillomavirus prophylactic vaccines. *Vaccine* 2012; **30** Suppl 5: F123-F138 [PMID: 23199956 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2012.04.108]
- Garland SM, Hernandez-Avila M, Wheeler CM, Perez G, Harper DM, Leodolter S, Tang GW, Ferris DG, Steben M, Bryan J, Taddeo FJ, Railkar R, Esser MT, Singhs HL, Nelson M, Boslego J, Sattler C, Barr E, Koutsky LA. Quadrivalent vaccine against human papillomavirus to prevent anogenital diseases. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **356**: 1928-1943 [PMID: 17494926 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa061760]
- FUTURE II Study Group. Quadrivalent vaccine against human papillomavirus to prevent high-grade cervical lesions. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **356**: 1915-1927 [PMID: 17494925 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa061741]
- Paavonen J, Jenkins D, Bosch FX, Naud P, Salmerón J, Wheeler CM, Chow SN, Apter DL, Kitchener HC, Castellsagué X, de Carvalho NS, Skinner SR, Harper DM, Hedrick JA, Jaisamrarn U, Limson GA, Dionne M, Quint W, Spiessens B, Peeters P, Struyf F, Wieting SL, Lehtinen MO, Dubin G. Efficacy of a prophylactic adjuvanted bivalent L1 virus-like-particle vaccine against infection with human papillomavirus types 16 and 18 in young women: an interim analysis of a phase III double-blind, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2007; **369**: 2161-2170 [PMID: 17602732 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(07)60946-5]
- Herrero R, Hildesheim A, Rodríguez AC, Wacholder S, Bratti C, Solomon D, González P, Porras C, Jiménez S, Guillen D, Morales J, Alfaro M, Cyr J, Morrissey K, Estrada Y, Cortés B, Morera LA, Freer E, Schussler J, Schiller J, Lowy D, Schiffman M. Rationale and design of a community-based double-blind randomized clinical

- trial of an HPV 16 and 18 vaccine in Guanacaste, Costa Rica. *Vaccine* 2008; **26**: 4795-4808 [PMID: 18640170 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2008.07.002]
- 14 **Luxembourg A**, Bautista O, Moeller E, Ritter M, Chen J. Design of a large outcome trial for a multivalent human papillomavirus L1 virus-like particle vaccine. *Contemp Clin Trials* 2015; **42**: 18-25 [PMID: 25749310 DOI: 10.1016/j.cct.2015.02.00]
  - 15 **Joura EA**, Giuliano AR, Iversen OE, Bouchard C, Mao C, Mehlsen J, Moreira ED, Ngan Y, Petersen LK, Lazcano-Ponce E, Pitisuttithum P, Restrepo JA, Stuart G, Woelber L, Yang YC, Cuzick J, Garland SM, Huh W, Kjaer SK, Bautista OM, Chan IS, Chen J, Gesser R, Moeller E, Ritter M, Vuocolo S, Luxembourg A. A 9-valent HPV vaccine against infection and intraepithelial neoplasia in women. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **372**: 711-723 [PMID: 25693011 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1405044]
  - 16 **Hariri S**, Unger ER, Schafer S, Niccolai LM, Park IU, Bloch KC, Bennett NM, Steinau M, Johnson ML, Markowitz LE. HPV type attribution in high-grade cervical lesions: assessing the potential benefits of vaccines in a population-based evaluation in the United States. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2015; **24**: 393-399 [PMID: 25416715 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-14-0649]
  - 17 **Serrano B**, Alemany L, Ruiz PA, Tous S, Lima MA, Bruni L, Jain A, Clifford GM, Qiao YL, Weiss T, Bosch FX, de Sanjosé S. Potential impact of a 9-valent HPV vaccine in HPV-related cervical disease in 4 emerging countries (Brazil, Mexico, India and China). *Cancer Epidemiol* 2014; **38**: 748-756 [PMID: 25305098 DOI: 10.1016/j.canep.2014.09.003]
  - 18 **Gee J**, Naleway A, Shui I, Baggs J, Yin R, Li R, Kulldorff M, Lewis E, Fireman B, Daley MF, Klein NP, Weintraub ES. Monitoring the safety of quadrivalent human papillomavirus vaccine: findings from the Vaccine Safety Datalink. *Vaccine* 2011; **29**: 8279-8284 [PMID: 21907257 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2011.08.106]
  - 19 **Klein NP**, Hansen J, Chao C, Velicer C, Emery M, Slezak J, Lewis N, Deosaransingh K, Sy L, Ackerson B, Cheetham TC, Liaw KL, Takhar H, Jacobsen SJ. Safety of quadrivalent human papillomavirus vaccine administered routinely to females. *Arch Pediatr Adolesc Med* 2012; **166**: 1140-1148 [PMID: 23027469 DOI: 10.1001/archpediatrics.2012.1451]
  - 20 **Kang LW**, Crawford N, Tang ML, Buttery J, Royle J, Gold M, Ziegler C, Quinn P, Elia S, Choo S. Hypersensitivity reactions to human papillomavirus vaccine in Australian schoolgirls: retrospective cohort study. *BMJ* 2008; **337**: a2642 [PMID: 19050332 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.a2642]
  - 21 **Skinner SR**, Szarewski A, Romanowski B, Garland SM, Lazcano-Ponce E, Salmerón J, Del Rosario-Raymundo MR, Verheijen RH, Quek SC, da Silva DP, Kitchener H, Fong KL, Bouchard C, Money DM, Ilancheran A, Cruickshank ME, Levin MJ, Chatterjee A, Stapleton JT, Martens M, Quint W, David MP, Meric D, Hardt K, Descamps D, Geeraerts B, Struyf F, Dubin G. Efficacy, safety, and immunogenicity of the human papillomavirus 16/18 AS04-adjuvanted vaccine in women older than 25 years: 4-year interim follow-up of the phase 3, double-blind, randomised controlled VIVIANE study. *Lancet* 2014; **384**: 2213-2227 [PMID: 25189358 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(14)60920-X]
  - 22 National Centre for Immunisation Research & Surveillance. Human papillomavirus (HPV) vaccines for Australians: information for immunization providers. [Update 2015 Mar]. Available from: URL: <http://www.ncirs.edu.au/immunisation/fact-sheets/hpv-human-papillomavirus-fact-sheet.pdf>
  - 23 **Schwarz T**, Spaczynski M, Kaufmann A, Wysocki J, Gałaj A, Schulze K, Suryakiran P, Thomas F, Descamps D. Persistence of immune responses to the HPV-16/18 AS04-adjuvanted vaccine in women aged 15-55 years and first-time modelling of antibody responses in mature women: results from an open-label 6-year follow-up study. *BJOG* 2015; **122**: 107-118 [PMID: 25208608 DOI: 10.1111/1471-0528.13070]
  - 24 **Cutts FT**, Franceschi S, Goldie S, Castellsague X, de Sanjose S, Garnett G, Edmunds WJ, Claeys P, Goldenthal KL, Harper DM, Markowitz L. Human papillomavirus and HPV vaccines: a review. *Bull World Health Organ* 2007; **85**: 719-726 [PMID: 18026629]
  - 25 **Giuliano AR**, Palefsky JM, Goldstone S, Moreira ED, Penny ME, Aranda C, Vardas E, Moi H, Jessen H, Hillman R, Chang YH, Ferris D, Rouleau D, Bryan J, Marshall JB, Vuocolo S, Barr E, Radley D, Haupt RM, Guris D. Efficacy of quadrivalent HPV vaccine against HPV Infection and disease in males. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 401-411 [PMID: 21288094 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0909537]
  - 26 **Block SL**, Nolan T, Sattler C, Barr E, Giacoletti K, Marchant C, Castellsague X, Reisinger K. Comparison of the immunogenicity and reactogenicity of a prophylactic quadrivalent human papillomavirus (types 6, 11, 16, and 18) L1 virus-like particle vaccine in male and female adolescents and young adult women. *Pediatrics* 2006; **118**: 2135-2145
  - 27 **Bogaards JA**, Wallinga J, Brakenhoff RH, Meijer CJ, Berkhof J. Direct benefit of vaccinating boys along with girls against oncogenic human papillomavirus: bayesian evidence synthesis. *BMJ* 2015; **350**: h2016 [PMID: 25985328 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.h2016]
  - 28 **Petrosky E**, Bocchini JA, Hariri S, Chesson H, Curtis CR, Saraiya M, Unger ER, Markowitz LE. Use of 9-valent human papillomavirus (HPV) vaccine: updated HPV vaccination recommendations of the advisory committee on immunization practices. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2015; **64**: 300-304 [PMID: 25811679]
  - 29 **Stokley S**, Jeyarajah J, Yankey D, Cano M, Gee J, Roark J, Curtis RC, Markowitz L. Human papillomavirus vaccination coverage among adolescents, 2007-2013, and postlicensure vaccine safety monitoring, 2006-2014--United States. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2014; **63**: 620-624 [PMID: 25055185]
  - 30 **Reiter PL**, McRee AL, Katz ML, Paskett ED. Human Papillomavirus Vaccination Among Young Adult Gay and Bisexual Men in the United States. *Am J Public Health* 2015; **105**: 96-102 [PMID: 25393178]
  - 31 **Meites E**, Markowitz LE, Paz-Bailey G, Oster AM. HPV vaccine coverage among men who have sex with men - National HIV Behavioral Surveillance System, United States, 2011. *Vaccine* 2014; **32**: 6356-6359 [PMID: 25258097 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2014.09.033]
  - 32 **Rahman M**, Islam M, Berenson AB. Differences in HPV Immunization Levels Among Young Adults in Various Regions of the United States. *J Community Health* 2015; **40**: 404-408 [PMID: 25669443 DOI: 10.1007/s10900-015-9995-2]
  - 33 **Palefsky JM**, Gillison ML, Strickler HD. Chapter 16: HPV vaccines in immunocompromised women and men. *Vaccine* 2006; **24** Suppl 3: S3/140-S3/146 [PMID: 16950001]
  - 34 **Markowitz LE**, Dunne EF, Saraiya M, Chesson HW, Curtis CR, Gee J, Bocchini JA, Unger ER. Human papillomavirus vaccination: recommendations of the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). *MMWR Recomm Rep* 2014; **63**: 1-30 [PMID: 25167164]
  - 35 **Kahn JA**, Xu J, Kapogiannis BG, Rudy B, Gonin R, Liu N, Wilson CM, Worrell C, Squires KE. Immunogenicity and safety of the human papillomavirus 6, 11, 16, 18 vaccine in HIV-infected young women. *Clin Infect Dis* 2013; **57**: 735-744 [PMID: 23667266 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cit319]
  - 36 **Denny LA**, Franceschi S, de Sanjosé S, Heard I, Moscicki AB, Palefsky J. Human papillomavirus, human immunodeficiency virus and immunosuppression. *Vaccine* 2012; **30** Suppl 5: F168-F174 [PMID: 23199960 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2012.06.045]
  - 37 **Levin MJ**, Moscicki AB, Song LY, Fenton T, Meyer WA, Read JS, Handelsman EL, Nowak B, Sattler CA, Saah A, Radley DR, Esser MT, Weinberg A. Safety and immunogenicity of a quadrivalent human papillomavirus (types 6, 11, 16, and 18) vaccine in HIV-infected children 7 to 12 years old. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2010; **55**: 197-204 [PMID: 20574412 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181de8d26]
  - 38 **Weinberg A**, Song LY, Saah A, Brown M, Moscicki AB, Meyer WA, Bryan J, Levin MJ. Humoral, mucosal, and cell-mediated immunity against vaccine and nonvaccine genotypes after administration of quadrivalent human papillomavirus vaccine to HIV-infected children. *J Infect Dis* 2012; **206**: 1309-1318 [PMID: 22859825 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jis489]
  - 39 **Wilkin T**, Lee JY, Lensing SY, Stier EA, Goldstone SE, Berry JM,

- Jay N, Aboulaia D, Cohn DL, Einstein MH, Saah A, Mitsuyasu RT, Palefsky JM. Safety and immunogenicity of the quadrivalent human papillomavirus vaccine in HIV-1-infected men. *J Infect Dis* 2010; **202**: 1246-1253 [PMID: 20812850 DOI: 10.1086/656320]
- 40 Human papillomavirus vaccines: WHO position paper, October 2014-Recommendations. *Vaccine* 2015; **33**: 4383-4384 [PMID: 25510390 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2014.12.002]
- 41 **World Health Organization**. Immunizations, Vaccines and Biologicals: Data, statistics and graphics. [Update 2015 May 28]. Available from: URL: [http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring\\_surveillance/data/en/](http://www.who.int/immunization/monitoring_surveillance/data/en/)
- 42 **Fesenfeld M**, Hutubessy R, Jit M. Cost-effectiveness of human papillomavirus vaccination in low and middle income countries: a systematic review. *Vaccine* 2013; **31**: 3786-3804 [PMID: 23830973 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2013.06.060]
- 43 **Brisson M**, Van de Velde N, Boily MC. Economic evaluation of human papillomavirus vaccination in developed countries. *Public Health Genomics* 2009; **12**: 343-351 [PMID: 19684446 DOI: 10.1159/000214924]
- 44 **Kim JJ**, Brisson M, Edmunds WJ, Goldie SJ. Modeling cervical cancer prevention in developed countries. *Vaccine* 2008; **26** Suppl 10: K76-K86 [PMID: 18847560 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2008.06.009]
- 45 **Hopkins TG**, Wood N. Female human papillomavirus (HPV) vaccination: global uptake and the impact of attitudes. *Vaccine* 2013; **31**: 1673-1679 [PMID: 23375978 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2013.01.028]
- 46 **Mortensen GL**. Drivers and barriers to acceptance of human-papillomavirus vaccination among young women: a qualitative and quantitative study. *BMC Public Health* 2010; **10**: 68 [PMID: 20152055 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2458-10-68]
- 47 **Abudukadeer A**, Azam S, Mutailipu AZ, Qun L, Guilin G, Mijiti S. Knowledge and attitude of Uyghur women in Xinjiang province of China related to the prevention and early detection of cervical cancer. *World J Surg Oncol* 2015; **13**: 110 [PMID: 25885660 DOI: 10.1186/s12957-015-0531-8]
- 48 **Blake KD**, Ottenbacher AJ, Finney Rutten LJ, Grady MA, Kobrin SC, Jacobson RM, Hesse BW. Predictors of human papillomavirus awareness and knowledge in 2013: gaps and opportunities for targeted communication strategies. *Am J Prev Med* 2015; **48**: 402-410 [PMID: 25700651 DOI: 10.1016/j.amepre.2014.10.024]
- 49 **Markowitz LE**, Hariri S, Lin C, Dunne EF, Steinau M, McQuillan G, Unger ER. Reduction in human papillomavirus (HPV) prevalence among young women following HPV vaccine introduction in the United States, National Health and Nutrition Examination Surveys, 2003-2010. *J Infect Dis* 2013; **208**: 385-393 [PMID: 23785124 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jit192]
- 50 **Kim HW**. Awareness of human papillomavirus and factors associated with intention to obtain HPV vaccination among Korean youth: quasi experimental study. *BMC Int Health Hum Rights* 2015; **15**: 4 [PMID: 25889565 DOI: 10.1186/s12914-015-0042-2]
- 51 **Kobetz E**, Menard J, Hazan G, Koru-Sengul T, Joseph T, Nissan J, Barton B, Blanco J, Kornfeld J. Perceptions of HPV and cervical cancer among Haitian immigrant women: implications for vaccine acceptability. *Educ Health* (Abingdon) 2011; **24**: 479 [PMID: 22267344]
- 52 **Fu LY**, Bonhomme LA, Cooper SC, Joseph JG, Zimet GD. Educational interventions to increase HPV vaccination acceptance: a systematic review. *Vaccine* 2014; **32**: 1901-1920 [PMID: 24530401 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2014.01.091]
- 53 **Jeudin P**, Liveright E, Del Carmen MG, Perkins RB. Race, ethnicity, and income factors impacting human papillomavirus vaccination rates. *Clin Ther* 2014; **36**: 24-37 [PMID: 24417783 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinthera.2013.11.001]
- 54 **Chapman E**, Venkat P, Ko E, Orezzoli JP, Del Carmen M, Garner EI. Use of multimedia as an educational tool to improve human papillomavirus vaccine acceptability--a pilot study. *Gynecol Oncol* 2010; **118**: 103-107 [PMID: 20457469 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2010.04.010]
- 55 **Kennedy A**, Sapsis KF, Stokley S, Curtis CR, Gust D. Parental attitudes toward human papillomavirus vaccination: evaluation of an educational intervention, 2008. *J Health Commun* 2011; **16**: 300-313 [PMID: 21161814 DOI: 10.1080/10810730.2010.532296]
- 56 **Kester LM**, Shedd-Steele RB, Dotson-Roberts CA, Smith J, Zimet GD. The effects of a brief educational intervention on human papillomavirus knowledge and intention to initiate HPV vaccination in 18-26 year old young adults. *Gynecol Oncol* 2014; **132** Suppl 1: S9-S12 [PMID: 24384459 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2013.12.033]
- 57 **Nodulman JA**, Starling R, Kong AS, Buller DB, Wheeler CM, Woodall WG. Investigating stakeholder attitudes and opinions on school-based human papillomavirus vaccination programs. *J Sch Health* 2015; **85**: 289-298 [PMID: 25846308 DOI: 10.1111/josh.12253]
- 58 **Ogilvie G**, Anderson M, Marra F, McNeil S, Pielak K, Dawar M, McIvor M, Ehlen T, Dobson S, Money D, Patrick DM, Naus M. A population-based evaluation of a publicly funded, school-based HPV vaccine program in British Columbia, Canada: parental factors associated with HPV vaccine receipt. *PLoS Med* 2010; **7**: e1000270 [PMID: 20454567 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pmed.1000270]
- 59 **Binagwaho A**, Wagner CM, Gatera M, Karema C, Nutt CT, Ngabo F. Achieving high coverage in Rwanda's national human papillomavirus vaccination programme. *Bull World Health Organ* 2012; **90**: 623-628 [PMID: 22893746 DOI: 10.2471/BLT.11.097253]

P- Reviewer: Sisti G, Wang Y S- Editor: Ji FF L- Editor: A  
E- Editor: Wu HL



## Human papilloma virus vaccination: Review article and an update

Zahra Maleki

Zahra Maleki, Department of Pathology, Division of Cytopathology, the Johns Hopkins Hospital, Baltimore, MD 21287, United States

**Author contributions:** Maleki Z collected the data and wrote the entire paper without any assistance.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** Author declares no conflict of interests for this article.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Zahra Maleki, MD, Assistant Professor of Pathology, Department of Pathology, Division of Cytology, the Johns Hopkins Hospital, 600 N. Wolfe Street/Pathology 412C, Baltimore, MD 21287, United States. [zmaleki1@jhmi.edu](mailto:zmaleki1@jhmi.edu)  
Telephone: +1-410-9551180  
Fax: +1-410-6149556

Received: June 30, 2015

Peer-review started: July 5, 2015

First decision: October 13, 2015

Revised: December 15, 2015

Accepted: December 29, 2015

Article in press: January 4, 2016

Published online: February 10, 2016

### Abstract

Human papilloma virus (HPV) is sexually transmitted and associated with uterine cervix, vaginal, and vulvar cancers in females, oropharyngeal and anal cancer in both genders, and penile cancer in males. Moreover, genital warts are benign tumors which are HPV-related and can occur in both genders. This is a review of HPV

structure, HPV infection transmission, the global impact of HPV and its associated diseases, HPV vaccines and their efficacy and safety, public acceptance of HPV vaccines, the obstacles for its acceptance and strategies to address the barriers. Cervarix (a bivalent vaccine with protection against HPV types 16 and 18) and Gardasil (a quadrivalent vaccine with protection against HPV types 6, 11, 16 and 18) are 2 recommended vaccines. The longest follow up of 9.4 years has shown efficacy and protection of the vaccine against HPV types 16 and 18. The adverse effects have been minimal and the vaccine is considered safe. Numerous studies are conducted to follow the vaccinated individuals to better understand the effect of HPV vaccine on incidence of HPV-related cancers and precancerous lesions.

**Key words:** Human papilloma virus; Cervarix; Gardasil; Gardasil 9; Vaccine; Review

© **The Author(s) 2016.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Human papilloma virus (HPV) is sexually transmitted in both genders and it is a global issue. High risk HPVs are associated with a variety of cancers and low risk HPVs are associated with genital warts. HPV types 16 and 18 account for 70% of cervical cancer in women. Bivalent (Cervarix), and quadrivalent (Gardasil) vaccines are recommended to prevent HPV 16 and 18 related cancers with additional protective effect of Gardasil against HPV 6 and 11. Herein, HPV-related cancers and their incidences, low risk HPV related neoplasms and HPV vaccines, their efficacy and safety are reviewed. Moreover, the obstacles for global vaccination are addressed.

Maleki Z. Human papilloma virus vaccination: Review article and an update. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 16-27  
Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/16.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.16>



## INTRODUCTION

Human papilloma virus (HPV) is associated with cervical, vaginal, and vulvar cancer in females, oropharyngeal and anal cancer in both genders, and penile cancers in males<sup>[1-3]</sup>. HPV infection is underlying cause of cervical precancerous lesions including cervical intraepithelial neoplasia grade 2 (CIN II) and 3 (CIN III), and cervical adenocarcinoma *in situ*. HPV types 16 and 18 are the most common cause (64%) of HPV-associated cancers in both females (65%) and males (63%) in the United States<sup>[4]</sup> while HPV types 31, 33, 45, 52, and 58 account for 10% of HPV associated carcinomas in both females (14%) and males (4%)<sup>[5]</sup>. HPV 16 and 18 account for 66% and HPV types 31, 33, 45, 52, and 58 for 15% of cervical cancers<sup>[4]</sup>. Cervarix and Gardasil are two recommended vaccines for protection against HPV-related cancers. There have been barriers regarding HPV vaccination acceptance and its accessibility. This is a review of HPV, HPV vaccines, and the issues related to the vaccines.

## HPV

HPVs are small, circular, double-stranded, non-enveloped icosahedral DNA viruses. HPV genome contains 6800 to 8000 base pairs coding for early (E), and late (L) functions. E1 and E2 regulate viral DNA replication, and E2 regulates viral RNA transcription. E4 regulates cytoskeleton reorganization. Finally, E5, E6, and E7 regulate cell transformation. L1 and L2 are structural component of the viral capsid. E2 is the main regulator and regulates other viral genes. This is particularly true about E6 and E7<sup>[6]</sup>. HPV life cycle requires basal layer of epidermal or mucosal epithelial cells that is still able to proliferate. This usually occurs by micro-laceration of the skin or mucosa. During infection, HPV DNA genome integrates into the host DNA, resulting in the disruption of the *E2* gene and inability of late genes to express<sup>[7]</sup>. Loss of *E2* leads to up-regulation of *E6* and *E7* genes, which results in high expression of *E6* and *E7* proteins, genomic instability, and disruption of cell cycle. The infected cells divide and the infection spreads laterally. Following entry into the suprabasal layers, viral DNA is replicated, late viral genes are activated, and capsid proteins are formed. Viral particle formation are completed and the viral particles are released at the epithelial or mucosal surface, which may cause additional tissue infection then<sup>[6]</sup>. *E5*, *E6*, and *E7* pose proliferation-stimulating activity. *E5* is important at the early course of infection preventing apoptosis. *E6* and *E7* are oncogenes and play an important role in malignant transformation of the infected cells. *E6* inhibits the tumor suppressor activity of *P53* and *E7* inhibits activity of *RB*. Only *E6* and *E7* of high risk HPV types are immortalized human cells<sup>[6,8,9]</sup>.

## HPV INFECTION TRANSMISSION

HPV has an affinity to infect either anogenital and

oral mucosa ( $\alpha$ -papillomaviruses) or skin ( $\beta$ - and  $\gamma$ -papillomaviruses)<sup>[10]</sup>. Infection is commonly transmitted by sexual contact including vaginal, rectal sex and initially the pathologic changes in squamous epithelial cells are inconspicuous<sup>[11]</sup>. The age at first sexual intercourse, number of sexual partners, smoking, the age of the woman and her partner, and male circumcision are important risk factors for HPV transmission<sup>[12]</sup>. Open mouthed kissing and oral sex are associated with oral HPV infection<sup>[13-15]</sup>. Most of the infections are cleared by 6 to 12 mo after appearance, which is probably due to immunologic response to infection.

## HPV AND ITS GLOBAL IMPACT

HPV, by far, is one of the most common viral sexually transmitted diseases. At least 50% of adult population is infected with this virus during their lifetime<sup>[16-19]</sup>. The prevalence of HPV in cervical cancer has been estimated 85%-99% worldwide<sup>[20]</sup>. Cervical cancer is reported as the third most common cancer in females, and overall it is the seventh most common cancer<sup>[21]</sup>. Screening for cervical cancer has significantly decreased the incidence of cervical cancer in developed countries while the results in developing countries have been only marginal. According to International Agency for Research on Cancer, developing countries account for greater than 85% of the global burden, where 13% of all female cancers occur<sup>[16,21]</sup>. The highest rates of cervical cancer are seen in: (1) Western; (2) Eastern Africa (age standardized rates greater than 30 per 100000); (3) Southern Africa (26.8 per 100000); (4) South-Central Asia (24.6 per 100000); (5) South America; and (6) Middle Africa (23.9 and 23.0 per 100000 respectively). The lowest rates of cervical cancer are seen in North America, Western Asia, and Australia/New Zealand (less than 6 per 100000). In South-Central Asia, Melanesia, and Eastern Africa, cervical cancer is still the most common cancer in women<sup>[16,21]</sup>.

## INCIDENCE OF HPV IN HUMAN

### IMMUNODEFICIENCY VIRUS PATIENTS

HPV-related neoplasms tend to occur at a younger age in human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)-infected patients and exhibit a more aggressive and advanced stage compared to those in HIV-negative patients<sup>[22,23]</sup>. In fact, infection with HIV was listed as an important risk factor for cervical cancer<sup>[24,25]</sup>. Low CD4<sup>+</sup> counts ( $\leq 200$  cells/ $\mu$ L) are the most significant independent predictor for infection with both high risk and low risk HPV genotypes<sup>[26]</sup>. Moreover, HIV-infected patients with genital warts show more resistance to standard treatment for genital warts and even relapse is more likely in HIV-positive women treated for cervical neoplasia compared to the healthy HIV-negative population<sup>[26-28]</sup>. Large cohorts from the United States and Europe demonstrated standardized incidence



ratios ranging from 5-10 for cervical cancer for HIV-infected women compared with the healthy general population<sup>[29-32]</sup>. Several studies from sub-Saharan Africa with limited generalizability have reported similar proportion of HPV 16 and 18 related cervical cancers in HIV-infected women vs general female population<sup>[33,34]</sup>.

## HPV ASSOCIATED DISEASES

HPV is the underlying cause of a large number of benign, precancerous, and malignant conditions in both females and males. HPV shows a predilection to the skin and mucosa. Harald Zur Hausen made the most significant contribution in this field. He described the strong association between HPV infection and cervical cancer for first time. Using cloning and sequencing methods, he identified HPV types 16 and 18 from cervical cancer<sup>[35]</sup>.

### HPV-associated cancers

HPV infection is associated with greater than 50% of infection-related cancers in females and 5% in males worldwide<sup>[36]</sup>. The most well-known HPV-associated cancer is cervical cancer. In anogenital area, HPV contributes to more than 99% of cervical squamous cell carcinoma and adenocarcinoma<sup>[1,37]</sup>, 40% of vulvar cancers, 60% of vaginal carcinoma<sup>[38]</sup> and 97% of anal cancers<sup>[39]</sup>. Men having sex with men (MSM) and immunocompromised patients (HIV-infected patients and organ transplant recipients) are in greater risk for anal carcinoma<sup>[40]</sup>. HPV is associated with 45% of penile cancer<sup>[41]</sup>. In head and neck, HPV infection accounts for 47% of oropharyngeal cancers and 11% of oral and tongue cancers<sup>[42]</sup>.

### HPV-associated precancerous lesions

HPV infection is associated with high grade squamous intraepithelial lesions (SILs) of cervix (CIN II, CIN III)<sup>[43]</sup>, vagina (VAIN II, VAIN III), vulva (VIN II, VIN III), and anus (AIN II, AIN III).

Oral lichen planus (23%), leukoplakia (63%), epithelial dysplasia<sup>[37,44]</sup>, and erythroplakia (50%)<sup>[45]</sup> are considered precancerous disorders in oral cavity attributed to HPV infection. Common warts and flat warts of skin are also attributed to HPV infection<sup>[46]</sup>. Epidermodysplasia verruciformis is a complex disease which is associated with HPV infection<sup>[47]</sup>.

### HPV-associated benign lesions

Anogenital warts or condyloma acuminata, atypical squamous cell of uncertain significance, and low grade SIL of cervix are benign lesions associated with HPV in anogenital area. Oral squamous papilloma, verruca vulgaris (common wart)<sup>[46]</sup>, recurrent respiratory papillomatosis<sup>[48]</sup>, and focal epithelial hyperplasia (Heck disease) are benign HPV-associated lesions in head and neck area.

## HPV SUBTYPES AND THEIR ASSOCIATED DISEASES

The HPV are classified into low-risk and high-risk HPV types according to their oncogenic potential<sup>[49]</sup>. HPVs 16 and 18 are the most common high-risk HPV types causing anogenital and oropharyngeal cancers in both females and males. The most common low-risk HPVs are types 6 and 11, causing genital warts and laryngeal papilloma<sup>[50]</sup>. Worldwide, the overall HPV prevalence in cervical cancer is greater than 99%<sup>[1]</sup>. Cervical cancer is associated with several types of HPV. The most common type is HPV 16 (61%), followed by HPV 18 (10%), HPV 45 (6%), HPV 31 (4%), HPV 33 (4%), HPV 52 (3%), HPV 35 (2%), and HPV 58 (2%)<sup>[1,20]</sup>. HPV 16 and 18 are also the most common HPV types detected in cervical cancer biopsies in HIV-infected patients<sup>[51]</sup>.

HPV 16 and HPV 18 are the most common HPV types associated with vulvar (HPV 16, 32% and HPV 18, 4%)<sup>[38]</sup>, vaginal (HPV 16, 54%, HPV 18, 8%)<sup>[38]</sup> anal cancer (HPV 16, 75%, HPV 18, 3%)<sup>[39]</sup>. HPV types 16 (60%), and 18 (13%) are the most common HPV types associated with penile cancer in males followed by HPV-6/11 (8.13%), HPV-31 (1.16%), and HPV-45 (1.16%)<sup>[41]</sup>.

HPV 16 (45%), HPV 31 (9%), HPV 33 (7%), HPV 18 (7%), HPV 58 (7%), HPV 52 (5%), and HPV 35 (4%) are the most common HPV types detected in cervical high grade SILs<sup>[43]</sup>.

HPV 16 (9%), HPV 6/11 (5%), HPV 31 (4%), HPV 33 (2%), and HPV 18 (2%) are the most common HPV types detected in low-grade SILs of the cervix<sup>[37,52]</sup>.

Among benign anogenital lesions, HPV 6 (89%) and HPV 11 (11%) have been associated with condyloma acuminata<sup>[53,54]</sup>.

In head and neck, HPV 16 is strongly associated with oropharyngeal squamous cell carcinoma and oral cavity carcinoma accounting for 90% and 96% of cases, respectively<sup>[42]</sup>. HPV types 6 and 11 are associated with recurrent respiratory papillomatosis<sup>[48]</sup>, and oral squamous cell papilloma<sup>[55]</sup>.

### HPV vaccines

Targeting L1 and L2 proteins of HPV, major and minor capsid proteins, respectively, is the current strategy for the development of vaccines that are safe and effective. The expression of recombinant L1 in various hosts such as insect<sup>[56,57]</sup>, yeast<sup>[58]</sup>, bacteria<sup>[59]</sup> and even mammalian cells<sup>[60,61]</sup> generate virus-like particles (VLPs), which are similar to native virions both morphologically and immunologically. Studies have shown that L1 VLPs induces high titers of neutralizing serum antibodies, particularly immunoglobulin G (IgG). In fact, L1 VLPs are immunogenic and protective against HPV infecting skin or mucosa<sup>[57,62-64]</sup>. A conducted clinical trial by Koutsky *et al*<sup>[65]</sup> showed 100% protection from the natural acquisition of persistent HPV16

infection in individuals vaccinated with HPV 16 L1 VLPs, formulated in the adjuvant alum, over an average of 17.4 mo. The adjuvant is incorporated into a vaccine in order to enhance or direct the immune response of the vaccine<sup>[66]</sup>. Other clinical studies confirmed the high rate of protection and efficacy of L1 VLP vaccines against persistent infection of the same HPV type infection<sup>[67-73]</sup>. HPV vaccine is not recommended during pregnancy.

### **Cervarix**

Cervarix is a L1 VLP manufactured by GlaxoSmithKline Biologicals, based in the United Kingdom. It is a bivalent recombinant vaccine to prevent cervical cancer, high grade cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN) grade 2 or worse, cervical adenocarcinoma *in situ*, and CIN grade 1 caused by HPV types 16 and 18. It was approved by the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in 2009 for use in females 9 to 25 years of age. HPV types 16 and 18 account for 70% of all cervical cancers worldwide<sup>[74]</sup>. Immunization with Cervarix consists of 3 doses of intramuscular injection, 0.5-mL each, on 0, 1, and 6 mo<sup>[75]</sup>. Cervarix is produced and formulated in the proprietary Adjuvant System 04 (ASO4) using insect cells infected with recombinant baculovirus. ASO4 consists of aluminum hydroxide and TLR4 agonist monophosphoryl lipid A (3-O-desacyl-4'-monophosphoryl lipid A) (MPL). Cervarix is the first vaccine with MPL adjuvant, which is licensed by the FDA.

Syncope may occur immediately after receiving Cervarix. Therefore, it is recommended to observe the vaccinees for 15 min after administration of the vaccine. A tonic-clonic movements and other seizure-like activity might be associated with syncope which is usually transient. A supine or Trendelenburg position restores cerebral perfusion. Redness, swelling, and pain at the injection site are the most common local adverse reactions and are seen in greater than 20% of subjects. Fatigue, headache, myalgia, gastrointestinal symptoms, and arthralgia are reported as the most common general adverse effects. Severe allergic reactions, such as anaphylaxis, to any component of Cervarix is a contraindication<sup>[75]</sup>.

### **Gardasil**

Gardasil is a quadrivalent L1 VLPs recombinant vaccine manufactured by Merck and Co., Whitehouse Station, New Jersey, United States. It protects against cervical, vaginal, and vulvar cancers and precancerous lesions, and genital wart associated with HPV types 6, 11, 16, and 18<sup>[76]</sup>. HPV types 16 and 18 have demonstrated the strongest association between infection and cervical cancers and high grade SILs (CIN II and 3), and they are responsible for 70% of all cervical cancers and CIN II, and CIN III<sup>[77]</sup>. HPV types 6 and 11 are associated with 10% of low grade SILs<sup>[78]</sup>, and more than 90% of all genital warts<sup>[53,79]</sup>.

Gardasil consists of four types of L1 VLPs produced in

saccharomyces cerevisiae using recombinant DNA technology. The DNA-free VLPs are purified and adsorbed on a proprietary amorphous aluminum hydroxyphosphate sulfate adjuvant (225 mg per dose)<sup>[76]</sup>. Each dose is 0.5 mL containing 20, 40, 40, and 20 µg of VLPs for HPV types 6, 11, 16, and 18, respectively. The vaccine is administered by intramuscular injection as a three-dose regimen, at months 0, 2, and 6<sup>[76]</sup>.

### **Gardasil 9**

Gardasil 9 is a nonavalent recombinant human papillomavirus vaccine (by Merck and company, Kenilworth, New Jersey, United States) to prevent approximately 90% of cervical, vaginal, vulvar, and anal cancers caused by HPV types of 16, 18, 31, 33, 45, 52, and 58 and to prevent genital warts associated with HPV types 6 or 11. Compared to Gardasil, Gardasil 9 covers five additional HPV types including 31, 33, 45, 52 and 58, which account for approximately 20% of cervical cancers. The vaccine was approved by FDA for use in females ages 9-26 years and males ages 9-15 years in December 2014<sup>[80,81]</sup>. Gardasil 9 is administered as intramuscular injection in three doses. The combined follow up studies on females vaccinated by Cervarix, or Gardasil, and or Gardasil 9 confirm high efficacy of HPV vaccination in prevention of cervical precancerous lesions<sup>[81]</sup>.

## **HPV VACCINATION IN HIV-INFECTED PATIENTS**

The American Council of Immunization practices recommends HPV vaccination for HIV-infected patients ages 11-26 years. This recommendation is based on a few studies that evaluated the immunogenicity of the quadrivalent HPV vaccine in perinatally HIV-infected patients<sup>[82]</sup> and HIV-infected men<sup>[83]</sup>. A longitudinal, prospective, non-randomized, controlled, open-label clinical study on 46 HIV-infected adolescents and young adults ages of 13 to 26 years and 46 HIV-negative controls ages of 14 to 27 years was conducted to evaluate the long-term immunogenicity effect of Gardasil administered intramuscularly in three doses (0, 8 and 24 wk). Naïve (CCR7<sup>+</sup>/CD45RA<sup>+</sup>) and central memory (CM) (CCR7<sup>+</sup>/CD45RA<sup>-</sup>) CD4<sup>+</sup> and CD8<sup>+</sup> T lymphocytes were diminished at 28 wk, whereas effector memory (EM) (CCR7<sup>-</sup>/CD45RA<sup>-</sup>) CD4<sup>+</sup> and CD8<sup>+</sup> T lymphocytes were increased. No differences were noted between HIV-infected patients and HIV-negative healthy controls<sup>[84]</sup>.

### **Safety of HPV vaccination**

A Danish study reported post-vaccination symptoms in 35 females following vaccination with Gardasil. The patients were older than general target population (23.3 ± 7.1 years), with a high (71%) to moderate (29%) level of physical activity prior to vaccination, and BMI of 22.1 ± 4.7 kg/m<sup>2</sup>. The window period between vaccination

and onset of symptoms was 9.3 d. The symptoms included orthostatic intolerance (100%), postural orthostatic tachycardia syndrome (60%), nausea (94%), chronic headache (82%), fatigue (82%), palpitations (77%), reduced cognitive function (77%), skin changes for instance aggravation of acne (76%), intermittent tremor/myoclonic twitches (72%), neuropathic pain such as “burning”, “a deep stabbing”, or “jolts of electricity” starting distally, often in one limb, and then progressing proximally and often spreading to the contralateral side (68%), sleep disturbances described as new-onset insomnia and non-refreshing sleep (61%), and muscular weakness (61%). Symptoms were reported to appear after the first vaccination in 24%, after the second vaccination in 51%, and after the third vaccination in 25%<sup>[85]</sup>. Another study from the same center in Denmark reports more symptoms in addition to what they reported earlier in 53 females. Only symptoms that were experienced in more than 25% of the patients were presented. The mean age at symptom onset was  $21.0 \pm 7.4$  years. Mean time between vaccination and onset of symptoms was  $11.1 \pm 12.5$  d and symptoms were reported to appear after the first vaccination (40%), after the second vaccination (36%), and after the third vaccination (25%)<sup>[85]</sup>.

The additional symptoms included visual symptoms such as new-onset hypersensitivity to bright colors and light (70%), and intermittent blurring of vision (83%), gastrointestinal symptoms including feeling bloated (77%); abdominal pain of varying character, intensity and location (70%); and changes in bowel habits (55%), dyspnea (66%), voiding dysfunction with respect to frequency, urgency, nocturia and incomplete bladder emptying (59%), limb weakness, mostly experienced as muscle weakness and confined to lower extremities (57%), vascular abnormalities described as intermittent changes in skin color to blue, red, pale or blotchy in the lower parts of the legs and in fingers and toes - the color changes were often accompanied by painful swelling of the involved limbs (51%), irregular periods in females who did not take oral contraceptive pills reported as hypermenorrhea and worsening of menstrual discomfort and pain (48%), SICCA symptoms including new-onset dry mouth (40%), and dry eyes (28%), and hyperventilation in 18%<sup>[86]</sup>. An earlier study in 2006<sup>[76]</sup> reported injection-site reaction (pain, swelling, erythema, and pruritus) and fever as the most common Gardasil-related adverse effects.

The most commonly reported side effects of Gardasil 9 in 13000 females and males were swelling, redness, and pain at the injection site, and headaches<sup>[80]</sup>. HPV vaccines are considered safe even for immunocompromised individuals including HIV-infected women because they do not contain any live pathogens<sup>[34,83,87]</sup>.

### **Efficacy of HPV vaccines**

Phase III trials were conducted to evaluate efficacy of HPV vaccines for both bivalent and quadrivalent

HPV vaccines in young women<sup>[88]</sup>. All of the trials were relatively large, blinded, randomized, and controlled with at least 4 years of follow-up. The trials included 5500 to 18500 young women vaccinees with age range of 15-26 years (mean = 20 years). In the PATRICIA trial, the cohort-naïve analysis of the vaccinated young women showed 100% efficacy to protect against high grade CIN 3 related to HPV types 16 and 18<sup>[72,89]</sup>. Cervarix is reported a vaccine with a long term immunogenicity and efficacy in an 8.4-year follow-up after the first dose of vaccine<sup>[90]</sup>. Gardasil showed a high efficacy and protection against CIN 3 associated with HPV types 16 and 18 in the final intention-to-treat (ITT)-naïve analyses. Efficacy of quadrivalent HPV vaccine was greater than 95% against HPV 16 and 18 -related high grade vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia (VIN 2/3) or vaginal intraepithelial neoplasia (VAIN 2/3) and greater than 75% against genital warts in the ITT-naïve and ITT cohorts<sup>[91,92]</sup>.

### **Immunogenicity of HPV vaccines**

The immunogenicity of Cervarix and Gardasil are expected to vary due to their different adjuvants. ELISA (Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay) is used to measure immune response for the bivalent HPV vaccine and competitive Luminex immunoassay (cLIA) for the quadrivalent HPV vaccine. The PBNA (pseudovirion-based neutralization assay) detects the neutralizing ability of the induced antibodies with highest accuracy<sup>[88]</sup>. The humoral response to Gardasil has been defined by total IgG and cLIA as a different method measuring immunogenicity of the vaccine<sup>[90,93]</sup>. The cLIA is a sensitive assay and it measures specific IgG level corresponding to a specific neutralizing epitope on each of the four HPV types of Gardasil, while the total IgG assay is less sensitive and measures a non-specific and broad response to HPV vaccine. Applying the cLIA assay, 98.5%, 64.8%, 90.2%, and 95.5%, of vaccinated women remained seropositive to HPV 16, HPV 18, HPV 6, and HPV 11, respectively, at month 48 while the total IgG cLIA assay showed 100%, 96.7%, 100%, and 100% of vaccinated women remained seropositive to HPV 16, and HPV 18, HPV 6, and HPV 11, respectively, at the same time. These results probably explain the possible differences among results of HPV-vaccine studies due to using different serologic assays<sup>[88,93]</sup>. Both the humoral and cellular immunity are responsible for viral clearance and long-term protection by HPV vaccine<sup>[94]</sup>. Moreover, a study showed similar efficacy and immunogenicity of quadrivalent HPV-vaccine in HIV-infected young adults and adolescent and in HIV-negative controls<sup>[95]</sup>.

### **Cost-effectiveness of HPV vaccines**

Multiple studies were conducted in the Europe and the North America indicating cost-effectiveness of HPV vaccination. However, the comparison among these studies might be challenging due to different adopted models<sup>[96-104]</sup>.

### Long-term protection

An HPV-16 vaccine (monovalent) trial was conducted by Merck and a long-term follow-up showed that up to 86% of young women aged 16-23 years remained seropositive for anti-HPV 16 antibodies, for an average of 8.5 years and there were no breakthrough cervical disease cases<sup>[105]</sup>.

Bivalent HPV vaccine protection was noted in women after 9.4 years follow-up. The efficacy of Cervarix was estimated 95.1% over the 9.4-year follow-up. All vaccinated women remained seropositive for both HPV types 16 and 18 and the serum antibody titers were several-times higher than naturally acquired levels. The safety of the vaccine was clinically acceptable<sup>[90,106]</sup>.

A study in boys 10-18 years received 3 doses of bivalent HPV vaccine showed a protection against HPV 16/18 after 24 mo of follow-up. Importantly, post-vaccination antibody titers against both HPV 16 and 18 were up to three times higher in boys than in young women and antibody levels against HPV 16 and 18 were four- and two- fold higher at month 2. A previous study reported a higher levels of antibodies detected against HPV 16 and 18 in 10-18 or 10-14 year old boys compared with 15-25 years old women or 10-14 years old girls<sup>[107]</sup>.

Women vaccinated with quadrivalent vaccine (Gardasil) showed protection against all four types of HPV 6, 11, 16, and 18 after a nine-year follow-up<sup>[71]</sup>. Using a total IgG Luminex immunoassay, seropositivity rates were 100%, 91%, 98%, and 96% respectively for HPV types 16, 18, 6, and 11 were at nine years<sup>[88,91]</sup>.

The efficacy of quadrivalent HPV vaccine to prevent HPV-related infection and genital disease in males has been assessed in 16-26 years old healthy boys and young men and followed up for three years. The quadrivalent vaccine was effectively prevented HPV types 6 and 11 related genital warts in 89.4% of cases compared with placebo<sup>[108]</sup>. The efficacy of Gardasil to prevent HPV types 6, 11, 16, and or 18 related anal intraepithelial neoplasia (AIN) was assessed in healthy HIV-negative males who have sex with males over 36 mo. The overall efficacy of Gardasil in preventing HPV types 6, 11, 16, and or 18 related AIN (anal intraepithelial neoplasia) was 77.5% (95%CI: 39.6%-93.3%) in the vaccinated study population<sup>[109]</sup>.

## ISSUES REGARDING HPV VACCINES

HPV vaccines provide type-specific immunity against HPV infection and do not prevent cancer caused by other types of HPVs. The bivalent HPV vaccine has developed to protect against infection and anogenital diseases related to HPV types 16 and 18 and the quadrivalent HPV vaccine protects against infection and anogenital disease associated with HPV types 6, 11, 16 and 18, respectively. Therefore, Cervarix and Gardasil together can prevent approximately 70% of all cervical cancer cases. Studies support that the overall protection against cervical cancer with these two vaccines is

probably close to 80% due to cross-reaction and close relation of HPV 16 and HPV 31 and HPV 18 and HPV 45<sup>[66,69,110]</sup>.

The 15 most common types of HPVs causing cervical cancer worldwide, in order of high to low frequency, are 16, 18, 45, 31, 33, 52, 58, 35, 59, 56, 39, 51, 73, 68 and 66. HPV type distribution in cervical cancer varies depends upon geographic region. The most common types of HPV detected in cervical cancer in Europe and North America are HPV types 16 and 18. North Africa shows higher frequency of HPV 16 than average, South Asia of HPV 18, sub-Saharan Africa of type 45, and Central and South America of HPV 31. Although Cervarix and Gardasil together could presumably prevent 70% of cervical cancers worldwide, their preventive impact would be potentially higher in Europe, North America, and Asia with regard to the variable geographic distribution of HPV. It was postulated that a vaccine with protection against the seven most common HPV types would prevent approximately 87% of cervical cancers worldwide, with minimal geographic variation<sup>[111]</sup>.

Overcoming these two issue, Gardasil 9, a non-avalent vaccine was developed to protect against infection with seven most common types of high-risk HPVs including 16, 18, 31, 33, 45, 52, and 58 and two types of low-risk HPVs including 6 and 11 to enhance protection against cervical cancer worldwide<sup>[78]</sup>.

An alternative approach is the application of cross-protective antigen, for instance minor capsid protein L2 to induce cross-neutralizing antibodies<sup>[112-114]</sup>. Clinical trials are designed to assess the efficacy and safety of HPV L2 vaccines.

Currently, HPV vaccine is recommended for girls in most countries. Only the United States, Canada, Austria, and Australia offer HPV vaccine to both males and females. The debate regarding cost-effectiveness and universal vaccination remains open. Studies in boys who received HPV vaccines have shown higher titers of antibodies against HPV 16/18 in comparison to those in females. It can be argued that vaccinating boys might be more effective in defeating cervical cancer since the virus is sexually transmitted. The HPV infection may persist through MSM, even if all the girls are vaccinated. In addition, the incidence of HPV-related head and neck squamous cell carcinoma is on the rise, which might be another consideration for universal HPV immunization<sup>[115]</sup>. HPV-related carcinoma is a global burden that affects both genders, female in particular.

## OBSTACLES OF ACCEPTANCE OF HPV VACCINE

Ethnicity, race, and income are considered important factors for acceptance and use of HPV vaccine in the United States<sup>[116]</sup>. Both incidence and mortality rate of cervical cancer are much higher among blacks, 25% and 95% respectively, and Latinos, 53% and 41% respectively, compared with whites<sup>[117]</sup>. Studies



show that there are significant differences among Blacks, Hispanic, and Whites in their age of first sexual experience, number of their sexual intercourses, and number of their lifetime partners. Having the first sexual experience before age 13 is reported to be more common in African-Americans (14%) and in Hispanics (7.1%), compared with Whites (3.9%)<sup>[118]</sup>. It is reported that Black teens (60%) have more often sexual intercourse compared with Latino (48.6%) and White (44.3%) teens. In addition, having four or more lifetime partners is more common in Black teens (24.8%), compared with Hispanics (14.8%) and Whites (13.1%)<sup>[118]</sup>. Therefore, the recommended age for HPV vaccination is 11-12 years in the United States since 6.2% of adolescent initiate their sexual activity prior to age 13 nationwide<sup>[118]</sup>. Despite the above facts, only 53% of the American female adolescents initiate the HPV vaccine and among them only 35% complete the HPV vaccine series<sup>[119]</sup>. Black mothers have expressed an interest in preventing cervical cancer and protecting their children after education about HPV vaccine and cervical cancer. They were concerned about: (1) lack of robust information; (2) long-term side effects; (3) vaccine being experimental; (4) challenges to completion of all three doses of HPV vaccine; (5) lack of health insurance, especially among the poor in Southern United States, and (6) language barriers and inaccurate information among foreign-born subgroups<sup>[120]</sup>. Concerns and issues for Hispanics were: (1) language barriers; (2) safety concerns; (3) not knowing where to get the vaccine; and (4) lack of health insurance, especially among the poor and undocumented immigrants. Asians' issues and concern were: (1) language barrier; (2) limited knowledge about HPV vaccine; (3) concerns about sexual activity, and finally (4) lack of health insurance, especially among the poor. The issues addressed above are mainly due to lack of mandatory school-based HPV vaccination programs in the United States. In general, vaccination in the United States is largely dependent on individual decision. Therefore, the overall HPV vaccination rate may be greatly influenced by factors such as personal awareness of HPV, health insurance status, race, and access to healthcare.

Vaccine cost is labeled as major obstacle for HPV vaccine acceptance in the Caribbean and Latin America, followed by public knowledge about cervical cancer as a health issue, political will, competition of HPV vaccine with other lifesaving vaccines, access to vaccine, and finally acceptance of the HPV vaccine among the high risk populations<sup>[121]</sup>.

It is estimated that cervical cancer affects the lives of 37500 women in Europe every year<sup>[21]</sup>. Moreover, genital warts are considered one of the most common sexually transmitted diseases in Europe; and its incidence is reported even more than 10% in women from the Nordic countries including Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway, and Sweden<sup>[122]</sup>. The HPV vaccine cost and a lack of knowledge about advantages of

vaccination were major barriers for vaccine acceptance. The main reason for vaccine acceptance was prevention of cervical cancer, followed by parental endorsement, providing financial support, personal experience of knowing someone with cancer and HPV vaccine recommendation by health-care professionals<sup>[123]</sup>.

In Africa, knowledge gaps regarding HPV and cervical cancer, lack of access to HPV vaccine, and its cost were among major obstacles for receiving HPV vaccine<sup>[124,125]</sup>. Over 50% of cervical cancer patients worldwide are from the Asia Oceania region<sup>[21]</sup>. The obstacles for receiving vaccines in these countries are its cost, followed by access to vaccines, and acceptance of HPV vaccination by the public<sup>[126]</sup>.

## STRATEGIES FOR THE FUTURE

Vaccine cost is considered as a major barrier worldwide. Finding ways to lower the cost of vaccine production can overcome this main obstacle. Public awareness of HPV and its association with cervical cancer and other related cancers and genital warts is the second most important step to enhance HPV vaccine acceptance. Willingness by local governments to support HPV vaccination and to facilitate public access to vaccine will increase the vaccine acceptance globally.

## CONCLUSION

HPV-related cancers, cervical cancer in particular, is a global health concern with a high burden on developing countries. Migration, changes in sexual behavior, discovery of HPV in a subset of head and neck cancers and of high percentage of anal cancers, increase in travel rate and having more global life are other reasons to act globally for HPV vaccination in both boys and girls. Meanwhile, more studies should be conducted toward producing low-cost vaccines with long time efficacy and minimal or no adverse effects. Public education will enhance vaccine acceptance.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **Walboomers JM**, Jacobs MV, Manos MM, Bosch FX, Kummer JA, Shah KV, Snijders PJ, Peto J, Meijer CJ, Muñoz N. Human papillomavirus is a necessary cause of invasive cervical cancer worldwide. *J Pathol* 1999; **189**: 12-19 [PMID: 10451482]
- 2 **Forman D**, de Martel C, Lacey CJ, Soerjomataram I, Lortet-Tieulent J, Bruni L, Vignat J, Ferlay J, Bray F, Plummer M, Franceschi S. Global burden of human papillomavirus and related diseases. *Vaccine* 2012; **30** Suppl 5: F12-F23 [PMID: 23199955 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2012.07.055]
- 3 **Muñoz N**, Bosch FX, de Sanjosé S, Herrero R, Castellsagué X, Shah KV, Snijders PJ, Meijer CJ. Epidemiologic classification of human papillomavirus types associated with cervical cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **348**: 518-527 [PMID: 12571259]
- 4 **Petrosky E**, Bocchini JA, Hariri S, Chesson H, Curtis CR, Saraiya M, Unger ER, Markowitz LE. Use of 9-valent human papillomavirus (HPV) vaccine: updated HPV vaccination recommendations of the advisory committee on immunization practices. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2015; **64**: 300-304 [PMID: 25811679]



- 5 **CDC.** Human papillomavirus (HPV)-associated cancers. CDC, 2015. Available from: URL: <http://www.cdc.gov/cancer/hpv/statistics/cases.htm>
- 6 **zur Hausen H.** Papillomaviruses and cancer: from basic studies to clinical application. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2002; **2**: 342-350 [PMID: 12044010]
- 7 **Monie A, Hung CF, Roden R, Wu TC.** Cervarix: a vaccine for the prevention of HPV 16, 18-associated cervical cancer. *Biologics* 2008; **2**: 97-105 [PMID: 19707432]
- 8 **Münger K, Phelps WC, Bubbs V, Howley PM, Schlegel R.** The E6 and E7 genes of the human papillomavirus type 16 together are necessary and sufficient for transformation of primary human keratinocytes. *J Virol* 1989; **63**: 4417-4421 [PMID: 2476573]
- 9 **Hawley-Nelson P, Vousden KH, Hubbert NL, Lowy DR, Schiller JT.** HPV16 E6 and E7 proteins cooperate to immortalize human foreskin keratinocytes. *EMBO J* 1989; **8**: 3905-3910 [PMID: 2555178]
- 10 **Doorbar J, Quint W, Banks L, Bravo IG, Stoler M, Broker TR, Stanley MA.** The biology and life-cycle of human papillomaviruses. *Vaccine* 2012; **30** Suppl 5: F55-F70 [PMID: 23199966 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2012.06.083]
- 11 **zur Hausen H.** Papillomaviruses causing cancer: evasion from host-cell control in early events in carcinogenesis. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2000; **92**: 690-698 [PMID: 10793105]
- 12 **Winer RL, Lee SK, Hughes JP, Adam DE, Kiviat NB, Koutsky LA.** Genital human papillomavirus infection: incidence and risk factors in a cohort of female university students. *Am J Epidemiol* 2003; **157**: 218-226 [PMID: 12543621]
- 13 **D'Souza G, Agrawal Y, Halpern J, Bodison S, Gillison ML.** Oral sexual behaviors associated with prevalent oral human papillomavirus infection. *J Infect Dis* 2009; **199**: 1263-1269 [PMID: 19320589 DOI: 10.1086/597755]
- 14 **Summersgill KF, Smith EM, Levy BT, Allen JM, Haugen TH, Turek LP.** Human papillomavirus in the oral cavities of children and adolescents. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol Oral Radiol Endod* 2001; **91**: 62-69 [PMID: 11174573 DOI: 10.1067/moe.2001.108797]
- 15 **Kreimer AR, Alberg AJ, Daniel R, Gravitt PE, Viscidi R, Garrett ES, Shah KV, Gillison ML.** Oral human papillomavirus infection in adults is associated with sexual behavior and HIV serostatus. *J Infect Dis* 2004; **189**: 686-698 [PMID: 14767823 DOI: 10.1086/381504]
- 16 **Giraldi G, Martinoli L, De Luca d'Alessandro E.** The human papillomavirus vaccination: a review of the cost-effectiveness studies. *Clin Ter* 2014; **165**: e426-e432 [PMID: 25524200 DOI: 10.7417/CT.2014.1787]
- 17 **Smith JS, Lindsay L, Hoots B, Keys J, Franceschi S, Winer R, Clifford GM.** Human papillomavirus type distribution in invasive cervical cancer and high-grade cervical lesions: a meta-analysis update. *Int J Cancer* 2007; **121**: 621-632 [PMID: 17405118 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.22527]
- 18 **Del Prete G, Giraldi G, Miccoli S, Salamone V, Speranza M, Vita M, Osborn JF, Boccia A, La Torre G.** Adolescents' affectivity and sexuality: a randomized trial of the efficacy of a school health promotion intervention in a primary school. *Ig Sanita Pubbl* 2012; **68**: 821-840 [PMID: 23369996]
- 19 **De Luca D'Alessandro E, Giraldi G.** A world wide public health problem: the principal re-emerging infectious diseases. *Clin Ter* 2011; **162**: e93-e98 [PMID: 21717041]
- 20 **de Sanjose S, Quint WG, Alemany L, Geraets DT, Klaustermeier JE, Lloveras B, Tous S, Felix A, Bravo LE, Shin HR, Vallejos CS, de Ruiz PA, Lima MA, Guimera N, Clavero O, Alejo M, Lombart-Bosch A, Cheng-Yang C, Tatti SA, Kasamatsu E, Iljazovic E, Odida M, Prado R, Seoud M, Grce M, Usubutun A, Jain A, Suarez GA, Lombardi LE, Banjo A, Menéndez C, Domingo EJ, Velasco J, Nessa A, Chichareon SC, Qiao YL, Lerma E, Garland SM, Sasagawa T, Ferrera A, Hammouda D, Mariani L, Pelayo A, Steiner I, Oliva E, Meijer CJ, Al-Jassar WF, Cruz E, Wright TC, Puras A, Llave CL, Tzardi M, Agorastos T, Garcia-Barriola V, Clavel C, Ordi J, Andújar M, Castellsagué X, Sánchez GI, Nowakowski AM, Bornstein J, Muñoz N, Bosch FX.** Human papillomavirus genotype attribution in invasive cervical cancer: a retrospective cross-sectional worldwide study. *Lancet Oncol* 2010; **11**: 1048-1056 [PMID: 20952254 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(10)70230-8]
- 21 **Ferlay J, Shin HR, Bray F, Forman D, Mathers C, Parkin DM.** Estimates of worldwide burden of cancer in 2008: GLOBOCAN 2008. *Int J Cancer* 2010; **127**: 2893-2917 [PMID: 21351269 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.25516]
- 22 **Kuhn L, Wang C, Tsai WY, Wright TC, Denny L.** Efficacy of human papillomavirus-based screen-and-treat for cervical cancer prevention among HIV-infected women. *AIDS* 2010; **24**: 2553-2561 [PMID: 20706107 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0b013e32833e163e]
- 23 **Connolly K, Manders P, Earls P, Epstein RJ.** Papillomavirus-associated squamous skin cancers following transplant immunosuppression: one Notch closer to control. *Cancer Treat Rev* 2014; **40**: 205-214 [PMID: 24051018 DOI: 10.1016/j.ctrv.2013.08.005]
- 24 **Brickman C, Palefsky JM.** Human papillomavirus in the HIV-infected host: epidemiology and pathogenesis in the antiretroviral era. *Curr HIV/AIDS Rep* 2015; **12**: 6-15 [PMID: 25644977 DOI: 10.1007/s11904-014-0254-4]
- 25 **Ho GY, Burk RD, Fleming I, Klein RS.** Risk of genital human papillomavirus infection in women with human immunodeficiency virus-induced immunosuppression. *Int J Cancer* 1994; **56**: 788-792 [PMID: 8119767]
- 26 **Lacey CJ.** Therapy for genital human papillomavirus-related disease. *J Clin Virol* 2005; **32** Suppl 1: S82-S90 [PMID: 15753016 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2004.10.020]
- 27 **Heard I.** Prevention of cervical cancer in women with HIV. *Curr Opin HIV AIDS* 2009; **4**: 68-73 [PMID: 19339941 DOI: 10.1097/COH.0b013e328319bcbe]
- 28 **Reusser NM, Downing C, Guidry J, Tying SK.** HPV Carcinomas in Immunocompromised Patients. *J Clin Med* 2015; **4**: 260-281 [PMID: 26239127 DOI: 10.3390/jcm4020260]
- 29 **Chaturvedi AK, Madeleine MM, Biggar RJ, Engels EA.** Risk of human papillomavirus-associated cancers among persons with AIDS. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2009; **101**: 1120-1130 [PMID: 19648510 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djp205]
- 30 **Frisch M, Biggar RJ, Goedert JJ.** Human papillomavirus-associated cancers in patients with human immunodeficiency virus infection and acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2000; **92**: 1500-1510 [PMID: 10995805]
- 31 **Clifford GM, Polesel J, Rickenbach M, Dal Maso L, Keiser O, Kofler A, Rapiti E, Levi F, Jundt G, Fisch T, Bordoni A, De Weck D, Franceschi S.** Cancer risk in the Swiss HIV Cohort Study: associations with immunodeficiency, smoking, and highly active antiretroviral therapy. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2005; **97**: 425-432 [PMID: 15770006 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/dji072]
- 32 **Hleyhel M, Belot A, Bouvier AM, Tattevin P, Pacanowski J, Genet P, De Castro N, Berger JL, Dupont C, Lavalé A, Pradier C, Salmon D, Simon A, Martinez V, Costagliola D, Grabar S.** Risk of AIDS-defining cancers among HIV-1-infected patients in France between 1992 and 2009: results from the FHDH-ANRS CO4 cohort. *Clin Infect Dis* 2013; **57**: 1638-1647 [PMID: 23899679 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cit497]
- 33 **De Vuyst H, Ndirangu G, Moodley M, Tenet V, Estambale B, Meijer CJ, Snijders PJ, Clifford G, Franceschi S.** Prevalence of human papillomavirus in women with invasive cervical carcinoma by HIV status in Kenya and South Africa. *Int J Cancer* 2012; **131**: 949-955 [PMID: 21960453 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.26470]
- 34 **Denny LA, Franceschi S, de Sanjosé S, Heard I, Moscicki AB, Palefsky J.** Human papillomavirus, human immunodeficiency virus and immunosuppression. *Vaccine* 2012; **30** Suppl 5: F168-F174 [PMID: 23199960 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2012.06.045]
- 35 **Asiati A, Ahmad ST, Mohammad SO, Zargar MA.** Review of the current knowledge on the epidemiology, pathogenesis, and prevention of human papillomavirus infection. *Eur J Cancer Prev* 2014; **23**: 206-224 [PMID: 24129107 DOI: 10.1097/CEJ.0b013e328364f273]
- 36 **zur Hausen H.** Papillomaviruses in the causation of human cancers - a brief historical account. *Virology* 2009; **384**: 260-265 [PMID: 19320589 DOI: 10.1086/597755]

- 19135222 DOI: 10.1016/j.virol.2008.11.046]
- 37 **Grce M**, Mravak-Stipetić M. Human papillomavirus-associated diseases. *Clin Dermatol* 2014; **32**: 253-258 [PMID: 24559561 DOI: 10.1016/j.clindermatol.2013.10.006]
  - 38 **De Vuyst H**, Clifford GM, Nascimento MC, Madeleine MM, Franceschi S. Prevalence and type distribution of human papillomavirus in carcinoma and intraepithelial neoplasia of the vulva, vagina and anus: a meta-analysis. *Int J Cancer* 2009; **124**: 1626-1636 [PMID: 19115209 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.24116]
  - 39 **Abramowitz L**, Jacquard AC, Jaroud F, Haesebaert J, Siproudhis L, Pradat P, Aynaud O, Leocmach Y, Soubeyrand B, Dachez R, Riethmuller D, Mougín C, Pretet JL, Denis F. Human papillomavirus genotype distribution in anal cancer in France: the EDiTH V study. *Int J Cancer* 2011; **129**: 433-439 [PMID: 20839262 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.25671]
  - 40 **Schiffman M**, Kjaer SK. Chapter 2: Natural history of anogenital human papillomavirus infection and neoplasia. *J Natl Cancer Inst Monogr* 2003; **(31)**: 14-19 [PMID: 12807940]
  - 41 **Miralles-Guri C**, Bruni L, Cubilla AL, Castellsagué X, Bosch FX, de Sanjosé S. Human papillomavirus prevalence and type distribution in penile carcinoma. *J Clin Pathol* 2009; **62**: 870-878 [PMID: 19706632 DOI: 10.1136/jcp.2008.063149]
  - 42 **St Guily JL**, Jacquard AC, Prétet JL, Haesebaert J, Beby-Defaux A, Clavel C, Agius G, Birembaut P, Okaïs C, Léocmach Y, Soubeyrand B, Pradat P, Riethmuller D, Mougín C, Denis F. Human papillomavirus genotype distribution in oropharynx and oral cavity cancer in France--The EDiTH VI study. *J Clin Virol* 2011; **51**: 100-104 [PMID: 21527208 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2011.03.003]
  - 43 **Clifford GM**, Smith JS, Aguado T, Franceschi S. Comparison of HPV type distribution in high-grade cervical lesions and cervical cancer: a meta-analysis. *Br J Cancer* 2003; **89**: 101-105 [PMID: 12838308 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6601024]
  - 44 **Syrjänen S**, Lodi G, von Bültzingslöwen I, Aliko A, Arduino P, Campisi G, Challacombe S, Ficarra G, Flaitz C, Zhou HM, Maeda H, Miller C, Jontell M. Human papillomaviruses in oral carcinoma and oral potentially malignant disorders: a systematic review. *Oral Dis* 2011; **17** Suppl 1: 58-72 [PMID: 21382139 DOI: 10.1111/j.1601-0825.2011.01792.x]
  - 45 **Nielsen H**, Norrild B, Vedtofte P, Praetorius F, Reibel J, Holmstrup P. Human papillomavirus in oral premalignant lesions. *Eur J Cancer B Oral Oncol* 1996; **32B**: 264-270 [PMID: 8776424]
  - 46 **IARC Working Group on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans**. Human papillomaviruses. *IARC Monogr Eval Carcinog Risks Hum* 1995; **64**: 1-378 [PMID: 16755705]
  - 47 **Orth G**. Genetics and susceptibility to human papillomaviruses: epidermodysplasia verruciformis, a disease model. *Bull Acad Natl Med* 2010; **194**: 923-940; discussion 941 [PMID: 21513129]
  - 48 **Bonagura VR**, Hatam LJ, Rosenthal DW, de Voti JA, Lam F, Steinberg BM, Abramson AL. Recurrent respiratory papillomatosis: a complex defect in immune responsiveness to human papillomavirus-6 and -11. *APMIS* 2010; **118**: 455-470 [PMID: 20553528 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0463.2010.02617.x]
  - 49 **zur Hausen H**. Genital papillomavirus infections. *Prog Med Virol* 1985; **32**: 15-21 [PMID: 2991988]
  - 50 **Franceschi S**, Muñoz N, Bosch XF, Snijders PJ, Walboomers JM. Human papillomavirus and cancers of the upper aerodigestive tract: a review of epidemiological and experimental evidence. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 1996; **5**: 567-575 [PMID: 8827362]
  - 51 **Naucner P**, Mabota da Costa F, da Costa JL, Ljungberg O, Bugalho A, Dillner J. Human papillomavirus type-specific risk of cervical cancer in a population with high human immunodeficiency virus prevalence: case-control study. *J Gen Virol* 2011; **92**: 2784-2791 [PMID: 21900420 DOI: 10.1099/vir.0.034298-0]
  - 52 **Grce M**, Husnjak K, Božikov J, Magdić L, Zlacki M, Lukac J, Fističić I, Sikanić-Dugic N, Pavelić K. Evaluation of genital human papillomavirus infections by polymerase chain reaction among Croatian women. *Anticancer Res* 2001; **21**: 579-584 [PMID: 11299808]
  - 53 **Gissmann L**, Wolnik L, Ikenberg H, Koldovsky U, Schnürch HG, zur Hausen H. Human papillomavirus types 6 and 11 DNA sequences in genital and laryngeal papillomas and in some cervical cancers. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1983; **80**: 560-563 [PMID: 6300854]
  - 54 **Grce M**, Husnjak K, Skerlev M, Lipozencić J, Pavelić K. Detection and typing of human papillomaviruses by means of polymerase chain reaction and fragment length polymorphism in male genital lesions. *Anticancer Res* 2000; **20**: 2097-2102 [PMID: 10928159]
  - 55 **Eversole LR**, Laipis PJ. Oral squamous papillomas: detection of HPV DNA by in situ hybridization. *Oral Surg Oral Med Oral Pathol* 1988; **65**: 545-550 [PMID: 2836773]
  - 56 **Rose RC**, Reichman RC, Bonnez W. Human papillomavirus (HPV) type 11 recombinant virus-like particles induce the formation of neutralizing antibodies and detect HPV-specific antibodies in human sera. *J Gen Virol* 1994; **75** (Pt 8): 2075-2079 [PMID: 8046412]
  - 57 **Kirnbauer R**, Booy F, Cheng N, Lowy DR, Schiller JT. Papillomavirus L1 major capsid protein self-assembles into virus-like particles that are highly immunogenic. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1992; **89**: 12180-12184 [PMID: 1334560]
  - 58 **Sasagawa T**, Pushko P, Steers G, Gschmeissner SE, Hajibagheri MA, Finch J, Crawford L, Tommasino M. Synthesis and assembly of virus-like particles of human papillomaviruses type 6 and type 16 in fission yeast *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*. *Virology* 1995; **206**: 126-135 [PMID: 7831768]
  - 59 **Nardelli-Haeffliger D**, Roden RB, Benyacoub J, Sahli R, Kraehenbuhl JP, Schiller JT, Lachat P, Potts A, De Grandi P. Human papillomavirus type 16 virus-like particles expressed in attenuated *Salmonella typhimurium* elicit mucosal and systemic neutralizing antibodies in mice. *Infect Immun* 1997; **65**: 3328-3336 [PMID: 9234794]
  - 60 **Hagensee ME**, Yaegashi N, Galloway DA. Self-assembly of human papillomavirus type 1 capsids by expression of the L1 protein alone or by coexpression of the L1 and L2 capsid proteins. *J Virol* 1993; **67**: 315-322 [PMID: 8380079]
  - 61 **Heino P**, Dillner J, Schwartz S. Human papillomavirus type 16 capsid proteins produced from recombinant Semliki Forest virus assemble into virus-like particles. *Virology* 1995; **214**: 349-359 [PMID: 8553535 DOI: 10.1006/viro.1995.0044]
  - 62 **Christensen ND**, Reed CA, Cladel NM, Han R, Kreider JW. Immunization with viruslike particles induces long-term protection of rabbits against challenge with cottontail rabbit papillomavirus. *J Virol* 1996; **70**: 960-965 [PMID: 8551636]
  - 63 **Breithurdt F**, Kirnbauer R, Hubbert NL, Nonnenmacher B, Trindinh-Desmarquet C, Orth G, Schiller JT, Lowy DR. Immunization with viruslike particles from cottontail rabbit papillomavirus (CRPV) can protect against experimental CRPV infection. *J Virol* 1995; **69**: 3959-3963 [PMID: 7745754]
  - 64 **Suzich JA**, Ghim SJ, Palmer-Hill FJ, White WI, Tamura JK, Bell JA, Newsome JA, Jenson AB, Schlegel R. Systemic immunization with papillomavirus L1 protein completely prevents the development of viral mucosal papillomas. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1995; **92**: 11553-11557 [PMID: 8524802]
  - 65 **Koutsky LA**, Ault KA, Wheeler CM, Brown DR, Barr E, Alvarez FB, Chiacchierini LM, Jansen KU. A controlled trial of a human papillomavirus type 16 vaccine. *N Engl J Med* 2002; **347**: 1645-1651 [PMID: 12444178 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa020586]
  - 66 **Roden RB**, Monie A, Wu TC. Opportunities to improve the prevention and treatment of cervical cancer. *Curr Mol Med* 2007; **7**: 490-503 [PMID: 17691964]
  - 67 **Mao C**, Koutsky LA, Ault KA, Wheeler CM, Brown DR, Wiley DJ, Alvarez FB, Bautista OM, Jansen KU, Barr E. Efficacy of human papillomavirus-16 vaccine to prevent cervical intraepithelial neoplasia: a randomized controlled trial. *Obstet Gynecol* 2006; **107**: 18-27 [PMID: 16394035 DOI: 10.1097/01.AOG.0000192397.41191.fb]
  - 68 **Harper DM**, Franco EL, Wheeler C, Ferris DG, Jenkins D, Schiind A, Zahaf T, Innis B, Naud P, De Carvalho NS, Roteli-Martins CM, Teixeira J, Blatter MM, Korn AP, Quint W, Dubin G. Efficacy of a bivalent L1 virus-like particle vaccine in prevention of infection with human papillomavirus types 16 and 18 in young women: a randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2004; **364**: 1757-1765 [PMID: 15545554]

- 15541448 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(04)17398-4]
- 69 **Harper DM**, Franco EL, Wheeler CM, Moscicki AB, Romanowski B, Roteli-Martins CM, Jenkins D, Schuind A, Costa Clemens SA, Dubin G. Sustained efficacy up to 4.5 years of a bivalent L1 virus-like particle vaccine against human papillomavirus types 16 and 18: follow-up from a randomised control trial. *Lancet* 2006; **367**: 1247-1255 [PMID: 16631880 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(06)68439-0]
  - 70 **Villa LL**, Ault KA, Giuliano AR, Costa RL, Petta CA, Andrade RP, Brown DR, Ferenczy A, Harper DM, Koutsky LA, Kurman RJ, Lehtinen M, Malm C, Olsson SE, Ronnett BM, Skjeldestad FE, Steinwall M, Stoler MH, Wheeler CM, Taddeo FJ, Yu J, Lupinacci L, Railkar R, Marchese R, Esser MT, Bryan J, Jansen KU, Sings HL, Tamms GM, Saah AJ, Barr E. Immunologic responses following administration of a vaccine targeting human papillomavirus Types 6, 11, 16, and 18. *Vaccine* 2006; **24**: 5571-5583 [PMID: 16753240 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2006.04.068]
  - 71 **Villa LL**, Costa RL, Petta CA, Andrade RP, Paavonen J, Iversen OE, Olsson SE, Høye J, Steinwall M, Riis-Johannessen G, Andersson-Ellstrom A, Elfren K, Krogh Gv, Lehtinen M, Malm C, Tamms GM, Giacoletti K, Lupinacci L, Railkar R, Taddeo FJ, Bryan J, Esser MT, Sings HL, Saah AJ, Barr E. High sustained efficacy of a prophylactic quadrivalent human papillomavirus types 6/11/16/18 L1 virus-like particle vaccine through 5 years of follow-up. *Br J Cancer* 2006; **95**: 1459-1466 [PMID: 17117182 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6603469]
  - 72 **Paavonen J**, Jenkins D, Bosch FX, Naud P, Salmerón J, Wheeler CM, Chow SN, Apter DL, Kitchener HC, Castellsague X, de Carvalho NS, Skinner SR, Harper DM, Hedrick JA, Jaisamram U, Limson GA, Dionne M, Quint W, Spiessens B, Peeters P, Struyf F, Wieting SL, Lehtinen MO, Dubin G. Efficacy of a prophylactic adjuvanted bivalent L1 virus-like-particle vaccine against infection with human papillomavirus types 16 and 18 in young women: an interim analysis of a phase III double-blind, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet* 2007; **369**: 2161-2170 [PMID: 17602732 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(07)60946-5]
  - 73 **Joura EA**, Leodolter S, Hernandez-Avila M, Wheeler CM, Perez G, Koutsky LA, Garland SM, Harper DM, Tang GW, Ferris DG, Steben M, Jones RW, Bryan J, Taddeo FJ, Bautista OM, Esser MT, Sings HL, Nelson M, Boslego JW, Sattler C, Barr E, Paavonen J. Efficacy of a quadrivalent prophylactic human papillomavirus (types 6, 11, 16, and 18) L1 virus-like-particle vaccine against high-grade vulval and vaginal lesions: a combined analysis of three randomised clinical trials. *Lancet* 2007; **369**: 1693-1702 [PMID: 17512854 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(07)60777-6]
  - 74 **de Villiers EM**. Heterogeneity of the human papillomavirus group. *J Virol* 1989; **63**: 4898-4903 [PMID: 2552162]
  - 75 **Food and Drug Administration**. Available from: URL: <http://www.fda.gov/downloads/BiologicsBloodVaccines/Vaccines/ApprovedProducts>
  - 76 **Siddiqui MA**, Perry CM. Human papillomavirus quadrivalent (types 6, 11, 16, 18) recombinant vaccine (Gardasil): profile report. *BioDrugs* 2006; **20**: 313-316 [PMID: 17025377]
  - 77 **Bosch FX**, de Sanjosé S. Chapter 1: Human papillomavirus and cervical cancer—burden and assessment of causality. *J Natl Cancer Inst Monogr* 2003; **(31)**: 3-13 [PMID: 12807939]
  - 78 **Clifford GM**, Rana RK, Franceschi S, Smith JS, Gough G, Pimenta JM. Human papillomavirus genotype distribution in low-grade cervical lesions: comparison by geographic region and with cervical cancer. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2005; **14**: 1157-1164 [PMID: 15894666 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-04-0812]
  - 79 **Jansen KU**, Shaw AR. Human papillomavirus vaccines and prevention of cervical cancer. *Annu Rev Med* 2004; **55**: 319-331 [PMID: 14746524]
  - 80 **Printz C**. FDA approves Gardasil 9 for more types of HPV. *Cancer* 2015; **121**: 1156-1157 [PMID: 25855331 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.29374]
  - 81 **Kirby T**. FDA approves new upgraded Gardasil 9. *Lancet Oncol* 2015; **16**: e56 [PMID: 25532625 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(14)71191-X]
  - 82 **Levin MJ**, Moscicki AB, Song LY, Fenton T, Meyer WA, Read JS, Handelsman EL, Nowak B, Sattler CA, Saah A, Radley DR, Esser MT, Weinberg A. Safety and immunogenicity of a quadrivalent human papillomavirus (types 6, 11, 16, and 18) vaccine in HIV-infected children 7 to 12 years old. *J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr* 2010; **55**: 197-204 [PMID: 20574412 DOI: 10.1097/QAI.0b013e3181de8d26]
  - 83 **Wilkin T**, Lee JY, Lensing SY, Stier EA, Goldstone SE, Berry JM, Jay N, Aboulafia D, Cohn DL, Einstein MH, Saah A, Mitsuyasu RT, Palefsky JM. Safety and immunogenicity of the quadrivalent human papillomavirus vaccine in HIV-1-infected men. *J Infect Dis* 2010; **202**: 1246-1253 [PMID: 20812850 DOI: 10.1086/656320]
  - 84 **Rainone V**, Giacomet V, Penagini F, Fabiano V, Calascibetta F, Mameli C, Pisanelli S, Zuccotti GV, Clerici M, Trabattoni D. Human papilloma virus vaccination induces strong human papilloma virus specific cell-mediated immune responses in HIV-infected adolescents and young adults. *AIDS* 2015; **29**: 739-743 [PMID: 25849837 DOI: 10.1097/QAD.0000000000000597]
  - 85 **Brinthe LS**, Pors K, Theibel AC, Mehlsen J. Orthostatic intolerance and postural tachycardia syndrome as suspected adverse effects of vaccination against human papilloma virus. *Vaccine* 2015; **33**: 2602-2605 [PMID: 25882168 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2015.03.098]
  - 86 **Brinthe L**, Theibel AC, Pors K, Mehlsen J. Suspected side effects to the quadrivalent human papilloma vaccine. *Dan Med J* 2015; **62**: A5064 [PMID: 25872549]
  - 87 **Giacomet V**, Penagini F, Trabattoni D, Viganò A, Rainone V, Bernazzani G, Bonardi CM, Clerici M, Bedogni G, Zuccotti GV. Safety and immunogenicity of a quadrivalent human papillomavirus vaccine in HIV-infected and HIV-negative adolescents and young adults. *Vaccine* 2014; **32**: 5657-5661 [PMID: 25149430 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2014.08.011]
  - 88 **De Vincenzo R**, Conte C, Ricci C, Scambia G, Capelli G. Long-term efficacy and safety of human papillomavirus vaccination. *Int J Womens Health* 2014; **6**: 999-1010 [PMID: 25587221 DOI: 10.2147/IJWH.S50365]
  - 89 **Herrero R**, Hildesheim A, Rodríguez AC, Wacholder S, Bratti C, Solomon D, González P, Porras C, Jiménez S, Guillen D, Morales J, Alfaro M, Cyr J, Morrissey K, Estrada Y, Cortés B, Morera LA, Freer E, Schussler J, Schiller J, Lowy D, Schiffman M. Rationale and design of a community-based double-blind randomized clinical trial of an HPV 16 and 18 vaccine in Guanacaste, Costa Rica. *Vaccine* 2008; **26**: 4795-4808 [PMID: 18640170 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2008.07.002]
  - 90 **Roteli-Martins CM**, Naud P, De Borja P, Teixeira JC, De Carvalho NS, Zahaf T, Sanchez N, Geeraerts B, Descamps D. Sustained immunogenicity and efficacy of the HPV-16/18 AS04-adjuvanted vaccine: up to 8.4 years of follow-up. *Hum Vaccin Immunother* 2012; **8**: 390-397 [PMID: 22327492 DOI: 10.4161/hv.18865]
  - 91 **FUTURE II Study Group**. Quadrivalent vaccine against human papillomavirus to prevent high-grade cervical lesions. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **356**: 1915-1927 [PMID: 17494925]
  - 92 **Garland SM**, Hernandez-Avila M, Wheeler CM, Perez G, Harper DM, Leodolter S, Tang GW, Ferris DG, Steben M, Bryan J, Taddeo FJ, Railkar R, Esser MT, Sings HL, Nelson M, Boslego J, Sattler C, Barr E, Koutsky LA. Quadrivalent vaccine against human papillomavirus to prevent anogenital diseases. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **356**: 1928-1943 [PMID: 17494926 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa061760]
  - 93 **Brown DR**, Garland SM, Ferris DG, Joura E, Steben M, James M, Radley D, Vuocolo S, Garner EI, Haupt RM, Bryan JT. The humoral response to Gardasil over four years as defined by total IgG and competitive Luminex immunoassay. *Hum Vaccin* 2011; **7**: 230-238 [PMID: 21307649]
  - 94 **Stanley M**. Potential mechanisms for HPV vaccine-induced long-term protection. *Gynecol Oncol* 2010; **118**: S2-S7 [PMID: 20494220 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2010.04.002]
  - 95 **Kojic EM**, Kang M, Cespedes MS, Umbleja T, Godfrey C, Allen RT, Firnhaber C, Grinsztejn B, Palefsky JM, Webster-Cyriaque JY, Saah A, Aberg JA, Cu-Uvin S. Immunogenicity and safety of the quadrivalent human papillomavirus vaccine in HIV-1-infected women. *Clin Infect Dis* 2014; **59**: 127-135 [PMID: 24723284 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cit608]



- 10.1093/cid/ciu238]
- 96 **Chesson HW**, Ekwueme DU, Saraiya M, Markowitz LE. Cost-effectiveness of human papillomavirus vaccination in the United States. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2008; **14**: 244-251 [PMID: 18258117 DOI: 10.3201/eid1402.070499]
  - 97 **Brisson M**, Van de Velde N, De Wals P, Boily MC. The potential cost-effectiveness of prophylactic human papillomavirus vaccines in Canada. *Vaccine* 2007; **25**: 5399-5408 [PMID: 17561316 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2007.04.086]
  - 98 **Kawai K**, de Araujo GT, Fonseca M, Pillsbury M, Singhal PK. Estimated health and economic impact of quadrivalent HPV (types 6/11/16/18) vaccination in Brazil using a transmission dynamic model. *BMC Infect Dis* 2012; **12**: 250 [PMID: 23046886 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-12-250]
  - 99 **Reynales-Shigematsu LM**, Rodrigues ER, Lazcano-Ponce E. Cost-effectiveness analysis of a quadrivalent human papilloma virus vaccine in Mexico. *Arch Med Res* 2009; **40**: 503-513 [PMID: 19853192 DOI: 10.1016/j.arcmed.2009.08.004]
  - 100 **Demarteau N**, Tang CH, Chen HC, Chen CJ, Van Kriekinge G. Cost-effectiveness analysis of the bivalent compared with the quadrivalent human papillomavirus vaccines in Taiwan. *Value Health* 2012; **15**: 622-631 [PMID: 22867770 DOI: 10.1016/j.jval.2012.02.012]
  - 101 **Sinanovic E**, Moodley J, Barone MA, Mall S, Cleary S, Harries J. The potential cost-effectiveness of adding a human papillomavirus vaccine to the cervical cancer screening programme in South Africa. *Vaccine* 2009; **27**: 6196-6202 [PMID: 19698807 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2009.08.004]
  - 102 **Kohli M**, Ferko N, Martin A, Franco EL, Jenkins D, Gallivan S, Sherlaw-Johnson C, Drummond M. Estimating the long-term impact of a prophylactic human papillomavirus 16/18 vaccine on the burden of cervical cancer in the UK. *Br J Cancer* 2007; **96**: 143-150 [PMID: 17146475 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6603501]
  - 103 **Mennini FS**, Giorgi Rossi P, Palazzo F, Largeron N. Health and economic impact associated with a quadrivalent HPV vaccine in Italy. *Gynecol Oncol* 2009; **112**: 370-376 [PMID: 19041125 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2008.09.031]
  - 104 **Jit M**, Brisson M, Portnoy A, Hutubessy R. Cost-effectiveness of female human papillomavirus vaccination in 179 countries: a PRIME modelling study. *Lancet Glob Health* 2014; **2**: e406-e414 [PMID: 25103394 DOI: 10.1016/S2214-109X(14)70237-2]
  - 105 **Rowhani-Rahbar A**, Alvarez FB, Bryan JT, Hughes JP, Hawes SE, Weiss NS, Koutsky LA. Evidence of immune memory 8.5 years following administration of a prophylactic human papillomavirus type 16 vaccine. *J Clin Virol* 2012; **53**: 239-243 [PMID: 22209292 DOI: 10.1016/j.jcv.2011.12.009]
  - 106 **Naud PS**, Roteli-Martins CM, De Carvalho NS, Teixeira JC, de Borba PC, Sanchez N, Zahaf T, Catteau G, Geeraerts B, Descamps D. Sustained efficacy, immunogenicity, and safety of the HPV-16/18 AS04-adjuvanted vaccine: final analysis of a long-term follow-up study up to 9.4 years post-vaccination. *Hum Vaccin Immunother* 2014; **10**: 2147-2162 [PMID: 25424918 DOI: 10.4161/hv.29532]
  - 107 **Pedersen C**, Petaja T, Strauss G, Rumke HC, Poder A, Richardus JH, Spiessens B, Descamps D, Hardt K, Lehtinen M, Dubin G. Immunization of early adolescent females with human papillomavirus type 16 and 18 L1 virus-like particle vaccine containing AS04 adjuvant. *J Adolesc Health* 2007; **40**: 564-571 [PMID: 17531764 DOI: 10.1016/j.jadohealth.2007.02.015]
  - 108 **Giuliano AR**, Palefsky JM, Goldstone S, Moreira ED, Penny ME, Aranda C, Vardas E, Moi H, Jessen H, Hillman R, Chang YH, Ferris D, Rouleau D, Bryan J, Marshall JB, Vuocolo S, Barr E, Radley D, Haupt RM, Guris D. Efficacy of quadrivalent HPV vaccine against HPV Infection and disease in males. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 401-411 [PMID: 21288094 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0909537]
  - 109 **Palefsky JM**, Giuliano AR, Goldstone S, Moreira ED, Aranda C, Jessen H, Hillman R, Ferris D, Coutlee F, Stoler MH, Marshall JB, Radley D, Vuocolo S, Haupt RM, Guris D, Garner EI. HPV vaccine against anal HPV infection and anal intraepithelial neoplasia. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **365**: 1576-1585 [PMID: 22029979 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1010971]
  - 110 **Roden R**, Wu TC. How will HPV vaccines affect cervical cancer? *Nat Rev Cancer* 2006; **6**: 753-763 [PMID: 16990853 DOI: 10.1038/nrc1973]
  - 111 **Muñoz N**, Bosch FX, Castellsagué X, Díaz M, de Sanjose S, Hammouda D, Shah KV, Meijer CJ. Against which human papillomavirus types shall we vaccinate and screen? The international perspective. *Int J Cancer* 2004; **111**: 278-285 [PMID: 15197783 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.20244]
  - 112 **Embers ME**, Budgeon LR, Pickel M, Christensen ND. Protective immunity to rabbit oral and cutaneous papillomaviruses by immunization with short peptides of L2, the minor capsid protein. *J Virol* 2002; **76**: 9798-9805 [PMID: 12208958]
  - 113 **Gambhira R**, Jagu S, Karanam B, Gravitt PE, Culp TD, Christensen ND, Roden RB. Protection of rabbits against challenge with rabbit papillomaviruses by immunization with the N terminus of human papillomavirus type 16 minor capsid antigen L2. *J Virol* 2007; **81**: 11585-11592 [PMID: 17715230 DOI: 10.1128/JVI.01577-07]
  - 114 **Roden RB**, Yutzy WH, Fallon R, Inglis S, Lowy DR, Schiller JT. Minor capsid protein of human genital papillomaviruses contains subdominant, cross-neutralizing epitopes. *Virology* 2000; **270**: 254-257 [PMID: 10792983 DOI: 10.1006/viro.2000.0272]
  - 115 **Chaturvedi AK**, Engels EA, Pfeiffer RM, Hernandez BY, Xiao W, Kim E, Jiang B, Goodman MT, Sibug-Saber M, Cozen W, Liu L, Lynch CF, Wentzensen N, Jordan RC, Altekruse S, Anderson WF, Rosenberg PS, Gillison ML. Human papillomavirus and rising oropharyngeal cancer incidence in the United States. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 4294-4301 [PMID: 21969503 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.36.4596]
  - 116 **Judin P**, Liveright E, del Carmen MG, Perkins RB. Race, ethnicity and income as factors for HPV vaccine acceptance and use. *Hum Vaccin Immunother* 2013; **9**: 1413-1420 [PMID: 23571170 DOI: 10.4161/hv.24422]
  - 117 **National Institutes of Health**. SEER Stat Fact Sheets: Cervix Uteri Cancer. [Accessed 2011 July 10]. Available from: URL: <http://seer.cancer.gov/statfacts/html/cervix.html-incidence-mortality>
  - 118 **Eaton DK**, Kann L, Kinchen S, Shanklin S, Flint KH, Hawkins J, Harris WA, Lowry R, McManus T, Chyen D, Whittle L, Lim C, Wechsler H. Youth risk behavior surveillance - United States, 2011. *MMWR Surveill Summ* 2012; **61**: 1-162 [PMID: 22673000]
  - 119 **Opel DJ**, Robinson JD, Heritage J, Korfiatis C, Taylor JA, Mangione-Smith R. Characterizing providers' immunization communication practices during health supervision visits with vaccine-hesitant parents: a pilot study. *Vaccine* 2012; **30**: 1269-1275 [PMID: 22230593 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2011.12.129]
  - 120 **Perkins RB**, Pierre-Joseph N, Marquez C, Iloka S, Clark JA. Why do low-income minority parents choose human papillomavirus vaccination for their daughters? *J Pediatr* 2010; **157**: 617-622 [PMID: 20472250 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpeds.2010.04.013]
  - 121 **Winkler JL**, Wittet S, Bartolini RM, Creed-Kanashiro HM, Lazcano-Ponce E, Lewis-Bell K, Lewis MJ, Penny ME. Determinants of human papillomavirus vaccine acceptability in Latin America and the Caribbean. *Vaccine* 2008; **26** Suppl 11: L73-L79 [PMID: 18945404 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2008.05.027]
  - 122 **Kjaer SK**, Tran TN, Sparen P, Tryggvadottir L, Munk C, Dasbach E, Liaw KL, Nygård J, Nygård M. The burden of genital warts: a study of nearly 70,000 women from the general female population in the 4 Nordic countries. *J Infect Dis* 2007; **196**: 1447-1454 [PMID: 18008222]
  - 123 **Mortensen GL**. Drivers and barriers to acceptance of human-papillomavirus vaccination among young women: a qualitative and quantitative study. *BMC Public Health* 2010; **10**: 68 [PMID: 20152055 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2458-10-68]
  - 124 **Perlman S**, Wamai RG, Bain PA, Welty T, Welty E, Ogembo JG. Knowledge and awareness of HPV vaccine and acceptability to vaccinate in sub-Saharan Africa: a systematic review. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e90912 [PMID: 24618636 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0090912]
  - 125 **Cunningham MS**, Davison C, Aronson KJ. HPV vaccine

acceptability in Africa: a systematic review. *Prev Med* 2014; **69**: 274-279 [PMID: 25451327 DOI: 10.1016/j.ypmed.2014.08.035]  
126 **Garland SM**, Bhatla N, Ngan HY. Cervical cancer burden and

prevention strategies: Asia Oceania perspective. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2012; **21**: 1414-1422 [PMID: 22956727 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-12-0164]

**P- Reviewer:** Murdaca G, Tabarkiewicz J **S- Editor:** Ji FF  
**L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Wu HL





## MicroRNAs: New players in endometriosis

Josep Marí-Alexandre, Moisés Barceló-Molina, María Olcina-Guillem, Javier García-Oms, Aitana Braza-Boïls, Juan Gilabert-Estellés

Josep Marí-Alexandre, Moisés Barceló-Molina, María Olcina-Guillem, Aitana Braza-Boïls, Grupo de Hemostasia, Trombosis, Aterosclerosis y Biología Vascular, Instituto de Investigación Sanitaria La Fe, 46026 Valencia, Spain

Javier García-Oms, Juan Gilabert-Estellés, Área Materno-infantil, Hospital General Universitario, 46014 Valencia, Spain

Juan Gilabert-Estellés, University of Valencia, 46010 Valencia, Spain

**Author contributions:** Marí-Alexandre J, Barceló-Molina M, Olcina-Guillem M and García-Oms J have performed the literature review and helped in the elaboration of the manuscript; Marí-Alexandre J, Braza-Boïls A and Gilabert-Estellés J have written and supervised the final version of the manuscript.

**Supported by** ISCIII and FEDER, Nos. PI011/00091, PI011/00566, PI14/01309, PI14/00253 and FI12/00012; RIC, Nos. RD12/0042/0029 and RD12/0042/0050; IIS La Fe 2011-211; Prometeo, No. 2011/027; and Sara Borrell Contract, No. CD13/0005.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** Authors have no conflict of interest for this paper.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Juan Gilabert-Estellés, MD, PhD, Professor of Medicine, Chief of the Área Materno-infantil, Hospital General Universitario, Av. Tres Cruces 2, 46014 Valencia, Spain. [gilabert\\_juaest@gva.es](mailto:gilabert_juaest@gva.es)  
 Telephone: +34-63-8064295  
 Fax: +34-96-1972014

Received: July 29, 2015  
 Peer-review started: August 6, 2015  
 First decision: September 16, 2015

Revised: December 2, 2015

Accepted: January 5, 2016

Article in press: January 7, 2016

Published online: February 10, 2016

### Abstract

Endometriosis is an estrogen-dependent inflammatory disorder that limits the quality of life of affected women. This pathology affects 10% of reproductive-age women, although the prevalence in those patients experiencing pain, infertility or both is as high as 35%-50%. Endometriosis is characterized by endometrial-like tissue outside the uterus, primarily on the pelvic peritoneum, ovaries and the pouch of Douglas. Despite extensive research endeavours, a unifying theory regarding the exact etiopathogenic mechanism of this high prevalent and incapacitating condition is still lacking, although it has been suggested that epigenetics could be involved. MicroRNAs (miRNAs), one of the epigenetic players, are small non-coding RNAs that can act as post-transcriptional regulators of gene expression, reducing the expression of their target mRNAs either inhibiting its translation or promoting its degradation. MiRNA expression profiles are specific of tissue and cell type. Abnormal miRNA expression has been described in different pathological conditions, such as a myriad of oncological, cardiovascular and inflammatory diseases and gynecological pathologies. In endometriosis, miRNA expression patterns of eutopic endometrium from patients and control women and from different endometriotic lesions have been described. These small non-coding molecules have become attractive candidates as novel biomarkers for an early non-invasive diagnosis of the disease, which could suppose a valuable benefit to the patients in terms of improvement of prognosis and reduction of the ratio of recurrence. In this systematic review we will focus on the role of miRNAs in the pathophysiology of endometriosis.

**Key words:** MicroRNAs; Endometriosis; Epigenetics;

## Angiogenesis; Biomarkers

© The Author(s) 2016. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Endometriosis is an estrogen-dependent inflammatory disorder that limits the quality of life of affected women. Nowadays, a unifying theory regarding its exact etiopathogenic mechanism has not been achieved yet. Our objective is to review the current literature to better understand the role of microRNAs, one of the epigenetic players, in the pathophysiology of endometriosis and their potential as novel diagnostic biomarkers to guide therapeutic interventions in endometriosis.

Marí-Alexandre J, Barceló-Molina M, Olcina-Guillem M, García-Oms J, Braza-Boïls A, Gilabert-Estellés J. MicroRNAs: New players in endometriosis. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 28-38 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/28.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.28>

## INTRODUCTION

Endometriosis is an estrogen-dependent inflammatory disorder that limits the quality of life of affected women<sup>[1-3]</sup>. This pathology affects 10% of reproductive-age women, although the prevalence in those patients experiencing pain, infertility or both is as high as 35%-50%<sup>[4]</sup>. The prevalence of this condition is estimated around 176 million worldwide, with an average diagnostic delay of 7 years<sup>[5]</sup>, being the mean age at diagnose 32.5-36.4 years, depending of the study population<sup>[5,6]</sup>.

Endometriosis is characterized by endometrial-like tissue outside the uterus, primarily on the pelvic peritoneum, ovaries and the pouch of Douglas. These extrauterine lesions are responsible for the main symptoms, pelvic pain and infertility<sup>[1]</sup>.

Despite extensive research endeavours, a unifying theory regarding the exact etiopathogenic mechanism of this high prevalent and incapacitating condition is still lacking. Several authors have reported a hormonal, immunity and a genetic base for this gynecological disorder. However, a growing body of evidence suggests that epigenetics could also be involved<sup>[7]</sup>, with an exponential increase of papers published on this issue in recent years.

Epigenetics refers to the study of mechanisms that control gene expression in a potentially heritable way without affecting DNA sequence. MicroRNAs (miRNAs), DNA methylation and modifications of the chromatin structure represent the different types of the known epigenetic modifications, exerting their regulatory effect additively<sup>[8]</sup>. In this review we will focus on the role of miRNAs in the pathophysiology of endometriosis.

MiRNAs are small (19-22nt) non-coding RNAs that can act as post-transcriptional regulators of gene expression, reducing the expression of their target mRNAs either inhibiting its translation or promoting its degradation. MiRNAs usually regulate gene expression by binding to the 3' UTR (Untranslated Region) of their target mRNA. Importantly, several miRNAs can target a given mRNA and a single miRNA can target several mRNA, increasing the complexity of the regulatory mechanism mediated by these molecules<sup>[9-13]</sup>. In malignancies, miRNAs can act as oncogenes or tumor suppressors, depending on their targets<sup>[14-16]</sup>. It is important to highlight that the miRNA expression profiles are specific of tissue and cell type<sup>[9]</sup>. To date, more than 1881 miRNA precursors, coding for more than 2500 mature miRNAs have been described in humans<sup>[17]</sup>.

MiRNAs were first described in 1993 by Lee *et al*<sup>[10]</sup> in the worm *Caenorhabditis elegans*. Since then, studies about biogenesis, functions, roles and characterisation of the mechanism of action of miRNAs have grown considerably and nowadays they are considered as excellent biomarkers of some diseases such as coronary artery disease<sup>[18-20]</sup>, cancer<sup>[21,22]</sup>, and several gynecological pathologies, including endometriosis<sup>[23,24]</sup>.

## PERITONEAL FACTORS AND ENDOMETRIOSIS

Endometriosis is a multifactorial disease in which endometrial and peritoneal factors such as those related to angiogenesis and proteolysis may be involved<sup>[25-27]</sup>. Peritoneal fluid (PF) is a complex suspension containing large amount of macrophages as well as endometrial and red blood cells, small molecules diffused from plasma through the mesothelial wall and other components dependent on ovarian contribution and local secretion such as steroid hormones and growth factors, respectively<sup>[28]</sup>. Because ectopic lesions located in the pelvic peritoneum are completely submerged in this fluid, their components have emerged as an important field of study<sup>[28-31]</sup>.

It is well documented that endometriosis is characterized by an important inflammatory process<sup>[32-34]</sup> with and increased production of reactive oxygen species (ROS)<sup>[35-37]</sup>. Berkes *et al*<sup>[38]</sup> and Santulli *et al*<sup>[39]</sup> have identified significantly increased levels of protein oxidative stress markers in the PF from women with deep infiltrating endometriosis when compared with endometriosis-free controls. On the other hand, NETosis describes the mechanisms by which activated neutrophils expel their entire chromatin, serving as catch and kill scaffold against microorganisms, a structure designated as neutrophil extracellular traps (NETs). Furthermore, it is known that ROS are the major activator of NETosis. The involvement of NETosis in endometriosis was studied Berkes *et al*<sup>[38]</sup>, who observed the presence of NET formation in virtually half of the patients with endometriosis, primarily in the

stage I and II group and rarely in controls, suggesting that NETosis is implicated in the initiation of the disease.

The contribution of immune system disorders to endometriosis has been proposed by several authors<sup>[2,40-42]</sup>. In this context, macrophage migration inhibitory factor (MIF) is arousing growing interest. MIF is a major pro-inflammatory factor found elevated in PF from women with endometriosis. Apart from its effect on activating and inhibiting macrophage mobility, it is also considered a critical upstream activator of innate immunity. MIF may be required for ectopic endometrial tissue growth and progression of endometriosis lesions *in vivo*<sup>[43]</sup>. Interestingly, miR-451 has been postulated to target MIF<sup>[44]</sup>. By using a murine model, Nothnick and coworkers<sup>[45]</sup> concluded that disruption of miR-451 expression in endometrial tissue impairs the ability of this tissue to establish ectopically. These authors also found elevated expression levels of miR-451 and diminished of MIF in ectopic endometriotic lesions (mainly peritoneal lesions) when compared with matched eutopic tissue. In addition, *in vitro* luciferase assays corroborated MIF as a target of miR-451 and forced expression of miR-451 reduced MIF and cell survival. Consequently, the aforementioned authors hypothesized that miR-451 over-expresses in ectopic lesions in an attempt to curtail endometriotic lesion/cell survival<sup>[46]</sup>.

## MIRNAS IN ENDOMETRIOSIS

Abnormal miRNA expression has been described in different gynecological pathologies, including malignancies<sup>[47-49]</sup>, benign conditions as leiomyoma<sup>[50]</sup>, adenomyosis<sup>[51]</sup>, and endometriosis<sup>[11,52-54]</sup>. Among gynecological tumors, ovarian cancer represents the second most prevalent and the most lethal malignancy in developed countries<sup>[55,56]</sup>, what could be explained by the difficulty of its diagnosis at early stages and the lack of effective treatments<sup>[49]</sup>. Recently reviewed by Davidson *et al*<sup>[57]</sup>, miRNAs could be an invaluable tool to overcome the above mentioned limitations, regarding their potential role in diagnosis and progression of ovarian carcinoma as well as prediction of response to chemotherapy. For instance, miRNAs of the miR-200 family, the miR-199/14 cluster and the let-7 paralogs have emerged as potential therapeutic targets in ovarian cancer<sup>[49]</sup>. In addition, Lee *et al*<sup>[58]</sup> found that higher expression of miR-181d, miR-30c, miR-30d, and miR-30e-3p was associated with significantly better disease-free or overall survival in this condition. These both miR-30 and miR-200 families have also been associated with endometrial cancer, the most frequent gynecological malignancy<sup>[56,59]</sup>. In a recent work, Kong *et al*<sup>[59]</sup> reported miR-30c to be a tumor suppressor *via* the miR-30c-MTA-1 signaling pathway, with a decreased expression of this miRNA in tumor cells.

Regarding endometriosis, miRNA expression patterns of eutopic endometrium from control women and pati-

ents<sup>[53,60]</sup> and ectopic lesions from patients have also been described<sup>[11,53,61]</sup>. Although endometriosis is a benign condition, it shares common mechanisms with tumors (e.g., tissue invasion, inflammation, reduced apoptosis and aberrant angiogenesis)<sup>[55]</sup>. In this context, the relationship between endometriosis and ovarian cancer, specially endometrioid and clear cell ovarian carcinoma, has been long reviewed<sup>[62-66]</sup>, but recent literature on this issue points that existing data is not enough to establish a doubtless causality<sup>[55]</sup>.

Among the pioneering studies addressing the miRNA expression patterns in endometrial and endometriotic tissues was the work published by Burney *et al*<sup>[67]</sup>. Four endometrial samples from women with endometriosis and three from endometriosis-free women in the early secretory phase of the menstrual cycle were assessed for miRNA expression by means of microarray analysis. After real time quantitative polymerase chain reaction (qRT-PCR) validation, the authors reported a downregulation of four miRNAs (miR-34c-5p, miR-34b\*, miR-9 and miR-9\*) belonging to two miRNA families (miR-34 and miR-9, respectively) in the eutopic endometrium of women with endometriosis compared to endometrium from control women. Notably, members of the miR-34 family mediate the p53-dependent suppression of proliferation<sup>[68]</sup>.

Furthermore, Laudanski *et al*<sup>[60]</sup> conducted a study enrolling 25 endometriosis-free women and 21 patients with ovarian endometriosis in the proliferative phase in which the expression of 667 human miRNAs was examined. Validation of array results led to the corroboration that miR-483-5p, a regulator of IGF2, and miR-629-3p, involved in inflammation, were down-regulated in the eutopic endometrium of patients in comparison to controls. The authors pointed to the idea that dysregulation of these genes could contribute to the overgrowth of endometrial tissue outside the uterus.

Human endometrium is a unique tissue that undergoes complex molecular, cellular, and functional changes on a cyclic basis under ovarian hormone regulation<sup>[69,70]</sup>. These changes are essential for uterine receptivity and can be grouped in three distinct phases: Proliferative, secretory and menstrual<sup>[71]</sup>. Thus, some authors hypothesized that miRNA expression could vary across the menstrual cycle<sup>[11,72]</sup>. For instance, Kuokkanen *et al*<sup>[72]</sup> showed that miRNA expression profiles of human endometrial epithelium were under hormonal regulation and, therefore, varied across the physiological phases of the menstrual cycle. Particularly, miRNAs targeting several cell cycle regulators were over-expressed in the midsecretory phase. Conversely, others have identified no effect on menstrual cycle phase on endometrial miRNA expression<sup>[11,53]</sup>. These discrepancies could be explained by the cell-type specificity in the response to sex steroid hormones of the human endometrium<sup>[72]</sup> and the different type of cellular populations studied in each study.

Filigheddu *et al*<sup>[61]</sup> described a set of miRNAs dif-

ferentially expressed in ovarian endometriomas in comparison to paired eutopic endometrium. By means of microarray technology, 84 significant differently expressed miRNAs were identified. In addition, the use of bioinformatic tools allowed researchers to identify the predicted targets of these dysregulated miRNAs, as well as the molecular networks and the biological function they affected. Interestingly, one of the most significantly up-regulated miRNAs was found to be miR-202-3p. In a recent report<sup>[53]</sup>, our research group corroborated these results, with a 200-fold over-expression of miR-202-3p in ovarian endometriomas in comparison to paired eutopic endometrium. With regards to miR-202-3p, it has been reported<sup>[73]</sup> that this miRNA targets the glioma-associated oncogene homolog 1 (GLI1) transcription factor, a strong positive activator of downstream target genes involved in proliferation, migration, invasion and angiogenesis, such as BCL-2, CD24, metalloproteinase-2 (MMP-2) and MMP-9<sup>[74]</sup>. GLI1 also regulates the transcription of vascular endothelial growth factor A (VEGF-A), which has been postulated as the main regulator of angiogenesis<sup>[74-77]</sup>. Thus, the over-expression of BCL-2 in the eutopic endometrium of patients with endometriosis<sup>[4,67]</sup> could be a consequence of the GLI1 regulation by miR-202-3p.

Using a Next Generation Sequencing approach, Hawkins *et al.*<sup>[78]</sup> found 10 miRNAs up-regulated (miR-100, -193a-3p, -193a-5p, -202, -29c, -485-3p, -509-3-5p, -574-3p, -708) and 12 miRNAs down-regulated (miR-10a, -34c-5p, -141, -200b, -200c, -200a, -203, -375, -429, -449b, -504, -873) in ovarian endometriomas in comparison to control endometrium, suggesting that miRNAs could also play a significant role in these ovarian lesions. Interestingly, one of the most dysregulated miRNAs in ovarian endometrioma was miR-29c, in agreement with our own data<sup>[53]</sup>.

Different miRNA profiles have been described in peritoneal lesions compared to paired eutopic endometrial tissues<sup>[11]</sup>. Through miRNA microarray analyses and *in silico* studies, the authors identified 22 differently expressed miRNAs that putatively regulated the expression of 673 differently expressed mRNA targets. Of them, 14 were up-regulated in peritoneal lesions (miR-1, -29c, -99a, -99b, -100, -125b, -125a, -126, -143, -145, -150, -194, -223, -365) and 8 were down-regulated (miR-20a, -34c, -142-3p, -141, -196b, -200a, -200b, -424) compared to paired eutopic endometrial tissue. Interestingly, the mRNAs targets of these miRNAs had been previously related to endometriosis-associated molecular pathways, including cell death, cell proliferation and angiogenesis<sup>[11]</sup>.

More recently, Saare *et al.*<sup>[79]</sup> identified five over-expressed miRNAs (miR-34c, -449a, -200a, -200b, -141) in peritoneal endometriotic lesions in comparison to eutopic endometria using a high-throughput miRNA sequencing approach. This set of miRNAs allowed the discrimination of peritoneal lesions from the healthy surrounding tissue. Finally, they concluded providing

a note for caution when evaluating peritoneal lesions, due that analyses carried out in biopsies also containing healthy surrounding tissues could mask aberrant miRNA expression intrinsic of peritoneal endometriotic tissues.

Although efforts have been made in the identification of the role of miRNAs in the pathogenesis of endometriosis, we are aware that future research will provide new regulatory functions for known miRNAs and that new identified miRNAs will expand our knowledge of this condition. Hence, several authors are focusing on the discovery of new miRNAs associated with human female reproductive tract disorders. For instance, Creighton *et al.*<sup>[80]</sup> performed a next generation sequencing of over 100 tissues or cell lines derived from human female reproductive organs in both healthy and pathological states. As a result, 7 confirmed and 51 highly confident predicted novel miRNAs were identified.

Even though the involvement of miRNAs in the pathophysiology of endometriosis requires further investigation, nowadays these small non-coding molecules are considered as putative biomarkers for an early non-invasive diagnosis of the disease, which could suppose a valuable benefit to the patients in terms of improvement of prognosis and reduction of the ratio of recurrence, as recently demonstrated in other miRNA regulated diseases<sup>[81-83]</sup>.

## ANGIOGENESIS-RELATED MIRNAS IN ENDOMETRIOSIS

The involvement of angiogenesis in the physiopathology of endometrisis has been long discussed, as the endometrial tissue migrated to the peritoneum requires a blood supply in order to survive, proliferate, invade the extracellular matrix and establish the endometriotic lesion<sup>[84]</sup>. VEGF represents one of the most potent angiogenic factors. Several studies have reported an increase in VEGF-A levels in endometriosis and it has been suggested that VEGF-A plays an important role in the progression of the disease<sup>[84,85]</sup>. Regarding angiogenesis inhibitors, alterations of thrombospondin-1 (TSP-1) expression has been reported to be involved in endometriosis, in which vascularisation is mandatory for the survival of migrated tissues<sup>[85]</sup>.

In previous publications, our research group has found and up-regulation of the expression of angiogenic and proteolytic factors in endometrial tissue from patients with endometriosis<sup>[85,86]</sup> and we have suggested that this increase might contribute to the invasive potential of endometrial cells.

The miRNA regulation of angiogenesis has been long reported in several pathologies, including endometriosis<sup>[12,53,54]</sup>. The miR-17-92 cluster, also known as oncomir-1, encodes six mature miRNAs (miR-17, miR-18a, miR-19a, miR-19b, miR-20a and miR-92a)<sup>[87]</sup> and has been reported to play an important role in the tumor neovascularisation<sup>[27]</sup>. Two miRNAs encoded in this cluster, miR-17-5p and miR-20a, have been found



to be down-regulated in ovarian endometriotic cysts in comparison to eutopic endometrium<sup>[11,61]</sup>. As miR-17-5p targets TSP-1, a decrease of the miR-17-5p levels in ovarian cysts could repress the down-regulation of TSP-1 expression and provide an explanation for the clinically observed low invasion grade of these endometriotic lesions to the surrounding ovarian tissue.

Extracellular matrix remodelling is a crucial process in the regulation of angiogenesis<sup>[88]</sup> and plays a critically important role in the establishment of the endometriotic lesion<sup>[89]</sup>. mRNA levels of key components of the metallo-proteinase systems have been reportedly observed to be deregulated in eutopic and ectopic endometria of patients with endometriosis<sup>[85,86,89,90]</sup>. In a recently published paper<sup>[53]</sup>, we observed that miR-29c-3p was up-regulated in several endometriosis tissues (ovarian endometrioma, peritoneal lesions and rectovaginal nodule). Provided that miR-29c-3p regulates different genes of the extracellular matrix, our results are in agreement with previously published studies<sup>[11,78]</sup> accounting for the coordinated role of several miRNAs in the remodelling process necessary for the implantation of migrated endometria in ectopic locations and the establishment of endometriotic lesions.

Taking into consideration the importance of angiogenesis in the pathophysiology of endometriosis, several therapies targeting VEGF as blockers or inhibitors have been proposed aiming to decrease the number of lesions, inhibit growth and reduce vascular density. In this context, soluble truncated VEGF receptors (Flt-1), antibodies to human VEGF and bevacizumab<sup>[91]</sup>, among others, have been tested in murine models of endometriosis. Although results from these studies are promising, it should be taken into account that the use of an animal model that neither menstruate nor develop spontaneous endometriosis is a major limitation. Furthermore, the use of molecules that might block the expression or mimic functions of angiogenesis-related miRNAs could represent new therapeutic approaches in the treatment of endometriosis as recently demonstrated in other miRNA-regulated diseases<sup>[92]</sup>.

## CLINICAL UTILITY OF MIRNAS AS BIOMARKERS OF ENDOMETRIOSIS

Despite the fact that endometriosis is one of the most common benign gynecological diseases, there is a lack of non-invasive or semi-invasive diagnostic test that overcomes the need for the current surgical diagnosis<sup>[53,67]</sup>. Laparoscopy with histological confirmation, the gold standard for diagnosis, is a minimally invasive procedure. However, patients usually undergo general anesthesia and a certain degree of expertise from clinicians is necessary and it is a costly procedure. Additional concerns are related to the delay in the diagnosis of the disease, which has been estimated of around 7 years<sup>[32,93]</sup>. This may be due to multiple reasons including non-specific symptoms of

the disease (pelvic pain and infertility), which leads to multiple tests for differential diagnosis<sup>[45]</sup>. As a consequence, patients are diagnosed at advanced stages of the disease, which impairs the prognosis and increases the risk of recurrence. For all these reasons, there is a great interest among researchers to find a non-invasive or semi-invasive test for the diagnosis of endometriosis that would ideally diagnose patients in initial steps of the disease and overcome the need for an invasive procedure.

Since they were first described to be present in blood<sup>[82]</sup>, circulating miRNAs have become interesting biomarkers in different conditions<sup>[16,23,24,94,95]</sup>. The presence of miRNAs in different biofluids, including blood<sup>[96]</sup>, could be explained by different mechanisms: (1) passive release of miRNAs from broken cells and tissues following tissue injury, chronic inflammation, cell apoptosis or necrosis, or from cells with a short half-life, such as platelets; (2) active secretion *via* cell-derived microvesicles (including exosomes and shedding vesicles); and (3) active secretion by cells as RNA-binding-protein conjugated complexes. Mechanisms (2) and (3) also offer an explanation for their highly elevated stability in plasma, despite the presence of elevated amounts of RNases<sup>[97]</sup>. Although so far the biological functions of circulating miRNAs remain to be completely defined, some authors have proposed a role into cell-to-cell communication for these short nucleic acids<sup>[97-100]</sup>. In any case, it is clear that their presence in plasma/serum and the distinct advantages that they offer over other biomarkers (for instance and unlike mRNAs, miRNAs show high stability in blood, can be both amplified and detected with high sensitivity and specificity<sup>[101]</sup> and are highly resistant to storage handling<sup>[97,101]</sup>) offers an opportunity to use them as biomarkers.

In the field of gynecological pathologies, several authors have explored this possibility<sup>[94,102,103]</sup>. In ovarian cancer, miRNA expression profiles have been analyzed in whole blood and sera from patients, either as free-circulating miRNAs or encapsulated in exosomes. An example of the last is the study conducted by Taylor *et al.*<sup>[95]</sup> in serum exosomes from patients with serous papillary adenocarcinoma of the ovary. Eight miRNAs (miR-21, -141, -200a, -200b, -200c, -203, -205, -214) were found to be up-regulated in tumor-derived exosomes compared with serum from benign ovarian disease patients. Interestingly, these 8 miRNAs showed a high correlation between their cellular and exosomal levels. In another study, published by Resnick and coworkers<sup>[104]</sup>, 8 miRNAs were found to be deregulated (miR-21, miR-29a, miR-92, miR-93 and miR-126 up-regulated and miR-99b, miR-127 and miR-155 down-regulated) in serum obtained from 19 patients with epithelial ovarian carcinoma (serous, clear cell, endometrioid and mucinous) in comparison to miRNAs analysed in sera from 11 controls. Interestingly, three out of the five up-regulated miRNAs (miR-21, miR-92



**Table 1** Current studies assessing the clinical utility of circulating miRNAs as biomarkers of endometriosis

Sample	Anticoagulant	Main results	Participants (patients/controls)	Ref.
Serum	-	↓ let-7b and miR-135 <sup>a</sup> let-7d and let-7f showed a tendency towards down-regulation <sup>a</sup>	<i>n</i> = 24/ <i>n</i> = 24 <sup>b</sup>	[102]
Plasma	EDTA	↓ miR-17-5p, miR-20a and miR-22	<i>n</i> = 23/ <i>n</i> = 23 <sup>c</sup>	[103]
Serum	-	↑ miR-122 and miR-199a	<i>n</i> = 60/ <i>n</i> = 25 <sup>d</sup>	[106]
Plasma	EDTA	↓ miR-9*, miR-141*, miR-145* and miR-542-3p <sup>a</sup> ↓ miR-200a-3p, miR-200b-3p and miR-141-3p <sup>a</sup>	<i>n</i> = 61/ <i>n</i> = 65 <sup>e</sup>	[110]

Down-regulated (↓) and (↑) up-regulated miRNAs in samples from patients in comparison to control women. <sup>a</sup>Combination of miRNAs in bold yielded the best diagnostic value; <sup>b</sup>Control group presented dermoid cysts (*n* = 10), serous cystadenoma (*n* = 5), mucinous cystadenoma (*n* = 3), simple ovarian cysts (*n* = 3) and paratubal cysts (*n* = 1); <sup>c</sup>Control group presented uterine leiomyoma (*n* = 14), mature teratoma (*n* = 4), simple cysts (*n* = 3) and unexplained infertility (*n* = 2); <sup>d</sup>Main diagnosis: Infertility due to tubal factors; <sup>e</sup>Thirty-five endometriosis-free women with primary (*n* = 10) or secondary (*n* = 15) infertility, suspicion of endometriosis (*n* = 5), polycystic ovaries (*n* = 3) and pelvic pain (*n* = 2) and 30 self-reported healthy women. EDTA: Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid.

and miR-93) were overexpressed in 3 patients with normal CA-125 levels. This finding could be explained by the high sensitivity and accuracy of the RT-PCR quantification, suggesting that miRNAs could provide an advantage as biomarkers in terms of sensitivity in comparison to those in current clinical use.

Häusler *et al.*<sup>[105]</sup> analysed the miRNA expression profile in whole blood from 24 patients with epithelial carcinoma (mainly serous histotype) and from 15 healthy donors. As a result, the expression of miR-30c1\* was found to be up-regulated and the expression of miR-181a\*, miR-342-3p and miR-450b-5p down-regulated in patients in comparison to controls, enabling a discrimination between populations.

Regarding endometriosis, an interesting recent review from Fassbender *et al.*<sup>[23]</sup> pointed to the possibility of developing a semi-invasive test for endometriosis from PF obtained *via* transvaginal ultrasound-guided aspiration. Although this is an interesting approach, current research is mainly focused on developing serum/plasma biomarkers as a noninvasive diagnostic tool. Jia *et al.*<sup>[103]</sup> explored this possibility, conduct a study that enrolled 23 women with histologically proven endometriosis and 23 endometriosis-free controls. RNA from plasma was extracted to perform a miRNA microarray profiling. Three out of the six miRNAs selected for qRT-PCR (miR-17-5p, miR-20a and miR-22) were proven to be significantly down-regulated in patients and useful to discriminate women with endometriosis from patients. Wang *et al.*<sup>[106]</sup> performed a circulating miRNA profiling with a different approach. For miRNA profiling, 2 pools of sera from 10 endometriosis patients and 10 control women, respectively, were prepared. Results from array were validated by qRT-PCR in sera from 60 patients and 25 control women, finding that miR-199a and miR-122 levels were up-regulated and miR-145\*, miR-141\*, miR-542-3p and miR-9\* down-regulated in samples from patients in comparison to control women and could therefore serve as biomarkers of the disease. In a very recent study, Cho *et al.*<sup>[102]</sup> quantified the levels of miR-135a,b and let-7a-f in sera of 24 endometriosis patients and 24 disease-free women. The selection of these miRNAs was based on their previous association with endometriosis<sup>[107,108]</sup>. Employing a logistic regression

approach, researchers found that a combination of let-7b, let-7d and let-7f during the proliferative phase yielded the highest area under the curve value in discriminating patients with endometriosis from control women. Of note, several miRNAs were found to be differently expressed depending on the phase of the menstrual cycle in patients but not in controls, in agreement with previous reports<sup>[109]</sup>. Finally, Rekker *et al.*<sup>[110]</sup> performed the last published study regarding circulating miRNAs as biomarkers of endometriosis. Based on previous literature, authors selected 3 miRNAs from the miR-200 family (miR-200a-3p, miR-200b-3p and miR-141-3p) whose expression was assessed in plasma samples from 61 patients and 65 control women. The expression of all 3 miRNAs was down-regulated in patients and miR-200a-3p and miR-141-3p showed the highest potential as noninvasive biomarkers for this benign condition. Remarkably, authors also analyzed variations of the levels of the three miRNAs of interest with time of sampling (morning/evening) finding lower levels in evening samples, perhaps due to circadian fluctuations in their expression. This is an interesting approach and points to the time of sampling as an important factor to be taken into account when performing circulating miRNAs studies. All these studies on the role of circulating miRNAs as biomarkers of endometriosis are summarized in Table 1.

Importantly, it should be noted that the circulating miRNA pool is not a mirror of tissue miRNAs content<sup>[83,111]</sup> and that changes in tissue miRNA will not be reflected in the same extent in the circulating miRNA profile<sup>[101]</sup>. Therefore, the aforementioned differences in endometrial miRNA expression profiles found in endometriosis should be considered in the context of a semi-invasive diagnosis of endometriosis by means of endometrial biopsy, because of the low probability of finding such differences in serum or plasma from the same patients.

## CONCLUSION

MiRNAs, one of the epigenetic players, are small non-coding RNAs that can act as post-transcriptional regulators of gene expression reducing the expression of their target mRNA. The involvement of miRNAs in

different pathological conditions has been well established and miRNA expression profiles have been performed in biopsies from different conditions, including gynaecological pathologies as endometriosis. Despite being a benign gynaecological pathology, endometriosis deeply impairs the quality of life of affected women in terms of pain and infertility. The prevalence of endometriosis in reproductive-age women is estimated around 1 out of 10 and raises to 5 out of 10 in patients experiencing both pain and infertility. Research endeavours are being conducted in order to find a non-invasive or semi-invasive biomarker of the disease that ideally diagnosis the disease at initial stages and overcomes the need for the current laparoscopy gold standard diagnosis. In this area, circulating miRNAs have emerged as attractive molecules to be considered as biomarkers. Up to date, only few studies have been performed in order to obtain a circulating miRNA-based diagnostic tool. However, differences in experimental design among them make it difficult to compare results. From our point of view, there is a need for standardization of clinical data annotation, sample collection and handling among research projects that takes into account several aspects: (1) surgical and non-surgical data; (2) type of sample (serum/plasma) and processing protocols. In the case of plasma, the choice of anticoagulant is not a minor feature in experimental design and must be carefully addressed; (3) time of sampling is also an important factor and a decision has to be made between morning fasting samples or evening samples, as demonstrated by Rekker *et al.*<sup>[110]</sup>; and (4) number of participants in circulating miRNAs as biomarkers of endometriosis studies is scarce and usually control population is heterogeneous, including self-reported endometriosis-free women, patients with different benign gynaecological conditions and infertile women due to tubal factors. For all these reasons, we encourage researchers in the field to follow recommendations from the World Endometriosis Research Foundation<sup>[112-115]</sup> in order to solve the observed heterogeneity in experimental designs and improve reproducibility between studies. In addition, validation of experimental algorithms in different cohorts is needed so as to improve quality of research and reach the ultimate goal, benefit patients with an earlier diagnose of endometriosis and avoiding unnecessary assisted reproductive techniques in those women whose fertility is not affected by the disease. To achieve this ambitious objective, we do encourage researchers to collaborate and synergistically add efforts to be able to recruit larger cohorts of patients and endometriosis-free women for circulating miRNAs studies, adopt standardized protocols and improve research outcomes.

## REFERENCES

- 1 Giudice LC. Clinical practice. Endometriosis. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 2389-2398 [PMID: 20573927 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc1000274]
- 2 Giudice LC, Kao LC. Endometriosis. *Lancet* 2004; **364**: 1789-1799 [PMID: 15541453 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(04)17403-5]
- 3 Tamaresis JS, Irwin JC, Goldfien GA, Rabban JT, Burney RO, Nezhat C, DePaolo LV, Giudice LC. Molecular classification of endometriosis and disease stage using high-dimensional genomic data. *Endocrinology* 2014; **155**: 4986-4999 [PMID: 25243856 DOI: 10.1210/en.2014-1490]
- 4 Burney RO, Giudice LC. Pathogenesis and pathophysiology of endometriosis. *Fertil Steril* 2012; **98**: 511-519 [PMID: 22819144 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2012.06.029]
- 5 Nnoaham KE, Hummelshoj L, Webster P, d'Hooghe T, de Cicco Nardone F, de Cicco Nardone C, Jenkinson C, Kennedy SH, Zondervan KT. Impact of endometriosis on quality of life and work productivity: a multicenter study across ten countries. *Fertil Steril* 2011; **96**: 366-373.e8 [PMID: 21718982 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2011.05.090]
- 6 Fuldeore M, Yang H, Du EX, Soliman AM, Wu EQ, Winkel C. Healthcare utilization and costs in women diagnosed with endometriosis before and after diagnosis: a longitudinal analysis of claims databases. *Fertil Steril* 2015; **103**: 163-171 [PMID: 25455535 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2014.10.011]
- 7 Guo SW. Epigenetics of endometriosis. *Mol Hum Reprod* 2009; **15**: 587-607 [PMID: 19651637 DOI: 10.1093/molehr/gap064]
- 8 Portela A, Esteller M. Epigenetic modifications and human disease. *Nat Biotechnol* 2010; **28**: 1057-1068 [PMID: 20944598 DOI: 10.1038/nbt.1685]
- 9 Bartel DP. MicroRNAs: genomics, biogenesis, mechanism, and function. *Cell* 2004; **116**: 281-297 [PMID: 14744438 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(04)00045-5]
- 10 Lee RC, Feinbaum RL, Ambros V. The *C. elegans* heterochronic gene *lin-4* encodes small RNAs with antisense complementarity to *lin-14*. *Cell* 1993; **75**: 843-854 [PMID: 8252621 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(93)90529-Y]
- 11 Teague EM, Print CG, Hull ML. The role of microRNAs in endometriosis and associated reproductive conditions. *Hum Reprod Update* 2010; **16**: 142-165 [PMID: 19773286 DOI: 10.1093/humupd/dmp034]
- 12 Caporali A, Emanueli C. MicroRNA regulation in angiogenesis. *Vascul Pharmacol* 2011; **55**: 79-86 [PMID: 21777698 DOI: 10.1016/j.vph.2011.06.006]
- 13 Lee Y, Ahn C, Han J, Choi H, Kim J, Yim J, Lee J, Provost P, Rådmark O, Kim S, Kim VN. The nuclear RNase III Drosha initiates microRNA processing. *Nature* 2003; **425**: 415-419 [PMID: 14508493 DOI: 10.1038/nature01957]
- 14 Gailhouse L, Ochiya T. Cancer-related microRNAs and their role as tumor suppressors and oncogenes in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Histol Histopathol* 2013; **28**: 437-451 [PMID: 23224781 DOI: 10.14670/HH-28.437]
- 15 Nohata N, Hanazawa T, Kinoshita T, Okamoto Y, Seki N. MicroRNAs function as tumor suppressors or oncogenes: aberrant expression of microRNAs in head and neck squamous cell carcinoma. *Auris Nasus Larynx* 2013; **40**: 143-149 [PMID: 22831895 DOI: 10.1016/j.anl.2012.07.001]
- 16 Huang J, Zhang SY, Gao YM, Liu YF, Liu YB, Zhao ZG, Yang K. MicroRNAs as oncogenes or tumour suppressors in oesophageal cancer: potential biomarkers and therapeutic targets. *Cell Prolif* 2014; **47**: 277-286 [PMID: 24909356 DOI: 10.1111/cpr.12109]
- 17 Kozomara A, Griffiths-Jones S. miRBase: annotating high confidence microRNAs using deep sequencing data. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2014; **42**: D68-D73 [PMID: 24275495 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkt1181]
- 18 Zorio E, Medina P, Rueda J, Millán JM, Arnau MA, Beneyto M, Marín F, Gimeno JR, Osca J, Salvador A, España F, Estellés A. Insights into the role of microRNAs in cardiac diseases: from biological signalling to therapeutic targets. *Cardiovasc Hematol Agents Med Chem* 2009; **7**: 82-90 [PMID: 19149547 DOI: 10.2174/187152509787047676]
- 19 Papageorgiou N, Tousoulis D, Charakida M, Briasoulis A, Androulakis E, Tentolouris C, Siasos G, Stefanadis C. Prognostic role of miRNAs in coronary artery disease. *Curr Top Med Chem* 2013; **13**: 1540-1547 [PMID: 23745806 DOI: 10.2174/1568026611

- 3139990103]
- 20 **Economou EK**, Oikonomou E, Siasos G, Papageorgiou N, Tsalamandris S, Mourouzis K, Papaioanou S, Tousoulis D. The role of microRNAs in coronary artery disease: From pathophysiology to diagnosis and treatment. *Atherosclerosis* 2015; **241**: 624-633 [PMID: 26117399 DOI: 10.1016/j.atherosclerosis.2015.06.037]
- 21 **Schwarzenbach H**, Nishida N, Calin GA, Pantel K. Clinical relevance of circulating cell-free microRNAs in cancer. *Nat Rev Clin Oncol* 2014; **11**: 145-156 [PMID: 24492836 DOI: 10.1038/nrclinonc.2014.5]
- 22 **Cheng G**. Circulating miRNAs: roles in cancer diagnosis, prognosis and therapy. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2015; **81**: 75-93 [PMID: 25220354 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2014.09.001]
- 23 **Fassbender A**, Vodolazkaia A, Saunders P, Lebovic D, Waelkens E, De Moor B, D'Hooghe T. Biomarkers of endometriosis. *Fertil Steril* 2013; **99**: 1135-1145 [PMID: 23414923 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2013.01.097]
- 24 **Fassbender A**, Burney RO, O DF, D'Hooghe T, Giudice L. Update on Biomarkers for the Detection of Endometriosis. *Biomed Res Int* 2015; **2015**: 130854 [PMID: 26240814 DOI: 10.1155/2015/130854]
- 25 **Kobayashi H**. Invasive capacity of heterotopic endometrium. *Gynecol Obstet Invest* 2000; **50** Suppl 1: 26-32 [PMID: 11093058 DOI: 10.1159/000052875]
- 26 **Cosin R**, Gilabert-Estellés J, Ramón LA, Gómez-Lechón MJ, Gilabert J, Chirivella M, Braza-Boils A, España F, Estellés A. Influence of peritoneal fluid on the expression of angiogenic and proteolytic factors in cultures of endometrial cells from women with endometriosis. *Hum Reprod* 2010; **25**: 398-405 [PMID: 19945964]
- 27 **Braza-Boils A**, Gilabert-Estellés J, Ramón LA, Gilabert J, Marí-Alexandre J, Chirivella M, España F, Estellés A. Peritoneal fluid reduces angiogenesis-related microRNA expression in cell cultures of endometrial and endometriotic tissues from women with endometriosis. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e62370 [PMID: 23620826 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0062370]
- 28 **Koninckx PR**, Kennedy SH, Barlow DH. Endometriotic disease: the role of peritoneal fluid. *Hum Reprod Update* 1998; **4**: 741-751 [PMID: 10027629 DOI: 10.1093/humupd/4.5.741]
- 29 **Mier-Cabrera J**, Jiménez-Zamudio L, García-Latorre E, Cruz-Orozco O, Hernández-Guerrero C. Quantitative and qualitative peritoneal immune profiles, T-cell apoptosis and oxidative stress-associated characteristics in women with minimal and mild endometriosis. *BJOG* 2011; **118**: 6-16 [PMID: 21083865 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.2010.02777.x]
- 30 **Na YJ**, Lee DH, Kim SC, Joo JK, Wang JW, Jin JO, Kwak JY, Lee KS. Effects of peritoneal fluid from endometriosis patients on the release of monocyte-specific chemokines by leukocytes. *Arch Gynecol Obstet* 2011; **283**: 1333-1341 [PMID: 20617440 DOI: 10.1007/s00404-010-1583-1]
- 31 **Liu Y**, Hu J, Shen W, Wang J, Chen C, Han J, Zai D, Cai Z, Yu C. Peritoneal fluid of patients with endometriosis promotes proliferation of endometrial stromal cells and induces COX-2 expression. *Fertil Steril* 2011; **95**: 1836-1838 [PMID: 21145050 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2010.11.039]
- 32 **Reis FM**, Petraglia F, Taylor RN. Endometriosis: hormone regulation and clinical consequences of chemotaxis and apoptosis. *Hum Reprod Update* 2013; **19**: 406-418 [PMID: 23539633 DOI: 10.1093/humupd/dmt010]
- 33 **Bulun SE**. Endometriosis. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 268-279 [PMID: 19144942 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMr0804690]
- 34 **Augoulea A**, Alexandrou A, Creatsa M, Vrachnis N, Lambrinoudaki I. Pathogenesis of endometriosis: the role of genetics, inflammation and oxidative stress. *Arch Gynecol Obstet* 2012; **286**: 99-103 [PMID: 22546953 DOI: 10.1007/s00404-012-2357-8]
- 35 **Ngô C**, Chéreau C, Nicco C, Weill B, Chapron C, Batteux F. Reactive oxygen species controls endometriosis progression. *Am J Pathol* 2009; **175**: 225-234 [PMID: 19498006 DOI: 10.2353/ajpath.2009.080804]
- 36 **Agarwal A**, Aponte-Mellado A, Premkumar BJ, Shaman A, Gupta S. The effects of oxidative stress on female reproduction: a review. *Reprod Biol Endocrinol* 2012; **10**: 49 [PMID: 22748101 DOI: 10.1186/1477-7827-10-49]
- 37 **Polak G**, Wertel I, Barczyński B, Kwaśniewski W, Bednarek W, Kotarski J. Increased levels of oxidative stress markers in the peritoneal fluid of women with endometriosis. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 2013; **168**: 187-190 [PMID: 23351670 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejogrb.2012.12.043]
- 38 **Berkes E**, Oehmke F, Tinneberg HR, Preissner KT, Saffarzadeh M. Association of neutrophil extracellular traps with endometriosis-related chronic inflammation. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 2014; **183**: 193-200 [PMID: 25461378 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejogrb.2014.10.040]
- 39 **Santulli P**, Chouzenoux S, Fiorese M, Marcellin L, Lemarechal H, Millischer AE, Batteux F, Borderie D, Chapron C. Protein oxidative stress markers in peritoneal fluids of women with deep infiltrating endometriosis are increased. *Hum Reprod* 2015; **30**: 49-60 [PMID: 25376454 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/deu290]
- 40 **Vinatier D**, Dufour P, Oosterlynck D. Immunological aspects of endometriosis. *Hum Reprod Update* 1996; **2**: 371-384 [PMID: 15717437 DOI: 10.1093/humupd/2.5.371]
- 41 **Sinaii N**, Cleary SD, Ballweg ML, Nieman LK, Stratton P. High rates of autoimmune and endocrine disorders, fibromyalgia, chronic fatigue syndrome and atopic diseases among women with endometriosis: a survey analysis. *Hum Reprod* 2002; **17**: 2715-2724 [PMID: 12351553 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/17.10.2715]
- 42 **Olovsson M**. Immunological aspects of endometriosis: an update. *Am J Reprod Immunol* 2011; **66** Suppl 1: 101-104 [PMID: 21726345 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0897.2011.01045.x]
- 43 **Rakhila H**, Girard K, Leboeuf M, Lemyre M, Akoum A. Macrophage migration inhibitory factor is involved in ectopic endometrial tissue growth and peritoneal-endometrial tissue interaction in vivo: a plausible link to endometriosis development. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e110434 [PMID: 25329068 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0110434]
- 44 **Bandres E**, Bitarte N, Arias F, Agorreta J, Fortes P, Agirre X, Zarate R, Diaz-Gonzalez JA, Ramirez N, Sola JJ, Jimenez P, Rodriguez J, Garcia-Foncillas J. microRNA-451 regulates macrophage migration inhibitory factor production and proliferation of gastrointestinal cancer cells. *Clin Cancer Res* 2009; **15**: 2281-2290 [PMID: 19318487 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-08-1818]
- 45 **Nothnick WB**, Graham A, Holbert J, Weiss MJ. miR-451 deficiency is associated with altered endometrial fibrinogen alpha chain expression and reduced endometriotic implant establishment in an experimental mouse model. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e100336 [PMID: 24937656 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0100336]
- 46 **Graham A**, Falcone T, Nothnick WB. The expression of microRNA-451 in human endometriotic lesions is inversely related to that of macrophage migration inhibitory factor (MIF) and regulates MIF expression and modulation of epithelial cell survival. *Hum Reprod* 2015; **30**: 642-652 [PMID: 25637622 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/dev005]
- 47 **Pedroza-Torres A**, López-Urrutia E, García-Castillo V, Jacobo-Herrera N, Herrera LA, Peralta-Zaragoza O, López-Camarillo C, De Leon DC, Fernández-Retana J, Cerna-Cortés JF, Pérez-Plasencia C. MicroRNAs in cervical cancer: evidences for a miRNA profile deregulated by HPV and its impact on radio-resistance. *Molecules* 2014; **19**: 6263-6281 [PMID: 24840898 DOI: 10.3390/molecules19056263]
- 48 **Banno K**, Yanokura M, Iida M, Adachi M, Nakamura K, Nogami Y, Umene K, Masuda K, Kisu I, Nomura H, Kataoka F, Tominaga E, Aoki D. Application of microRNA in diagnosis and treatment of ovarian cancer. *Biomed Res Int* 2014; **2014**: 232817 [PMID: 24822185 DOI: 10.1155/2014/232817]
- 49 **Kinose Y**, Sawada K, Nakamura K, Kimura T. The role of microRNAs in ovarian cancer. *Biomed Res Int* 2014; **2014**: 249393 [PMID: 25295252 DOI: 10.1155/2014/249393]
- 50 **Karmon AE**, Cardozo ER, Rueda BR, Styer AK. MicroRNAs in the development and pathobiology of uterine leiomyomata: does evidence support future strategies for clinical intervention? *Hum Reprod Update* 2014; **20**: 670-687 [PMID: 24706045 DOI: 10.1093/humupd/dmu017]
- 51 **Verit FF**, Yucel O. Endometriosis, leiomyoma and adenomyosis: the risk of gynecologic malignancy. *Asian Pac J Cancer Prev* 2013; **14**: 5589-5597 [PMID: 24289548]



- 52 **Nothnick WB.** The role of micro-RNAs in the female reproductive tract. *Reproduction* 2012; **143**: 559-576 [PMID: 22454533 DOI: 10.1530/REP-11-0240]
- 53 **Braza-Boils A,** Marí-Alexandre J, Gilabert J, Sánchez-Izquierdo D, España F, Estellés A, Gilabert-Estellés J. MicroRNA expression profile in endometriosis: its relation to angiogenesis and fibrinolytic factors. *Hum Reprod* 2014; **29**: 978-988 [PMID: 24608518 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/deu019]
- 54 **Braza-Boils A,** Salloum-Asfar S, Marí-Alexandre J, Arroyo AB, González-Conejero R, Barceló-Molina M, García-Oms J, Vicente V, Estellés A, Gilabert-Estellés J, Martínez C. Peritoneal fluid modifies the microRNA expression profile in endometrial and endometriotic cells from women with endometriosis. *Hum Reprod* 2015; **30**: 2292-2302 [PMID: 26307093 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/dev204]
- 55 **Guo SW.** Endometriosis and ovarian cancer: potential benefits and harms of screening and risk-reducing surgery. *Fertil Steril* 2015; **104**: 813-830 [PMID: 26335131 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2015.08.006]
- 56 **Siegel RL,** Miller KD, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2015. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2015; **65**: 5-29 [PMID: 25559415 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21254]
- 57 **Davidson B,** Tropé CG, Reich R. The clinical and diagnostic role of microRNAs in ovarian carcinoma. *Gynecol Oncol* 2014; **133**: 640-646 [PMID: 24713546 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2014.03.575]
- 58 **Lee H,** Park CS, Deftereos G, Morihara J, Stern JE, Hawes SE, Swisher E, Kiviat NB, Feng Q. MicroRNA expression in ovarian carcinoma and its correlation with clinicopathological features. *World J Surg Oncol* 2012; **10**: 174 [PMID: 22925189 DOI: 10.1186/1477-7819-10-174]
- 59 **Kong X,** Xu X, Yan Y, Guo F, Li J, Hu Y, Zhou H, Xun Q. Estrogen regulates the tumour suppressor MiRNA-30c and its target gene, MTA-1, in endometrial cancer. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e90810 [PMID: 24595016 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0090810]
- 60 **Laudanski P,** Charkiewicz R, Kuzmicki M, Szamatowicz J, Charkiewicz A, Niklinski J. MicroRNAs expression profiling of eutopic proliferative endometrium in women with ovarian endometriosis. *Reprod Biol Endocrinol* 2013; **11**: 78 [PMID: 23945042 DOI: 10.1186/1477-7827-11-78]
- 61 **Filigheddu N,** Gregnanin I, Porporato PE, Surico D, Perego B, Galli L, Patrignani C, Graziani A, Surico N. Differential expression of microRNAs between eutopic and ectopic endometrium in ovarian endometriosis. *J Biomed Biotechnol* 2010; **2010**: 369549 [PMID: 20300586 DOI: 10.1155/2010/369549]
- 62 **Wei JJ,** William J, Bulun S. Endometriosis and ovarian cancer: a review of clinical, pathologic, and molecular aspects. *Int J Gynecol Pathol* 2011; **30**: 553-568 [PMID: 21979592 DOI: 10.1097/PGP.0b013e31821f4b85]
- 63 **Sayasneh A,** Tsivos D, Crawford R. Endometriosis and ovarian cancer: a systematic review. *ISRN Obstet Gynecol* 2011; **2011**: 140310 [PMID: 21789283 DOI: 10.5402/2011/140310]
- 64 **Munksgaard PS,** Blaakaer J. The association between endometriosis and ovarian cancer: a review of histological, genetic and molecular alterations. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **124**: 164-169 [PMID: 22032835 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.10.001]
- 65 **Worley MJ,** Welch WR, Berkowitz RS, Ng SW. Endometriosis-associated ovarian cancer: a review of pathogenesis. *Int J Mol Sci* 2013; **14**: 5367-5379 [PMID: 23466883 DOI: 10.3390/ijms14035367]
- 66 **Siufi Neto J,** Kho RM, Siufi DF, Baracat EC, Anderson KS, Abrão MS. Cellular, histologic, and molecular changes associated with endometriosis and ovarian cancer. *J Minim Invasive Gynecol* 2014; **21**: 55-63 [PMID: 23962574 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmig.2013.07.021]
- 67 **Burney RO,** Hamilton AE, Aghajanova L, Vo KC, Nezhat CN, Lessey BA, Giudice LC. MicroRNA expression profiling of eutopic secretory endometrium in women with versus without endometriosis. *Mol Hum Reprod* 2009; **15**: 625-631 [PMID: 19692421 DOI: 10.1093/molehr/gap068]
- 68 **Corney DC,** Hwang CI, Matoso A, Vogt M, Flesken-Nikitin A, Godwin AK, Kamat AA, Sood AK, Ellenson LH, Hermeking H, Nikitin AY. Frequent downregulation of miR-34 family in human ovarian cancers. *Clin Cancer Res* 2010; **16**: 1119-1128 [PMID: 20145172 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-09-2642]
- 69 **Houshdaran S,** Zelenko Z, Irwin JC, Giudice LC. Human endometrial DNA methylome is cycle-dependent and is associated with gene expression regulation. *Mol Endocrinol* 2014; **28**: 1118-1135 [PMID: 24877562 DOI: 10.1210/me.2013-1340]
- 70 **Munro SK,** Farquhar CM, Mitchell MD, Ponnampalam AP. Epigenetic regulation of endometrium during the menstrual cycle. *Mol Hum Reprod* 2010; **16**: 297-310 [PMID: 20139117 DOI: 10.1093/molehr/gaq010]
- 71 **Harada T,** Kaponis A, Iwabe T, Taniguchi F, Makrydimas G, Sofikitis N, Paschopoulos M, Paraskevaidis E, Terakawa N. Apoptosis in human endometrium and endometriosis. *Hum Reprod Update* 2004; **10**: 29-38 [PMID: 15005462 DOI: 10.1093/humupd/dmh007]
- 72 **Kuokkanen S,** Chen B, Ojalvo L, Benard L, Santoro N, Pollard JW. Genomic profiling of microRNAs and messenger RNAs reveals hormonal regulation in microRNA expression in human endometrium. *Biol Reprod* 2010; **82**: 791-801 [PMID: 19864316 DOI: 10.1095/biolreprod.109.081059]
- 73 **Zhao Y,** Li C, Wang M, Su L, Qu Y, Li J, Yu B, Yan M, Yu Y, Liu B, Zhu Z. Decrease of miR-202-3p expression, a novel tumor suppressor, in gastric cancer. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e69756 [PMID: 23936094 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0069756]
- 74 **Carpenter RL,** Lo HW. Hedgehog pathway and GLI1 isoforms in human cancer. *Discov Med* 2012; **13**: 105-113 [PMID: 22369969]
- 75 **Shibuya M.** Vascular endothelial growth factor-dependent and -independent regulation of angiogenesis. *BMB Rep* 2008; **41**: 278-286 [PMID: 18452647 DOI: 10.5483/BMBRep.2008.41.4.278]
- 76 **Cao X,** Geradts J, Dewhirst MW, Lo HW. Upregulation of VEGF-A and CD24 gene expression by the tGLI1 transcription factor contributes to the aggressive behavior of breast cancer cells. *Oncogene* 2012; **31**: 104-115 [PMID: 21666711 DOI: 10.1038/nc.2011.219]
- 77 **Santoni M,** Burattini L, Nabissi M, Morelli MB, Berardi R, Santoni G, Cascinu S. Essential role of Gli proteins in glioblastoma multiforme. *Curr Protein Pept Sci* 2013; **14**: 133-140 [PMID: 23544423 DOI: 10.2174/1389203711314020005]
- 78 **Hawkins SM,** Creighton CJ, Han DY, Zariff A, Anderson ML, Gunaratne PH, Matzuk MM. Functional microRNA involved in endometriosis. *Mol Endocrinol* 2011; **25**: 821-832 [PMID: 21436257 DOI: 10.1210/me.2010-0371]
- 79 **Saare M,** Rekker K, Laisk-Podar T, Sõritsa D, Roost AM, Simm J, Velthut-Meikas A, Samuel K, Metsalu T, Karro H, Sõritsa A, Salumets A, Peters M. High-throughput sequencing approach uncovers the miRNome of peritoneal endometriotic lesions and adjacent healthy tissues. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e112630 [PMID: 25386850 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0112630]
- 80 **Creighton CJ,** Benham AL, Zhu H, Khan MF, Reid JG, Nagaraja AK, Fountain MD, Dziadek O, Han D, Ma L, Kim J, Hawkins SM, Anderson ML, Matzuk MM, Gunaratne PH. Discovery of novel microRNAs in female reproductive tract using next generation sequencing. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e9637 [PMID: 20224791 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0009637]
- 81 **Ng EK,** Wong CL, Ma ES, Kwong A. MicroRNAs as New Players for Diagnosis, Prognosis, and Therapeutic Targets in Breast Cancer. *J Oncol* 2009; **2009**: 305420 [PMID: 19644558 DOI: 10.1155/2009/305420]
- 82 **Mitchell PS,** Parkin RK, Kroh EM, Fritz BR, Wyman SK, Pogosova-Agadjanyan EL, Peterson A, Noteboom J, O'Brian KC, Allen A, Lin DW, Urban N, Drescher CW, Knudsen BS, Stirewalt DL, Gentleman R, Vessella RL, Nelson PS, Martin DB, Tewari M. Circulating microRNAs as stable blood-based markers for cancer detection. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 10513-10518 [PMID: 18663219 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0804549105]
- 83 **Pigati L,** Yaddanapudi SC, Iyengar R, Kim DJ, Hearn SA, Danforth D, Hastings ML, Duelli DM. Selective release of microRNA species from normal and malignant mammary epithelial cells. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e13515 [PMID: 20976003 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0013515]
- 84 **Laschke MW,** Menger MD. In vitro and in vivo approaches to study angiogenesis in the pathophysiology and therapy of endometriosis. *Hum Reprod Update* 2007; **13**: 331-342 [PMID: 20145172 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-09-2642]

- 17347159 DOI: 10.1093/humupd/dmm006]
- 85 **Gilabert-Estellés J**, Ramón LA, España F, Gilabert J, Vila V, Réganon E, Castelló R, Chirivella M, Estellés A. Expression of angiogenic factors in endometriosis: relationship to fibrinolytic and metalloproteinase systems. *Hum Reprod* 2007; **22**: 2120-2127 [PMID: 17609243 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/dem149]
  - 86 **Gilabert-Estellés J**, Estellés A, Gilabert J, Castelló R, España F, Falcó C, Romeu A, Chirivella M, Zorio E, Aznar J. Expression of several components of the plasminogen activator and matrix metalloproteinase systems in endometriosis. *Hum Reprod* 2003; **18**: 1516-1522 [PMID: 12832381 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/deg300]
  - 87 **Doebele C**, Bonauer A, Fischer A, Scholz A, Hofmann WK, Zeiher AM, Dimmeler S. Members of the microRNA-17-92 cluster exhibit a cell-intrinsic antiangiogenic function in endothelial cells. *Blood* 2010; **115**: 4944-4950 [PMID: 20299512 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2010-01-264812]
  - 88 **Neve A**, Cantatore FP, Maruotti N, Corrado A, Ribatti D. Extracellular matrix modulates angiogenesis in physiological and pathological conditions. *Biomed Res Int* 2014; **2014**: 756078 [PMID: 24949467 DOI: 10.1155/2014/756078]
  - 89 **Ramón L**, Gilabert-Estellés J, Castelló R, Gilabert J, España F, Romeu A, Chirivella M, Aznar J, Estellés A. mRNA analysis of several components of the plasminogen activator and matrix metalloproteinase systems in endometriosis using a real-time quantitative RT-PCR assay. *Hum Reprod* 2005; **20**: 272-278 [PMID: 15579491 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/deh571]
  - 90 **Klemmt PA**, Carver JG, Koninckx P, McVeigh EJ, Mardon HJ. Endometrial cells from women with endometriosis have increased adhesion and proliferative capacity in response to extracellular matrix components: towards a mechanistic model for endometriosis progression. *Hum Reprod* 2007; **22**: 3139-3147 [PMID: 17921481 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/dem262]
  - 91 **Rocha AL**, Reis FM, Taylor RN. Angiogenesis and endometriosis. *Obstet Gynecol Int* 2013; **2013**: 859619 [PMID: 23766765 DOI: 10.1155/2013/859619]
  - 92 **Chen Y**, Gao DY, Huang L. In vivo delivery of miRNAs for cancer therapy: challenges and strategies. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2015; **81**: 128-141 [PMID: 24859533 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2014.05.009]
  - 93 **Husby GK**, Haugen RS, Moen MH. Diagnostic delay in women with pain and endometriosis. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand* 2003; **82**: 649-653 [PMID: 12790847 DOI: 10.1034/j.1600-0412.2003.00168.x]
  - 94 **Suryawanshi S**, Vlad AM, Lin HM, Mantia-Smaldone G, Laskey R, Lee M, Lin Y, Donnellan N, Klein-Patel M, Lee T, Mansuria S, Elishaev E, Budiu R, Edwards RP, Huang X. Plasma microRNAs as novel biomarkers for endometriosis and endometriosis-associated ovarian cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2013; **19**: 1213-1224 [PMID: 23362326 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-12-2726]
  - 95 **Taylor DD**, Gercel-Taylor C. MicroRNA signatures of tumor-derived exosomes as diagnostic biomarkers of ovarian cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2008; **110**: 13-21 [PMID: 18589210 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2008.04.033]
  - 96 **Weber JA**, Baxter DH, Zhang S, Huang DY, Huang KH, Lee MJ, Galas DJ, Wang K. The microRNA spectrum in 12 body fluids. *Clin Chem* 2010; **56**: 1733-1741 [PMID: 20847327 DOI: 10.1373/clinchem.2010.147405]
  - 97 **Shah MY**, Calin GA. The mix of two worlds: non-coding RNAs and hormones. *Nucleic Acid Ther* 2013; **23**: 2-8 [PMID: 23051203 DOI: 10.1089/nat.2012.0375]
  - 98 **Kosaka N**, Yoshioka Y, Hagiwara K, Tominaga N, Katsuda T, Ochiya T. Trash or Treasure: extracellular microRNAs and cell-to-cell communication. *Front Genet* 2013; **4**: 173 [PMID: 24046777 DOI: 10.3389/fgene.2013.00173]
  - 99 **Xu L**, Yang BF, Ai J. MicroRNA transport: a new way in cell communication. *J Cell Physiol* 2013; **228**: 1713-1719 [PMID: 23460497 DOI: 10.1002/jcp.24344]
  - 100 **Wahlgren J**, De L Karlson T, Brissler M, Vaziri Sani F, Teleme E, Sunnerhagen P, Valadi H. Plasma exosomes can deliver exogenous short interfering RNA to monocytes and lymphocytes. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2012; **40**: e130 [PMID: 22618874 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gks463]
  - 101 **Mayr M**, Zampetaki A, Willeit P, Willeit J, Kiechl S. MicroRNAs within the continuum of postgenomics biomarker discovery. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol* 2013; **33**: 206-214 [PMID: 23325478 DOI: 10.1161/ATVBAHA.112.300141]
  - 102 **Cho S**, Mutlu L, Grechukhina O, Taylor HS. Circulating microRNAs as potential biomarkers for endometriosis. *Fertil Steril* 2015; **103**: 1252-1260.e1 [PMID: 25772772 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2015.02.013]
  - 103 **Jia SZ**, Yang Y, Lang J, Sun P, Leng J. Plasma miR-17-5p, miR-20a and miR-22 are down-regulated in women with endometriosis. *Hum Reprod* 2013; **28**: 322-330 [PMID: 23203215 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/des413]
  - 104 **Resnick KE**, Alder H, Hagan JP, Richardson DL, Croce CM, Cohn DE. The detection of differentially expressed microRNAs from the serum of ovarian cancer patients using a novel real-time PCR platform. *Gynecol Oncol* 2009; **112**: 55-59 [PMID: 18954897 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2008.08.036]
  - 105 **Häusler SF**, Keller A, Chandran PA, Ziegler K, Zipp K, Heuer S, Krockenberger M, Engel JB, Hönig A, Scheffler M, Dietl J, Wischhusen J. Whole blood-derived miRNA profiles as potential new tools for ovarian cancer screening. *Br J Cancer* 2010; **103**: 693-700 [PMID: 20683447 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6605833]
  - 106 **Wang WT**, Zhao YN, Han BW, Hong SJ, Chen YQ. Circulating microRNAs identified in a genome-wide serum microRNA expression analysis as noninvasive biomarkers for endometriosis. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2013; **98**: 281-289 [PMID: 23118427 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2012-2415]
  - 107 **Grechukhina O**, Petracco R, Popkhadze S, Massasa E, Paranjape T, Chan E, Flores I, Weidhaas JB, Taylor HS. A polymorphism in a let-7 microRNA binding site of KRAS in women with endometriosis. *EMBO Mol Med* 2012; **4**: 206-217 [PMID: 22307873 DOI: 10.1002/emmm.201100200]
  - 108 **Petracco R**, Grechukhina O, Popkhadze S, Massasa E, Zhou Y, Taylor HS. MicroRNA 135 regulates HOXA10 expression in endometriosis. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2011; **96**: E1925-E1933 [PMID: 21956427 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2011-1231]
  - 109 **Rekker K**, Saare M, Roost AM, Salumets A, Peters M. Circulating microRNA Profile throughout the menstrual cycle. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e81166 [PMID: 24244734 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0081166]
  - 110 **Rekker K**, Saare M, Roost AM, Kaart T, Sõritsa D, Karro H, Sõritsa A, Simón C, Salumets A, Peters M. Circulating miR-200-family microRNAs have altered plasma levels in patients with endometriosis and vary with blood collection time. *Fertil Steril* 2015; **104**: 938-946.e2 [PMID: 26206343 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2015.06.029]
  - 111 **Valadi H**, Ekström K, Bossios A, Sjöstrand M, Lee JJ, Lötvall JO. Exosome-mediated transfer of mRNAs and microRNAs is a novel mechanism of genetic exchange between cells. *Nat Cell Biol* 2007; **9**: 654-659 [PMID: 17486113 DOI: 10.1038/ncb1596]
  - 112 **Becker CM**, Laufer MR, Stratton P, Hummelshoj L, Missmer SA, Zondervan KT, Adamson GD. World Endometriosis Research Foundation Endometriosis Phenome and Biobanking Harmonisation Project: I. Surgical phenotype data collection in endometriosis research. *Fertil Steril* 2014; **102**: 1213-1222 [PMID: 25150390 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2014.07.709]
  - 113 **Vitonis AF**, Vincent K, Rahmioglu N, Fassbender A, Buck Louis GM, Hummelshoj L, Giudice LC, Stratton P, Adamson GD, Becker CM, Zondervan KT, Missmer SA. World Endometriosis Research Foundation Endometriosis Phenome and Biobanking Harmonization Project: II. Clinical and covariate phenotype data collection in endometriosis research. *Fertil Steril* 2014; **102**: 1223-1232 [PMID: 25256930 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2014.07.1244]
  - 114 **Rahmioglu N**, Fassbender A, Vitonis AF, Tworoger SS, Hummelshoj L, D'Hooghe TM, Adamson GD, Giudice LC, Becker CM, Zondervan KT, Missmer SA. World Endometriosis Research Foundation Endometriosis Phenome and Biobanking Harmonization Project: III. Fluid biospecimen collection, processing, and storage in endometriosis research. *Fertil Steril* 2014; **102**: 1233-1243 [PMID: 25256930 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2014.07.1244]



25256929 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2014.07.1208]

- 115 **Fassbender A**, Rahmioglu N, Vitonis AF, Viganò P, Giudice LC, D'Hooghe TM, Hummelshoj L, Adamson GD, Becker CM, Missmer SA, Zondervan KT. World Endometriosis Research Foundation

Endometriosis Phenome and Biobanking Harmonisation Project: IV. Tissue collection, processing, and storage in endometriosis research. *Fertil Steril* 2014; **102**: 1244-1253 [PMID: 25256928 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2014.07.1209]

**P- Reviewer:** Liang H, Lynn Stewart S, Rovas L, Sun J  
**S- Editor:** Kong JX **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Wu HL



## Pathobiological role of MUC16 mucin (CA125) in ovarian cancer: Much more than a tumor biomarker

Alain Piché

Alain Piché, Département de Microbiologie et Infectiologie, Faculté de Médecine, Université de Sherbrooke, Sherbrooke J1H 5N1, Canada

Author contributions: Piché A wrote the paper.

Supported by Internal Funding from Université de Sherbrooke.

Conflict-of-interest statement: Author declares no conflict of interests for this article.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Alain Piché, MD, Département de Microbiologie et Infectiologie, Faculté de Médecine, Université de Sherbrooke, 3001, 12ième Avenue Nord, Sherbrooke J1H 5N1, Canada. [alain.piche@usherbrooke.ca](mailto:alain.piche@usherbrooke.ca)  
Telephone: +1-819-3461110-75734  
Fax: +1-819-5645392

Received: August 24, 2015

Peer-review started: August 28, 2015

First decision: November 6, 2015

Revised: November 11, 2015

Accepted: December 8, 2015

Article in press: December 11, 2015

Published online: February 10, 2016

### Abstract

MUC16 (CA125) has remained the mainstay for ovarian cancer assessment and management since the early 1980's. With the exception of HE4, it is the only reliable serum biomarker for ovarian cancer. MUC16 belongs to a family of high-molecular weight glycoproteins

known as mucins. The mucin family is comprised of large secreted transmembrane proteins that includes MUC1, MUC4 and MUC16. These mucins are often overexpressed in a variety of malignancies. MUC1 and MUC4 have been shown to contribute to breast and pancreatic tumorigenesis. Recent studies have uncovered unique biological functions for MUC16 that go beyond its role as a biomarker for ovarian cancer. Here, we provide an overview of the literature to highlight the importance of MUC16 in ovarian cancer tumorigenesis. We focus on the growing literature describing the role of MUC16 in proliferation, migration, metastasis, tumorigenesis and drug resistance. Accumulating experimental evidence suggest that the C-terminal domain of MUC16 is critical to mediate these effects. The importance of MUC16 in the pathogenesis of ovarian cancer emphasizes the need to fully understand the signaling capabilities of MUC16 C-terminal domain to develop more efficient strategies for the successful treatment of ovarian cancer.

**Key words:** MUC16; CA125; Mucin; Ovarian cancer; Tumorigenesis; Biomarker

© **The Author(s) 2016.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** MUC16/CA125 has been a mainstay biomarker for ovarian cancer but its pathobiological role has remained mostly unknown. Recent literature has shown that MUC16 is much more than a biomarker. MUC16 has oncogenic properties and plays an important role in tumorigenesis. Here, we will review the current knowledge regarding the oncogenic role of MUC16.

Piché A. Pathobiological role of MUC16 mucin (CA125) in ovarian cancer: Much more than a tumor biomarker. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 39-49 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/39.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.39>

## INTRODUCTION

Cancer antigen 125 (CA125) is the most widely used and the best characterized biomarker for the management of epithelial ovarian cancer (EOC)<sup>[1-16]</sup>. CA125 was initially identified in 1981 as an antigen present in the serum of patients with EOC<sup>[17,18]</sup>. However, it was not until 2001 that the gene was cloned and identified as MUC16<sup>[19-22]</sup>. It was later realized that the CA125 antibody recognizes a repeating epitope located in the extracellular domain of MUC16<sup>[5,19,20]</sup>. For the purpose of this review, the term CA125 will be used to designate the cleaved extracellular domain that can be found in serum of EOC and the term MUC16 will designate the full length mucin glycoprotein. For CA125 to be detected in the serum of EOC patients, the MUC16 glycoprotein undergoes a proteolytic cleavage resulting in the release of most of the extracellular domain from the cell surface. Serum levels of CA125 are routinely used in clinic to monitor patients with EOC<sup>[2,7,9,10,12,13,15,18]</sup>. There is indeed a strong correlation between rising and falling levels of serum CA125 with the progression and regression of the disease. Although the MUC16 mucin may be expressed in other cancers, its use in clinic has been mostly limited to patients with EOC.

Despite the fact that serum CA125 has been the mainstay of EOC assessment and management since the early 1980's, there are considerable gaps in our knowledge regarding the biological functions of MUC16 in normal physiology and particularly in oncogenesis. Not surprisingly, most of the early studies (before 2001) have focused on the clinical applicability of CA125 as a biomarker. However, the cloning of *MUC16* gene and the characterization of its structure, which revealed that MUC16 belong to membrane-bound mucins, has encouraged studies aiming to elucidate its physiological normal function as well as its role in malignant conditions. Because other membrane-bound mucins, such as MUC1 and MUC4, have oncogenic properties, it has been hypothesized that MUC16 may possess oncogenic capabilities as well. However, the very large size of the molecule (MUC16 is the biggest mucin identified to date) has hampered the characterization of MUC16 functional domains leading to an incomplete understanding of the physiological and pathological roles of MUC16. Nonetheless, in the last few years, a number of studies have begun to unravel the biological functions of MUC16. In particular, these studies have demonstrated that MUC16 possesses oncogenic properties. Here, we will review the current knowledge regarding the oncologic role of MUC16 in ovarian cancer. Our discussion will focus on cancer cells signaling, invasion and metastasis, and on regulation of drug-induced apoptosis. This review will also highlight gaps in our knowledge to provide a framework for future research studies.

## CA125 AS A BIOMARKER

CA125 is the most widely studied serum biomarker

for EOC. CA125 has been recognized as a tumor-associated antigen based on the characterization of the OC125 monoclonal antibody raised against the human ovarian cancer cell line OVCA433 in 1981<sup>[17,18]</sup>. This antibody detected a molecule that was named CA125 in the serum from patients with EOC<sup>[17]</sup>. It was later realized that CA125 is an epitope located on a repeated extracellular domain of MUC16 mucin<sup>[5,19,20]</sup>. Measurement of serum CA125 is an important part of the clinical management for EOC patients<sup>[2,10]</sup>. Its clinical utility has been evaluated as a screening test for the early detection of EOC, to distinguish benign diseases from malignant conditions, and to monitor EOC progression and regression following treatment.

The early detection of EOC remains a clinical challenge and minimal progress has been achieved to detect early diseases, which are often clinically asymptomatic, at a more curable stage. The use of serum CA125, as a single biomarker, for the early detection of EOC is tempered by several factors. First, MUC16 glycoprotein may be expressed in various malignant and non-malignant conditions. MUC16 is expressed at low levels in the normal airway epithelium and levels can increase in some chronic conditions such as cystic fibrosis<sup>[23-25]</sup> or vary with dexamethasone treatment<sup>[26]</sup>. MUC16 is expressed at the apical surface of the ocular and conjunctival epithelium where it is part of the glycocalyx protecting corneal cells from bacterial infections and dryness<sup>[27-30]</sup>. Immunohistochemistry of human tissues using the OC125 antibody detected MUC16 expression in fetal coelomic epithelia and its derivatives such as Müllerian duct, fallopian tube, endometrium, endocervix<sup>[8,14]</sup>. MUC16 is expressed by mesothelial cells of the peritoneum, the pleura and the pericardium<sup>[8,14]</sup>. Furthermore, CA125 serum levels can be elevated in various benign diseases including menstruation, first trimester pregnancy, endometriosis, adenomyosis, salpingitis, uterine fibroids, chronic renal failure or in inflammation of the pleura, peritoneum or pericardium<sup>[31-34]</sup>. However, MUC16 expression is not found in normal adult colon, rectum, cervix, small intestine, liver, pancreatic ducts, spleen, kidney, skin and ovaries<sup>[35]</sup>. Secondly, the expression of MUC16 in EOC tissues varies according to the histotype. MUC16 is expressed by 56% to 85% of serous, 65% of endometrioid, 40% of clear cell and 36% of undifferentiated adenocarcinomas of the ovary, but by only 12% of mucinous ovarian cancers<sup>[6,7,35]</sup>. Therefore, elevated levels of CA125 are most strongly associated with serous EOC subtypes and its expression is more limited in other subtypes. Consequently, the detection of serum CA125 is notably less sensitive for subtypes other than serous EOC. MUC16 is also detected in normal airways as well as in a small percentage of invasive breast carcinomas, lung carcinomas and pancreatic carcinomas<sup>[23,36-39]</sup>. Therefore, measurements of serum CA125 levels, as a single modality, have a limited utility for screening of EOC because of its lack of sensitivity and specificity.

The clinical utility of monitoring of serum CA125, as a screening test, has been evaluated by the ovarian component of The Prostate, Lung, Colorectal and Ovarian (PLCO) Cancer Screening Trial<sup>[40]</sup>. Results from this study showed that annual screening with CA125 and transvaginal ultrasound had no mortality benefit. Furthermore, the majority of the screen detected cancers presented in advanced stages. Another large ovarian cancer screening trial is currently ongoing, the UK Collaborative Trial of Ovarian Cancer Screening. The multimodal arm of this study utilizes the Risk of Ovarian Cancer Algorithm (ROCA) to predict the probability of EOC as a first-line screen<sup>[41]</sup>. The ROCA is based on the slope of serial serum MUC16 measurements. According to ROCA, patients are classified as low, intermediate and high risk of developing EOC. When the risk is intermediate or high, patients undergo a transvaginal ultrasound. Results of this trial are expected soon and it thus remains to be seen whether CA125 serum levels will be useful for screening of ovarian cancer in the general population.

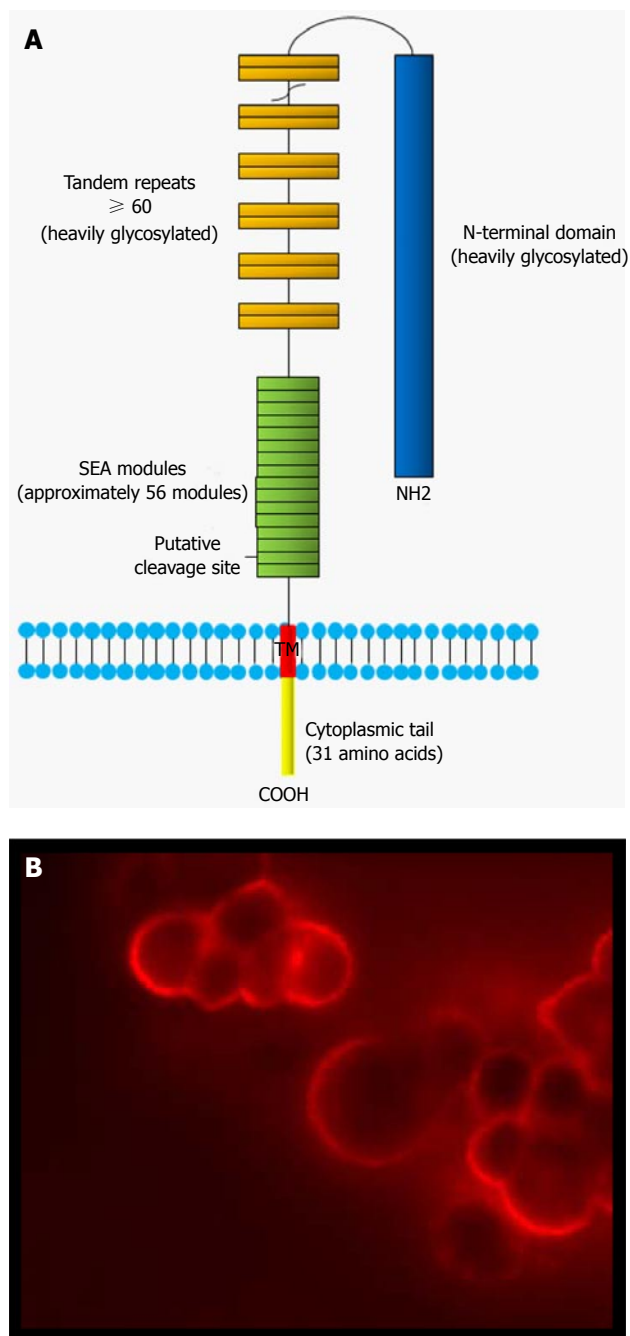
Another potential application of CA125 serum monitoring, is its ability to distinguish benign gynecological conditions from EOC. However, as mentioned previously, the expression of MUC16 in a number of benign gynecological conditions limits the utilization of serum CA125 as a single biomarker. To overcome this limitation, a number of risk prediction scores have been developed to identify women that have high risk of EOC. Examples of risk prediction models include: (1) the Risk of Malignancy Index combines serum CA125 levels with ultrasound and menopausal status to identify women at high risk of having EOC<sup>[42]</sup>; (2) the Risk of Ovarian Malignancy Algorithm (ROMA), which uses menopausal status with CA125 and HE4 serum values<sup>[43-45]</sup>; and (3) OVA1, which uses CA125,  $\beta$ 2-microglobulin, apolipoprotein A1, transthyretin and transferrin<sup>[46]</sup>. The use of ROMA added more accuracy for differentiating the benign and malignant conditions compared to CA125 alone. Other algorithms are being investigated and there is an intense effort to search for new potential biomarkers for EOC. Recently, the combination of serum CA125 with IL-6 ascites levels was evaluated for its ability to discriminate between benign conditions and EOC<sup>[47]</sup>. Despite encouraging data, further evaluation is needed to determine the clinical utility of these panels of markers.

The clinical utility of serum CA125 has been best validated for monitoring of therapy as well as detection of recurrence. Indeed, CA125 is the only biomarker currently recommended for the monitoring of therapy and for the detection of recurrent diseases. Elevated levels of serum CA125 are common in patients with advanced disease of serous histiotype (approximately 90%). It was shown by several groups that rising and falling levels of serum CA125 correlate with progression and regression of the disease and this formed the basis for monitoring CA125 serum levels for patient follow-up<sup>[14,15,18]</sup>. However, up to 20% of patients with

advanced EOC have normal serum level of CA125. CA125 nadir serum values were associated with a significantly longer progression-free survival (PFS) and overall survival<sup>[9,13]</sup>. Pretreatment CA125 serum level is an independent predictor of PFS in patients with advanced EOC who received a standard chemotherapy regimen<sup>[16]</sup>.

## CLONING OF *MUC16* GENE

The cloning of the *MUC16* gene in 2001 revealed that MUC16 is a tethered mucin<sup>[19-22]</sup>. The deduced amino acid sequence of MUC16 demonstrated that it shares common features with other membrane-bounded mucins with high serine, threonine and proline contents. MUC16 therefore belongs to the family of membrane-bound mucins. Other membrane-associated mucins include MUC1, MUC3A, MUC3B, MUC4, MUC12, MUC13, MUC15, MUC16, MUC17 and MUC20<sup>[48]</sup>. With a molecular weight of > 2 MDa, MUC16 is the largest membrane-bounded mucin known to date<sup>[21,22]</sup>. This glycoprotein is composed of a heavily glycosylated N-terminal domain, a large multiple repeat domain (up to 60 tandem repeats of 156 amino acids each), an ectodomain proximal to the putative cleavage site, a transmembrane domain (TM) and a small cytoplasmic domain of 31 amino acids<sup>[21]</sup> (Figure 1). MUC16 extracellular domain possesses much longer repeats (156 amino acids) as compared to MUC4 (16 amino acids) and MUC1 (20 amino acids). The N-terminal domain (12068 amino acids) and the repeat domain are heavily glycosylated with both O- and N-linked oligosaccharides<sup>[22]</sup>. In contrast to other membrane-bound mucins such as MUC1, which harbor a single sea urchin sperm protein, enterokinase and agrin (SEA) domain, MUC16 contains approximately 56 SEA domains (Figure 1)<sup>[49,50]</sup>. SEA domains consist of about 120 amino acids. Sequence analysis of MUC16 SEA modules showed that they display some sequence variability<sup>[50,51]</sup>. The second MUC16 SEA domain, proximal to the TM, however is relatively conserved and most closely resembles the SEA domain found in other mucins. Thus, MUC16 was speculated to contain a putative proteolytic cleavage site located in a SEA domain proximal to the membrane which could be involved in releasing the ectodomain<sup>[21]</sup>. Direct experimental validation has been lacking. However, a recent study has challenged this model. The investigators suggest that MUC16 cleavage occurs outside the proximal SEA domains and within the 12 extracellular amino acids proximal to the TM domain<sup>[52,53]</sup>. According to these authors, MUC16 cleavage takes place in the acidic pH of Golgi/post-Golgi compartments<sup>[54]</sup>. Notably, these authors did not find any evidence of intramembrane proteolysis with their constructs. The ectodomain of MUC16 has been reported to be released by metalloproteases [matrix metalloproteinase 7 (MMP-7), MMP-9, ZmpC] and neutrophil elastase<sup>[28,55]</sup>. ZmpC, a zinc metalloproteinase secreted by *S. pneumoniae*, selectively cleaves the ectodomain of



**Figure 1 Schematic structure of MUC16 mucin.** A: The major domains of MUC16 include the N-terminal domain, the tandem repeat domain and the C-terminal domain. The SEA modules contain a putative proteolytic cleavage site which divides MUC16 in two subunits. The extracellular larger subunit consists of the N-terminal (> 12000 a.a.) and tandem repeat domains (156 a.a. each), and are heavily glycosylated. The smaller subunit contains SEA domains, a transmembrane domain (TM) and the cytoplasmic tail (31 a.a.); B: MUC16 is usually expressed at the apical surface of normal epithelial cells. In EOC cells, this pattern of expression is lost and MUC16 is expressed through the entire surface of the tumor cells. The micrograph represents OVCAR3 cells probed with M11 antibody. SEA: Sea-urchin sperm protein, enterokinase and agrin; a.a: Amino acids.

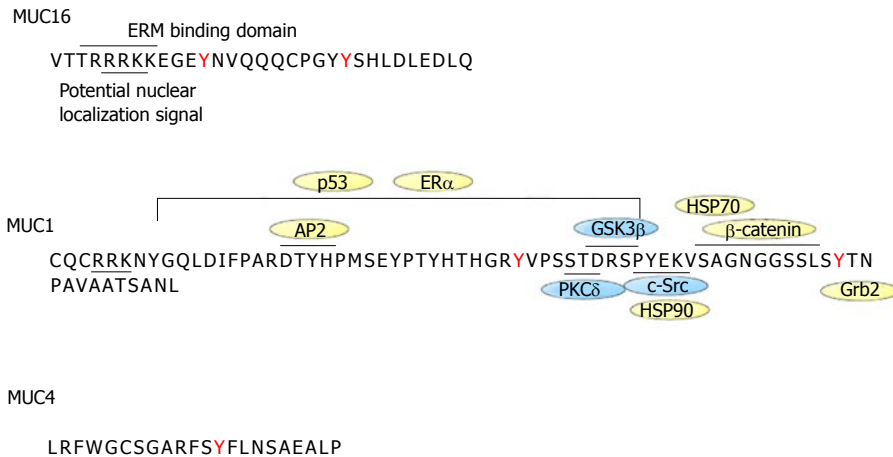
MUC16 mucin from conjunctival and corneal epithelial cells<sup>[55]</sup>. The SEA domain is presumably the cleavage site for these proteases<sup>[28]</sup>. These findings contrast with that of Das *et al*<sup>[54]</sup> which showed that MUC16 cleavage was independent of neutrophil elastase and MMP-7.

Post-translation modifications such as glycosylation can potentially regulate the release of MUC16 ectodomain and could explain these different findings. Intriguingly, mutation of Ser106Ala or Thr84/85Ala in the cytoplasmic tail did not affect the cleavage of MUC16<sup>[54]</sup>. According to these results, it would mean that there is no requirement for cytoplasmic cues for MUC16 extracellular cleavage. This is unexpected because previous studies showed that the phosphorylation of MUC16 cytoplasmic tail (Ser/Thr phosphorylation) has been associated with its secretion<sup>[56]</sup>. The secretion of MUC16 was also reported to be stimulated by epidermal growth factor (EGF) or tyrosine phosphatases<sup>[57]</sup>. Its shedding is decreased by glucocorticoids<sup>[26]</sup>. One limitation of the study by Das *et al*<sup>[54]</sup> is that, because of the lack of specific antibodies to MUC16 CT, they were not able to demonstrate cleavage of endogenous MUC16 in ovarian cancer cells to validate their observations, particularly in the context where most of the data were generated in non-ovarian cancer cell lines. Therefore, although MUC16 cleavage may transit in the Golgi before it reaches the cell surface, it is possible that its cleavage may also be triggered once the full length MUC16 is anchored in the cell membrane. The findings of Das *et al*<sup>[54]</sup>, if confirmed, have important implications from a clinical standpoint. Since the cleavage of MUC16 appears to occur before it reaches the plasma membrane, antibodies raised against CA125 (extracellular portion of MUC16) may not be the most effective means to assess expression of MUC16 and could have been one of the reasons for the limited success in clinical studies of CA125 monoclonal antibodies<sup>[58-62]</sup>.

Unlike MUC1 and MUC4, MUC16 lacks an EGF-like domain. Through their EGF-like motif located at C-terminal domain (extracellular portion), MUC1 and MUC4 bind to growth factor receptor tyrosine kinases (RTKs) such as erbB family and fibroblast growth factor receptor 3<sup>[63-66]</sup>. The formation of heterodimer with RTKs causes cross-phosphorylation of their respective cytoplasmic domain leading to the activation of various signaling pathways<sup>[67]</sup>. Because MUC16 lacks an RTK binding motif in its C-terminal domain, it is not clear whether MUC16-induced signaling is affected by RTKs although MUC16 extracellular domain shedding from the cell surface is stimulated by EGF. Consistent with the lack of an RTK binding motif, the intracellular interaction between MUC16 and  $\beta$ -catenin was not affected by EGF<sup>[68]</sup>.

MUC16 31 amino acids long cytoplasmic tail (CT) contains serine/threonine/tyrosine residues that serve as potential phosphorylation sites. MUC16 CT also contains a polybasic sequence of amino acids (RRRKK), which is predicted to bind to the ezrin/radixin/moesin (ERM) family of proteins (Figure 2). This motif is not found in MUC1 and MUC4. The ERM proteins can interact with numerous membrane-associated proteins and the actin cytoskeleton. In line with this, MUC16 was recently shown to interact with E-cadherin and  $\beta$ -catenin,





**Figure 2 Sequence of MUC1, MUC4 and MUC16 cytoplasmic tails.** The intracellular sequence of the different mucins is shown along with protein interaction sites. MUC1 is the best characterized mucin. MUC1 cytoplasmic tail interacts with c-Src, GSK3 $\beta$ , PKC $\delta$ ,  $\beta$ -catenin, p53, ER $\alpha$ , HSP70/90, Grb2, AP-2. Proteins with kinase activity are in blue whereas those without kinase activity are in yellow. HSP70 binds to MUC1 cytoplasmic tail in the same region as  $\beta$ -catenin. HSP90 binding to MUC1 depends on c-Src-induced Y-46 phosphorylation. MUC16 cytoplasmic tail has an ERM motif for potential interaction with the cytoskeleton. Both MUC1 and MUC16 contain a potential nuclear localization signal motif. MUC4 has no known interaction binding partners. EMR: Ezrin/radixin/moesin.

causing alterations in the actin cytoskeleton<sup>[68]</sup>. It remains unclear however whether MUC16/ $\beta$ -catenin and MUC16/E-cadherin interactions are mediated through the ERM motif of the MUC16 CT. Janus kinases (JAKs), which are non-receptor tyrosine kinases, contain an ERM domain. Previous studies showed that MUC16 co-immunoprecipitates with JAK2 in breast cancer cells resulting in the activation of STAT3, which may be involved in breast cancer development<sup>[69]</sup>.

MUC1 cytoplasmic tail has been shown to bind to  $\beta$ -catenin and a serine-rich SXXXXXSSL motif in MUC1 CT is responsible for this interaction *in vitro*<sup>[70-72]</sup>. This motif is notably absent in MUC16. Interestingly however, the binding of MUC1 to  $\beta$ -catenin in cells was independent of the serine-rich motif<sup>[72]</sup>. These observations suggest that MUC16 interaction with  $\beta$ -catenin is mediated by an indirect mechanism, probably through another protein.

The positively charged R-K rich region of MUC16 CT also constitutes a putative nuclear localization motif<sup>[67]</sup>. Up until recently, evidence were lacking to support nuclear localization of MUC16 CT. However, a recent study demonstrated that MUC16 CT is cleaved from the cell surface and co-localized with JAK2 in the nucleus<sup>[52]</sup>. MUC16 CT-mediated increased nuclear JAK2 leads to up regulation of LMO2 and NANOG, two proteins shown to induce stem cell-like properties emphasizing the signaling capabilities of MUC16's CT domain<sup>[52]</sup>.

## MUC16 AND TUMORIGENICITY OF CANCER CELLS

MUC16 is overexpressed by most serous EOC, by fallopian tube cancers and by cancers of the uterus<sup>[6,11,32,38]</sup>. Consistent with the role of MUC16 in tumorigenicity, overexpression of *MUC16* mRNA and amplification of genomic regions encoding *MUC16* DNA have been observed in The Cancer Genome Atlas (TCGA) ovarian

cancer project that included 316 cases of serous EOC<sup>[73]</sup>. However, MUC16 expression was not correlated with overall survival or resistance. MUC16 is also aberrantly expressed by several other malignancies, including cancer of the lung, pancreas and breast. Along with MUC16, overexpression of other membrane-bound mucins, such as MUC1 and MUC4, is common in breast and pancreatic cancers<sup>[74]</sup>. Interestingly, both MUC1 and MUC4 mucins have been shown to possess oncogenic properties and promoted proliferation, invasion and metastasis in pancreatic cancer models<sup>[75-77]</sup>. These observations suggested that MUC16 could play a role in ovarian cancer progression as well as in other cancers.

Indeed, there are now several studies demonstrating that MUC16 C-terminal domain enhanced proliferation, migration, invasion and tumorigenicity of ovarian, breast and pancreatic cancer cell lines. The first study demonstrating the tumorigenic-enhancing properties of MUC16 was published by Thériault *et al*<sup>[78]</sup> in 2011. In this study, the knockdown of MUC16 in MUC16 overexpressing EOC cell line OVCAR3 decreased tumorigenicity as shown by the decreased number of colonies in soft agar and the reduction of *in vivo* tumor growth. In the same study, the enforced expression of MUC16 C-terminal domain (last 284 C-terminal residues) enhanced soft agar colony formation and tumor growth in nude mice. Consistently, intraperitoneal injection of MUC16 C-terminal domain-expressing tumor cells significantly reduced the survival of SCID mice compared to those injected with vector-expressing controls<sup>[78]</sup>. Subsequently, Lakshmanan *et al*<sup>[69]</sup> showed that MUC16 knockdown in overexpressing breast cancer cell lines decreased cell proliferation and *in vivo* tumor growth. Similarly, Reinartz *et al*<sup>[79]</sup> demonstrated that MUC16 knockdown in ovarian and breast cancer cells was associated with decreased migration and invasion. In line with these observations, more recent studies showed that ectopic expression of MUC16 C-terminal

domain (last 114 C-terminal residues) enhanced proliferation, migration and *in vivo* tumor growth in pancreatic cancer cells whereas MUC16 knockdown reduced migration and invasion in these cancer cells<sup>[52,80]</sup>. Collectively, these studies clearly support a critical role for MUC16 in tumor growth and metastasis. Most importantly, expression of the C-terminal domain appears to be sufficient to mediate these effects.

The mechanism by which MUC16 enhances tumorigenicity of cancer cells remains poorly defined however. Although MUC16, as for MUC1 and MUC4, enhances tumorigenicity in cancer cells, the cytoplasmic tails of these three mucins are poorly conserved<sup>[50]</sup>. Size and amino acid sequence considerably vary suggesting a variety of functions in cell signaling. The ectopic expression of MUC16 C-terminal domain induces an epithelial to mesenchymal transition which has been associated with tumorigenesis and tumor progression<sup>[78]</sup>. Constitutive MUC16 C-terminal expression was associated with reduced E-cadherin expression which may enhance metastasis<sup>[81]</sup>. In addition, both Akt and ERK pathways may be activated by constitutive expression of MUC16 C-terminal domain<sup>[69,82]</sup>. The precise role these pathways was not however further investigated and therefore it is not clear whether their activation is essential to mediate MUC16 effects on tumor progression. However, Akt and ERK activation is frequently observed in serous OC and have been previously shown to be important for tumor progression<sup>[73,83,84]</sup>.

Ectopic expression of MUC16 C-terminal domain in cancer cells has been associated with altered gene expression profile with increased expression of genes coding for proteins involved in invasion such as MMP2, MMP9, CXCL12 and CDH1<sup>[85]</sup>. MMPs are major proteolytic enzymes that are involved in cancer cell migration, invasion, and metastasis<sup>[86]</sup>. The CXCL12/CXCR7 axis plays an important role in ovarian cancer as it enhances cancer cell invasion by up-regulating MMP9 expression through the MAPK pathway<sup>[87]</sup>. MUC16 knockdown in breast cancer cells was associated with decreased expression of cyclin B1 and D1, both involved in regulation of cell cycle control<sup>[69]</sup>. The cytoplasmic domain of transmembrane mucins is usually embedded in the apical membrane of normal epithelial cells. However, upon transformation, the cytoplasmic tail of mucins such as MUC1 accumulates in the cytoplasm<sup>[88-90]</sup>. As mentioned above, there is evidence that MUC16 cytoplasmic tail gets cleaved and translocates in the nucleus<sup>[52]</sup>. However, whether this cleavage is required for MUC16 to enhance tumorigenicity remains to be determined.

## MUC16 AND TRANSFORMATION

Membrane-bound mucins such as MUC1 and MUC4 possess transforming properties<sup>[91,92]</sup>. For example, when the C-terminal portion of MUC1 was stably transfected into 3Y1 fibroblast cells, soft agar colonies

and subcutaneous tumors in nude mice were readily obtained<sup>[91]</sup>. Interestingly, MUC16 is not expressed by normal ovarian surface epithelial (OSE) cell but its expression is induced in transformed OSE cells<sup>[93]</sup>. These observations suggest that MUC16 may play an important role at early stages in the development of EOC. Two recent studies indeed confirmed the transforming properties of MUC16. Giannakouros *et al*<sup>[82]</sup> stably expressed MUC16 C-terminal domain (last 284 C-terminal residues) and a similar construct lacking most of the cytoplasmic domain in immortalized NIH3T3 mouse fibroblast cells using lentiviral vectors. It was observed that MUC16 C-terminal domain-expressing cells displayed enhanced anchorage-dependent and -independent growth and enhanced the formation of sub-cutaneous tumor nodules in athymic nude mice<sup>[82]</sup>. Notably, these effects were abolished by the deletion of the cytoplasmic tail. In line with these observations, Rao *et al*<sup>[85]</sup>, using constructs containing either the last 114 C-terminal amino acids or last 344 C-terminal amino acids, showed that both constructs significantly enhanced the number of soft agar colonies compared to vector only in NIH3T3 cells. In addition, both constructs formed larger sub-cutaneous tumors relative to control NIH3T3 cells with no significant differences suggesting that the proximal extracellular part of the molecule has little effect on the oncogenic effects of MUC16. These studies establish that MUC16 is an oncogenic glycoprotein much like MUC1 and MUC4.

There are, however, conflicting data regarding the minimal functional domain of the C-terminal domain required for transformation. Although, the SEA domain appears to be dispensable for tumorigenicity, the respective role of the ectodomain and the cytoplasmic tail are more controversial. Rao *et al*<sup>[85]</sup> showed that ectopic expression in NIH3T3 cells of a construct containing the ectodomain (58 amino acids), the TM (22 amino acids) and the first 6 amino acids of the CT had transforming effects mostly similar to a construct carrying the full length CT. In contrast, Thériault *et al*<sup>[78]</sup> and Giannakouros *et al*<sup>[82]</sup> showed that deletion of the CT in a construct consisting of the last 284 amino acids completely abolished the tumorigenic and transforming effects of MUC16 C-terminal domain. The reasons for this discrepancy are unclear but may reflect differences in integration of extracellular and intracellular signals with the different constructs that were used in these experiments.

## MUC16 AND DRUG RESISTANCE

Silencing MUC16 using single-chain antibodies increased the sensitivity of MUC16 overexpressing OVCAR3 cells to genotoxic agents such as cisplatin and doxorubicin but not to microtubule assembly inhibitors such as paclitaxel and vinorelbine<sup>[94]</sup>. Conversely, expression of MUC16 C-terminal domain conferred increased resistance to cisplatin<sup>[94]</sup>. Consistent with the role of MUC16 in drug resistance, MUC1 has been shown to modulate the

sensitivity of cancer cells to genotoxic agents. Indeed, expression of MUC1 C-terminal domain conferred resistance to cisplatin and etoposide in colon cancer cells<sup>[89,95]</sup>. The downregulation of MUC16 in OVCAR3 cells activates the PI3K/Akt pathway<sup>[68]</sup>. The authors also reported that MUC16 knockdown in these cells decreased FOXO3a nuclear localization. FOXO3a function is controlled in part by activation of the Akt pathway. Akt phosphorylates FOXO3a, resulting in binding of FOXO3a to 14-3-3 proteins and retention of FOXO3a in the cytoplasm. In contrast, dephosphorylation of FOXO3a induces its nuclear localization where it transactivates gene expression<sup>[96]</sup>. FOXO3a modulates the expression of several genes that regulate the cellular response to stress at the G2-M checkpoint. The growth arrest and DNA damage response gene Gadd54a is a target of FOXO3a that mediates part of FOXO3a's effects on DNA repair<sup>[97]</sup>. Thus, preventing the nuclear localization of FOXO3a contributes to the apoptotic response to genotoxic drugs. It is therefore possible MUC16 knockdown sensitizes tumor cells to genotoxic drugs by activating Akt which in turn prevents FOXO3a nuclear localization. Although MUC16 expression may be associated with cisplatin resistance *in vitro*, no correlation was observed between MUC16 expression and resistance to chemotherapy in the TCGA ovarian cancer project<sup>[73]</sup>. Interestingly, however, a recent study suggested that the combination of serum CA125 and ascites leptin levels have a high discriminating potential to distinguish clinically resistant patients (intrinsic resistance) to first-line therapy from patients that responded to first-line chemotherapy<sup>[47]</sup>.

Death receptor ligands such as tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL) trigger rapid apoptosis in various tumor cell types<sup>[98-102]</sup>. TRAIL binds to death receptors, TRAIL-R1 (DR4) and -R2 (DR5), whose cytoplasmic death domain (DD) signals downstream caspase activation to mediate TRAIL-induced apoptosis<sup>[103]</sup>. Upon receptor activation, FADD and pro-caspase-8 are recruited to form a death-inducing signaling complex (DISC)<sup>[104]</sup>. When recruited to the DISC, pro-caspase-8 becomes activated and subsequently activates downstream effectors caspases-3, -6 and -7, leading to apoptosis. The cellular FLICE inhibitory protein (cFLIP) regulates both recruitment and processing of pro-caspase-8 within the DISC<sup>[105]</sup>. MUC16 ectopic expression, like MUC1, was shown to attenuate TRAIL-induced caspase-8 and mitochondria activation, resulting in decreased apoptosis<sup>[106]</sup>. Notably, MUC16 C-terminal expression was sufficient to attenuate TRAIL-induced apoptosis and signaling. MUC16-induced resistance to TRAIL was related to decreased TRAIL-R2 expression and recruitment at the DISC, and by increased cFLIP expression. MUC1-blockade of TRAIL-induced apoptosis has been attributed to localization of MUC1 C-terminal domain to the mitochondria or to the ability of MUC1 to directly bind caspase-8 and FADD, thereby inhibiting recruitment of caspase-8 at the DISC<sup>[107]</sup>. Thus, although both MUC1 and MUC16

can inhibit TRAIL-induced apoptosis, the mechanisms by which these mucins inhibit TRAIL signaling differ. This could be related to the amino acids composition of their cytoplasmic tail.

## CONCLUSIONS AND FUTURE

### DIRECTIONS

Since its discovery in the late 1970s, MUC16 glycoprotein has been recognized as a useful clinical biomarker in advance diseases. However, evidence now suggests that MUC16 is much more than a biomarker for disease progression. Recent studies have established that MUC16 can act as an oncogene. MUC16 expression leads to the transformation normal fibroblastic cells and it contributes to the pathogenesis and progression of EOC. These phenotypic effects are shared by other membrane-bounded mucins such as MUC1 and MUC4. However, the mechanisms by which these mucins exert their effects differ. The complex biochemical structure of MUC16 is a constant challenge to define functional domains. Although progress has been made toward understanding the role of MUC16 in tumorigenesis, many question remains. Further studies are required to gain a better understanding of the oncogenic role of MUC16. An area of critical importance is deciphering the mechanism by which MUC16 C-terminal domain enhances tumorigenesis and the downstream signaling associated with this effect. A better understanding of the contribution of MUC16 C-terminal domain to tumorigenesis may yield specific intracellular or extracellular signaling targets. Exploiting these targets could provide novel treatment for ovarian cancer which are urgently needed.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **Badgwell D**, Bast RC. Early detection of ovarian cancer. *Dis Markers* 2007; **23**: 397-410 [PMID: 18057523 DOI: 10.1155/2007/309382]
- 2 **Duffy MJ**, Bonfrer JM, Kulpa J, Rustin GJ, Soletormos G, Torre GC, Tuxen MK, Zwirner M. CA125 in ovarian cancer: European Group on Tumor Markers guidelines for clinical use. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2005; **15**: 679-691 [PMID: 16174214 DOI: 10.1111/j.1525-1438.2005.00130.x]
- 3 **Bast RC**, Badgwell D, Lu Z, Marquez R, Rosen D, Liu J, Baggerly KA, Atkinson EN, Skates S, Zhang Z, Lokshin A, Menon U, Jacobs I, Lu K. New tumor markers: CA125 and beyond. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2005; **15** Suppl 3: 274-281 [PMID: 16343244 DOI: 10.1111/j.1525-1438.2005.00441.x]
- 4 **Breitenecker G**, Neunteufel W, Bieglmayer C, Kölbl H, Schieder K. Comparison between tissue and serum content of CA 125, CA 19-9, and carcinoembryonic antigen in ovarian tumors. *Int J Gynecol Pathol* 1989; **8**: 97-102 [PMID: 2714933 DOI: 10.1097/00004347-198906000-00002]
- 5 **Davis HM**, Zurawski VR, Bast RC, Klug TL. Characterization of the CA 125 antigen associated with human epithelial ovarian carcinomas. *Cancer Res* 1986; **46**: 6143-6148 [PMID: 2430690]
- 6 **de la Cuesta R**, Maestro ML, Solana J, Vidart JA, Escudero M, Iglesias E, Valor R. Tissue quantification of CA 125 in epithelial ovarian cancer. *Int J Biol Markers* 1999; **14**: 106-114 [PMID: 10399630]
- 7 **Høgdall EV**, Christensen L, Kjaer SK, Blaakaer J, Kjaerbye-

- Thygesen A, Gayther S, Jacobs IJ, Høgdall CK. CA125 expression pattern, prognosis and correlation with serum CA125 in ovarian tumor patients. From The Danish "MALOVA" Ovarian Cancer Study. *Gynecol Oncol* 2007; **104**: 508-515 [PMID: 17113137 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2006.09.028]
- 8 **Kabawat SE**, Bast RC, Bhan AK, Welch WR, Knapp RC, Colvin RB. Tissue distribution of a coelomic-epithelium-related antigen recognized by the monoclonal antibody OC125. *Int J Gynecol Pathol* 1983; **2**: 275-285 [PMID: 6196309 DOI: 10.1097/00004347-198303000-00005]
- 9 **Krivak TC**, Tian C, Rose GS, Armstrong DK, Maxwell GL. A Gynecologic Oncology Group Study of serum CA-125 levels in patients with stage III optimally debulked ovarian cancer treated with intraperitoneal compared to intravenous chemotherapy: an analysis of patients enrolled in GOG 172. *Gynecol Oncol* 2009; **115**: 81-85 [PMID: 19596139 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2009.06.021]
- 10 **Miller RE**, Rustin GJ. How to follow-up patients with epithelial ovarian cancer. *Curr Opin Oncol* 2010; **22**: 498-502 [PMID: 20498597 DOI: 10.1097/CCO.0b013e32833ae8b6]
- 11 **Nap M**. Immunohistochemistry of CA 125. Unusual expression in normal tissues, distribution in the human fetus and questions around its application in diagnostic pathology. *Int J Biol Markers* 1998; **13**: 210-215 [PMID: 10228903]
- 12 **Rustin GJ**, Nelstrop AE, Tuxen MK, Lambert HE. Defining progression of ovarian carcinoma during follow-up according to CA 125: a North Thames Ovary Group Study. *Ann Oncol* 1996; **7**: 361-364 [PMID: 8805927 DOI: 10.1093/oxfordjournals.annonc.a010602]
- 13 **van Altena AM**, Kolwijck E, Spanjer MJ, Hendriks JC, Massuger LF, de Hullu JA. CA125 nadir concentration is an independent predictor of tumor recurrence in patients with ovarian cancer: a population-based study. *Gynecol Oncol* 2010; **119**: 265-269 [PMID: 20797777 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2010.07.025]
- 14 **Vasudev NS**, Trigonis I, Cairns DA, Hall GD, Jackson DP, Broadhead T, Buxton J, Hutson R, Nugent D, Perren TJ. The prognostic and predictive value of CA-125 regression during neoadjuvant chemotherapy for advanced ovarian or primary peritoneal carcinoma. *Arch Gynecol Obstet* 2011; **284**: 221-227 [PMID: 20803207 DOI: 10.1007/s00404-010-1655-2]
- 15 **Vergote IB**, Borner OP, Abeler VM. Evaluation of serum CA 125 levels in the monitoring of ovarian cancer. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1987; **157**: 88-92 [PMID: 2440307 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9378(87)80352-6]
- 16 **Zorn KK**, Tian C, McGuire WP, Hoskins WJ, Markman M, Muggia FM, Rose PG, Ozols RF, Spriggs D, Armstrong DK. The prognostic value of pretreatment CA 125 in patients with advanced ovarian carcinoma: a Gynecologic Oncology Group study. *Cancer* 2009; **115**: 1028-1035 [PMID: 19156927 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.24084]
- 17 **Bast RC**, Feeney M, Lazarus H, Nadler LM, Colvin RB, Knapp RC. Reactivity of a monoclonal antibody with human ovarian carcinoma. *J Clin Invest* 1981; **68**: 1331-1337 [DOI: 10.1172/JCI110380]
- 18 **Bast RC**, Klug TL, St John E, Jenison E, Niloff JM, Lazarus H, Berkowitz RS, Leavitt T, Griffiths CT, Parker L, Zurawski VR, Knapp RC. A radioimmunoassay using a monoclonal antibody to monitor the course of epithelial ovarian cancer. *N Engl J Med* 1983; **309**: 883-887 [PMID: 6310399 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM198310133091503]
- 19 **Yin BW**, Lloyd KO. Molecular cloning of the CA125 ovarian cancer antigen: identification as a new mucin, MUC16. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 27371-27375 [PMID: 11369781 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M103554200]
- 20 **Yin BW**, Dnistrian A, Lloyd KO. Ovarian cancer antigen CA125 is encoded by the MUC16 mucin gene. *Int J Cancer* 2002; **98**: 737-740 [PMID: 11920644 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.10250]
- 21 **O'Brien TJ**, Beard JB, Underwood LJ, Dennis RA, Santin AD, York L. The CA 125 gene: an extracellular superstructure dominated by repeat sequences. *Tumour Biol* 2001; **22**: 348-366 [PMID: 11786729]
- 22 **O'Brien TJ**, Beard JB, Underwood LJ, Shigemasa K. The CA 125 gene: a newly discovered extension of the glycosylated N-terminal domain doubles the size of this extracellular superstructure. *Tumour Biol* 2002; **23**: 154-169 [PMID: 12218296 DOI: 10.1159/000064032]
- 23 **Davies JR**, Kirkham S, Svitacheva N, Thornton DJ, Carlstedt I. MUC16 is produced in tracheal surface epithelium and submucosal glands and is present in secretions from normal human airway and cultured bronchial epithelial cells. *Int J Biochem Cell Biol* 2007; **39**: 1943-1954 [PMID: 17604678 DOI: 10.1016/j.biocel.2007.05.013]
- 24 **Gronowitz E**, Pitkänen S, Kjellmer I, Heikinheimo M, Strandvik B. Association between serum oncofetal antigens CA 19-9 and CA 125 and clinical status in patients with cystic fibrosis. *Acta Paediatr* 2003; **92**: 1267-1271 [PMID: 14696845 DOI: 10.1111/j.1651-2227.2003.tb00495.x]
- 25 **Hatrup CL**, Gendler SJ. Structure and function of the cell surface (tethered) mucins. *Annu Rev Physiol* 2008; **70**: 431-457 [PMID: 17850209 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.physiol.70.113006.100659]
- 26 **Karlan BY**, Amin W, Casper SE, Littlefield BA. Hormonal regulation of CA125 tumor marker expression in human ovarian carcinoma cells: inhibition by glucocorticoids. *Cancer Res* 1988; **48**: 3502-3506 [PMID: 3285997]
- 27 **Argüeso P**, Spurr-Michaud S, Russo CL, Tisdale A, Gipson IK. MUC16 mucin is expressed by the human ocular surface epithelia and carries the H185 carbohydrate epitope. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 2003; **44**: 2487-2495 [PMID: 12766047 DOI: 10.1167/iovs.02-0862]
- 28 **Blalock TD**, Spurr-Michaud SJ, Tisdale AS, Gipson IK. Release of membrane-associated mucins from ocular surface epithelia. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 2008; **49**: 1864-1871 [PMID: 18436821 DOI: 10.1167/iovs.07-1081]
- 29 **Inatomi T**, Spurr-Michaud S, Tisdale AS, Zhan Q, Feldman ST, Gipson IK. Expression of secretory mucin genes by human conjunctival epithelia. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 1996; **37**: 1684-1692 [PMID: 8675412]
- 30 **Jäger K**, Wu G, Sel S, Garreis F, Bräuer L, Paulsen FP. MUC16 in the lacrimal apparatus. *Histochem Cell Biol* 2007; **127**: 433-438 [PMID: 17211626 DOI: 10.1007/s00418-006-0246-6]
- 31 **Ataseven H**, Oztürk ZA, Arhan M, Yüksel O, Köklü S, Ibiş M, Başar O, Yilmaz FM, Yüksel I. Cancer antigen 125 levels in inflammatory bowel diseases. *J Clin Lab Anal* 2009; **23**: 244-248 [PMID: 19623645 DOI: 10.1002/jcla.20323]
- 32 **Miralles C**, Orea M, España P, Provencio M, Sánchez A, Cantos B, Cubedo R, Carcereny E, Bonilla F, Gea T. Cancer antigen 125 associated with multiple benign and malignant pathologies. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2003; **10**: 150-154 [PMID: 12620910 DOI: 10.1245/ASO.2003.05.015]
- 33 **Sikaris KA**. CA125--a test with a change of heart. *Heart Lung Circ* 2011; **20**: 634-640 [PMID: 20822954 DOI: 10.1016/j.hlc.2010.08.001]
- 34 **Xiaofang Y**, Yue Z, Xialian X, Zhibin Y. Serum tumour markers in patients with chronic kidney disease. *Scand J Clin Lab Invest* 2007; **67**: 661-667 [PMID: 17852811 DOI: 10.1080/00365510701282326]
- 35 **Dharma Rao T**, Park KJ, Smith-Jones P, Iasonos A, Linkov I, Soslow RA, Spriggs DR. Novel monoclonal antibodies against the proximal (carboxy-terminal) portions of MUC16. *Appl Immunohistochem Mol Morphol* 2010; **18**: 462-472 [PMID: 20453816 DOI: 10.1097/PAI.0b013e3181dbfd2]
- 36 **Ali M**, Lillehoj EP, Park Y, Kyo Y, Kim KC. Analysis of the proteome of human airway epithelial secretions. *Proteome Sci* 2011; **9**: 4 [PMID: 21251289 DOI: 10.1186/1477-5956-9-4]
- 37 **Kesimer M**, Ehre C, Burns KA, Davis CW, Sheehan JK, Pickles RJ. Molecular organization of the mucins and glycocalyx underlying mucus transport over mucosal surfaces of the airways. *Mucosal Immunol* 2013; **6**: 379-392 [PMID: 22929560 DOI: 10.1038/mi.2012.81]
- 38 **Moritani S**, Ichihara S, Hasegawa M, Endo T, Oiwa M, Yoshikawa K, Sato Y, Aoyama H, Hayashi T, Kushima R. Serous papillary adenocarcinoma of the female genital organs and invasive micropapillary carcinoma of the breast. Are WT1, CA125, and GCDP-15 useful in differential diagnosis? *Hum Pathol* 2008; **39**:



- 666-671 [PMID: 18339419 DOI: 10.1016/j.humpath.2007.09.009]
- 39 **Haridas D**, Chakraborty S, Ponnusamy MP, Lakshmanan I, Rachagani S, Cruz E, Kumar S, Das S, Lele SM, Anderson JM, Wittel UA, Hollingsworth MA, Batra SK. Pathobiological implications of MUC16 expression in pancreatic cancer. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e26839 [PMID: 22066010 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0026839]
  - 40 **Buys SS**, Partridge E, Black A, Johnson CC, Lamerato L, Isaacs C, Reding DJ, Greenlee RT, Yokochi LA, Kessel B, Crawford ED, Church TR, Andriole GL, Weissfeld JL, Fouad MN, Chia D, O'Brien B, Ragard LR, Clapp JD, Rathmell JM, Riley TL, Hartge P, Pinsky PF, Zhu CS, Izmirlian G, Kramer BS, Miller AB, Xu JL, Prorok PC, Gohagan JK, Berg CD. Effect of screening on ovarian cancer mortality: the Prostate, Lung, Colorectal and Ovarian (PLCO) Cancer Screening Randomized Controlled Trial. *JAMA* 2011; **305**: 2295-2303 [PMID: 21642681 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2011.766]
  - 41 **Menon U**, Gentry-Maharaj A, Hallett R, Ryan A, Burnell M, Sharma A, Lewis S, Davies S, Philpott S, Lopes A, Godfrey K, Oram D, Herod J, Williamson K, Seif MW, Scott I, Mould T, Woolas R, Murdoch J, Dobbs S, Amso NN, Leeson S, Cruickshank D, McGuire A, Campbell S, Fallowfield L, Singh N, Dawney A, Skates SJ, Parmar M, Jacobs I. Sensitivity and specificity of multimodal and ultrasound screening for ovarian cancer, and stage distribution of detected cancers: results of the prevalence screen of the UK Collaborative Trial of Ovarian Cancer Screening (UKCTOCS). *Lancet Oncol* 2009; **10**: 327-340 [PMID: 19282241 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(09)70026-9]
  - 42 **Jacobs I**, Oram D, Fairbanks J, Turner J, Frost C, Grudzinskas JG. A risk of malignancy index incorporating CA 125, ultrasound and menopausal status for the accurate preoperative diagnosis of ovarian cancer. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol* 1990; **97**: 922-929 [PMID: 2223684 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.1990.tb02448.x]
  - 43 **Moore RG**, Brown AK, Miller MC, Skates S, Allard WJ, Verch T, Steinhoff M, Messerlian G, DiSilvestro P, Granai CO, Bast RC. The use of multiple novel tumor biomarkers for the detection of ovarian carcinoma in patients with a pelvic mass. *Gynecol Oncol* 2008; **108**: 402-408 [PMID: 18061248 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2007.10.017]
  - 44 **Moore RG**, McMeekin DS, Brown AK, DiSilvestro P, Miller MC, Allard WJ, Gajewski W, Kurman R, Bast RC, Skates SJ. A novel multiple marker bioassay utilizing HE4 and CA125 for the prediction of ovarian cancer in patients with a pelvic mass. *Gynecol Oncol* 2009; **112**: 40-46 [PMID: 18851871 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2008.08.031]
  - 45 **Moore RG**, Miller MC, DiSilvestro P, Landrum LM, Gajewski W, Ball JJ, Skates SJ. Evaluation of the diagnostic accuracy of the risk of ovarian malignancy algorithm in women with a pelvic mass. *Obstet Gynecol* 2011; **118**: 280-288 [PMID: 21775843 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e318224fce2]
  - 46 **Bast RC**, Skates S, Lokshin A, Moore RG. Differential diagnosis of a pelvic mass: improved algorithms and novel biomarkers. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2012; **22** Suppl 1: S5-S8 [PMID: 22543921 DOI: 10.1097/JGC.0b013e318251c97d]
  - 47 **Lane D**, Matte I, Garde-Granger P, Laplante C, Carignan A, Rancourt C, Piché A. Inflammation-regulating factors in ascites as predictive biomarkers of drug resistance and progression-free survival in serous epithelial ovarian cancers. *BMC Cancer* 2015; **15**: 492 [PMID: 26122176 DOI: 10.1186/s12885-015-1511-7]
  - 48 **Moniaux N**, Escande F, Porchet N, Aubert JP, Batra SK. Structural organization and classification of the human mucin genes. *Front Biosci* 2001; **6**: D1192-D1206 [PMID: 11578969]
  - 49 **Kui Wong N**, Easton RL, Panico M, Sutton-Smith M, Morrison JC, Lattanzio FA, Morris HR, Clark GF, Dell A, Patankar MS. Characterization of the oligosaccharides associated with the human ovarian tumor marker CA125. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 28619-28634 [PMID: 12734200 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M302741200]
  - 50 **Duraisamy S**, Ramasamy S, Kharbanda S, Kufe D. Distinct evolution of the human carcinoma-associated transmembrane mucins, MUC1, MUC4 AND MUC16. *Gene* 2006; **373**: 28-34 [PMID: 16500040 DOI: 10.1016/j.gene.2005.12.021]
  - 51 **Jonckheere N**, Skrypek N, Frénois F, Van Seuning I. Membrane-bound mucin modular domains: from structure to function. *Biochimie* 2013; **95**: 1077-1086 [PMID: 23178705 DOI: 10.1016/j.biochi.2012.11.005]
  - 52 **Das S**, Rachagani S, Torres-Gonzalez MP, Lakshmanan I, Majhi PD, Smith LM, Wagner KU, Batra SK. Carboxyl-terminal domain of MUC16 imparts tumorigenic and metastatic functions through nuclear translocation of JAK2 to pancreatic cancer cells. *Oncotarget* 2015; **6**: 5772-5787 [PMID: 25691062 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.3308]
  - 53 **Berek JS**. Immunotherapy of ovarian cancer with antibodies: a focus on oregovomab. *Expert Opin Biol Ther* 2004; **4**: 1159-1165 [PMID: 15268682 DOI: 10.1517/14712598.4.7.1159]
  - 54 **Das S**, Majhi PD, Al-Mugotir MH, Rachagani S, Sorgen P, Batra SK. Membrane proximal ectodomain cleavage of MUC16 occurs in the acidifying Golgi/post-Golgi compartments. *Sci Rep* 2015; **5**: 9759 [PMID: 26044153 DOI: 10.1038/srep09759]
  - 55 **Govindarajan B**, Menon BB, Spurr-Michaud S, Rastogi K, Gilmore MS, Argüeso P, Gipson IK. A metalloproteinase secreted by *Streptococcus pneumoniae* removes membrane mucin MUC16 from the epithelial glycocalyx barrier. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e32418 [PMID: 22412870 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0032418]
  - 56 **Fendrick JL**, Konishi I, Geary SM, Parmley TH, Quirk JG, O'Brien TJ. CA125 phosphorylation is associated with its secretion from the WISH human amnion cell line. *Tumour Biol* 1997; **18**: 278-289 [PMID: 9276028 DOI: 10.1159/000218041]
  - 57 **Konishi I**, Fendrick JL, Parmley TH, Quirk JG, O'Brien TJ. Epidermal growth factor enhances secretion of the ovarian tumor-associated cancer antigen CA125 from the human amnion WISH cell line. *J Soc Gynecol Investig* 1994; **1**: 89-96 [PMID: 9419754]
  - 58 **Berek JS**, Taylor PT, Gordon A, Cunningham MJ, Finkler N, Orr J, Rivkin S, Schultes BC, Whiteside TL, Nicodemus CF. Randomized, placebo-controlled study of oregovomab for consolidation of clinical remission in patients with advanced ovarian cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2004; **22**: 3507-3516 [PMID: 15337799 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2004.09.016]
  - 59 **Reinartz S**, Köhler S, Schlebusch H, Krista K, Giffels P, Renke K, Huober J, Möbus V, Kreienberg R, DuBois A, Sabbatini P, Wagner U. Vaccination of patients with advanced ovarian carcinoma with the anti-idiotypic ACA125: immunological response and survival (phase Ib/II). *Clin Cancer Res* 2004; **10**: 1580-1587 [PMID: 15014007 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-03-0056]
  - 60 **Reinartz S**, Hombach A, Köhler S, Schlebusch H, Wallwiener D, Abken H, Wagner U. Interleukin-6 fused to an anti-idiotypic antibody in a vaccine increases the specific humoral immune response against CA125+ (MUC-16) ovarian cancer. *Cancer Res* 2003; **63**: 3234-3240 [PMID: 12810653]
  - 61 **Sabbatini P**, Dupont J, Aghajanian C, Derosa F, Poyner E, Anderson S, Hensley M, Livingston P, Iasonos A, Spriggs D, McGuire W, Reinartz S, Schneider S, Grande C, Lele S, Rodabaugh K, Kepner J, Ferrone S, Odunsi K. Phase I study of abagovomab in patients with epithelial ovarian, fallopian tube, or primary peritoneal cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2006; **12**: 5503-5510 [PMID: 17000686 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-05-2670]
  - 62 **Sabbatini P**, Harter P, Scambia G, Sehouli J, Meier W, Wimberger P, Baumann KH, Kurzeder C, Schmalfeldt B, Cibula D, Bidzinski M, Casado A, Martoni A, Colombo N, Holloway RW, Selvaggi L, Li A, del Campo J, Cwierzka K, Pinter T, Vermorken JB, Pujade-Lauraine E, Scartoni S, Bertolotti M, Simonelli C, Capriati A, Maggi CA, Berek JS, Pfisterer J. Abagovomab as maintenance therapy in patients with epithelial ovarian cancer: a phase III trial of the AGO OVAR, COGI, GINECO, and GEICO-the MIMOSA study. *J Clin Oncol* 2013; **31**: 1554-1561 [PMID: 23478059 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2012.46.4057]
  - 63 **Li Y**, Ren J, Yu W, Li Q, Kuwahara H, Yin L, Carraway KL, Kufe D. The epidermal growth factor receptor regulates interaction of the human DF3/MUC1 carcinoma antigen with c-Src and beta-catenin. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 35239-35242 [PMID: 11483589 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.C100359200]
  - 64 **Schroeder JA**, Thompson MC, Gardner MM, Gendler SJ. Transgenic MUC1 interacts with epidermal growth factor receptor

- and correlates with mitogen-activated protein kinase activation in the mouse mammary gland. *J Biol Chem* 2001; **276**: 13057-13064 [PMID: 11278868 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M011248200]
- 65 **Pochampalli MR**, el Bejjani RM, Schroeder JA. MUC1 is a novel regulator of ErbB1 receptor trafficking. *Oncogene* 2007; **26**: 1693-1701 [PMID: 16983337 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1209976]
  - 66 **Ren J**, Raina D, Chen W, Li G, Huang L, Kufe D. MUC1 oncoprotein functions in activation of fibroblast growth factor receptor signaling. *Mol Cancer Res* 2006; **4**: 873-883 [PMID: 17114345 DOI: 10.1158/1541-7786.MCR-06-0204]
  - 67 **Bafna S**, Kaur S, Batra SK. Membrane-bound mucins: the mechanistic basis for alterations in the growth and survival of cancer cells. *Oncogene* 2010; **29**: 2893-2904 [PMID: 20348949 DOI: 10.1038/ncr.2010.87]
  - 68 **Comamala M**, Pinard M, Thériault C, Matte I, Albert A, Boivin M, Beaudin J, Piché A, Rancourt C. Downregulation of cell surface CA125/MUC16 induces epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition and restores EGFR signalling in NIH: OVCAR3 ovarian carcinoma cells. *Br J Cancer* 2011; **104**: 989-999 [PMID: 21326240 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2011.34]
  - 69 **Lakshmanan I**, Ponnusamy MP, Das S, Chakraborty S, Haridas D, Mukhopadhyay P, Lele SM, Batra SK. MUC16 induced rapid G2/M transition via interactions with JAK2 for increased proliferation and anti-apoptosis in breast cancer cells. *Oncogene* 2012; **31**: 805-817 [PMID: 21785467 DOI: 10.1038/ncr.2011.297]
  - 70 **Yamamoto M**, Bharti A, Li Y, Kufe D. Interaction of the DF3/ MUC1 breast carcinoma-associated antigen and beta-catenin in cell adhesion. *J Biol Chem* 1997; **272**: 12492-12494 [PMID: 9139698 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.272.19.12492]
  - 71 **Wen Y**, Caffrey TC, Wheelock MJ, Johnson KR, Hollingsworth MA. Nuclear association of the cytoplasmic tail of MUC1 and beta-catenin. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 38029-38039 [PMID: 12832415 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M304333200]
  - 72 **Huang L**, Chen D, Liu D, Yin L, Kharbanda S, Kufe D. MUC1 oncoprotein blocks glycogen synthase kinase 3 $\beta$ -mediated phosphorylation and degradation of beta-catenin. *Cancer Res* 2005; **65**: 10413-10422 [PMID: 16288032 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-05-2474]
  - 73 **Cancer Genome Atlas Research Network**. Integrated genomic analyses of ovarian carcinoma. *Nature* 2011; **474**: 609-615 [PMID: 21720365 DOI: 10.1038/nature10166]
  - 74 **Haridas D**, Ponnusamy MP, Chugh S, Lakshmanan I, Seshacharyulu P, Batra SK. MUC16: molecular analysis and its functional implications in benign and malignant conditions. *FASEB J* 2014; **28**: 4183-4199 [PMID: 25002120 DOI: 10.1096/fj.14-257352]
  - 75 **Kohlgraf KG**, Gawron AJ, Higashi M, Meza JL, Burdick MD, Kitajima S, Kelly DL, Caffrey TC, Hollingsworth MA. Contribution of the MUC1 tandem repeat and cytoplasmic tail to invasive and metastatic properties of a pancreatic cancer cell line. *Cancer Res* 2003; **63**: 5011-5020 [PMID: 12941828]
  - 76 **Singh AP**, Moniaux N, Chauhan SC, Meza JL, Batra SK. Inhibition of MUC4 expression suppresses pancreatic tumor cell growth and metastasis. *Cancer Res* 2004; **64**: 622-630 [PMID: 14744777 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-03-2636]
  - 77 **Chaturvedi P**, Singh AP, Moniaux N, Senapati S, Chakraborty S, Meza JL, Batra SK. MUC4 mucin potentiates pancreatic tumor cell proliferation, survival, and invasive properties and interferes with its interaction to extracellular matrix proteins. *Mol Cancer Res* 2007; **5**: 309-320 [PMID: 17406026 DOI: 10.1158/1541-7786.MCR-06-0353]
  - 78 **Thériault C**, Pinard M, Comamala M, Migneault M, Beaudin J, Matte I, Boivin M, Piché A, Rancourt C. MUC16 (CA125) regulates epithelial ovarian cancer cell growth, tumorigenesis and metastasis. *Gynecol Oncol* 2011; **121**: 434-443 [PMID: 21421261 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.02.020]
  - 79 **Reinartz S**, Failer S, Schuell T, Wagner U. CA125 (MUC16) gene silencing suppresses growth properties of ovarian and breast cancer cells. *Eur J Cancer* 2012; **48**: 1558-1569 [PMID: 21852110 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2011.07.004]
  - 80 **Shukla SK**, Gunda V, Abrego J, Haridas D, Mishra A, Soucek J, Chaika NV, Yu F, Sasson AR, Lazenby AJ, Batra SK, Singh PK. MUC16-mediated activation of mTOR and c-Myc reprograms pancreatic cancer metabolism. *Oncotarget* 2015; **6**: 19118-19131 [PMID: 26046375 DOI: 10.18632/oncotarget.4078]
  - 81 **Giannakouros P**, Comamala M, Matte I, Rancourt C, Piché A. MUC16 mucin (CA125) regulates the formation of multicellular aggregates by altering  $\beta$ -catenin signaling. *Am J Cancer Res* 2015; **5**: 219-230 [PMID: 25628932]
  - 82 **Giannakouros P**, Matte I, Rancourt C, Piché A. Transformation of NIH3T3 mouse fibroblast cells by MUC16 mucin (CA125) is driven by its cytoplasmic tail. *Int J Oncol* 2015; **46**: 91-98 [PMID: 25338620 DOI: 10.3892/ijo.2014.2707]
  - 83 **Grille SJ**, Bellacosa A, Upson J, Klein-Szanto AJ, van Roy F, Lee-Kwon W, Donowitz M, Tschlis PN, Larue L. The protein kinase Akt induces epithelial mesenchymal transition and promotes enhanced motility and invasiveness of squamous cell carcinoma lines. *Cancer Res* 2003; **63**: 2172-2178 [PMID: 12727836]
  - 84 **Balmanno K**, Cook SJ. Tumour cell survival signalling by the ERK1/2 pathway. *Cell Death Differ* 2009; **16**: 368-377 [PMID: 18846109 DOI: 10.1038/cdd.2008.148]
  - 85 **Rao TD**, Tian H, Ma X, Yan X, Thapi S, Schultz N, Rosales N, Monette S, Wang A, Hyman DM, Levine DA, Solit D, Spriggs DR. Expression of the Carboxy-Terminal Portion of MUC16/CA125 Induces Transformation and Tumor Invasion. *PLoS One* 2015; **10**: e0126633 [PMID: 25965947 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0126633]
  - 86 **Al-Alem L**, Curry TE. Ovarian cancer: involvement of the matrix metalloproteinases. *Reproduction* 2015; **150**: R55-R64 [PMID: 25918438 DOI: 10.1530/REP-14-0546]
  - 87 **Kulbe H**, Chakravarty P, Leinster DA, Charles KA, Kwong J, Thompson RG, Coward JI, Schioppa T, Robinson SC, Gallagher WM, Galletta L, Salako MA, Smyth JF, Hagemann T, Brennan DJ, Bowtell DD, Balkwill FR. A dynamic inflammatory cytokine network in the human ovarian cancer microenvironment. *Cancer Res* 2012; **72**: 66-75 [PMID: 22065722 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-11-2178]
  - 88 **Carraway KL**, Funes M, Workman HC, Sweeney C. Contribution of membrane mucins to tumor progression through modulation of cellular growth signaling pathways. *Curr Top Dev Biol* 2007; **78**: 1-22 [PMID: 17338913 DOI: 10.1016/S0070-2153(06)78001-2]
  - 89 **Ren J**, Agata N, Chen D, Li Y, Yu WH, Huang L, Raina D, Chen W, Kharbanda S, Kufe D. Human MUC1 carcinoma-associated protein confers resistance to genotoxic anticancer agents. *Cancer Cell* 2004; **5**: 163-175 [PMID: 14998492]
  - 90 **Singh PK**, Hollingsworth MA. Cell surface-associated mucins in signal transduction. *Trends Cell Biol* 2006; **16**: 467-476 [PMID: 16904320 DOI: 10.1016/j.tcb.2006.07.006]
  - 91 **Li Y**, Liu D, Chen D, Kharbanda S, Kufe D. Human DF3/ MUC1 carcinoma-associated protein functions as an oncogene. *Oncogene* 2003; **22**: 6107-6110 [PMID: 12955090 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1206732]
  - 92 **Bafna S**, Singh AP, Moniaux N, Eudy JD, Meza JL, Batra SK. MUC4, a multifunctional transmembrane glycoprotein, induces oncogenic transformation of NIH3T3 mouse fibroblast cells. *Cancer Res* 2008; **68**: 9231-9238 [PMID: 19010895 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-3135]
  - 93 **Auersperg N**, Wong AS, Choi KC, Kang SK, Leung PC. Ovarian surface epithelium: biology, endocrinology, and pathology. *Endocr Rev* 2001; **22**: 255-288 [PMID: 11294827 DOI: 10.1210/er.22.2.255]
  - 94 **Boivin M**, Lane D, Piché A, Rancourt C. CA125 (MUC16) tumor antigen selectively modulates the sensitivity of ovarian cancer cells to genotoxic drug-induced apoptosis. *Gynecol Oncol* 2009; **115**: 407-413 [PMID: 19747716 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2009.08.007]
  - 95 **Yin L**, Huang L, Kufe D. MUC1 oncoprotein activates the FOXO3a transcription factor in a survival response to oxidative stress. *J Biol Chem* 2004; **279**: 45721-45727 [PMID: 15322085 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M408027200]
  - 96 **Nemoto S**, Finkel T. Redox regulation of forkhead proteins through a p66shc-dependent signaling pathway. *Science* 2002; **295**: 2450-2452 [PMID: 11884717 DOI: 10.1126/science.1069004]
  - 97 **Tran H**, Brunet A, Grenier JM, Datta SR, Fornace AJ, DiStefano

- PS, Chiang LW, Greenberg ME. DNA repair pathway stimulated by the forkhead transcription factor FOXO3a through the Gadd45 protein. *Science* 2002; **296**: 530-534 [PMID: 11964479 DOI: 10.1126/science.1068712]
- 98 **Khaider NG**, Lane D, Matte I, Rancourt C, Piché A. Targeted ovarian cancer treatment: the TRAILs of resistance. *Am J Cancer Res* 2012; **2**: 75-92 [PMID: 22206047]
- 99 **Ashkenazi A**, Dixit VM. Death receptors: signaling and modulation. *Science* 1998; **281**: 1305-1308 [PMID: 9721089 DOI: 10.1126/science.281.5381.1305]
- 100 **Ashkenazi A**, Holland P, Eckhardt SG. Ligand-based targeting of apoptosis in cancer: the potential of recombinant human apoptosis ligand 2/Tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (rhApo2L/TRAIL). *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 3621-3630 [PMID: 18640940 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.15.7198]
- 101 **Walczak H**, Miller RE, Ariail K, Gliniak B, Griffith TS, Kubin M, Chin W, Jones J, Woodward A, Le T, Smith C, Smolak P, Goodwin RG, Rauch CT, Schuh JC, Lynch DH. Tumoricidal activity of tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand in vivo. *Nat Med* 1999; **5**: 157-163 [PMID: 9930862 DOI: 10.1038/5517]
- 102 **Lane D**, Cartier A, L'Espérance S, Côté M, Rancourt C, Piché A. Differential induction of apoptosis by tumor necrosis factor-related apoptosis-inducing ligand in human ovarian carcinoma cells. *Gynecol Oncol* 2004; **93**: 594-604 [PMID: 15196850 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2004.03.029]
- 103 **Kischkel FC**, Lawrence DA, Chuntharapai A, Schow P, Kim KJ, Ashkenazi A. Apo2L/TRAIL-dependent recruitment of endogenous FADD and caspase-8 to death receptors 4 and 5. *Immunity* 2000; **12**: 611-620 [PMID: 10894161 DOI: 10.1016/S1074-7613(00)80212-5]
- 104 **Kischkel FC**, Hellbardt S, Behrmann I, Germer M, Pawlita M, Krammer PH, Peter ME. Cytotoxicity-dependent APO-1 (Fas/CD95)-associated proteins form a death-inducing signaling complex (DISC) with the receptor. *EMBO J* 1995; **14**: 5579-5588 [PMID: 8521815]
- 105 **Krueger A**, Baumann S, Krammer PH, Kirchhoff S. FLICE-inhibitory proteins: regulators of death receptor-mediated apoptosis. *Mol Cell Biol* 2001; **21**: 8247-8254 [PMID: 11713262 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.21.24.8247-8254.2001]
- 106 **Matte I**, Lane D, Boivin M, Rancourt C, Piché A. MUC16 mucin (CA125) attenuates TRAIL-induced apoptosis by decreasing TRAIL receptor R2 expression and increasing c-FLIP expression. *BMC Cancer* 2014; **14**: 234 [PMID: 24690311 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-14-234]
- 107 **Agata N**, Ahmad R, Kawano T, Raina D, Kharbanda S, Kufe D. MUC1 oncoprotein blocks death receptor-mediated apoptosis by inhibiting recruitment of caspase-8. *Cancer Res* 2008; **68**: 6136-6144 [PMID: 18676836 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-0464]

**P- Reviewer:** Sherbini MA, Wang PH, Yokoyama Y  
**S- Editor:** Wang JL **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Wu HL



## Implications of multigene testing for hereditary breast cancer in primary care

Meghna S Trivedi, Katherine D Crew

Meghna S Trivedi, Katherine D Crew, Department of Medicine, College of Physicians and Surgeons, Columbia University, New York, NY 10032, United States

Katherine D Crew, Department of Epidemiology, Mailman School of Public Health, Columbia University, New York, NY 10032, United States

Katherine D Crew, Herbert Irving Comprehensive Cancer Center, Columbia University, New York, NY 10032, United States

**Author contributions:** Trivedi MS and Crew KD contributed equally to this work.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** There is no conflict of interest associated with any of the authors who contributed their efforts in this manuscript.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Katherine D Crew, MD, MS, Assistant Professor of Medicine and Epidemiology, Herbert Irving Comprehensive Cancer Center, Columbia University, 161 Fort Washington Ave, 10-1072, New York, NY 10032, United States. [kd59@cumc.columbia.edu](mailto:kd59@cumc.columbia.edu)  
Telephone: +1-212-3051732  
Fax: +1-212-3050178

Received: June 28, 2015  
Peer-review started: July 11, 2015  
First decision: October 8, 2015  
Revised: October 29, 2015  
Accepted: January 5, 2016  
Article in press: January 7, 2016  
Published online: February 10, 2016

### Abstract

Approximately 1 in 8 women will develop breast cancer during their lifetime and the risk factors include age, family history, and reproductive factors. In women with a family history of breast cancer, there is a proportion in which a gene mutation can be the cause of the predisposition for breast cancer. A careful assessment of family and clinical history should be performed in these women in order to determine if a genetic counseling referral is indicated. In cases of hereditary breast cancer, genetic testing with a multigene panel can identify specific genetic mutations in over 100 genes. The most common genes mutated in hereditary breast cancer are the high-penetrance *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* genes. In addition, other mutations in high-penetrance genes in familial cancer syndromes and mutations in DNA repair genes can cause hereditary breast cancer. Mutations in low-penetrance genes and variants of uncertain significance may play a role in breast cancer development, but the magnitude and scope of risk in these cases remain unclear, thus the clinical utility of testing for these mutations is uncertain. In women with high-penetrance genetic mutations or lifetime risk of breast cancer > 20%, risk-reducing interventions, such as intensive screening, surgery, and chemoprevention, can decrease the incidence and mortality of breast cancer.

**Key words:** Genetic testing; *BRCA1*; *BRCA2*; Hereditary breast cancer; Multigene testing

© The Author(s) 2016. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Multigene testing for hereditary breast cancer is readily available and some panels can identify over 100 gene mutations. Risk-reducing strategies are available for women with mutations in high-penetrance genes, whereas strategies for managing women with mutations in low-moderate penetrance genes is less



clear. Appropriately identifying women who should undergo genetic counseling for hereditary breast cancer and implementing recommended guidelines in those who are found to be high risk can reduce the incidence and mortality of breast cancer.

Trivedi MS, Crew KD. Implications of multigene testing for hereditary breast cancer in primary care. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 50-57 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/50.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.50>

## INTRODUCTION

Approximately 1 in 8 women will develop breast cancer during their lifetime<sup>[1]</sup>. There are many risk factors for the development of breast cancer, including increasing age, reproductive factors, and family history of breast cancer. Thirteen percent of women diagnosed with breast cancer have at least one first-degree relative with breast cancer and the risk of developing breast cancer increases with increasing numbers of affected first-degree relatives when compared to women with no affected relatives<sup>[2]</sup>. A proportion of these women develop breast cancer due to inheriting a mutated gene. This is classified as a hereditary breast cancer. Hereditary breast and ovarian cancer (HBOC) syndrome is secondary to mutations in the *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* genes and accounts for 20%-25% of breast and ovarian cancers in families with multiple affected family members<sup>[3,4]</sup>. There are several other defined syndromes associated with hereditary breast cancer, including Cowden (*PTEN* mutation), Li-Fraumeni (*TP53* mutation), Peutz-Jeghers (*STK11* mutation), and hereditary diffuse gastric cancer (*CDH1* mutations) syndromes<sup>[5]</sup>. Additionally, there are other low and moderate penetrance genes, including *PALB2*, *CHEK2*, and *ATM*, that can cause clustering of breast cancer in affected families.

Genetic testing for these gene mutations can allow for identification of these patients prior to the development of cancer. In the case of some mutations, there are interventions that can reduce breast cancer incidence and mortality in mutation carriers. Recent advances in technology allow for rapid and low cost identification of inherited mutations. While individuals can be tested for only *BRCA1/2* mutations specifically, there is also multigene testing that utilizes next generation sequencing (NGS), which can identify mutations in over 100 genes in one test<sup>[6]</sup>. Though multigene testing is readily available in the clinics and through direct-to-consumer testing<sup>[7]</sup>, the clinical utility of evaluating the large number of genes remains uncertain.

This review article will summarize the indications for genetic assessment for hereditary breast cancer, the evidence on interpretation of multigene testing results, and breast cancer risk management options for women

who are found to be carriers of mutations.

## INDICATIONS FOR GENETIC ASSESSMENT IN HEREDITARY BREAST CANCER

Several professional organizations, including the National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN)<sup>[8]</sup>, the United States Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF)<sup>[9]</sup>, the American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO)<sup>[7,10]</sup>, the National Society of Genetic Counselors (NSGC)<sup>[5,11]</sup>, the American College of Medical Genetics (ACMG)<sup>[11]</sup>, and the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG)<sup>[12]</sup> have published guidelines regarding genetic assessment for hereditary breast cancer in cancer-free women. As part of a genetic assessment, these guidelines all emphasize the importance of genetic counseling prior to and after genetic testing by a health care provider knowledgeable in genetic testing. While the specific criteria for referral to genetic assessment vary among different organizations, the criteria are based on the clinical features and history that increase the likelihood of a hereditary breast cancer. Table 1 shows the guidelines for hereditary breast cancer genetic assessment in a woman without a cancer diagnosis as published by the NCCN, USPSTF, ASCO, NSGC, ACMG, and ACOG.

There are also specific guidelines for genetic assessment in patients who have received a diagnosis of cancer and also for men; however, these guidelines will not be discussed in this review.

## MULTIGENE TESTING FOR HEREDITARY BREAST CANCER

There are several commercially available multigene panels for hereditary breast cancer, such as BreastNext by Ambry Genetics, OncoGeneDx by GeneDx, and myRisk by Myriad Genetics, that are capable of sequencing a range of 6 to more than 100 cancer-associated genes depending on the test<sup>[6,13]</sup>. The specific genes tested in each multigene panel vary depending on the laboratory offering the testing. Some of the genes included in these panels are genes that are known to be associated with cancer syndromes with breast cancer component (*i.e.*, *BRCA1/2* for HBOC syndrome, *PTEN* for Cowden syndrome, *TP53* for Li-Fraumeni syndrome), genes shown to have a moderate risk association with breast cancer, or genes that function in DNA repair pathways with or similarly to *BRCA1/2*. However, there are concerns that other genes included in multigene panels have breast cancer risk associations that are not well established<sup>[6,13,14]</sup>. This complicates the testing of these less-established genes on three levels of uncertainty: (1) the magnitude of cancer risk associated with the gene; (2) the clinical scope of cancer risk; and (3) the clinical relevance of variants of the genes<sup>[13]</sup>.

**Table 1 Guidelines for hereditary breast cancer genetic assessment in a woman without a cancer diagnosis**

Organization	Indications for genetic assessment referral
National Comprehensive Cancer Network <sup>[8]</sup>	<p>Family history of any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A known mutation in a cancer susceptibility gene within the family</li> <li>≥ 2 breast cancer primaries in a single individual</li> <li>≥ 2 individuals with breast cancer primaries on the same side of family</li> <li>≥ 1 individual with invasive ovarian cancer primary</li> </ul> <p>First- or second-degree relative with breast cancer at age ≤ 45 yr</p> <p>Three or more of the following (especially if early onset): Pancreatic cancer, prostate cancer (Gleason score ≥ 7), sarcoma, adrenocortical carcinoma, brain tumors, endometrial cancer, thyroid cancer, kidney cancer, dermatologic manifestations and/or macrocephaly, hamartomatous polyps of gastrointestinal tract, diffuse gastric cancer (can include multiple primary cancers in same individual)</p> <p>Male breast cancer</p>
United States Preventive Services Task Force <sup>[9]</sup>	<p>Family history of any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Breast cancer diagnosis before age 50 yr</li> <li>Bilateral breast cancer</li> <li>Breast and ovarian cancer</li> <li>Breast cancer in ≥ 1 male family member</li> <li>Multiple cases of breast cancer in the family</li> <li>≥ 1 family member with 2 primary types of BRCA-related cancer</li> <li>Ashkenazi Jewish ethnicity</li> </ul> <p>OR use of a familial risk stratification tool, such as the Ontario Family History Assessment Tool, Manchester scoring system, Referral Screening Tool, Pedigree Assessment Tool, and Family History Screen 7, to determine need for genetic counseling</p>
American Society of Clinical Oncology <sup>[7,10]</sup>	<p>When all 3 criteria are met:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The individual being tested has a personal or family history suggestive of genetic cancer susceptibility</li> <li>The genetic test can be adequately interpreted</li> <li>The test results have accepted clinical utility</li> </ul>
National Society of Genetic Counselors <sup>[5,11]</sup> and American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics <sup>[11]</sup>	<p>If patient or any of their first-degree relatives meet one of the following criteria:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Breast cancer diagnosis at age ≤ 50 yr</li> <li>Triple-negative breast cancer diagnosis at age ≤ 60 yr</li> <li>≥ 2 primary breast cancers in the same person</li> <li>Ashkenazi Jewish ancestry and breast cancer at any age</li> <li>≥ 3 cases of breast, ovarian, pancreatic, and/or aggressive prostate cancer in close relatives, including the patient</li> <li>Breast cancer and one additional Li-Fraumeni Syndrome tumor in the same person or in two relatives, one diagnosed at age ≤ 45 yr</li> <li>Breast cancer and ≥ 1 Peutz-Jeghers polyp in the same person</li> <li>Lobular breast cancer and diffuse gastric cancer in the same person</li> <li>Lobular breast cancer in one relative and diffuse gastric cancer in another, one diagnosed at age &lt; 50 yr</li> <li>Breast cancer and 2 additional Cowden syndrome criteria in the same person</li> </ul>
American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists <sup>[12]</sup>	<p>Women with greater than an approximately 20%-25% chance of having an inherited predisposition to breast and ovarian cancer are recommended for genetic counseling referral, including:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Women with a close relative with known <i>BRCA1</i> or <i>BRCA2</i> mutations</li> </ul> <p>In women with greater than an approximate 5%-10% chance of having an inherited predisposition to breast and ovarian cancer, genetic counseling referral may be helpful, including those with a close relative that has:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Breast cancer at age ≤ 40 yr</li> <li>Ovarian cancer, primary peritoneal cancer, or fallopian tube cancer of high grade, serous histology at any age</li> <li>Bilateral breast cancer (particularly if the first case of breast cancer was diagnosed at age ≤ 50 yr)</li> <li>Breast cancer at age ≤ 50 yr and a close relative with breast cancer at age ≤ 50 yr</li> <li>Ashkenazi Jewish ancestry with breast cancer at age ≤ 50 yr</li> <li>Breast cancer at any age and 2 or more close relatives with breast cancer at any age (particularly if at least one case of breast cancer was diagnosed at age ≤ 50 yr)</li> </ul>

Additionally, NGS has the potential to discover variants of uncertain significance (VUS) at high rates<sup>[15]</sup>. In a study of 198 women who met NCCN guidelines for *BRCA1/2* mutation testing, multigene testing with a panel of 42 genes was performed and participants were found to have an average of 2.1 VUS among 42 genes<sup>[16]</sup>. The high rate of VUS poses a risk of causing unnecessary anxiety and potentially interventions that are without evidence base<sup>[13]</sup>.

In families that do not have *BRCA1* or *BRCA2* mutations, it is likely that other high-penetrance genes or a

number of moderate- or low-penetrant genes account for familial breast cancer<sup>[3]</sup>. In a study in the United States, among women who met NCCN guidelines for *BRCA1/2* testing and had negative genetic testing, 11.4% had pathogenic mutations in 1 of 40 other genes<sup>[16]</sup>. A study in Germany performed multigene testing with a panel of 10 genes on 620 patients who met criteria for HBOC genetic testing and found almost 33% more mutations could be discovered with the addition of 8 genes to *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* testing<sup>[17]</sup>. The use of multigene testing could help identify mutations

that may cause the predisposition to breast cancer of the approximately 75%-80% of familial breast cancers that are not associated with *BRCA1/2* mutations.

While mutations in genes that have a well-established risk association with breast cancer, such as *BRCA1/2*, have clear clinical implications, there is uncertainty with how to interpret and communicate the results of mutations in genes with less robust evidence, as well as gene *VUS*. Genes that have evidence of an association with breast cancer are described below.

### ***BRCA1/BRCA2 (HBOC)***

*BRCA1/2* genes play a role in DNA repair and mutations in these genes are of high-penetrance. Women with a *BRCA1/2* mutation have elevated lifetime risks of breast and ovarian cancer of 40%-60% and 20%-40%, respectively<sup>[18-21]</sup>. There is also an increased risk of other cancers, such as pancreas cancer. While the prevalence of the genetic mutation is less than 1% (1 in 400) in the general population, the prevalence of a founder mutation in the *BRCA1* (5382insC or 185delAG) or *BRCA2* (6174delT) genes is up to 2.5% (1 in 40) among individuals of Ashkenazi (Central and Eastern European) Jewish descent<sup>[21,22]</sup>. There are over 2000 different known mutations in the *BRCA1/2* genes<sup>[23]</sup>. There is also evidence to suggest that there are genetic modifiers of breast cancer risk for carriers of *BRCA* mutations and that the type and location of *BRCA* mutation affects breast cancer risk<sup>[24,25]</sup>. Genetic test results are reported as positive, *VUS*, uninformative-negative, or true negative<sup>[9]</sup>. The difference between uninformative-negative and true negative is that a true negative result is when no *BRCA* mutation is found in the setting of a known *BRCA* mutation in the family<sup>[26]</sup>. In a large cross-sectional study of non-Ashkenazi women who underwent *BRCA* mutation testing, 6.2% were found to have *VUS*. Populations that are genetically distinct and/or under-tested, such as racial/ethnic minorities, will have higher rates of *VUS* when compared to the white/European reference population; however, with increased volume of testing and reclassification of *VUS*, the rates of *VUS* reporting have declined over time<sup>[27]</sup>.

### ***Genes responsible for tumor syndromes***

There are several well characterized high-penetrance hereditary tumor syndromes in which breast cancer is one manifestation of the syndrome. While the association of these syndromes with an increase in breast cancer risk is known, the exact increase in risk is difficult to estimate due to ascertainment bias<sup>[6]</sup>. Li-Fraumeni syndrome is due to a germline mutation in the *TP53* gene, a tumor suppressor gene, and is characterized by an increased risk for childhood sarcomas, brain tumors, adrenocortical carcinoma, childhood leukemia, and other cancers, in addition to breast cancer<sup>[28]</sup>. In a study assessing the cancer incidence in 56 *TP53* germline mutation carriers and 3201 non-carriers, there was a significantly higher risk of breast cancer in female *TP53* mutation carriers, with a standardized incidence ratio of 105.1

(95%CI: 55.9-179.8)<sup>[29]</sup>. Cowden syndrome, or multiple hamartoma syndrome, is due to a germline mutation in the *PTEN* gene, a tumor suppressor gene<sup>[30]</sup>. The clinical phenotype has a wide array of abnormalities, including behavioral disorders, macrocephaly, gastrointestinal hamartomas, thyroid cancer, and endometrial cancer, in addition to breast cancer<sup>[31]</sup>. The estimated lifetime risk of breast cancer in a female *PTEN* mutation carrier is 85.2%, with a standardized incidence ratio of breast cancer of 25.4 (95%CI: 19.8-32.0)<sup>[32]</sup>. Germline mutations in the *STK11* gene, another tumor suppressor gene, cause Peutz-Jeghers syndrome. This syndrome is characterized by mucocutaneous pigmentation and gastrointestinal polyposis as well as an increase in gastrointestinal, breast, ovary, uterus, lung, and testis cancers<sup>[33]</sup>. The risk of developing breast cancer in a female *STK11* mutation carrier is 45% by age 70 years, a 6-fold increase when compared to the general population<sup>[33]</sup>. Hereditary diffuse gastric cancer is due to a germline mutation in the *CDH1* gene, which encodes for the E-cadherin protein. This mutation results in an increased risk of diffuse gastric cancer, colorectal cancer, and breast cancer, specifically lobular breast cancer. In female mutation carriers, the cumulative risk of breast cancer by age 80 is 39%, with a relative risk of developing breast cancer of 6.6 when compared to the general population<sup>[34]</sup>. Finally, neurofibromatosis type 1 (NF1) is caused by a germline mutation in the *NF1* gene, which encodes for neurofibromin, and is also a tumor suppressor gene. This syndrome has a phenotype of dermatologic manifestations, vascular disease, bone deformities, cognitive difficulties, and an increased risk of neoplasms, including breast cancer<sup>[35]</sup>. Cohort studies have shown a higher than expected number of breast cancer cases in women with NF1 with an estimated relative risk of 2.6 (95%CI: 2.1-3.2)<sup>[6,35,36]</sup>.

### ***Genes involved in DNA repair***

Mutations in other genes that are involved in DNA repair, such as *PALB2*, *CHEK2*, *ATM*, and *NBN*, have also been shown to be associated with an increased risk of breast cancer and are characterized as moderate-penetrance variants. The *PALB2* gene encodes a protein that interacts with both *BRCA1* and *BRCA2* in DNA repair<sup>[37]</sup>. Several studies have shown that mutations in *PALB2* are associated with increased risk of breast cancer<sup>[38-41]</sup>. A meta-analysis found the combined relative risk to be 5.2 (95%CI: 3.0-9.4)<sup>[6]</sup>. The *CHEK2* gene encodes a kinase that responds to DNA damage. In 2 large case-control studies, a specific variant of *CHEK2*, c.1100delC, was found to increase the risk of breast cancer by an estimated relative risk of 3.0 (95%CI: 2.6-3.5)<sup>[6,42,43]</sup>. The *ATM* gene encodes a protein kinase that functions in monitoring and repairing double-strand DNA breaks. The disease ataxia-telangiectasia is caused by biallelic mutations in the *ATM* gene. A case-control study of 964 patients found that the relative risk of breast cancer associated with *ATM* mutation is 2.37 (95%CI: 1.51-3.78)<sup>[44]</sup>. The *NBN* gene encodes a protein that,

like *BRCA1* and *BRCA2*, plays a role in the homologous recombination repair pathway. In a meta-analysis of 10 case-control studies on the association of *NBN* 657del5 variants and breast cancer risk, which included 25365 subjects, the pooled odds ratio was found to be 2.66 (95%CI: 1.82-3.90)<sup>[45]</sup>.

## INTERVENTIONS FOR HIGH RISK

### PATIENTS

#### *BRCA* mutation carriers

Risk management options for women found to have *BRCA1/2* mutations have been well studied and the NCCN has published expert-opinion based guidelines for the management of these patients. The risk management options for mutation carriers include intensive breast cancer screening with clinical breast exam, mammography, and breast magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), risk-reducing surgeries such as prophylactic mastectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy, and chemoprevention.

NCCN guidelines recommend clinical breast exam every 6-12 mo starting at age 25 years, annual breast MRI or mammogram (if MRI unavailable) from age 25-29 years, and annual breast MRI and mammogram from age 30-75 years<sup>[8]</sup>. Screening with MRI should begin earlier than 25 years if there is a family history of a breast cancer diagnosis prior to age 25 years<sup>[8]</sup>. In a meta-analysis of 11 prospective studies that screened women at high risk for breast cancer with mammography and MRI, the sensitivity of MRI was greater than mammography (77% vs 39%), but specificity of mammography greater than MRI (94.7% vs 86.3%). When mammography was combined with MRI, sensitivity was 94% and specificity was 77.2%<sup>[46]</sup>. In *BRCA1/2* mutation carriers, annual surveillance with MRI is associated with a significant reduction in advanced-stage breast cancer<sup>[47]</sup>.

With regards to risk reducing surgery, NCCN guidelines recommend counseling *BRCA* mutation carriers on risk-reducing mastectomy (RRM) and risk-reducing salpingo-oophorectomy (RRSO)<sup>[8]</sup>. In a prospective cohort study of 1619 *BRCA1/2* mutation carriers, of the 247 women who underwent RRM, none developed breast cancer, while there were 98 cases of breast cancer in the 1372 women who did not have surgery<sup>[48]</sup>. NCCN guidelines recommend RRSO between the ages of 35-40 and upon completion of childbearing<sup>[8]</sup>. RRSO resulted in 72%-86% reduction in risk of ovarian cancer, 37% reduction in risk of breast cancer in *BRCA1* carriers, and a 64% reduction in risk of breast cancer in *BRCA2* carriers<sup>[48]</sup>. Mutation carriers who underwent RRSO compared to those who did not had a 79% reduction in ovarian cancer-specific mortality, 56% reduction in breast cancer-specific mortality<sup>[48]</sup>, and a 60%-77% reduction in all-cause mortality<sup>[48,49]</sup>.

The use of tamoxifen, raloxifene, and aromatase inhibitors has been studied as chemoprevention in

women at high risk for breast cancer, though data in *BRCA1/2* mutation carriers is limited. The Breast Cancer Prevention Trial was a randomized placebo-controlled trial investigating whether tamoxifen reduces the incidence of breast cancer in high-risk women and found a 49% reduction in the incidence of breast cancer with the use of tamoxifen<sup>[50,51]</sup>. Of the 288 breast cancer cases in the trial, 19 were *BRCA* mutation carriers. Analysis showed that tamoxifen reduced breast cancer incidence among *BRCA2* carriers by 62%, but had no effect on breast cancer incidence in *BRCA1* carriers<sup>[52]</sup>.

#### Negative *BRCA1/2* testing

Despite negative *BRCA1/2* testing, families with a significant family history of breast cancer still have an approximately 4-fold increased risk of breast cancer<sup>[26]</sup>. In these women, there are still interventions available that can decrease the risk of developing breast cancer. In women with a greater than 20% lifetime risk of breast cancer, either as calculated by a risk model or due to the presence of a high- or moderate-penetrance mutation (*i.e.*, *ATM*, *CDH1*, *CHEK2*, *PALB2*, *PTEN*, *STK11*, or *TP53*), NCCN guidelines recommend intensive screening with MRI<sup>[8]</sup>. Additionally, for women with *CDH1*, *PTEN*, or *TP53* mutations, option of RRM should also be discussed<sup>[8]</sup>.

In women who have a 5-year breast cancer risk  $\geq 1.67\%$  or lifetime breast cancer risk  $\geq 20\%$ , chemoprevention is also an option. There is evidence that in this high risk population, tamoxifen, raloxifene, and aromatase inhibitors can decrease the incidence of breast cancer by approximately 50%, 40%, and 65%, respectively<sup>[51,53-55]</sup>.

## CONCLUSION

Women with a family history of breast or ovarian cancer should be screened for referral to genetic assessment for hereditary breast cancer. Advances in NGS have made multigene testing for hereditary breast cancer readily available; however, there remain questions about the clinical utility of such testing. For high- and moderate-penetrance mutations, there is greater clinical utility as there are established guidelines on risk management interventions that can be performed to reduce incidence and mortality from breast cancer.

## REFERENCES

1. **Howlader N**, Noone AM, Krapcho M, Garshell J, Miller D, Altekruse SF, Kosary CL, Yu M, Ruhl J, Tatalovich Z, Mariotto A, Lewis DR, Chen HS, Feuer EJ, Cronin KA, editors. SEER Cancer Statistics Review (CSR) 1975-2012. Bethesda, MD: National Cancer Institute. Available from: URL: [http://seer.cancer.gov/csr/1975\\_2012/](http://seer.cancer.gov/csr/1975_2012/)
2. **Collaborative Group on Hormonal Factors in Breast Cancer**. Familial breast cancer: collaborative reanalysis of individual data from 52 epidemiological studies including 58,209 women with breast cancer and 101,986 women without the disease. *Lancet* 2001; **358**: 1389-1399 [PMID: 11705483 DOI: 10.1016/



- S0140-6736(01)06524-2]
- 3 **Antoniou AC**, Pharoah PD, McMullan G, Day NE, Stratton MR, Peto J, Ponder BJ, Easton DF. A comprehensive model for familial breast cancer incorporating BRCA1, BRCA2 and other genes. *Br J Cancer* 2002; **86**: 76-83 [PMID: 11857015 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6600008]
  - 4 **Shih HA**, Couch FJ, Nathanson KL, Blackwood MA, Rebbeck TR, Armstrong KA, Calzone K, Stopfer J, Seal S, Stratton MR, Weber BL. BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutation frequency in women evaluated in a breast cancer risk evaluation clinic. *J Clin Oncol* 2002; **20**: 994-999 [PMID: 11844822 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.20.4.994]
  - 5 **Berliner JL**, Fay AM, Cummings SA, Burnett B, Tillmanns T. NSGC practice guideline: risk assessment and genetic counseling for hereditary breast and ovarian cancer. *J Genet Couns* 2013; **22**: 155-163 [PMID: 23188549 DOI: 10.1007/s10897-012-9547-1]
  - 6 **Easton DF**, Pharoah PD, Antoniou AC, Tischkowitz M, Tavtigian SV, Nathanson KL, Devilee P, Meindl A, Couch FJ, Southey M, Goldgar DE, Evans DG, Chenevix-Trench G, Rahman N, Robson M, Domchek SM, Foulkes WD. Gene-panel sequencing and the prediction of breast-cancer risk. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **372**: 2243-2257 [PMID: 26014596 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMsr1501341]
  - 7 **Robson ME**, Storm CD, Weitzel J, Wollins DS, Offit K. American Society of Clinical Oncology policy statement update: genetic and genomic testing for cancer susceptibility. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 893-901 [PMID: 20065170 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2009.27.0660]
  - 8 **National Comprehensive Cancer Network**. Genetic/familial high-risk assessment: Breast and ovarian. Version 2. 2015. Available from: URL: [http://www.nccn.org/professionals/physician\\_gls/pdf/genetics\\_screening.pdf](http://www.nccn.org/professionals/physician_gls/pdf/genetics_screening.pdf)
  - 9 **Moyer VA**. Risk assessment, genetic counseling, and genetic testing for BRCA-related cancer in women: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force recommendation statement. *Ann Intern Med* 2014; **160**: 271-281 [PMID: 24366376 DOI: 10.7326/M13-2747]
  - 10 **American Society of Clinical Oncology**. American Society of Clinical Oncology policy statement update: genetic testing for cancer susceptibility. *J Clin Oncol* 2003; **21**: 2397-2406 [PMID: 12692171 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2003.03.189]
  - 11 **Hampel H**, Bennett RL, Buchanan A, Pearlman R, Wiesner GL. A practice guideline from the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics and the National Society of Genetic Counselors: referral indications for cancer predisposition assessment. *Genet Med* 2015; **17**: 70-87 [PMID: 25394175 DOI: 10.1038/gim.2014.147]
  - 12 **American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists; ACOG Committee on Practice Bulletins—Gynecology; ACOG Committee on Genetics; Society of Gynecologic Oncologists**. ACOG Practice Bulletin No. 103: Hereditary breast and ovarian cancer syndrome. *Obstet Gynecol* 2009; **113**: 957-966 [PMID: 19305347 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e3181a106d4]
  - 13 **Kurian AW**, Kingham KE, Ford JM. Next-generation sequencing for hereditary breast and gynecologic cancer risk assessment. *Curr Opin Obstet Gynecol* 2015; **27**: 23-33 [PMID: 25502425 DOI: 10.1097/GCO.0000000000000141]
  - 14 **Domchek SM**, Bradbury A, Garber JE, Offit K, Robson ME. Multiplex genetic testing for cancer susceptibility: out on the high wire without a net? *J Clin Oncol* 2013; **31**: 1267-1270 [PMID: 23460708 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2012.46.9403]
  - 15 **Walsh T**, Lee MK, Casadei S, Thornton AM, Stray SM, Pennil C, Nord AS, Mandell JB, Swisher EM, King MC. Detection of inherited mutations for breast and ovarian cancer using genomic capture and massively parallel sequencing. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2010; **107**: 12629-12633 [PMID: 20616022 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1007983107]
  - 16 **Kurian AW**, Hare EE, Mills MA, Kingham KE, McPherson L, Whittemore AS, McGuire V, Ladabaum U, Kobayashi Y, Lincoln SE, Cargill M, Ford JM. Clinical evaluation of a multiple-gene sequencing panel for hereditary cancer risk assessment. *J Clin Oncol* 2014; **32**: 2001-2009 [PMID: 24733792 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2013.53.6607]
  - 17 **Schroeder C**, Faust U, Sturm M, Hackmann K, Grundmann K, Harmuth F, Bosse K, Kehrner M, Benkert T, Klink B, Mackenroth L, Betscheva-Krajcir E, Wimberger P, Kast K, Heilig M, Nguyen HP, Riess O, Schröck E, Bauer P, Rump A. HBOC multi-gene panel testing: comparison of two sequencing centers. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2015; **152**: 129-136 [PMID: 26022348 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-015-3429-9]
  - 18 **Antoniou AC**, Pharoah PD, Narod S, Risch HA, Eyfjord JE, Hopper JL, Olsson H, Johannsson O, Borg A, Pasini B, Radice P, Manoukian S, Eccles DM, Tang N, Olah E, Anton-Culver H, Warner E, Lubinski J, Gronwald J, Gorski B, Tulinius H, Thorlacius S, Eerola H, Nevanlinna H, Syrjäkoski K, Kallioniemi OP, Thompson D, Evans C, Peto J, Lalloo F, Evans DG, Easton DF. Breast and ovarian cancer risks to carriers of the BRCA1 5382insC and 185delAG and BRCA2 6174delT mutations: a combined analysis of 22 population based studies. *J Med Genet* 2005; **42**: 602-603 [PMID: 15994883 DOI: 10.1136/jmg.2004.024133]
  - 19 **Chen S**, Parmigiani G. Meta-analysis of BRCA1 and BRCA2 penetrance. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; **25**: 1329-1333 [PMID: 17416853 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2006.09.1066]
  - 20 **King MC**, Marks JH, Mandell JB. Breast and ovarian cancer risks due to inherited mutations in BRCA1 and BRCA2. *Science* 2003; **302**: 643-646 [PMID: 14576434 DOI: 10.1126/science.1088759]
  - 21 **Struwing JP**, Hartge P, Wacholder S, Baker SM, Berlin M, McAdams M, Timmerman MM, Brody LC, Tucker MA. The risk of cancer associated with specific mutations of BRCA1 and BRCA2 among Ashkenazi Jews. *N Engl J Med* 1997; **336**: 1401-1408 [PMID: 9145676 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199705153362001]
  - 22 **Roa BB**, Boyd AA, Volcik K, Richards CS. Ashkenazi Jewish population frequencies for common mutations in BRCA1 and BRCA2. *Nat Genet* 1996; **14**: 185-187 [PMID: 8841191 DOI: 10.1038/ng1096-185]
  - 23 **Christinat A**, Pagani O. Practical aspects of genetic counseling in breast cancer: lights and shadows. *Breast* 2013; **22**: 375-382 [PMID: 23673076 DOI: 10.1016/j.breast.2013.04.006]
  - 24 **Milne RL**, Antoniou AC. Genetic modifiers of cancer risk for BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutation carriers. *Ann Oncol* 2011; **22** Suppl 1: i11-i17 [PMID: 21285145 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdq660]
  - 25 **Rebbeck TR**, Mitra N, Wan F, Sinilnikova OM, Healey S, McGuffog L, Mazoyer S, Chenevix-Trench G, Easton DF, Antoniou AC, Nathanson KL, Laitman Y, Kushnir A, Paluch-Shimon S, Berger R, Zidan J, Friedman E, Ehrencrona H, Stenmark-Askmal M, Einbeigi Z, Loman N, Harbst K, Rantala J, Melin B, Huo D, Olopade OI, Seldon J, Ganz SA, Nussbaum RL, Chan SB, Odunsi K, Gayther SA, Domchek SM, Arun BK, Lu KH, Mitchell G, Karlan BY, Walsh C, Lester J, Godwin AK, Pathak H, Ross E, Daly MB, Whittemore AS, John EM, Miron A, Terry MB, Chung WK, Goldgar DE, Buys SS, Janavicius R, Tihomirova L, Tung N, Dorfling CM, van Rensburg EJ, Steele L, Neuhausen SL, Ding YC, Ejlertsen B, Gerdes AM, Hansen Tv, Ramón y Cajal T, Osorio A, Benitez J, Godino J, Tejada MI, Duran M, Weitzel JN, Bobolis KA, Sand SR, Fontaine A, Savarese A, Pasini B, Peissel B, Bonanni B, Zaffaroni D, Vignolo-Lutati F, Scuvera G, Giannini G, Bernard L, Genuardi M, Radice P, Dolcetti R, Manoukian S, Pensotti V, Gismondi V, Yannoukakos D, Fostira F, Garber J, Torres D, Rashid MU, Hamann U, Peock S, Frost D, Platte R, Evans DG, Eeles R, Davidson R, Eccles D, Cole T, Cook J, Brewer C, Hodgson S, Morrison PJ, Walker L, Porteous ME, Kennedy MJ, Izatt L, Adlard J, Donaldson A, Ellis S, Sharma P, Schmutzler RK, Wappenschmidt B, Becker A, Rhiem K, Hahnen E, Engel C, Meindl A, Engert S, Ditsch N, Arnold N, Plendl HJ, Mundhenke C, Niederacher D, Fleisch M, Sutter C, Bartram CR, Dikow N, Wang-Gohrke S, Gadzicki D, Steinemann D, Kast K, Beer M, Varon-Mateeva R, Gehrig A, Weber BH, Stoppa-Lyonnet D, Sinilnikova OM, Mazoyer S, Houdayer C, Belotti M, Gauthier-Villars M, Damiola F, Boutry-Kryza N, Lasset C, Sobol H, Peyrat JP, Muller D, Fricker JP, Collonge-Rame MA, Mortemousque I, Nogues C, Rouleau E, Isaacs C, De Paepe A, Poppe B, Claes K, De Leeneer K, Piedmonte M, Rodriguez G, Wakely K, Boggess J, Blank SV, Basil J, Azodi M, Phillips KA, Caldes T, de la Hoya M, Romero A, Nevanlinna H, Aittomäki K, van der Hout AH, Hogervorst FB, Verhoef S, Collée JM, Seynaeve C, Oosterwijk JC, Gille JJ, Wijnen JT, Gómez García

- EB, Kets CM, Ausems MG, Aalfs CM, Devilee P, Mensenkamp AR, Kwong A, Olah E, Papp J, Diez O, Lazaro C, Darder E, Blanco I, Salinas M, Jakubowska A, Lubinski J, Gronwald J, Jaworska-Bieniek K, Durda K, Sukiennicki G, Huzarski T, Byrski T, Cybulski C, Toloczko-Grabarek A, Złowocka-Perłowska E, Menkiszak J, Arason A, Barkardottir RB, Simard J, Laframboise R, Montagna M, Agata S, Alducci E, Peixoto A, Teixeira MR, Spurdle AB, Lee MH, Park SK, Kim SW, Friebel TM, Couch FJ, Lindor NM, Pankratz VS, Guidugli L, Wang X, Tischkowitz M, Foretova L, Vijai J, Offit K, Robson M, Rau-Murthy R, Kauff N, Fink-Retter A, Singer CF, Rappaport C, Gschwanter-Kaulich D, Pfeiler G, Tea MK, Berger A, Greene MH, Mai PL, Imyanitov EN, Toland AE, Senter L, Bojesen A, Pedersen IS, Skytte AB, Sunde L, Thomassen M, Moeller ST, Kruse TA, Jensen UB, Caligo MA, Aretini P, Teo SH, Selkirk CG, Hulick PJ, Andrulis I. Association of type and location of BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutations with risk of breast and ovarian cancer. *JAMA* 2015; **313**: 1347-1361 [PMID: 25849179 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2014.5985]
- 26 **Metcalfe KA**, Finch A, Poll A, Horsman D, Kim-Sing C, Scott J, Royer R, Sun P, Narod SA. Breast cancer risks in women with a family history of breast or ovarian cancer who have tested negative for a BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutation. *Br J Cancer* 2009; **100**: 421-425 [PMID: 19088722 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6604830]
- 27 **Hall MJ**, Reid JE, Burbidge LA, Pruss D, Deffenbaugh AM, Frye C, Wenstrup RJ, Ward BE, Scholl TA, Noll WW. BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutations in women of different ethnicities undergoing testing for hereditary breast-ovarian cancer. *Cancer* 2009; **115**: 2222-2233 [PMID: 19241424 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.24200]
- 28 **Malkin D**, Li FP, Strong LC, Fraumeni JF, Nelson CE, Kim DH, Kassel J, Gryka MA, Bischoff FZ, Tainsky MA. Germ line p53 mutations in a familial syndrome of breast cancer, sarcomas, and other neoplasms. *Science* 1990; **250**: 1233-1238 [PMID: 1978757 DOI: 10.1126/science.1978757]
- 29 **Hwang SJ**, Lozano G, Amos CI, Strong LC. Germline p53 mutations in a cohort with childhood sarcoma: sex differences in cancer risk. *Am J Hum Genet* 2003; **72**: 975-983 [PMID: 12610779 DOI: 10.1086/374567]
- 30 **Nelen MR**, Padberg GW, Peeters EA, Lin AY, van den Helm B, Frants RR, Coulon V, Goldstein AM, van Reen MM, Easton DF, Eeles RA, Hodgson S, Mulvihill JJ, Murday VA, Tucker MA, Mariman EC, Starink TM, Ponder BA, Ropers HH, Kremer H, Longy M, Eng C. Localization of the gene for Cowden disease to chromosome 10q22-23. *Nat Genet* 1996; **13**: 114-116 [PMID: 8673088 DOI: 10.1038/ng0596-114]
- 31 **Daly MB**, Pilarski R, Axilbund JE, Buys SS, Crawford B, Friedman S, Garber JE, Horton C, Kaklamani V, Klein C, Kohlmann W, Kurian A, Litton J, Madlensky L, Marcom PK, Merajver SD, Offit K, Pal T, Pasche B, Reiser G, Shannon KM, Swisher E, Voian NC, Weitzel JN, Whelan A, Wiesner GL, Dwyer MA, Kumar R. Genetic/familial high-risk assessment: breast and ovarian, version 1.2014. *J Natl Compr Canc Netw* 2014; **12**: 1326-1338 [PMID: 25190698]
- 32 **Tan MH**, Mester JL, Ngeow J, Rybicki LA, Orloff MS, Eng C. Lifetime cancer risks in individuals with germline PTEN mutations. *Clin Cancer Res* 2012; **18**: 400-407 [PMID: 22252256 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-2283]
- 33 **Hearle N**, Schumacher V, Menko FH, Olschwang S, Boardman LA, Gille JJ, Keller JJ, Westerman AM, Scott RJ, Lim W, Trimpath JD, Giardiello FM, Gruber SB, Offerhaus GJ, de Rooij FW, Wilson JH, Hansmann A, Möslin G, Royer-Pokora B, Vogel T, Phillips RK, Spigelman AD, Houlston RS. Frequency and spectrum of cancers in the Peutz-Jeghers syndrome. *Clin Cancer Res* 2006; **12**: 3209-3215 [PMID: 16707622 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-06-0083]
- 34 **Pharoah PD**, Guilford P, Caldas C. Incidence of gastric cancer and breast cancer in CDH1 (E-cadherin) mutation carriers from hereditary diffuse gastric cancer families. *Gastroenterology* 2001; **121**: 1348-1353 [PMID: 11729114 DOI: 10.1053/gast.2001.29611]
- 35 **Madanik SA**, Bergner A, Ye X, Blakeley JO. Increased risk of breast cancer in women with NF1. *Am J Med Genet A* 2012; **158A**: 3056-3060 [PMID: 23165953 DOI: 10.1002/ajmg.a.35550]
- 36 **Seminog OO**, Goldacre MJ. Age-specific risk of breast cancer in women with neurofibromatosis type 1. *Br J Cancer* 2015; **112**: 1546-1548 [PMID: 25742481 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2015.78]
- 37 **Zhang F**, Ma J, Wu J, Ye L, Cai H, Xia B, Yu X. PALB2 links BRCA1 and BRCA2 in the DNA-damage response. *Curr Biol* 2009; **19**: 524-529 [PMID: 19268590 DOI: 10.1016/j.cub.2009.02.018]
- 38 **Erkko H**, Xia B, Nikkilä J, Schleutker J, Syrjäkoski K, Mannermaa A, Kallioniemi A, Pylkäs K, Karppinen SM, Rapakko K, Miron A, Sheng Q, Li G, Mattila H, Bell DW, Haber DA, Grip M, Reiman M, Jukkola-Vuorinen A, Mustonen A, Kere J, Aaltonen LA, Kosma VM, Kataja V, Soini Y, Drapkin RI, Livingston DM, Winqvist R. A recurrent mutation in PALB2 in Finnish cancer families. *Nature* 2007; **446**: 316-319 [PMID: 17287723 DOI: 10.1038/nature05609]
- 39 **Erkko H**, Dowty JG, Nikkilä J, Syrjäkoski K, Mannermaa A, Pylkäs K, Southey MC, Holli K, Kallioniemi A, Jukkola-Vuorinen A, Kataja V, Kosma VM, Xia B, Livingston DM, Winqvist R, Hopper JL. Penetrance analysis of the PALB2 c.1592delT founder mutation. *Clin Cancer Res* 2008; **14**: 4667-4671 [PMID: 18628482 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-08-0210]
- 40 **Antoniou AC**, Foulkes WD, Tischkowitz M. Breast-cancer risk in families with mutations in PALB2. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **371**: 1651-1652 [PMID: 25337756 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc1410673]
- 41 **Rahman N**, Seal S, Thompson D, Kelly P, Renwick A, Elliott A, Reid S, Spanova K, Barfoot R, Chagtai T, Jayatilake H, McGuffog L, Hanks S, Evans DG, Eccles D, Easton DF, Stratton MR. PALB2, which encodes a BRCA2-interacting protein, is a breast cancer susceptibility gene. *Nat Genet* 2007; **39**: 165-167 [PMID: 17200668 DOI: 10.1038/ng1959]
- 42 **CHEK2 Breast Cancer Case-Control Consortium**. CHEK2\*1100delC and susceptibility to breast cancer: a collaborative analysis involving 10,860 breast cancer cases and 9,065 controls from 10 studies. *Am J Hum Genet* 2004; **74**: 1175-1182 [PMID: 15122511 DOI: 10.1086/421251]
- 43 **Weischer M**, Nordestgaard BG, Pharoah P, Bolla MK, Nevanlinna H, Van't Veer LJ, Garcia-Closas M, Hopper JL, Hall P, Andrulis IL, Devilee P, Fasching PA, Anton-Culver H, Lambrechts D, Hoening M, Cox A, Giles GG, Burwinkel B, Lindblom A, Couch FJ, Mannermaa A, Grenaker Ahaes G, John EM, Dörk T, Flyger H, Dunning AM, Wang Q, Muranen TA, van Hien R, Figueroa J, Southey MC, Czene K, Knight JA, Tollenaar RA, Beckmann MW, Ziogas A, Christiaens MR, Collée JM, Reed MW, Severi G, Marme F, Margolin S, Olson JE, Kosma VM, Kristensen VN, Miron A, Bogdanova N, Shah M, Blomqvist C, Broeks A, Sherman M, Phillips KA, Li J, Liu J, Glendon G, Seynaeve C, Ekici AB, Leunen K, Kriege M, Cross SS, Baglietto L, Sohn C, Wang X, Kataja V, Borresen-Dale AL, Meyer A, Easton DF, Schmidt MK, Bojesen SE. CHEK2\*1100delC heterozygosity in women with breast cancer associated with early death, breast cancer-specific death, and increased risk of a second breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: 4308-4316 [PMID: 23109706 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2012.42.7336]
- 44 **Renwick A**, Thompson D, Seal S, Kelly P, Chagtai T, Ahmed M, North B, Jayatilake H, Barfoot R, Spanova K, McGuffog L, Evans DG, Eccles D, Easton DF, Stratton MR, Rahman N. ATM mutations that cause ataxia-telangiectasia are breast cancer susceptibility alleles. *Nat Genet* 2006; **38**: 873-875 [PMID: 16832357 DOI: 10.1038/ng1837]
- 45 **Zhang G**, Zeng Y, Liu Z, Wei W. Significant association between Nijmegen breakage syndrome 1 657del5 polymorphism and breast cancer risk. *Tumour Biol* 2013; **34**: 2753-2757 [PMID: 23765759 DOI: 10.1007/s13277-013-0830-z]
- 46 **Warner E**, Messersmith H, Causer P, Eisen A, Shumak R, Plewes D. Systematic review: using magnetic resonance imaging to screen women at high risk for breast cancer. *Ann Intern Med* 2008; **148**: 671-679 [PMID: 18458280 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-148-9-200805060-00007]
- 47 **Warner E**, Hill K, Causer P, Plewes D, Jong R, Yaffe M, Foulkes WD, Ghadirian P, Lynch H, Couch F, Wong J, Wright F, Sun P, Narod SA. Prospective study of breast cancer incidence in women with a BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutation under surveillance with and without magnetic resonance imaging. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**:

- 1664-1669 [PMID: 21444874 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2009.27.0835]
- 48 **Domchek SM**, Friebel TM, Singer CF, Evans DG, Lynch HT, Isaacs C, Garber JE, Neuhausen SL, Matloff E, Eeles R, Pichert G, Van t'veer L, Tung N, Weitzel JN, Couch FJ, Rubinstein WS, Ganz PA, Daly MB, Olopade OL, Tomlinson G, Schildkraut J, Blum JL, Rebbeck TR. Association of risk-reducing surgery in BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutation carriers with cancer risk and mortality. *JAMA* 2010; **304**: 967-975 [PMID: 20810374 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2010.1237]
  - 49 **Finch AP**, Lubinski J, Möller P, Singer CF, Karlan B, Senter L, Rosen B, Maehle L, Ghadirian P, Cybulski C, Huzarski T, Eisen A, Foulkes WD, Kim-Sing C, Ainsworth P, Tung N, Lynch HT, Neuhausen S, Metcalfe KA, Thompson I, Murphy J, Sun P, Narod SA. Impact of oophorectomy on cancer incidence and mortality in women with a BRCA1 or BRCA2 mutation. *J Clin Oncol* 2014; **32**: 1547-1553 [PMID: 24567435 DOI: 10.1200/jco.2013.53.2820]
  - 50 **Fisher B**, Costantino JP, Wickerham DL, Redmond CK, Kavanah M, Cronin WM, Vogel V, Robidoux A, Dimitrov N, Atkins J, Daly M, Wieand S, Tan-Chiu E, Ford L, Wolmark N. Tamoxifen for prevention of breast cancer: report of the National Surgical Adjuvant Breast and Bowel Project P-1 Study. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1998; **90**: 1371-1388 [PMID: 9747868 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/dji372]
  - 51 **Fisher B**, Costantino JP, Wickerham DL, Cecchini RS, Cronin WM, Robidoux A, Bevers TB, Kavanah MT, Atkins JN, Margoese RG, Runowicz CD, James JM, Ford LG, Wolmark N. Tamoxifen for the prevention of breast cancer: current status of the National Surgical Adjuvant Breast and Bowel Project P-1 study. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2005; **97**: 1652-1662 [PMID: 16288118]
  - 52 **King MC**, Wieand S, Hale K, Lee M, Walsh T, Owens K, Tait J, Ford L, Dunn BK, Costantino J, Wickerham L, Wolmark N, Fisher B. Tamoxifen and breast cancer incidence among women with inherited mutations in BRCA1 and BRCA2: National Surgical Adjuvant Breast and Bowel Project (NSABP-P1) Breast Cancer Prevention Trial. *JAMA* 2001; **286**: 2251-2256 [PMID: 11710890 DOI: 10.1001/jama.286.18.2251]
  - 53 **Vogel VG**, Costantino JP, Wickerham DL, Cronin WM, Cecchini RS, Atkins JN, Bevers TB, Fehrenbacher L, Pajon ER, Wade JL, Robidoux A, Margoese RG, James J, Runowicz CD, Ganz PA, Reis SE, McCaskill-Stevens W, Ford LG, Jordan VC, Wolmark N. Update of the National Surgical Adjuvant Breast and Bowel Project Study of Tamoxifen and Raloxifene (STAR) P-2 Trial: Preventing breast cancer. *Cancer Prev Res (Phila)* 2010; **3**: 696-706 [PMID: 20404000 DOI: 10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-10-0076]
  - 54 **Goss PE**, Ingle JN, Alés-Martínez JE, Cheung AM, Chlebowski RT, Wactawski-Wende J, McTiernan A, Robbins J, Johnson KC, Martin LW, Winquist E, Sarto GE, Garber JE, Fabian CJ, Pujol P, Maunsell E, Farmer P, Gelmon KA, Tu D, Richardson H. Exemestane for breast-cancer prevention in postmenopausal women. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 2381-2391 [PMID: 21639806 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1103507]
  - 55 **Cuzick J**, Sestak I, Forbes JF, Dowsett M, Knox J, Cawthorn S, Saunders C, Roche N, Mansel RE, von Minckwitz G, Bonanni B, Palva T, Howell A. Anastrozole for prevention of breast cancer in high-risk postmenopausal women (IBIS-II): an international, double-blind, randomised placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2014; **383**: 1041-1048 [PMID: 24333009 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(13)62292-8]

**P- Reviewer:** Cosmi E, Khajehei M, Sonoda K, Tsikouras P, Yokoyama Y  
**S- Editor:** Gong XM **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Wu HL



## Amniocentesis: A contemporary review

Katherine Ann Connolly, Keith Arnold Eddleman

Katherine Ann Connolly, Keith Arnold Eddleman, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Department of Obstetrics, Gynecology and Reproductive Sciences, Mount Sinai Hospital, New York, NY 10029, United States

**Author contributions:** All authors equally contributed to this paper with conception and design of the study, literature review and analysis, drafting and critical revision and editing, and final approval of the final version.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** No potential conflicts of interest. No financial support.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Katherine Ann Connolly, MD, Division of Maternal-Fetal Medicine, Department of Obstetrics, Gynecology and Reproductive Sciences, Mount Sinai Hospital, 5 East 98<sup>th</sup> Street, Room 256, New York, NY 10029, United States. [katherine.connolly@mssm.edu](mailto:katherine.connolly@mssm.edu)  
 Telephone: +1-212-2415681  
 Fax: +1-212-3487438

Received: August 1, 2015  
 Peer-review started: August 6, 2015  
 First decision: September 16, 2015  
 Revised: October 27, 2015  
 Accepted: December 13, 2015  
 Article in press: December 15, 2015  
 Published online: February 10, 2016

### Abstract

Amniocentesis is an essential tool in obstetrics. Invasive testing remains the only modality for diagnostic genetic testing and the only way to provide comprehensive testing for chromosomal abnormalities. Despite increasing

use of cell free fetal deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) testing, amniocentesis should still be offered to all women who desire more complete and accurate genetic testing. Counseling patients on the limitations of screening tests is of the utmost importance and amniocentesis should continue to be recommended to confirm positive results from cell free fetal DNA testing or in the case of failed cell free fetal DNA test. As cell free fetal DNA screening has not adequately been studied in multiple gestations, its use is not recommended in this population and invasive testing should be offered. Amniocentesis is also very useful in providing additional information in settings other than genetic testing the second and third trimester. If intraamniotic infection is suspected, but the clinical findings are not enough to guide management, amniocentesis can provide testing that can both immediately clarify the picture (interleukin-6, gram stain, glucose levels) and finally confirm the presence of infection (culture). It can also be used to detect the presence of intrauterine viral infections. Additionally, amniocentesis may be used to test for markers of fetal lung maturity. The American Congress of Obstetricians and Gynecologists recommends that amniocentesis for this indication not be used in cases where late preterm delivery is indicated. It may be useful in guiding decision-making, however, when late preterm delivery is indicated, but when exact timing is unclear. Regardless of the indication, amniocentesis appears to be a relatively low risk procedure with minimal risk to the patient. Additional randomized controlled trials are not likely, as they are not feasible to due extremely high number of participants that would be needed to detect a difference in loss rates. Based on current literature, however, the risk of pregnancy loss from second trimester amniocentesis is low in both singleton and twin gestations. We counsel patients that technique has changed since the original studies in the 1970s and feel comfortable quoting a loss rate of 1/500-1/1000 based on contemporary data.

**Key words:** Amniocentesis; Prenatal diagnosis; Invasive genetic testing; Procedure related loss rates; Cell free fetal DNA testing; Fetal lung maturity; Intraamniotic



infection

© **The Author(s) 2016.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Invasive testing remains the only way to provide comprehensive testing for chromosomal abnormalities. Despite availability of cell free fetal DNA testing, amniocentesis should still be offered to all women who desire complete genetic testing. Amniocentesis is also useful if intraamniotic infection is suspected, but the clinical picture is unclear. Additionally, when late preterm delivery is indicated, amniocentesis need not be used. There are, however, some instances when delivery timing is unclear and amniocentesis for fetal lung maturity may provide information to guide delivery timing. Amniocentesis is a relatively safe procedure. We counsel patients that technique has changed since the original studies in the 1970s and feel comfortable quoting a loss rate of 1/500-1/1000 based on contemporary data.

Connolly KA, Eddleman KA. Amniocentesis: A contemporary review. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 58-65 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/58.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.58>

## HISTORICAL CONSIDERATIONS

Amniocentesis has been widely used since it was first performed in 1956<sup>[1]</sup>. Originally reported as a method of determining fetal sex *in utero*, Fuchs and Riis then hypothesized that it could be possible to diagnose chromosomal abnormalities *in utero* via this technique. By 1963, it had been confirmed that the karyotype of fetal and amniotic cells are identical<sup>[2]</sup>. Steele and Brag then showed in 1966 that amniotic cells can be sampled and cultured in sufficient quantity to be karyotyped, showing that *in utero* chromosome analysis was possible<sup>[3]</sup>. Shortly thereafter, the first prenatal diagnosis of an abnormal karyotype was reported<sup>[4]</sup>. Since that time, its utility has only continued to expand in both the second and third trimesters.

In 1979, the National Institutes of Health (NIH) suggested that amniocentesis be routinely offered to women 35 years or older, based on the balance between the risk of procedure-related pregnancy loss and the incidence of aneuploidy based on age<sup>[5]</sup>. Its use for genetic testing has only continued to expand over the years and is now the most commonly used invasive genetic test in obstetrics<sup>[6]</sup>. With the recent advent of cell free fetal DNA screening, understanding the continued need for and risks of amniocentesis has become increasingly important.

## TECHNIQUE

Amniocentesis is generally performed after 15 wk

gestation. The amniotic fluid volume at this gestational age is approximately 150 cc<sup>[5]</sup>. Prior to performing procedure, an ultrasound should be performed to evaluate the placental and fetal location and to confirm gestational age and fetal viability. After adequately prepping the maternal abdomen with antiseptic solution, the procedure should be performed under continuous ultrasound guidance to decrease the number of insertions and bloody taps<sup>[7]</sup>. If possible, transplacental passage of the needle should be avoided. If this is not possible due to an anterior placenta, care should be taken to avoid large vessels and echolucencies seen with ultrasound guidance. In the hands of experienced providers, there does not appear to be an increased loss rate with transplacental amniocentesis compared to procedures during which the needle does not pass through the placenta<sup>[8]</sup>.

The effect of operator experience itself on outcomes of amniocentesis has independently been studied. In a retrospective review, Margioulas-Siarkou *et al*<sup>[9]</sup>, examined loss rates of a single operator over a 13 year period ( $n = 5913$ ) and found the loss rates in the first 10% of amniocenteses performed to be significantly higher than the last 10%, suggesting there is benefit to experience. In a review of 6332 amniocentesis specimens that revealed male karyotype (46 XY), maternal cell contamination was seen more frequently in samples obtained by physicians who perform < 50 amniocenteses annually (0.67% vs 0.19%,  $P = 0.0021$ )<sup>[10]</sup>. There has never been a study defining an exact number of procedures after which a provider becomes "experienced," though reports of single institutions' experiences show that fetal loss rates are related to operator experience<sup>[11]</sup>.

Needle size is another technical aspect of the procedure that has been postulated to have effect on loss rates; however studies on this issue are extremely limited. Athanasiadis *et al*<sup>[12]</sup>, showed that while a larger caliber needle may facilitate a faster collection of fluid, it may also be associated with increased fluid leakage rates. From a review of the literature, it appears that 20 or 22 gauge needles are most commonly used today. When these two sizes were compared in a randomized trial with 200 participants, it was shown that procedure time was statistically significantly lower when a 20 gauge needle was used (9.6 s vs 26 s,  $P < 0.0001$ ). There was no difference in intrauterine bleeding at the insertion site, patient discomfort 30 min post-procedure, or complication rates within 2 wk of the procedure between the two groups<sup>[12]</sup>. This decrease in procedure time is not clinically significant and we use a 22 gauge needle.

## INDICATIONS

Amniocentesis allows for fetal DNA in the amniotic fluid to be analyzed for chromosomal abnormalities. This can be done in response to abnormal serum genetic screening, an abnormal ultrasound finding, or in order

to specifically test for a genetic condition for which a patient or partner is a carrier, including autosomal recessive, autosomal dominant, X-linked conditions or microdeletion/microduplication syndromes. This analysis of the fetal DNA is only possible with diagnostic testing via amniocentesis or chorionic villus sampling (CVS). One advantage of amniocentesis over CVS, however, is the ability to directly analyze fetal DNA. This avoids the potential issue of confined placental mosaicism that may be encountered in CVS samples. In 1%-3% of CVS samples, chromosomal mosaicism is seen<sup>[13]</sup>. This mosaicism is usually confined to the placenta, however is also present in the fetus in 10% of cases. In all cases of mosaicism on CVS, amniocentesis is recommended in order to determine whether it is confined to the placenta or is seen in the fetus as well.

Another important application for amniocentesis that deserves its own attention is in twin gestations. It has been previously shown that twin gestations are at an increased risk for chromosomal abnormalities. Further, the rate of multiple births is increasing. Between 1980 and 1999, the overall multiple birth ratio increased 59% and by 1999 multiples accounted for 3% of all live births<sup>[14]</sup>. Women of advanced age have experienced the greatest increase in rates of multiples<sup>[14]</sup>. As these women who are already at an increased risk for chromosomal abnormalities at baseline become increasingly pregnant with multiples, it is imperative that we have an accurate estimate of the risks of amniocentesis in this setting. As data is limited on cell free fetal DNA screening (see later) in the setting of multiple gestations, amniocentesis remains important for genetic diagnosis in these patients<sup>[15]</sup>.

In addition to its utility in genetic testing, amniocentesis has been used in the third trimester to test the amniotic fluid for biochemical markers suggestive of fetal lung maturity. This indication for amniocentesis has recently come under closer scrutiny. The issue of timing when delivery is indicated in the late-preterm or early-term time period is based mostly on expert opinion. To analyze the obstetric, fetal and maternal conditions that often lead to late-preterm or early-term birth, the National Institute of Child Health and Human Development (NICHD) and the Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine held a workshop in February 2011. In this meeting, the issue of using amniocentesis for fetal lung maturity to guide decision-making was directly addressed. The consensus was that if there is an indication for delivery, amniocentesis to assess fetal lung maturity should not be used to assist in delivery timing<sup>[16]</sup>. There are several rationales for this recommendation. The first is that if significant fetal or maternal risk exists, delivery should occur regardless of fetal lung maturity. The second issue is that confirmation of fetal lung maturity with amniocentesis does not translate into maturity of organ systems other than the lungs<sup>[17]</sup>. A committee opinion from the American Congress of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) supports this recommendation, based on the

same two issues<sup>[18]</sup>. In an editorial statement arguing the dissenting opinion, Towers *et al.*<sup>[19]</sup> asserts that fetal lung maturity testing provides more information than just lung maturity. He argues that many of the serious morbidities for preterm neonates born after 34 wk (intraventricular hemorrhage, necrotizing enterocolitis) are highest in those infants who are intubated, and that the risk of intubation in the neonatal period after an amniocentesis showing fetal lung maturity is < 1%<sup>[20-22]</sup>. Further, he argues that there is a role for amniocentesis when the clinical scenario is not clear. For example, in the setting of uncertain dates and a quasi-urgent fetal indication for delivery, such as suspected fetal growth restriction with less-than-optimal interval growth at < 34 wk. We believe that it is reasonable to use amniocentesis to assess fetal lung maturity in this setting, when there is an indication for an early delivery but no imminent danger to mother or fetus would likely occur while awaiting results.

Another use for amniocentesis is in the diagnosis of intraamniotic infection. This diagnosis can usually be made clinically, based on maternal fever often with associated maternal or fetal tachycardia, uterine tenderness, or foul smelling amniotic fluid<sup>[23]</sup>. There are situations, however, where infection is suspected or likely, but the clinical picture is not this clear. It is extremely important in these situations to clarify the diagnosis and obtain further information to guide management, as undiagnosed infection would put the patient at risk. One example of this is in the case of a candidate for a physical exam indicated cerclage, as subclinical intraamniotic infection is seen in 13%-28% of these women<sup>[24]</sup>. Amniocentesis can be utilized in these cases, as an amniotic fluid culture remains the most specific test for documentation of intraamniotic infection. There are several other tests that have been used to aid in the diagnosis, as it is not always practical to wait several days for final culture results in the setting of a possible infection. Romero *et al.* studied the diagnostic value of each of these tests and found that a high interleukin-6 (IL-6) level was 82% sensitive and a negative gram stain was 99% specific for the detection of amniotic fluid containing bacteria<sup>[25]</sup>. The correlation between high amniotic fluid IL-6 levels and chorioamniotic infection has been supported by other authors as well<sup>[26]</sup>. Analysis of amniotic fluid for these parameters remains an invaluable tool in detecting infection when the clinical picture is not straightforward.

Amniocentesis should also be used to diagnose intrauterine viral infections, such as Cytomegalovirus or Parvovirus. Whether there are ultrasonographic signs that a fetus has been affected by one of these viruses or maternal serum indicates infection, amniocentesis can be performed. Polymerase chain reaction studies for these viruses should then be performed on the amniotic fluid obtained<sup>[27]</sup>. This information is essential to guide further fetal assessment and possible intrauterine treatment, depending on the clinical scenario.

An exciting new application for amniotic fluid and,

thus, amniocentesis is its potential use for the ascertainment of stem cells. There has been much attention and research aimed at the potential clinical uses of stem cells from bone marrow, blood, embryonic tissue and umbilical cord blood. Their widespread use has been limited by small cell number, potential tumorigenesis, and some ethical concerns with the use of embryonic tissue. The use of amniotic fluid cells obtained from discarded fluid after second trimester amniocentesis has shown promise as a way to circumvent some of these limitations. The ability to expand these multipotent cells in culture and to cryopreserve them for delayed differentiation and use has already been documented<sup>[28]</sup>. They have been shown to differentiate along adipogenic, osteogenic, myogenic, endothelial, neurogenic and hepatic pathways without giving rise to tumors<sup>[29]</sup>. These initial studies make these cells available to be used and studied for potential clinically significant therapeutic purposes.

There is one additional use for amniocentesis that is no longer widely used, though is worthy of discussion: spectral analysis of amniotic fluid ( $\Delta OD450$ ) to quantify the severity of fetal anemia. *In utero*, bilirubin from the fetal pulmonary and tracheal effluents is found in the amniotic fluid. The level of bilirubin in the fluid can be obtained *via* amniocentesis and then be used to estimate fetal hemolysis<sup>[30,31]</sup>. This technique was compared to middle cerebral artery (MCA) Doppler assessment in a prospective study by Oepkes *et al.*<sup>[32]</sup>. MCA Doppler assessment was found to be 85% accurate, whereas  $\Delta OD450$  measurements were 76% accurate using the Liley curve and 81% accurate using the Queenan curve. Based on the findings of this study, MCA Doppler assessment has been widely accepted as the primary screening tool in the detection of fetal anemia<sup>[5]</sup>. We agree that amniocentesis should no longer be the first line surveillance tool in this situation, given that the noninvasive option has been shown to be superior.

## COMPLICATIONS

Amniocentesis is a relatively safe procedure with minimal risk to the patient. With sterile technique, chorioamnionitis is seen in less than 0.1% of cases<sup>[11]</sup>. Other infrequent complications include transient vaginal spotting or leakage of amniotic fluid. Patients should be counseled that if leakage occurs, it usually occurs within 48 h and that fetal survival is greater than 90% in these cases<sup>[11]</sup>.

Pregnancy loss is the most serious and feared risk to an amniocentesis. Generally quoted loss rates are primarily based on 3 main studies in the 1970s that were not randomized<sup>[33-35]</sup>. Based on these studies, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) promulgated a loss rate of 0.5% following amniocentesis. Despite the fact that these studies were not randomized and amniocenteses were not performed with the use of concurrent ultrasound guidance, this

CDC estimation of loss after amniocentesis is still often quoted. There is only one randomized trial evaluating loss after amniocentesis published by Tabor *et al.*<sup>[36]</sup> in 1986. This trial reports a 1% increased risk in the amniocentesis group when compared to the control group who did not undergo amniocentesis<sup>[36]</sup>. This study has been criticized for being carried out on young, low-risk women, which is generally not the group of women most commonly undergoing this procedure. The results from this trial, which was carried out 30 years ago, may not be applicable to our current practice, as their equipment was far inferior to what we have today. Nonetheless, this is the only randomized trial comparing amniocentesis to no amniocentesis, and it is likely to remain so due to societal pressures and ethical concerns.

Absent randomized controlled trials (RCT), researchers have sought to refine the reported risk of amniocentesis by utilizing non-randomized studies that, although not randomized, mitigate some of the criticisms of older studies. For example, Eddleman *et al.*<sup>[37]</sup> used the large database of approximately 35000 patients who were enrolled in the FASTER trial. In this multi-center, prospective clinical trial, there was a 1% loss rate in the amniocentesis group and a 0.94% loss rate in the no amniocentesis group. This difference of 0.06% (1/1600) is the loss rate attributable to the amniocentesis. Another very large, contemporary study that included 51557 patients was done by Odibo *et al.*<sup>[38]</sup>, with loss rate of 0.13% (1/769) attributable to amniocentesis. A meta-analysis that included 21 studies performed after 2000 showed a 0.11% procedure-related loss rate<sup>[39]</sup>. This study only analyzed studies which included greater than 1000 procedures and only those who examined loss rates < 24 wk gestation in order to determine loss rates attributable to amniocentesis. Other recent trials have continued to demonstrate this trend in loss rates lower than previously seen by Tabor *et al.*<sup>[38,40-43]</sup>: Typically in the range of 0%-0.5% loss rate attributable to amniocentesis. This more contemporary analysis of loss rates is reassuring and should be included in current patient counseling<sup>[38-42]</sup>.

Overall, reported loss rates for amniocentesis in recent years are consistently low, but have been criticized for various reasons. Due to their nonrandomized nature, many of these studies do not have a control group that would provide a background loss rate. Even in the studies that do have a control group, they are often not appropriately matched in terms of baseline risk factors for the women in each group. Another issue with current literature is that there has not been a standard manner by which to report procedure-related loss rates. Studies to date have used varying definitions of pregnancy loss in terms of cutoffs for gestational age and length of time from procedure to loss. As mentioned earlier, there will likely not be any future RCT to assess contemporary loss rates. An RCT would require > 400000 patients in each arm to have adequate power to detect a difference

of 0.05% in loss rates between those who do and do not undergo amniocentesis<sup>[37]</sup>. Thus, using large scale, multicenter, prospective trials, such as the FASTER Trial, as a surrogate appears to be the best option. Given it was carried out in multiple centers and that there were no specifications as to the technique, the results are generalizable to the larger "national" community. Given that more recent literature suggests loss rates lower than seen in the 1970s, amniocentesis remains a safe option for genetic testing. We believe it is reasonable to counsel patients of an approximate 1/500-1/1000 risk of loss attributable to amniocentesis. All women should be offered genetic testing and we recommend a customized risk assessment for each individual patient, rather than using an arbitrary age cut-off to guide recommendation for amniocentesis. We also believe that patients today, with appropriate counseling, are able to understand the reasons that we cannot give them an exact number for the risk of loss and accept a "range of risk" as our best estimate.

The literature regarding loss rates after amniocentesis in twin gestation is even more limited<sup>[11]</sup>. There have been several published studies addressing this; however they are limited by small sample size<sup>[44-48]</sup>. Cahill published a retrospective review of a 16 year time period comparing women who underwent amniocentesis ( $n = 311$ ) to a control group ( $n = 1623$ ) who did not<sup>[49]</sup>. In this study, the attributable risk of pregnancy loss prior to 24 wk after an amniocentesis was 1.8%. The women who elected to have an amniocentesis were older, more likely to be  $\geq 35$  years old and more likely to report alcohol exposure. It should be noted, however, that this increased risk of loss after amniocentesis remained after adjustment for maternal age, chorionicity, presence of anomaly on ultrasound, alcohol exposure, or race. Further, amniocentesis remained significantly associated with loss in patients who were younger than 35 years old and had normal ultrasound findings. In agreement with this finding, Yukobowich *et al*<sup>[47]</sup> found a statistically significant increase in fetal loss rate after amniocentesis (2.7% vs 0.6%). Conversely, other authors have found no difference in loss rates<sup>[45,46,50]</sup>. It is clear that additional studies are needed to further elucidate the true impact amniocentesis has on the loss rate in a twin gestation. The literature is extremely scant in regards to loss rates in the setting of higher order multiple gestations and further research is needed to guide counseling.

## OTHER CONSIDERATIONS

The safety and accuracy of amniocentesis performed prior to 15 wk has been assessed in several randomized clinical trials. One study by the NICHD compared first trimester amniocentesis to first trimester transabdominal CVS<sup>[51]</sup>. They found an increase in spontaneous loss rate (RR-1.74) and a 4-fold increase in the rate of talipes equinovarus in the amniocentesis group. Those pregnancies which underwent CVS, however, are not

an appropriate control group for those undergoing early amniocentesis. CVS is a different procedure that can be done at an earlier gestational age, which involves aspiration of the placental tissue and generally requires a larger gauge needle than used for amniocentesis. Nicolaides *et al*<sup>[52]</sup>, found that the spontaneous loss rate after early amniocentesis (5.8%) was significantly higher than after CVS (1.8%). Other trials have been focused on comparing early amniocentesis to mid-trimester amniocentesis for a more direct comparison. Similarly, in a large study by the Canadian Early and Mid-Trimester Amniocentesis Trial Group<sup>[53]</sup> that included over 4000 amniocenteses, procedures done at 11-12 wk were compared to those done between 15-20 wk. The only difference between these two groups was the gestational age at the time of amniocentesis. There was a statistically significant increase in post-procedure spontaneous loss rate (2.6% vs 0.8%) and talipes equinovarus (1.3% vs 0.1%) in the early amniocentesis group. Given the established relative safety of amniocentesis in the mid-trimester, we recommend that these procedures be carried out after 15 wk gestation.

The safety of invasive procedures in the setting of maternal transmittable blood-borne illnesses is an additional concern, due to potential fetal contamination with maternal blood cells. Studies on amniocentesis in the setting of maternal human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), hepatitis B virus (HBV) and hepatitis C virus (HCV) are limited. There have been several small studies evaluating the risk of transmission in mothers with HBV. In the limited studies analyzing transmission rates after amniocentesis in women who were HBsAg-positive, there does not appear to be an increased risk of vertical transmission after amniocentesis<sup>[54,55]</sup>. In these studies, all infants did receive HBV vaccine and immunoprophylaxis at birth. The data on women with HCV is extremely limited, as there has been one prospective trial including 22 women. The amniotic fluid was positive for hepatitis C RNA in one woman at the time of amniocentesis. None of the infants born to these 22 mothers were positive for hepatitis C on postnatal testing<sup>[56]</sup>. Due to lack of evidence, there is insufficient data to estimate the risk of transmission in women with high hepatitis B or C viral loads. This preliminary data seems to suggest low risk of vertical transmission, however further studies with larger numbers are needed to adequately assess safety.

There have been more reports on amniocentesis in the setting of maternal HIV infection. There are studies that have shown 2-4 fold increased risk of vertical transmission of HIV after amniocentesis in the second or third trimester<sup>[57-59]</sup>, though these studies were performed prior to the widespread use of combination antiretroviral therapy (ART) and many women had received no treatment at all prior to the procedure. There have been subsequent, promising small series reported after the use of combination ART has been shown to be effective. The previously shown increased risk of vertical transmission was not seen in these



women who were effectively treated<sup>[11]</sup>; in fact, the risk of transmission was not increased when compared to women who did not undergo amniocentesis<sup>[60-62]</sup>. The United States Department of Health and Human Services guidelines were updated to account for these new studies, stating that the risk of transmission does not appear to be increased in women treated with effective combination ART<sup>[63]</sup>. They do caution that although there have been no cases of vertical transmission in the 159 reported cases of amniocentesis in women who are on effective combination ART, a small increased risk of transmission may still exist. Due to this potential risk of vertical transmission, it is recommended that women in whom amniocentesis is indicated should be started on combined ART and ideally should have an undetectable viral load at the time of the procedure. Women should be counseled on the potential risk for transmission as well as the risks and benefits of noninvasive testing alternatives<sup>[11]</sup>.

Recently, some obstetrical care providers have opined that with cell free fetal DNA technology, there will no longer be a need for amniocentesis. This technology in the maternal circulation has received much attention and press recently for screening, however it is limited in the information it can provide. Comprehensive pretest counseling is prudent, as this remains a screening modality. Patients must understand that this is not a diagnostic test, a negative test does not ensure a normal pregnancy, and that all positive results should be confirmed by invasive testing<sup>[64]</sup>. It most commonly only tests for trisomies 21, 18, and 13 and sex chromosome abnormalities, with varying degrees of accuracy<sup>[15]</sup>. In a study by Bianchi *et al.*<sup>[65]</sup> of patients with abnormal cell free fetal DNA screening, aneuploidy was confirmed by invasive testing in only 93% with trisomy 21, 64% with trisomy 18, 44% with trisomy 13, and 38% with sex chromosomal abnormalities. Similarly, patients must be counseled on the genetic disorders that are not tested for by these blood tests. Women must be counseled that major trisomies screened for with cell free fetal DNA make up only about 50% of the cytogenetic abnormalities that would be found by karyotype following CVS or amniocentesis<sup>[5]</sup>. Further, there is a chance of test failure using this technique, due to a low fetal fraction of cell free fetal DNA recovered from maternal blood. In this circumstance, we believe that diagnostic testing should be offered due to an increased risk of aneuploidy in this setting (OR = 9.2)<sup>[66]</sup>. Testing with amniocentesis or CVS remain the only ways to definitively obtain genetic information from karyotype and microarray. Thus, ACOG still recommends offering invasive testing to all women<sup>[15]</sup>.

## CONCLUSION

Amniocentesis is an essential tool in obstetrics. Invasive testing remains the only modality for diagnostic genetic testing and the only way to provide comprehensive testing for aneuploidy and microdeletions. Despite

increasing use of cell free fetal DNA testing, this test should still be offered to all women who desire more complete and accurate genetic testing. Counseling patients on the limitations of screening tests is of the upmost importance and amniocentesis should continue to be recommended to confirm positive results from cell free fetal DNA testing, in the case of failed cell free fetal DNA test, or with a positive first or second trimester screen. As cell free fetal DNA screening has not adequately been studied in multiple gestations, its use is not recommended in this population and invasive testing should be offered.

Amniocentesis is also very useful in providing additional information in settings other than genetic testing the second and third trimester. If intraamniotic infection is suspected, but the clinical findings are not enough to guide management, amniocentesis can provide testing that can both immediately clarify the picture (IL-6, gram stain, glucose levels) and confirm or exclude the presence of infection (culture). Additionally, in cases where late preterm delivery is indicated, but exact timing is unclear, amniocentesis to test for fetal lung maturity provides useful information to guide decision-making.

Regardless of the indication, amniocentesis appears to be a relatively low risk procedure with minimal risk to the patient. Though additional RCTs are not likely, based on current literature, the risk of pregnancy loss from second trimester amniocentesis is low in both singleton and twin gestations. We counsel patients that technology has changed since the original studies in the 1970s and feel comfortable quoting a loss rate of 1/500-1/1000 based on contemporary data.

## REFERENCES

- 1 Fuchs F, Riis P. Antenatal sex determination. *Nature* 1956; **177**: 330 [PMID: 13297032 DOI: 10.1038/177330a0]
- 2 Carr DH. Chromosome studies in abortuses and stillborn infants. *Lancet* 1963; **2**: 603-606 [PMID: 14050879 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(63)90396-9]
- 3 Steele MW, Breg WR. Chromosome analysis of human amniotic-fluid cells. *Lancet* 1966; **1**: 383-385 [PMID: 4159775 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(66)91387-0]
- 4 Jacobson CB, Barter RH. Intrauterine diagnosis and management of genetic defects. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1967; **99**: 796-807 [PMID: 4231464]
- 5 Creasy RK, Resnick R, Bralow L, Iams JD. Creasy and Resnick's maternal-fetal medicine: principles and practice. 7<sup>th</sup> ed. Philadelphia: Elsevier/Saunders, xxiv, 2014: 1294
- 6 Martin JA, Hamilton BE, Sutton PD, Ventura SJ, Menacker F, Munson ML. Births: final data for 2003. *Natl Vital Stat Rep* 2005; **54**: 1-116 [PMID: 16176060]
- 7 Romero R, Jeanty P, Reece EA, Grannum P, Bracken M, Berkowitz R, Hobbins JC. Sonographically monitored amniocentesis to decrease intraoperative complications. *Obstet Gynecol* 1985; **65**: 426-430 [PMID: 3883268]
- 8 Bombard AT, Powers JF, Carter S, Schwartz A, Nitowsky HM. Procedure-related fetal losses in transplacental versus nontransplacental genetic amniocentesis. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1995; **172**: 868-872 [PMID: 7892877 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9378(95)90013-6]
- 9 Margioulas-Siarkou C, Karkanaki A, Kalogiannidis I, Petousis S, Dagklis T, Mavromatidis G, Prapas Y, Prapas N, Rousso

- D. Operator experience reduces the risk of second trimester amniocentesis-related adverse outcomes. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 2013; **169**: 230-233 [PMID: 23664797 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejogrb.2013.03.027]
- 10 **Welch RA**, Salem-Elgharib S, Wiktor AE, Van Dyke DL, Blessed WB. Operator experience and sample quality in genetic amniocentesis. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2006; **194**: 189-191 [PMID: 16389030 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2005.05.033]
- 11 **American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists**. ACOG Practice Bulletin No. 88, December 2007. Invasive prenatal testing for aneuploidy. *Obstet Gynecol* 2007; **110**: 1459-1467 [PMID: 18055749 DOI: 10.1097/01.AOG.0000291570.63450.44]
- 12 **Athanasiadis AP**, Pantazis K, Goulis DG, Chatzigeorgiou K, Vaitis V, Assimakopoulos E, Tzeveleki F, Tsilikis T, Bontis JN. Comparison between 20G and 22G needle for second trimester amniocentesis in terms of technical aspects and short-term complications. *Prenat Diagn* 2009; **29**: 761-765 [PMID: 19412914 DOI: 10.1002/pd.2283]
- 13 **Phillips OP**, Tharapel AT, Lerner JL, Park VM, Wachtel SS, Shulman LP. Risk of fetal mosaicism when placental mosaicism is diagnosed by chorionic villus sampling. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1996; **174**: 850-855 [PMID: 8633655 DOI: 10.1016/S00029378(96)70312-5]
- 14 **Russell RB**, Petrini JR, Damus K, Mattison DR, Schwarz RH. The changing epidemiology of multiple births in the United States. *Obstet Gynecol* 2003; **101**: 129-135 [PMID: 12517657 DOI: 10.1016/S0029-7844(02)02316-5]
- 15 **Society for Maternal-Fetal Medicine (SMFM) Publications Committee**. Electronic address: [pubs@smfm.org](mailto:pubs@smfm.org). #36: Prenatal aneuploidy screening using cell-free DNA. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2015; **212**: 711-716 [PMID: 25813012]
- 16 **Spong CY**, Mercer BM, D'alton M, Kilpatrick S, Blackwell S, Saade G. Timing of indicated late-preterm and early-term birth. *Obstet Gynecol* 2011; **118**: 323-333 [PMID: 21775849 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e3182255999]
- 17 **Bates E**, Rouse DJ, Mann ML, Chapman V, Carlo WA, Tita AT. Neonatal outcomes after demonstrated fetal lung maturity before 39 weeks of gestation. *Obstet Gynecol* 2010; **116**: 1288-1295 [PMID: 21099593 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e3181fb7ece]
- 18 **American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists**. ACOG committee opinion no. 560: Medically indicated late-preterm and early-term deliveries. *Obstet Gynecol* 2013; **121**: 908-910 [PMID: 23635709 DOI: 10.1097/01.AOG.0000428648.75548.00]
- 19 **Towers CV**, Freeman RK, Nageotte MP, Garite TJ, Lewis DF, Quilligan EJ. The case for amniocentesis for fetal lung maturity in late-preterm and early-term gestations. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2014; **210**: 95-96 [PMID: 24139938 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2013.10.004]
- 20 **Clark RH**, Gordon P, Walker WM, Laughon M, Smith PB, Spitzer AR. Characteristics of patients who die of necrotizing enterocolitis. *J Perinatol* 2012; **32**: 199-204 [PMID: 21593813 DOI: 10.1038/jp.2011.65]
- 21 **Thorp JA**, Jones PG, Clark RH, Knox E, Peabody JL. Perinatal factors associated with severe intracranial hemorrhage. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2001; **185**: 859-862 [PMID: 11641666 DOI: 10.1067/mob.2001.117355]
- 22 **Gluck L**, Kulovich MV, Borer RC, Brenner PH, Anderson GG, Spellacy WN. Diagnosis of the respiratory distress syndrome by amniocentesis. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1971; **109**: 440-445 [PMID: 5107880 DOI: 10.1097/00006254-197110000-00012]
- 23 **Cunningham FG**, Williams JW. Williams obstetrics. 23rd ed. New York: McGraw-Hill Medical. xv, 2010: 1385
- 24 **Berghella V**, Ludmir J, Simonazzi G, Owen J. Transvaginal cervical cerclage: evidence for perioperative management strategies. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2013; **209**: 181-192 [PMID: 23416155 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2013.02.020]
- 25 **Romero R**, Yoon BH, Mazor M, Gomez R, Gonzalez R, Diamond MP, Baumann P, Araneda H, Kenney JS, Cotton DB. A comparative study of the diagnostic performance of amniotic fluid glucose, white blood cell count, interleukin-6, and gram stain in the detection of microbial invasion in patients with preterm premature rupture of membranes. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1993; **169**: 839-851 [PMID: 7694463 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9378(93)90014-A]
- 26 **Yoon BH**, Jun JK, Park KH, Syn HC, Gomez R, Romero R. Serum C-reactive protein, white blood cell count, and amniotic fluid white blood cell count in women with preterm premature rupture of membranes. *Obstet Gynecol* 1996; **88**: 1034-1040 [PMID: 8942849 DOI: 10.1016/S0029-7844(96)00339-0]
- 27 **Norton ME**, Chauhan SP, Dashe JS. Society for maternal-fetal medicine (SMFM) clinical guideline #7: nonimmune hydrops fetalis. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2015; **212**: 127-139 [PMID: 25557883 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2014.12.018]
- 28 **Young BK**, Chan MK, Liu L, Basch RS. Amniotic fluid as a source of multipotent cells for clinical use. *J Perinat Med* 2015 Jun 26; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 26115489 DOI: 10.1515/jpm-2015-0152]
- 29 **De Coppi P**, Bartsch G, Siddiqui MM, Xu T, Santos CC, Perin L, Mostoslavsky G, Serre AC, Snyder EY, Yoo JJ, Furth ME, Soker S, Atala A. Isolation of amniotic stem cell lines with potential for therapy. *Nat Biotechnol* 2007; **25**: 100-106 [PMID: 17206138]
- 30 **Liley AW**. Liquor amni analysis in the management of the pregnancy complicated by resus sensitization. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1961; **82**: 1359-1370 [PMID: 14465271]
- 31 **Queenan JT**, Tomai TP, Ural SH, King JC. Deviation in amniotic fluid optical density at a wavelength of 450 nm in Rh-immunized pregnancies from 14 to 40 weeks' gestation: a proposal for clinical management. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1993; **168**: 1370-1376 [PMID: 8498414 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9378(11)90767-4]
- 32 **Oepkes D**, Seaward PG, Vandenbussche FP, Windrim R, Kingdom J, Beyene J, Kanhai HH, Ohlsson A, Ryan G. Doppler ultrasonography versus amniocentesis to predict fetal anemia. *N Engl J Med* 2006; **355**: 156-164 [PMID: 16837679 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa052855]
- 33 Midtrimester amniocentesis for prenatal diagnosis. Safety and accuracy. *JAMA* 1976; **236**: 1471-1476 [PMID: 989112 DOI: 10.1001/jama.1976.03270140023016]
- 34 **Simpson NE**, Dallaire L, Miller JR, Siminovich L, Hamerton JL, Miller J, McKeen C. Prenatal diagnosis of genetic disease in Canada: report of a collaborative study. *Can Med Assoc J* 1976; **115**: 739-748 [PMID: 61796]
- 35 An assessment of the hazards of amniocentesis. Report to the Medical Research Council by their Working Party on Amniocentesis. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol* 1978; **85** Suppl 2: 1-41 [PMID: 104726]
- 36 **Tabor A**, Philip J, Madsen M, Bang J, Obel EB, Nørgaard-Pedersen B. Randomised controlled trial of genetic amniocentesis in 4606 low-risk women. *Lancet* 1986; **1**: 1287-1293 [PMID: 2423826 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(86)91218-3]
- 37 **Eddleman KA**, Malone FD, Sullivan L, Dukes K, Berkowitz RL, Kharbutli Y, Porter TF, Luthy DA, Comstock CH, Saade GR, Klugman S, Dugoff L, Craigo SD, Timor-Tritsch IE, Carr SR, Wolfe HM, D'Alton ME. Pregnancy loss rates after midtrimester amniocentesis. *Obstet Gynecol* 2006; **108**: 1067-1072 [PMID: 17077226]
- 38 **Odibo AO**, Gray DL, Dicke JM, Stamilio DM, Macones GA, Crane JP. Revisiting the fetal loss rate after second-trimester genetic amniocentesis: a single center's 16-year experience. *Obstet Gynecol* 2008; **111**: 589-595 [PMID: 18310360 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e318162eb53]
- 39 **Akolekar R**, Beta J, Picciarelli G, Ogilvie C, D'Antonio F. Procedure-related risk of miscarriage following amniocentesis and chorionic villus sampling: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol* 2015; **45**: 16-26 [PMID: 25042845 DOI: 10.1002/uog.14636]
- 40 **Anuwutnavin S**, Chanprapaph P, Ruangvutitert P, Eammatta M, Tontisirin P. Short-term outcomes after second-trimester genetic amniocentesis in Siriraj Hospital. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 2014; **124**: 222-225 [PMID: 24380612 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijgo.2013.09.019]
- 41 **Pitukijronnakorn S**, Promsonthi P, Panburana P, Udomsubpayakul U, Chittacharoen A. Fetal loss associated with second trimester amniocentesis. *Arch Gynecol Obstet* 2011; **284**: 793-797 [PMID: 21052703 DOI: 10.1007/s00404-010-1727-3]
- 42 **Kozlowski P**, Knippel A, Stressig R. Individual risk of fetal loss following routine second trimester amniocentesis: a controlled study of 20,460 cases. *Ultraschall Med* 2008; **29**: 165-172 [PMID:

- 17602371 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-963217]
- 43 **Mazza V**, Pati M, Bertucci E, Re C, Ranzi A, Percesepe A, Forabosco A, Volpe A. Age-specific risk of fetal loss post second trimester amniocentesis: analysis of 5043 cases. *Prenat Diagn* 2007; **27**: 180-183 [PMID: 17238217]
- 44 **Wapner RJ**. Genetic diagnosis in multiple pregnancies. *Semin Perinatol* 1995; **19**: 351-62 [DOI: 10.1016/S0146-0005(05)80013-8]
- 45 **Ghidini A**, Lynch L, Hicks C, Alvarez M, Lockwood CJ. The risk of second-trimester amniocentesis in twin gestations: a case-control study. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1993; **169**: 1013-1016 [PMID: 8238111 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9378(93)90045-K]
- 46 **Millaire M**, Bujold E, Morency AM, Gauthier RJ. Mid-trimester genetic amniocentesis in twin pregnancy and the risk of fetal loss. *J Obstet Gynaecol Can* 2006; **28**: 512-518 [PMID: 16857119]
- 47 **Yukobowich E**, Anteby EY, Cohen SM, Lavy Y, Granat M, Yagel S. Risk of fetal loss in twin pregnancies undergoing second trimester amniocentesis(1). *Obstet Gynecol* 2001; **98**: 231-234 [PMID: 11506838 DOI: 10.1016/S0029-7844(01)01416-8]
- 48 **Enzensberger C**, Pulvermacher C, Degenhardt J, Kaweck A, Germer U, Weichert J, Krapp M, Gembruch U, Axt-Flidner R. Outcome after second-trimester amniocentesis and first-trimester chorionic villus sampling for prenatal diagnosis in multiple gestations. *Ultraschall Med* 2014; **35**: 166-172 [PMID: 23696061 DOI: 10.1055/s-0032-1330700]
- 49 **Cahill AG**, Macones GA, Stamilio DM, Dicke JM, Crane JP, Odibo AO. Pregnancy loss rate after mid-trimester amniocentesis in twin pregnancies. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2009; **200**: 257.e1-257.e6 [PMID: 19136086 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2008.09.872]
- 50 **Lenis-Cordoba N**, Sánchez MÁ, Bello-Muñoz JC, Sagalá-Martínez J, Campos N, Carreras-Moratonas E, Cabero-Roura L. Amniocentesis and the risk of second trimester fetal loss in twin pregnancies: results from a prospective observational study. *J Matern Fetal Neonatal Med* 2013; **26**: 1537-1541 [PMID: 23544929 DOI: 10.3109/14767058.2013.791271]
- 51 **Philip J**, Silver RK, Wilson RD, Thom EA, Zachary JM, Mohide P, Mahoney MJ, Simpson JL, Platt LD, Pergament E, Hershey D, Filkins K, Johnson A, Shulman LP, Bang J, MacGregor S, Smith JR, Shaw D, Wapner RJ, Jackson LG. Late first-trimester invasive prenatal diagnosis: results of an international randomized trial. *Obstet Gynecol* 2004; **103**: 1164-1173 [PMID: 15172848 DOI: 10.1097/01.aog.0000128049.73556.fb]
- 52 **Nicolaides KH**, Brizot ML, Patel F, Snijders R. Comparison of chorion villus sampling and early amniocentesis for karyotyping in 1,492 singleton pregnancies. *Fetal Diagn Ther* 1996; **11**: 9-15 [PMID: 8719715 DOI: 10.1159/000264272]
- 53 Randomised trial to assess safety and fetal outcome of early and midtrimester amniocentesis. The Canadian Early and Mid-trimester Amniocentesis Trial (CEMAT) Group. *Lancet* 1998; **351**: 242-247 [PMID: 9457093 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(97)12346-7]
- 54 **Ko TM**, Tseng LH, Chang MH, Chen DS, Hsieh FJ, Chuang SM, Lee TY. Amniocentesis in mothers who are hepatitis B virus carriers does not expose the infant to an increased risk of hepatitis B virus infection. *Arch Gynecol Obstet* 1994; **255**: 25-30 [PMID: 8042875]
- 55 **Grosheide PM**, Quartero HW, Schalm SW, Heijink RA, Christiaens GC. Early invasive prenatal diagnosis in HBsAg-positive women. *Prenat Diagn* 1994; **14**: 553-558 [PMID: 7971756]
- 56 **Delamare C**, Carbonne B, Heim N, Berkane N, Petit JC, Uzan S, Grangé JD. Detection of hepatitis C virus RNA (HCV RNA) in amniotic fluid: a prospective study. *J Hepatol* 1999; **31**: 416-420 [PMID: 10488698]
- 57 **Shapiro DE**, Sperling RS, Mandelbrot L, Britto P, Cunningham BE. Risk factors for perinatal human immunodeficiency virus transmission in patients receiving zidovudine prophylaxis. Pediatric AIDS Clinical Trials Group protocol 076 Study Group. *Obstet Gynecol* 1999; **94**: 897-908 [PMID: 10576173]
- 58 **Mandelbrot L**, Jasseron C, Ekoukou D, Batallan A, Bongain A, Pannier E, Blanche S, Tubiana R, Rouzioux C, Warszawski J. Amniocentesis and mother-to-child human immunodeficiency virus transmission in the Agence Nationale de Recherches sur le SIDA et les Hépatites Virales French Perinatal Cohort. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2009; **200**: 160.e1-160.e9 [PMID: 18986640 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2008.08.049]
- 59 **Tess BH**, Rodrigues LC, Newell ML, Dunn DT, Lago TD. Breastfeeding, genetic, obstetric and other risk factors associated with mother-to-child transmission of HIV-1 in Sao Paulo State, Brazil. Sao Paulo Collaborative Study for Vertical Transmission of HIV-1. *AIDS* 1998; **12**: 513-520 [PMID: 9543450]
- 60 **Somigliana E**, Bucceri AM, Tibaldi C, Alberico S, Ravizza M, Savasi V, Marini S, Matrone R, Pardi G. Early invasive diagnostic techniques in pregnant women who are infected with the HIV: a multicenter case series. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2005; **193**: 437-442 [PMID: 16098867]
- 61 **Coll O**, Suy A, Hernandez S, Pisa S, Lonca M, Thorne C, Borrell A. Prenatal diagnosis in human immunodeficiency virus-infected women: a new screening program for chromosomal anomalies. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2006; **194**: 192-198 [PMID: 16389031]
- 62 **Ekoukou D**, Khuong-Josses MA, Ghibaudo N, Mechali D, Rotten D. Amniocentesis in pregnant HIV-infected patients. Absence of mother-to-child viral transmission in a series of selected patients. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 2008; **140**: 212-217 [PMID: 18584937 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejogrb.2008.04.004]
- 63 **Panel on Treatment of HIV-infected Pregnant Women and Prevention of Perinatal Transmission**. Recommendations for the Use of Antiretroviral Drugs in Pregnant HIV-1 Infected Women for Maternal Health and Interventions to Reduce Perinatal HIV Transmission in the United States, 2012
- 64 **American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists Committee on Genetics**. Committee Opinion No. 545: Noninvasive prenatal testing for fetal aneuploidy. *Obstet Gynecol* 2012; **120**: 1532-1534 [PMID: 23168792 DOI: 10.1097/01.AOG.0000423819.85283.f4]
- 65 **Bianchi DW**, Parker RL, Wentworth J, Madankumar R, Saffer C, Das AF, Craig JA, Chudova DI, Devers PL, Jones KW, Oliver K, Rava RP, Sehnert AJ. DNA sequencing versus standard prenatal aneuploidy screening. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 799-808 [PMID: 24571752 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1311037]
- 66 **Pergament E**, Cuckle H, Zimmermann B, Banjevic M, Sigurjonsson S, Ryan A, Hall MP, Dodd M, Lacroute P, Stosic M, Chopra N, Hunkapiller N, Prosen DE, McAdoo S, Demko Z, Siddiqui A, Hill M, Rabinowitz M. Single-nucleotide polymorphism-based noninvasive prenatal screening in a high-risk and low-risk cohort. *Obstet Gynecol* 2014; **124**: 210-218 [PMID: 25004354 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0000000000000363]

**P-Reviewer:** Khajehei M, Schulten HJ, Zafrakas M, Zhang XQ

**S-Editor:** Song XX **L-Editor:** A **E-Editor:** Wu HL



## Thyroid disease in pregnancy: A review of diagnosis, complications and management

Lisa E Moore

Lisa E Moore, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Texas Tech Health Sciences Center, El Paso, TX 79905, United States

**Author contributions:** Moore LE solely contributed to this paper.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** No potential conflicts of interest to report.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Lisa E Moore, MD, MS, FACOG, ARDMS, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Texas Tech Health Sciences Center, 4801 Alberta Ave., El Paso, TX 79905, United States. [lisa.e.moore@ttuhsc.edu](mailto:lisa.e.moore@ttuhsc.edu)  
**Telephone:** +1-915-2155127  
**Fax:** +1-915-5456946

**Received:** July 9, 2015

**Peer-review started:** July 14, 2015

**First decision:** September 22, 2015

**Revised:** December 1, 2015

**Accepted:** December 18, 2015

**Article in press:** December 21, 2015

**Published online:** February 10, 2016

### Abstract

Malfunction of the thyroid gland is the second most common endocrine disorder encountered during pregnancy. It is well known that overt disease of the thyroid gland, either hyper or hypo can adversely affect pregnancy outcome. There is also an ongoing debate surrounding the issue of subclinical hypothyroidism and its effect on the cognitive development of the

unborn child. The goal of this paper is to present a systematic review of the literature and the current recommendations for diagnosis and treatment of thyroid disease in pregnancy and postpartum.

**Key words:** Pregnancy; Hypothyroidism in pregnancy; Hyperthyroidism in pregnancy; Thyroid; Thyroid cancer in pregnancy; Subclinical hypothyroidism in pregnancy

© **The Author(s) 2016.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Uncontrolled thyroid disease in pregnancy is associated with significant morbidity and mortality for both mother and fetus. Timely diagnosis and adequate treatment ameliorates the risk of complications. Treatment of subclinical hypothyroidism in pregnancy with the goal of improving the cognitive outcome for the fetus has not been shown to be useful and is not currently recommended.

Moore LE. Thyroid disease in pregnancy: A review of diagnosis, complications and management. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 66-72 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/66.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.66>

### INTRODUCTION

The thyroid gland produces three hormones: Triiodothyroxine (T3), tetraiodothyroxine (T4), also known as thyroxine, and calcitonin. The amount of hormone production is controlled by thyroid stimulating hormone (TSH) which is secreted by the pituitary gland. Production of TSH is in turn regulated by a negative feedback loop to the hypothalamus which produces thyroid releasing hormone. The thyroid gland uses iodine, a trace element which is not produced in the body and must be ingested, and tyrosine to manufacture



**Table 1 Recommended values of thyroid stimulating hormone for each trimester**

First trimester	0.1-2.5 mIU/L
Second trimester	0.2-3.0 mIU/L
Third trimester	0.3-3.0 mIU/L

T3 and T4. The majority of production is T4 which is converted in target tissues to the active form T3. The majority of circulating hormone is bound to thyroid binding globulin (TBG) proteins. Only the unbound free hormone is active.

During pregnancy the size of the thyroid gland increases by 10%-40%. The upper end of this range is seen in iodine deficient areas. Production of T3 and T4 increases by 50% with a concomitant increase in iodine requirement. The hypothalamic-pituitary-thyroid feedback systems function normally during pregnancy. However there is a significant change in protein binding of T3 and T4. Additionally the hormone of pregnancy, human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG), acts like TSH on thyroid receptors. Due to the increase in TBG's during pregnancy total and bound levels of T3 and T4 will be increased but free T3 (FT3) and free T4 (FT4) are unchanged. TSH is typically low when HCG is high during the first 10 wk and will increase after 10-12 wk when the level of HCG falls. Serum FT4 is highest when HCG is high and falls when HCG levels decrease<sup>[1]</sup>.

### Screening

There is controversy regarding universal screening for thyroid disease in pregnancy. In 2005 a joint statement from the American Thyroid Association, The Endocrine Society and the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists supported universal screening in pregnancy to detect subclinical hypothyroidism (SCH) which at the time had been linked to poor neurocognitive outcomes in offspring<sup>[2]</sup>. In 2011, the American Thyroid Association issued a guideline which did not address screening but recommended that pregnant women with SCH and thyroid peroxidase antibodies should be treated with levothyroxine<sup>[3]</sup>. In 2015 the American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists advised against universal screening because treatment of SCH has not been shown to improve neonatal outcomes<sup>[4]</sup>.

Serum TSH is considered the most accurate method of evaluating thyroid function during pregnancy<sup>[3,5]</sup>. If no gestational age specific values are available for local laboratories, the American Thyroid Association makes the following recommendations for TSH: In the first trimester 0.1-2.5 mIU/L; in the second trimester 0.2-3.0 mIU/L; and in the third trimester 0.2-3.0 mIU/L<sup>[3]</sup> (Table 1).

Women with a history of hypothyroidism, women currently on medication for hypothyroidism, women with a history of Graves disease, and women currently on medication for Graves disease should be evaluated

with a serum TSH at the first prenatal visit.

### Anti-thyroid antibodies

There are three types of TSH receptor antibodies (TRAb); TSH stimulating antibodies (TSI), inhibitory antibodies known as TSH binding inhibitory immunoglobulins (TBII) and neutral antibodies.

TSH stimulating immunoglobulins are IgG antibodies that bind the TSH receptors in the thyroid causing increased production of T4 and T3. TSI antibodies cross the placenta and may cause neonatal thyrotoxicosis. TSI antibodies are not routinely used for the diagnosis of Graves disease but should be evaluated in pregnancy because of the risk to the fetus<sup>[6]</sup>. TSH binding inhibitory immunoglobulins competitively inhibit TSH receptors. TBII may cause hypothyroidism and paradoxically are often present in patients with Graves disease. The clinical relevance of neutral TSH receptor antibodies is unknown.

Thyroid peroxidase is an enzyme that oxidizes iodide to iodine which is then added to tyrosine for production of T3 and T4. Antibodies to thyroid peroxidase (TPO-Ab) indicate autoimmune mediated thyroid disease (*i.e.*, Hashimoto's). Greater than 80% of patients with overt hypothyroidism and approximately 50% of women with SCH have circulating TPO-Ab antibodies.

### Hypothyroidism

Approximately 2%-3% of pregnancies are complicated by hypothyroidism<sup>[1]</sup>. Overt hypothyroidism is defined as an elevated serum TSH ( $> 2.5$  mIU/L) with a low serum FT4, or TSH  $\geq 10$  mIU/L regardless of the amount of FT4. Hypothyroidism is associated with two-fold increased risk of ovulatory dysfunction. In pregnancy there is an increased risk of fetal demise, miscarriage, abortion and decreased fetal growth<sup>[3-5]</sup>. Symptoms may be missed because they are often nonspecific and mimic common complaints of pregnancy such as fatigue, dry skin, constipation and hair loss.

All pregnant women with hypothyroidism should receive hormone replacement in the form of Levothyroxine with the goal of keeping the TSH in the normal to high normal range. No available data supports the addition of T3 or thyroid preparations other than levoT4 (levothyroxine). Treatment has been shown to decrease the risk of adverse pregnancy outcomes<sup>[1,3]</sup>. Women who enter pregnancy on levothyroxine will need to increase their dosage. The average increase in dose during pregnancy has been reported between 45%-50%. The increased requirement is mediated by an increase in Thyroxin-binding globulin, increased maternal circulating volume and placental destruction of T4.

A starting dose of levothyroxine can be calculated as 1-2  $\mu$ g/kg per day or 100  $\mu$ g/d. Serial determinations of TSH should be followed every 4-6 wk and the dose of levothyroxine should be adjusted in 25-50 mcg increments until TSH is within the desired range. After

**Table 2 Studies of subclinical hypothyroidism in pregnancy**

Ref.	Design	Method	Result	Conclusion
Pop <i>et al</i> <sup>[23]</sup> , 1999	Cohort study	220 children were evaluated at 10 mo of age. Maternal TSH, FT4 and TPO antibodies were measured at 12 and 32 wk of pregnancy	Children of women with FT4 levels less than the 5 <sup>th</sup> and 10 <sup>th</sup> centiles at 12 wk had lower scores on the Bayley Psychomotor Development Index at 10 mo. No differences were found at 32 wk	FT4 < 10% ile at 12 wk is a risk factor for impaired psychomotor development in offspring
Haddow <i>et al</i> <sup>[7]</sup> , 1999	Retrospective	62 women with high TSH	Children of these women did less well on 15 tests of intelligence. Average decrease in IQ was 4 points	Undiagnosed hypothyroidism adversely affects the fetal neurodevelopment
Henrichs <i>et al</i> <sup>[8]</sup> , 2010	Population based cohort	Women with normal TSH and FT4 < 5 <sup>th</sup> and 10 <sup>th</sup> centile. Expressive vocabulary of children was evaluated by mother at 18 and 30 mo	Maternal TSH not related to outcome. Both mild and severe low FT4 associated with higher risk of expressive language delay at all ages. Severe had higher risk of nonverbal cognitive delay	Maternal low FT4 is a risk factor for early childhood cognitive delay
Lazarus <i>et al</i> <sup>[11]</sup> , 2012	Randomized prospective	Women in screening group were tested and treated Women in the control group had stored samples which were tested after delivery and received no treatment during pregnancy	No difference in cognitive function between the two groups at 3 yr of age	Screening and treatment for hypothyroidism did not improve neurodevelopmental outcomes in the offspring
Ghassabian <i>et al</i> <sup>[24]</sup> , 2014	Cohort	3727 mother-child pairs with prenatal thyroid fxn tests before 18 wk. FT4 < 5% of normal. MRI of childrens brains and IQ test at age 6 yr	Children of mothers with low FT4 scored 4.3 points lower on nonverbal IQ test. No morphologic difference by MRI	Maternal hypothyroxinemia has adverse effect on children's non-verbal IQ at school age
Chen <i>et al</i> <sup>[13]</sup> , 2015	Prospective	106 babies born to mothers with SCH and 106 babies born to euthyroid mothers	Babies from both groups had similar scores on the Gesell development test	No neurodevelopmental deficit detected up to 24 mo in babies of mothers with SCH

TSH: Thyroid stimulating hormone; TPO: Thyroid peroxidase; FT4: Free T4; SCH: Subclinical hypothyroidism; MRI: Magnetic resonance imaging; IQ: Intelligence quotient.

delivery, the dosage can immediately be returned to the pre-pregnancy amount and TSH should be checked at the 6 wk postpartum visit.

SCH defined as a normal FT4 with an elevated TSH has been the subject of much debate. In 1999, the *New England Journal of Medicine* published a study that evaluated the children of 62 women with high thyrotropin (TSH) and low thyroxine (T4) levels compared to the children of 124 controls with normal values<sup>[7]</sup>. Children in the study group had lower IQ scores (average 4 points lower) and performed less well on fifteen standard tests of attention, language, visual-motor performance and reading ability. They concluded that SCH had an adverse effect on the neurologic well-being of the fetus and that routine screening for thyroid disorders should be performed during pregnancy. After that initial publication, multiple observational studies reported a possible association between SCH and decreased intelligence in offspring<sup>[8-10]</sup>.

In 2012 the Controlled Antenatal thyroid screening study was published which randomized pregnant women with SCH to treatment vs no treatment<sup>[11]</sup>. The primary outcome of interest was offspring IQ at age 3. The study found no difference in IQ between the two groups. The protocol for the second wave of the Controlled Antenatal Thyroid screening (CATS II) study was published in 2014 and will assess the cognitive

function of the same group of children between ages 7 and 10 years<sup>[12]</sup>.

Chen *et al*<sup>[13]</sup> reported on a prospective study of 106 infants of mothers with SCH compared to 106 infants of euthyroid mothers. They reported no differences in neurodevelopment up to 24 mo between the two groups.

In 2013 the European Thyroid Association published a guideline on the management of SCH. They defined two categories of SCH based on the level of elevation of serum TSH; mild (4.0-10.0 mU/L) and severe (> 10 mU/L)<sup>[14]</sup>. They did not address SCH in pregnancy but recommended treatment for patients < 65 years of age with TSH in the severe range. They suggested a trial of treatment in patients with symptoms and mild elevations of TSH. Table 2 displays relevant studies addressing SCH in pregnancy.

Neither Screening for SCH, nor treatment of SCH in pregnancy with the goal of improving neurocognitive outcomes in offspring is supported by current evidence.

### **Fetal surveillance**

No studies have addressed the frequency of growth scans or the need for antenatal surveillance in patients with hypothyroidism. In cases of overt disease, particularly those patients on medication, monthly growth scans may be a reasonable consideration.

**Table 3** Diagnosis and treatment of thyroid disease in pregnancy

	TSH	FT4	FT3	Rx	Goal of treatment
Hypothyroid	↑	↓	↓	Levothyroxine starting dose 1-2 mcg/kg daily	Keep TSH normal range
Hyperthyroid	↓	↑	↑	PTU 50-150 mg TID in first trimester methimazole 10-40 mg BID or TID after first trimester	Keep FT4 high normal “watch for agranulocytosis”

TSH: Thyroid stimulating hormone; FT3: Free T3; FT4: Free T4; BID: Twice daily; TID: Three times daily; PTU: Propylthiouracil.

### Breastfeeding

Thyroxine is a normal component of breast milk. Levothyroxine is considered safe during breastfeeding. Thyroid hormones are necessary for lactation and overt hypothyroidism is associated with a low milk supply. Thyroid hormone replacement has been shown to improve the milk supply in hypothyroid patients<sup>[15]</sup>.

## HYPERTHYROIDISM

Hyperthyroidism complicates up to 0.4% of pregnancies. Hyperthyroidism is defined as a suppressed TSH with elevated FT4. Left untreated in pregnancy there is an increased risk of miscarriage, stillbirth, low birth weight, and preterm delivery. Maternal complications include thyroid storm and a 5-fold increase in the risk of preeclampsia and congestive heart failure.

During pregnancy, it is important to differentiate Graves disease from gestational hyperthyroidism due to the effect of HCG on the maternal thyroid. Signs of overt hyperthyroidism include tremor, nervousness, heat intolerance, irritability and weight loss, and typically will not occur in patients with gestational hyperthyroidism. Absence of a goiter or ophthalmopathy also favors gestational disease. If there is doubt, thyroid receptor antibodies and T3 can also be obtained. If antibodies are present the diagnosis is more likely Graves disease.

Anti-thyroid medication should not be used in patients with gestational hyperthyroidism. The serum T4 will normalize between 14-18 wk.

The goal of treatment is to keep FT4 levels in the high normal range with the minimum required dose of anti-thyroid medication. Two medications are commonly used in pregnancy: Methimazole and propylthiouracil (PTU). A third medication carbimazole is metabolized to methimazole. Both drugs cross the placenta and may suppress the fetal thyroid. Methimazole embryopathy has been identified in patients who took the drug during the first trimester and consists of choanal or esophageal atresia, cutis aplasia, minor dysmorphic

features and developmental delay. Propylthiouracil has been associated with liver damage. The Food and Drug Administration of the United States and the American Thyroid Association recommend PTU in the first trimester with a switch to methimazole in the second trimester. This avoids the teratogenic effect of methimazole in the first trimester and decreases the risk of hepatotoxicity from long term use of PTU<sup>[4]</sup>. The dose of PTU is 50-150 mg TID. The dose of methimazole is 10-40 mg 2 to 3 times a day.

Approximately 10% of women on antithyroid medication develop a transient leukopenia which does not require medication cessation. Agranulocytosis is a decrease in granulocytes (neutrophils, eosinophils and basophils) which can result in life-threatening infections. Agranulocytosis occurs in 1% of patients on medication; may develop suddenly and is an indication for medication discontinuation. Patients should be warned of this complication and instructed to discontinue medication if a fever or sore throat develops and to have a complete blood count for evaluation.

FT4 should be checked every four weeks during pregnancy. This is to ensure that target values are achieved and maintained. This information is summarized in Table 3.

### Thyroid storm

Thyroid storm or crisis is a rare life threatening complication of uncontrolled hyperthyroidism. Thyroid storm is characterized by fever (> 103 F), tachycardia, hypertension and impaired thinking. Evaluation of TSH and FT4 will show suppressed TSH with elevated FT4 though the amount of FT4 does not correlate with symptom severity. Due to the life threatening nature of thyroid storm for both the mother and fetus, aggressive management is indicated. Admit to an intensive care unit with IV fluids and maintenance of electrolytes. Give Tylenol for hyperpyrexia. Antithyroid medication should be given immediately either 30 mg of methimazole or 300 mg of PTU every 6 h. An alternate dosing schedule recommended by the American Congress of Obstetricians and Gynecologists is a loading dose of 1000 mg of oral PTU followed by 200 mg orally every 6 h. The thioamides will block the synthesis of T3 and T4. One hour after starting medication give iodine either orally as 10 drops of Lugol's solution every 8 h or 1 g of sodium iodide IV every 8-12 h. Hydrocortisone 50-80 mg every 8 h for 3 doses or Dexamethasone 2 mg IV every 6 h for four doses should be given to block the peripheral conversion of T4 to T3. To control the tachycardia consider a beta blocker; esmolol, propranolol and labetalol are all equally efficacious (Table 4).

Radioactive iodine is commonly used to ablate the thyroid in cases of Graves thyrotoxicosis. This technique should not be used during pregnancy. The fetal thyroid begins to concentrate iodine at approximately 14 wk and is dependent on maternal sources. Radioactive

**Table 4 Six steps for treatment of thyroid storm**

1 Admit to intensive care unit	IV fluids and watch electrolytes
2 Tylenol 650 mg q6 h	For hyperpyrexia
3 Loading dose of 1000 mg PTU orally then 200 mg orally q6 h; alternate dosing 300 mg PTU q6 h	Will block synthesis of T3 and T4
4 Iodine supplementation 10 drops of Lugol's solution q8 h OR 1 g sodium Iodide IV q8-12 h Iodine allergy use lithium carbonate 300 mg PO q6 h	Blocks release of hormone from the thyroid gland
5 Hydrocortisone 50-80 mg q8 h for 3 doses OR Dexamethasone 2 mg IV q6 h for 4 doses	To block peripheral conversion of T4 to T3
6 Beta blocker Labetolol 300 mg TID may increase to a max dose of 800 mg TID but watch blood pressure	To control the tachycardia – use cautiously in heart failure

PTU: Propylthiouracil; TID: Three times a day.

iodine will destroy the fetal thyroid resulting in congenital hypothyroidism. However treatment prior to 12 wk is not associated with damage to the fetus.

If thyroidectomy is required during pregnancy, it is ideally performed in the second trimester due to a perhaps unjustified concern for teratogenesis of anesthetics in the first trimester, and possible onset of labor resulting in extreme prematurity during the third trimester. There is also less risk of supine hypotension from an enlarged uterus in mid trimester.

During an acute thyroid crisis, the fetal status will not be reassuring and fetal death is a significant risk. Nonetheless, delivery should not be undertaken until the maternal status is stable.

### Thyrotoxic heart

Thyrotoxic heart failure is a direct result of the action of thyroid hormones on the heart. Common manifestations are left ventricular hypertrophy, abnormal rhythm usually sinus tachycardia or atrial fibrillation, pulmonary hypertension and diastolic dysfunction. Thyrotoxic heart is treated as thyroid storm with admission to the intensive care unit with cardiac monitoring, PTU to inhibit synthesis, and iodide to block release of hormone from the gland. Beta blockers should be used with caution with heart failure. Volume overload can be reversed with diuretics. The patient should be euthyroid before attempting cardioversion for atrial fibrillation because spontaneous resolution to sinus rhythm may occur and even if successfully cardioverted, atrial fibrillation is likely to recur if hyperthyroidism is the cause and has not been corrected<sup>[16]</sup>.

### Fetal surveillance

Titers of TSI antibodies should be measured by 24-28 wk in all women with a present or past history of Graves disease. Titers more than three times the upper normal limit are a significant risk to the fetus and warrant close follow-up. In the setting of high TSI titers the fetus

**Table 5 Frequency of antenatal surveillance**

	Ultrasound	Antenatal testing (Nonstress test or Biophysical Profile)
Hyperthyroid	Monthly	Twice weekly if poorly controlled
Hypothyroid	No recommendation Consider monthly	No recommendation

should be followed with monthly growth scans for signs of hyperthyroidism which may include tachycardia, goiter, growth restriction and congestive heart failure. Weekly or twice weekly non-stress testing in the interval between growth scans can be considered.

In our practice we obtain monthly growth scans on all patients on anti-thyroid medication between 24-36 wk (Table 5).

### Breastfeeding

Approximately 0.025% of the dose of PTU is excreted in breast milk. In contrast, the amount of methimazole excreted in breast milk is equal to maternal serum levels of the drug<sup>[17]</sup>.

In a study of 42 breast fed infants of mother's on 30 mg of methimazole daily, all infants had normal thyroid function<sup>[18]</sup>. In a follow up study the authors looked at the same 42 children in comparison to breastfed infants of euthyroid mothers. They were followed up at 18 mo and at 86 mo of age. There was no difference in thyroid function or development between the two groups<sup>[19]</sup>.

Breastfeeding is considered safe in women on doses of PTU less than 300 mg per day or methimazole 20-30 mg per day. It is recommended to take the medicine in divided doses immediately after feeding. Babies of mothers on these medications should be followed with thyroid function tests<sup>[3]</sup>.

## POSTPARTUM THYROIDITIS

Postpartum thyroiditis is an autoimmune mediated destructive thyroiditis occurring in the first year postpartum. It affects up to 21% of postpartum patients<sup>[20]</sup>. It is associated with the presence of anti-thyroid antibodies. The clinical course may vary but classically postpartum thyroiditis occurs in two phases. The first phase is a transient thyrotoxicosis occurring 2 to 6 mo postpartum, followed by a hypothyroid phase which may present between 3 mo up to one year postpartum. During the thyrotoxic phase actual symptoms are usually mild. The thioamides are not effective in treatment because the symptoms are due to autoimmune destruction of the gland. The goal of treatment is symptomatic relief usually with Beta Blockers. The thyrotoxic phase always resolves spontaneously. Patients may present with isolated hyperthyroidism (32%) or hypothyroidism (43%). It is estimated that 10% to 50% of women with postpartum thyroiditis remain hypothyroid at the end of the first postpartum year. Women who recover should



be screened annually for hypothyroidism<sup>[3]</sup>.

## THYROID CANCER IN PREGNANCY

The prevalence of thyroid cancer in pregnancy is estimated at 14.4/100000<sup>[3]</sup>. Thyroid nodules may be more common during pregnancy and the prevalence increases with parity. In the presence of a nodule, a serum TSH and FT4 should be drawn and an ultrasound of the thyroid and neck performed. If the ultrasound is suggestive of malignancy, fine needle aspiration should be performed. Thyroid function tests are usually normal in patients with thyroid cancer.

If the cytology is benign surgery is not indicated unless there is rapid growth that interferes with breathing or swallowing.

If cytology is suggestive of medullary, papillary, follicular or anaplastic carcinoma surgery should be offered. Women with well-differentiated thyroid carcinoma can be offered deferral of surgery until the postpartum period without concern that the delay will worsen the prognosis. If surgery is deferred ultrasound of the neck should be performed at least each trimester. Rapid tumor growth is a contraindication for surgery deferral<sup>[21]</sup>.

Post-surgery, some patients require remnant ablation with radioactive iodine. As discussed previously, this should not be done during pregnancy. Women should not breastfeed while undergoing radioactive iodine treatment.

Thyroid hormone replacement should be initiated as soon as possible after surgery to maintain the TSH in normal range. Future pregnancies should be delayed 6 mo to one year to confirm remission of cancer and to achieve a stable dose of levothyroxine<sup>[21,22]</sup>.

## CONCLUSION

Diseases of the thyroid are common in pregnancy and knowledge of management is indispensable to anyone providing care to pregnant women. In this paper I have provided a brief review of diagnosis and management of thyroid disease during pregnancy and in the puerperium.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **Pearce EN.** Thyroid disorders during pregnancy and postpartum. *Best Pract Res Clin Obstet Gynaecol* 2015; **29**: 700-706 [PMID: 26028555 DOI: 10.1016/j.bpobgyn.2015.04.007]
- 2 **Gharib H, Tuttle RM, Baskin HJ, Fish LH, Singer PA, McDermott MT.** Subclinical thyroid dysfunction: a joint statement on management from the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists, the American Thyroid Association, and the Endocrine Society. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2005; **90**: 581-585; discussion 586-587 [PMID: 15643019 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2004-1231]
- 3 **Stagnaro-Green A, Abalovich M, Alexander E, Azizi F, Mestman J, Negro R, Nixon A, Pearce EN, Soldin OP, Sullivan S, Wiersinga W.** Guidelines of the American Thyroid Association for the diagnosis and management of thyroid disease during pregnancy and postpartum. *Thyroid* 2011; **21**: 1081-1125 [PMID: 21787128 DOI: 10.1089/thy.2011.0087]
- 4 **American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists.** Practice Bulletin No. 148: Thyroid disease in pregnancy. *Obstet Gynecol* 2015; **125**: 996-1005 [PMID: 25798985 DOI: 10.1097/01.AOG.0000462945.27539.93]
- 5 **Casey BM, Leveno KJ.** Thyroid disease in pregnancy. *Obstet Gynecol* 2006; **108**: 1283-1292 [PMID: 17077257 DOI: 10.1097/01.AOG.0000244103.91597.c5]
- 6 **Mestman JH.** Hyperthyroidism in pregnancy. *Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2004; **18**: 267-288 [PMID: 15157840 DOI: 10.1016/j.beem.2004.03.005]
- 7 **Haddow JE, Palomaki GE, Allan WC, Williams JR, Knight GJ, Gagnon J, O'Heir CE, Mitchell ML, Hermos RJ, Waisbren SE, Faix JD, Klein RZ.** Maternal thyroid deficiency during pregnancy and subsequent neuropsychological development of the child. *N Engl J Med* 1999; **341**: 549-555 [PMID: 10451459 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199908193410801]
- 8 **Henrichs J, Bongers-Schokking JJ, Schenk JJ, Ghassabian A, Schmidt HG, Visser TJ, Hooijkaas H, de Muinck Keizer-Schrama SM, Hofman A, Jaddoe VV, Visser W, Steegers EA, Verhulst FC, de Rijke YB, Tiemeier H.** Maternal thyroid function during early pregnancy and cognitive functioning in early childhood: the generation R study. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2010; **95**: 4227-4234 [PMID: 20534757 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2010-0415]
- 9 **Pop VJ, Brouwers EP, Vader HL, Vulsma T, van Baar AL, de Vijlder JJ.** Maternal hypothyroxinaemia during early pregnancy and subsequent child development: a 3-year follow-up study. *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 2003; **59**: 282-288 [PMID: 12919150]
- 10 **Smit BJ, Kok JH, Vulsma T, Briët JM, Boer K, Wiersinga WM.** Neurologic development of the newborn and young child in relation to maternal thyroid function. *Acta Paediatr* 2000; **89**: 291-295 [PMID: 10772276]
- 11 **Lazarus JH, Bestwick JP, Channon S, Paradise R, Maina A, Rees R, Chiusano E, John R, Guaraldo V, George LM, Perona M, Dall'Amico D, Parkes AB, Joomun M, Wald NJ.** Antenatal thyroid screening and childhood cognitive function. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 493-501 [PMID: 22316443 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1106104]
- 12 **Hales C, Channon S, Taylor PN, Draman MS, Muller I, Lazarus J, Paradise R, Rees A, Shillabeer D, Gregory JW, Dayan CM, Ludgate M.** The second wave of the Controlled Antenatal Thyroid Screening (CATS II) study: the cognitive assessment protocol. *BMC Endocr Disord* 2014; **14**: 95 [PMID: 25495390 DOI: 10.1186/1472-6823-14-95]
- 13 **Chen LM, Chen QS, Jin GX, Si GX, Zhang Q, Ye EL, Yang H, Cai LQ, Peng MM, Lin ZZ, Yu LC, Zhang C, Lu XM.** Effect of gestational subclinical hypothyroidism on early neurodevelopment of offspring. *J Perinatol* 2015; **35**: 678-682 [PMID: 26087317 DOI: 10.1038/jp.2015.66]
- 14 **Pearce SH, Brabant G, Duntas LH, Monzani F, Peeters RP, Razvi S, Wemeau JL.** 2013 ETA Guideline: Management of Subclinical Hypothyroidism. *Eur Thyroid J* 2013; **2**: 215-228 [PMID: 24783053 DOI: 10.1159/000356507]
- 15 **Speller E, Brodribb W.** Breastfeeding and thyroid disease: a literature review. *Breastfeed Rev* 2012; **20**: 41-47 [PMID: 22946151]
- 16 **Fadel BM, Ellahham S, Ringel MD, Lindsay J, Wartofsky L, Burman KD.** Hyperthyroid heart disease. *Clin Cardiol* 2000; **23**: 402-408 [PMID: 10875028]
- 17 **Karras S, Krassas GE.** Breastfeeding and antithyroid drugs: a view from within. *Eur Thyroid J* 2012; **1**: 30-33 [PMID: 24782995 DOI: 10.1159/000336595]
- 18 **Azizi F, Hedayati M.** Thyroid function in breast-fed infants whose mothers take high doses of methimazole. *J Endocrinol Invest* 2002; **25**: 493-496 [PMID: 12109618 DOI: 10.1007/BF03345489]
- 19 **Azizi F, Bahrainian M, Khamseh ME, Khoshniat M.** Intellectual development and thyroid function in children who were breast-fed by thyrotoxic mothers taking methimazole. *J Pediatr Endocrinol Metab* 2003; **16**: 1239-1243 [PMID: 14714745]
- 20 **Carney LA, Quinlan JD, West JM.** Thyroid disease in pregnancy. *Am Fam Physician* 2014; **89**: 273-278 [PMID: 24695447]
- 21 **Delshad H, Amouzegar A, Mehran L, Azizi F.** Comparison of two

- guidelines on management of thyroid nodules and thyroid cancer during pregnancy. *Arch Iran Med* 2014; **17**: 670-673 [PMID: 25305765]
- 22 **Mazzaferrri EL**. Approach to the pregnant patient with thyroid cancer. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2011; **96**: 265-272 [PMID: 21296990 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2010-1624]
- 23 **Pop VJ**, Kuijpers JL, van Baar AL, Verkerk G, van Son MM, de Vijlder JJ, Vulsma T, Wiersinga WM, Drexhage HA, Vader HL. Low maternal free thyroxine concentrations during early pregnancy are associated with impaired psychomotor development in infancy. *Clin Endocrinol (Oxf)* 1999; **50**: 149-155 [PMID: 10396355]
- 24 **Ghassabian A**, El Marroun H, Peeters RP, Jaddoe VW, Hofman A, Verhulst FC, Tiemeier H, White T. Downstream effects of maternal hypothyroxinemia in early pregnancy: nonverbal IQ and brain morphology in school-age children. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2014; **99**: 2383-2390 [PMID: 24684462 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2013-4281]

**P- Reviewer:** Chao M, Eric M   **S- Editor:** Ji FF   **L- Editor:** A  
**E- Editor:** Wu HL



## Role of ultrasound imaging in advancing treatment of female patients with pelvic floor mesh complications

William Singh, Harpreet Wadhwa, Whitney Halgrimson, Ervin Kocjancic

William Singh, College of Medicine at University of Illinois at Chicago, Chicago, IL 60612, United States

Harpreet Wadhwa, Whitney Halgrimson, Ervin Kocjancic, Department of Urology at University of Illinois at Chicago, Chicago, IL 60612, United States

**Author contributions:** All authors equally contributed to this paper with conception and design of the study, literature review and analysis, drafting and critical revision and editing, and final approval of the final version.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** The authors declare no conflicts of interest regarding this manuscript.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Ervin Kocjancic, MD, Department of Urology, University of Illinois at Chicago, 515 CSN - 820 South Wood Street, M/C 955, Chicago, IL 60612, United States. [ervkoc@gmail.com](mailto:ervkoc@gmail.com)  
Telephone: +1-312-9969330

Received: September 3, 2015

Peer-review started: September 8, 2015

First decision: September 29, 2015

Revised: October 14, 2015

Accepted: December 9, 2015

Article in press: December 11, 2015

Published online: February 10, 2016

short operative time in combination with its efficacy in treatment. However, vaginal mesh is not without its drawbacks and can lead to mesh erosion or extrusion, infection, dyspareunia, and recurrence of incontinence. Vaginal mesh complications can lead to feelings of hopelessness, isolation, shame, and emotional distress. Furthermore, failure to identify and address these complications in a timely manner can be permanently damaging to patient health. It is vital to be able to identify mesh complications early. Various imaging methodologies exist to visualize vaginal mesh placement and complications, including ultrasound, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and computed tomography (CT). This invited review paper focuses on the role of ultrasound in mesh visualization, mesh complication identification, and operative planning in the event of subsequent surgical mesh revision. Polypropylene mesh is echogenic on ultrasound, making it a useful tool for visualizing post-operative mesh placement. Transperineal, translabial and endovaginal ultrasound technique use has been described in the pre- and peri-operative setting to identify mesh in complex cases. Efficacy and practicality of CT and MRI use in identifying mesh in these cases is limited.

**Key words:** Mesh complications; Imaging; Ultrasound; Computed tomography; Magnetic resonance imaging; Mesh revision; Stress urinary incontinence; Erosion; Extrusion; Dyspareunia

© The Author(s) 2016. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Pelvic ultrasound is a valuable and inexpensive technique that can be used both for localization, diagnosis, preoperative planning, and intraoperative guidance when dealing with mesh complications.

### Abstract

Application of vaginal mesh for stress urinary incontinence has seen widespread use due to its relatively

Singh W, Wadhwa H, Halgrimson W, Kocjancic E. Role of ultrasound imaging in advancing treatment of female

patients with pelvic floor mesh complications. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 73-77 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/73.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.73>

## INTRODUCTION

Urinary incontinence can affect up to 50% of women during their lifetime<sup>[1]</sup>. In the United States alone, the direct costs of urinary incontinence is upwards of \$10 billion dollars per year with over \$200 million directed towards surgical intervention<sup>[2,3]</sup>. Given the prevalence and cost of SUI, safe, effective and efficient treatment is imperative. Initial measures are generally conservative and involve some type of pelvic floor muscle training; other nonsurgical options include medical therapy, estrogen therapy, and injectable urethral bulking agents<sup>[4,5]</sup>. Begun in 1995, application of vaginal mesh for stress urinary incontinence has seen widespread use in recent years given its relatively short operative time in combination with its proven efficacy<sup>[6]</sup>.

Vaginal mesh, although the preferred method of surgical intervention for stress urinary incontinence, is not without its drawbacks. In 2011, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) issued an updated statement warning of potential side effects of vaginal mesh including mesh erosion or extrusion, infection, dyspareunia, and recurrence of incontinence<sup>[7]</sup>. Since the FDA warning, several studies have focused on mesh side effects and their etiologies.

Pain lasting longer than 6 wk after the initial operation is seen in about 2% of patients<sup>[8]</sup>. A retrospective study of 127 patients in 2009 showed transvaginal taping to have anywhere from 4%-10% incidence of mesh erosion (most commonly with anterior compartment repair)<sup>[9,10]</sup>. Mesh contraction (decreased mesh surface area) is another postoperative complication that occurs in roughly 5% of patients<sup>[11]</sup>, though there is some evidence to suggest that this is actually due to mesh folding during surgical placement<sup>[12,13]</sup>. Commonly posited is the idea that surgeon skill is the most important factor in limiting mesh complications<sup>[13-15]</sup>. Regardless, reoperation for postoperative complications secondary to mesh insertion is not uncommon and has been estimated to occur at a rate of about 10% with some studies having reoperative rates as high as 29%<sup>[9,16,17]</sup>. Repeat operations can be very involved, ranging from mesh removal to abdominal cystorraphy or partial cystectomy depending on the exact mesh complications<sup>[18]</sup>.

While initial physical symptoms such as irritation, vaginal or pelvic pain, and dyspareunia may be the first manifestations of complications, vaginal mesh complications in particular can lead to feelings of hopelessness, isolation, shame, and emotional distress. Failure to identify and address these complications in a timely manner can be permanently damaging to patient health<sup>[19]</sup>. Given the common nature of mesh side

effects and high rate of surgical intervention for them, it is increasingly important to be able to identify mesh complications early. Various imaging methodologies exist to visualize vaginal mesh placement and complications, including ultrasound, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and computed tomography (CT). This paper focuses on the role of ultrasound in mesh visualization, mesh complication identification, and operative planning in the event of subsequent surgical mesh revision.

## DIAGNOSTIC ULTRASOUND

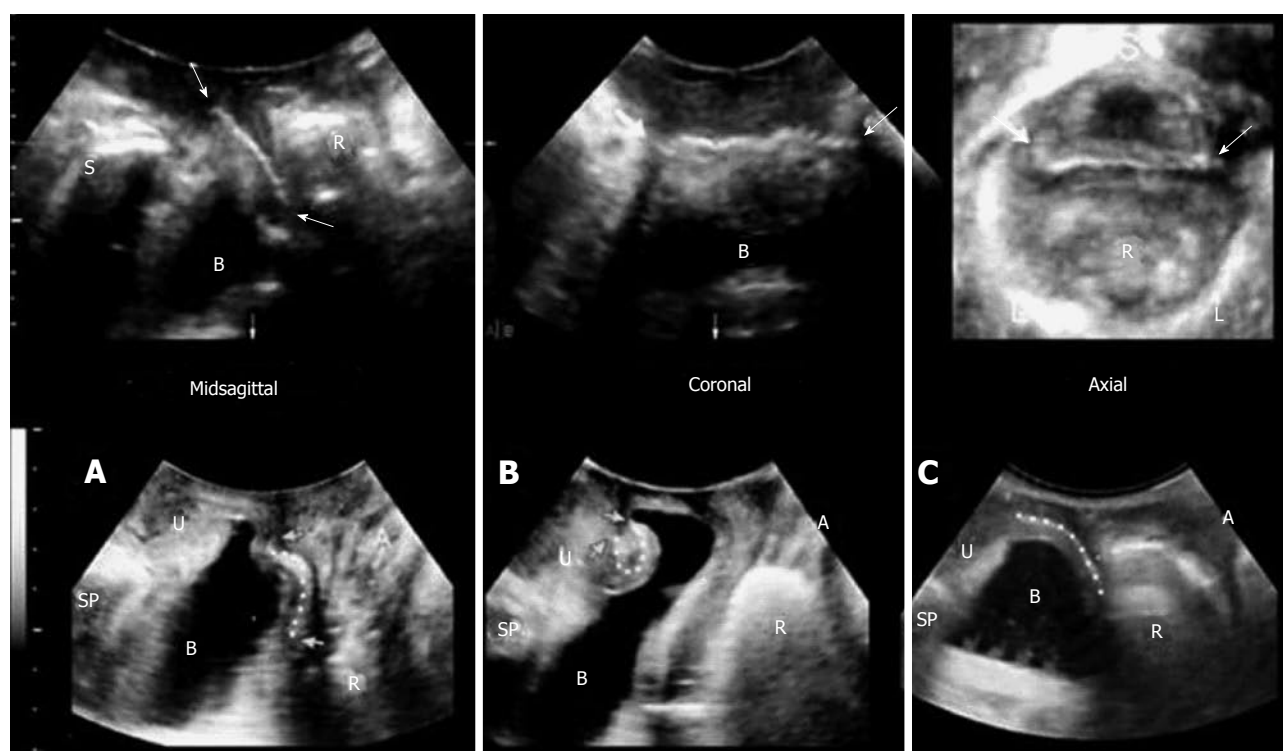
Common postoperative complaints such as dysuria, pelvic pain, and dyspareunia are generally elicited through patient history and physical examination. Clinical examination alone, however, can be insufficient in determining mesh-related complications<sup>[20,21]</sup>. Polypropylene mesh is echogenic on ultrasound, making it a useful tool in visualizing post-operative mesh placement<sup>[22,23]</sup>. Ultrasound can aid in the visualization of the pelvic floor, sling positioning, and urethral length as well as mesh length and thickening<sup>[13,24-28]</sup>. Various different methods of sonography have been used clinically with some success including transperineal, translabial, and endovaginal ultrasound. It should be noted that there is very little data comparing these different sonographical approaches; as such, they will be described independently here.

Fleischer *et al*<sup>[29]</sup> describe in detail a combined 2D and 3D transperineal ultrasound technique that is effective in visualizing mesh location and length in uncomplicated transvaginal tape (TVT) as well as urethral angulation or stenosis in patients with postoperative lower urinary tract symptoms. Eisenberg *et al*<sup>[12]</sup> described similar success with transperineal ultrasound using a combined 3D/4D technique in visualizing mesh location, anterior and posterior mesh arms, and mesh folding after abdominal sacrocolpopexy. Both transperineal techniques involve dynamic ultrasound, observing patients at rest and maximal Valsalva.

Denson *et al*<sup>[28]</sup> describe a 3D, endovaginal technique that allows for adequate visualization of mesh location. Their method is non-dynamic and has resulted in recognizable sonographical patterns associated with mesh contraction and extrusion allowing for easier identification of postoperative complications. Velemir *et al*<sup>[27]</sup> utilized a 2D endovaginal technique with dynamic imaging that also allowed for localization of mesh, measurement of mesh thickness, and identification of mesh contraction. Other endovaginal techniques exist including the use of 4D proprietary software to aid in imaging with similar reliability in observing mesh dimensions<sup>[13]</sup>. It should be noted, however, that endovaginal ultrasound can be insufficient when attempting to identify mesh arm dimensions depending on sling location<sup>[20]</sup>.

Other sonographical techniques include introital and translabial ultrasound. Introital ultrasound - placing





**Figure 1** Pre-operative and intraoperative images of patients at University of Illinois-Chicagg Hospital with mesh complications. A: Anterior; B: Apical; C: Global recurrence after mesh repair.

the transducer over the external urethral orifice - can be used to evaluate for urethral pathology as well as to image retropubic slings with or in place of endovaginal techniques<sup>[26,30]</sup>. A combined 3D/4D translabial ultrasound technique has also been shown to reliably assess mesh location, length, and erosion in transobturator slings. This technique may also have benefit in its ability to detail mesh arm location indirectly *via* measuring mesh axis rotation<sup>[31]</sup>.

## DIAGNOSTIC ALTERNATIVES TO ULTRASOUND

While clinical examination and ultrasound are the most commonly reported methods of postoperative assessment in TVT and transobturator tape (TOT), an emerging modality involves the use of dynamic MRI (dMRI) in pelvic floor disorders. dMRI can be used diagnostically to evaluate preoperative pelvic floor dysfunction and pelvic organ prolapse<sup>[32]</sup>. A 2006 study of 20 women also showed MRI to be useful postoperatively in evaluating the retropubic portion of vaginal tape<sup>[23]</sup>. Most types of mesh used for TVT are not routinely visible on MRI, however, and require novel techniques such as MRI-visible mesh implants for visualization<sup>[33,34]</sup>. Thus, the role of MRI in postoperative evaluation is to provide information on the pelvic floor itself. dMRI can be used to locate the postoperative position of the Pouch of Douglas as well as any changes in vaginal axis<sup>[35]</sup>. dMRI also has utility in evaluating for prolapse recurrence and has been shown to be more sensitive than quality of life

questionnaires in at least one study<sup>[36]</sup>. And while MRI is incapable of providing adequate mesh visualization, it has been shown to detect postoperative mesh inflammation and fibrosis due to increased intensity transmitted by these processes<sup>[37,38]</sup>.

Routine evaluation of postoperative complications has not been recommended, however, and there is little data to suggest its use for this purpose<sup>[23,38]</sup>. Given the cost, time commitment, and potential for patient anxiety with dMRI when compared to sonography, it is a second line imaging modality. Presently, dMRI is useful only in the immediate post-operative setting to visualize the pelvic floor itself and is not used routinely in management of mesh complications.

Presently there is no role for CT imaging in postoperative evaluation of TVT or TOT and there is little to no literature discussing it (Figure 1).

## ROLE OF ULTRASOUND IN RE-OPERATIVE PLANNING AND INTRAOPERATIVE GUIDANCE

In addition to its diagnostic value, ultrasound can be used for operative planning in cases where mesh revision is necessary. For postoperative pain, conservative therapy with short term rest and pain management is a reasonable first step in treatment. Intractable pain, however, may require more invasive measures. Mesh incision, mesh excision, or obturator/pudendal neurectomy are all options depending on the etiology of

the pain<sup>[15]</sup>. The ability to determine mesh dimensions with ultrasound can be used to assist in surgical decision making preoperatively<sup>[20,27]</sup>.

Staack *et al*<sup>[21]</sup> first used preoperative translabial ultrasonography to determine sling type, location, and erosion into the urethra or bladder in 51 patients with previously placed suburethral slings and post-procedural lower urinary tract symptoms. Static, dynamic, and 3D techniques in conjunction allowed for visualization of the mesh in relation to the bladder neck and urethra, location of the mesh arms, and identification of urethral hypermobility and kinking or potential mesh folding. Sling location and type were then all confirmed intraoperatively. Thus, ultrasound had a 100% sensitivity in identifying sling location regardless of sling type even in patients without previous operative reports.

Intraoperative ultrasound is the next step in improving outcomes for patients with mesh complications. Though the literature is sparse, two case reports indicate that sonography could prove invaluable in difficult cases. Rostaminia *et al*<sup>[39]</sup> describes a case report of levator ani repair for a 33-year-old woman with bilateral levator ani separation after childbirth. With the aid of intraoperative 3D endovaginal ultrasound, the torn ends of the levator ani muscles were tagged with hooks to allow for identification and manipulation. Similarly, Mukati *et al*<sup>[40]</sup> reports the case of a 71-year-old woman with previous TVT surgery presenting 3 years later with incomplete bladder emptying requiring self-catheterization. Given the severity of voiding dysfunction, the patient underwent sling revision. As the previous sling could not be identified intraoperatively, a combined 3D-2D endovaginal ultrasound technique was used to localize and resect the sling. The patient's symptoms resolved after mesh resection.

At our institution, we routinely use pelvic ultrasonography for preoperative diagnosis and operative planning as well as intraoperative guidance. We have found that pre- and intraoperative ultrasound use can be used in complex revision cases to better delineate mesh position and thus reducing the extent of resection required to correct mesh-related complications. Given the high success rate of ultrasonographic visualization of mesh location as well as the comprehensive picture provided by this technique, translabial ultrasonography can be very valuable in preoperative planning and intraoperative guidance for surgical correction of suburethral sling.

## CONCLUSION

Meshes have a vital role in the treatment of female pelvic organ prolapse as well as urinary incontinence. Despite improvements in surgical techniques and available mesh products, there is still a significant morbidity associated with complications of mesh surgery; serious complications are not rare. These complications and their clinical manifestations such as pain, urinary tract dysfunction, or sexual dysfunction can be difficult

to manage. Two major challenges are early recognition of complications and their subsequent surgical management. Delayed recognition leads to patient dissatisfaction; delayed surgical management may make cases much more difficult. As such, innovative techniques are desired in the armamentarium for surgeons treating these complications. Pelvic ultrasound is a valuable and inexpensive technique that can be used both for localization, diagnosis, preoperative planning, and intraoperative guidance when dealing with mesh complications.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **Melville JL**, Katon W, Delaney K, Newton K. Urinary incontinence in US women: a population-based study. *Arch Intern Med* 2005; **165**: 537-542 [PMID: 15767530]
- 2 **Wilson L**, Brown JS, Shin GP, Luc KO, Subak LL. Annual direct cost of urinary incontinence. *Obstet Gynecol* 2001; **98**: 398-406 [PMID: 11530119]
- 3 **Subak LL**, Waetjen LE, van den Eeden S, Thom DH, Vittinghoff E, Brown JS. Cost of pelvic organ prolapse surgery in the United States. *Obstet Gynecol* 2001; **98**: 646-651 [PMID: 11576582]
- 4 **Dumoulin C**, Hay-Smith EJ, Mac Habée-Séguin G. Pelvic floor muscle training versus no treatment, or inactive control treatments, for urinary incontinence in women. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; **5**: CD005654 [PMID: 24823491 DOI: 10.1002/nau.22700]
- 5 **Bezerra CA**, Bruschini H, Cody DJ. Traditional suburethral sling operations for urinary incontinence in women. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2005; **(3)**: CD001754 [PMID: 16034866 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001754.pub3]
- 6 **Ulmsten U**, Petros P. Intravaginal slingplasty (IVS): an ambulatory surgical procedure for treatment of female urinary incontinence. *Scand J Urol Nephrol* 1995; **29**: 75-82 [PMID: 7618052 DOI: 10.3109/00365599509180543]
- 7 **Food and Drug Administration**. Urogynecologic surgical mesh: Update on the safety and effectiveness of transvaginal placement for pelvic organ prolapse, 2011-07-13. [Accessed 2015 May 22]. Available from: URL: <http://www.fda.gov/downloads/MedicalDevices/Safety/AlertsandNotices/UCM262760.pdf>
- 8 **Brubaker L**, Norton PA, Albo ME, Chai TC, Dandreo KJ, Lloyd KL, Lowder JL, Sirls LT, Lemack GE, Arisco AM, Xu Y, Kusek JW. Adverse events over two years after retropubic or transobturator midurethral sling surgery: findings from the Trial of Midurethral Slings (TOMUS) study. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2011; **205**: 498.e1-498.e6 [PMID: 21925636 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2011.07.011]
- 9 **Balchandra P**, Marsh F, Landon C. Perioperative outcomes and prospective patient reported outcome measures for transvaginal mesh surgery. *Arch Gynecol Obstet* 2015; **292**: 875-882 [PMID: 25903519 DOI: 10.1007/s00404-015-3724-z]
- 10 **Ganj FA**, Ibeanu OA, Bedestani A, Nolan TE, Chesson RR. Complications of transvaginal monofilament polypropylene mesh in pelvic organ prolapse repair. *Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct* 2009; **20**: 919-925 [PMID: 19582383 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-009-0879-9]
- 11 **de Tayrac R**, Brouziyne M, Priou G, Devoldère G, Marie G, Renaudie J. Transvaginal repair of stage III-IV cystocele using a lightweight mesh: safety and 36-month outcome. *Int Urogynecol J* 2015; **26**: 1147-1154 [PMID: 25731722 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-015-2659-z]
- 12 **Eisenberg VH**, Steinberg M, Weiner Z, Alcalay M, Itskovitz-Eldor J, Schiff E, Lowenstein L. Three-dimensional transperineal ultrasound for imaging mesh implants following sacrocolpopexy. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol* 2014; **43**: 459-465 [PMID: 24407819 DOI: 10.1002/uog.13303]
- 13 **Svabik K**, Martan A, Masata J, El-Haddad R, Hubka P, Pavlikova M. Ultrasound appearances after mesh implantation--evidence of mesh contraction or folding? *Int Urogynecol J* 2011; **22**: 529-533 [PMID: 20976440 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-010-1308-9]

- 14 **Dietz HP**, Erdmann M, Shek KL. Mesh contraction: myth or reality? *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2011; **204**: 173.e1-173.e4 [PMID: 20965481 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2010.08.058]
- 15 **Mock S**, Reynolds WS, and Dmochowski RR. Trans-vaginal mesh revision: A comprehensive review on etiologies and management strategies with emphasis on postoperative pain outcomes. *LUTS: Lower Urinary Tract Symptoms* 2014; **6**: 69-75 [DOI: 10.1111/luts.12055]
- 16 **Bartley JM**, Sirls LT, Killinger KA, Boura JA. Secondary surgery after vaginal prolapse repair with mesh is more common for stress incontinence and voiding dysfunction than for mesh problems or prolapse recurrence. *Int Urol Nephrol* 2015; **47**: 609-615 [PMID: 25697161 DOI: 10.1007/s11255-015-0930-3]
- 17 **Maher C**, Baessler K, Glazener CM, Adams EJ, Hagen S. Surgical management of pelvic organ prolapse in women. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2007; **(3)**: CD004014 [PMID: 17636742 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD004014.pub5]
- 18 **Padmanabhan P**, Hutchinson RC, Reynolds WS, Kaufman M, Scarpero HM, Dmochowski RR. Approach to management of iatrogenic foreign bodies of the lower urinary tract following reconstructive pelvic surgery. *J Urol* 2012; **187**: 1685-1690 [PMID: 22425126 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2011.12.081]
- 19 **Dunn GE**, Hansen BL, Egger MJ, Nygaard I, Sanchez-Birkhead AC, Hsu Y, Clark L. Changed women: the long-term impact of vaginal mesh complications. *Female Pelvic Med Reconstr Surg* 2014; **20**: 131-136 [PMID: 24763153 DOI: 10.1097/SPV.0000000000000083]
- 20 **Manonai J**, Rostaminia G, Denson L, Shobeiri SA. Clinical and ultrasonographic study of patients presenting with transvaginal mesh complications. *Neurourol Urodyn* 2015 Jan 25; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25620321 DOI: 10.1002/nau.22725]
- 21 **Staack A**, Vitale J, Ragavendra N, Rodríguez LV. Translabial ultrasonography for evaluation of synthetic mesh in the vagina. *Urology* 2014; **83**: 68-74 [PMID: 24231215 DOI: 10.1016/j.urology.2013.09.004]
- 22 **Dietz HP**, Barry C, Lim YN, Rane A. Two-dimensional and three-dimensional ultrasound imaging of suburethral slings. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol* 2005; **26**: 175-179 [PMID: 15988786 DOI: 10.1002/uog.1945]
- 23 **Schuettoff S**, Beyersdorff D, Gauruder-Burmester A, Tunn R. Visibility of the polypropylene tape after tension-free vaginal tape (TVT) procedure in women with stress urinary incontinence: comparison of introital ultrasound and magnetic resonance imaging in vitro and in vivo. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol* 2006; **27**: 687-692 [PMID: 16710883 DOI: 10.1002/uog.2781]
- 24 **Rodrigo N**, Wong V, Shek KL, Martin A, Dietz HP. The use of 3-dimensional ultrasound of the pelvic floor to predict recurrence risk after pelvic reconstructive surgery. *Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol* 2014; **54**: 206-211 [PMID: 24576013 DOI: 10.1111/ajo.12171]
- 25 **Ng CC**, Lee LC, Han WH. Use of three-dimensional ultrasound scan to assess the clinical importance of midurethral placement of the tension-free vaginal tape (TVT) for treatment of incontinence. *Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct* 2005; **16**: 220-225 [PMID: 15875238 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-004-1245-6]
- 26 **Tunn R**, Picot A, Marschke J, Gauruder-Burmester A. Sonomorphological evaluation of polypropylene mesh implants after vaginal mesh repair in women with cystocele or rectocele. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol* 2007; **29**: 449-452 [PMID: 17330320 DOI: 10.1002/uog.3962]
- 27 **Velemir L**, Amblard J, Faton B, Savary D, Jacquetin B. Transvaginal mesh repair of anterior and posterior vaginal wall prolapse: a clinical and ultrasonographic study. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol* 2010; **35**: 474-480 [PMID: 20209502 DOI: 10.1002/uog.7485]
- 28 **Denson L**, Shobeiri SA. Three-dimensional endovaginal sonography of synthetic implanted materials in the female pelvic floor. *J Ultrasound Med* 2014; **33**: 521-529 [PMID: 24567464 DOI: 10.7863/ultra.33.3.521]
- 29 **Fleischer AC**, Harvey SM, Kurita SC, Andreotti RF, Zimmerman CW. Two-/three-dimensional transperineal sonography of complicated tape and mesh implants. *Ultrasound Q* 2012; **28**: 243-249 [PMID: 23149508 DOI: 10.1097/RUQ.0b013e3182749585]
- 30 **Tunn R**, Petri E. Introital and transvaginal ultrasound as the main tool in the assessment of urogenital and pelvic floor dysfunction: an imaging panel and practical approach. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol* 2003; **22**: 205-213 [PMID: 12905521 DOI: 10.1002/uog.189]
- 31 **Shek KL**, Dietz HP, Rane A, Balakrishnan S. Transobturator mesh for cystocele repair: a short- to medium-term follow-up using 3D/4D ultrasound. *Ultrasound Obstet Gynecol* 2008; **32**: 82-86 [PMID: 18543373 DOI: 10.1002/uog.5361]
- 32 **Brocker KA**, Alt CD, Rzepka J, Sohn C, Hallscheidt P. One-year dynamic MRI follow-up after vaginal mesh repair: evaluation of clinical, radiological, and quality-of-life results. *Acta Radiol* 2015; **56**: 1002-1008 [PMID: 25136056]
- 33 **Ginath S**, Garely AD, Luchs JS, Shahryarnejad A, Olivera CK, Zhou S, Ascher-Walsh CJ, Condrea A, Brodman ML, Vardy MD. Magnetic resonance imaging of abdominal versus vaginal prolapse surgery with mesh. *Int Urogynecol J* 2012; **23**: 1569-1576 [PMID: 22543549 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-012-1783-2]
- 34 **Sindhvani N**, Feola A, De Keyser F, Claus F, Callewaert G, Urbankova I, Ourselin S, D'hooge J, Deprest J. Three-dimensional analysis of implanted magnetic-resonance-visible meshes. *Int Urogynecol J* 2015; **26**: 1459-1465 [PMID: 25800904 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-015-2681-1]
- 35 **Kashihara H**, Emmanuelli V, Poncelot E. Comparison of dynamic MRI vaginal anatomical changes after vaginal mesh surgery and laparoscopic sacropepy. *Gynecological Surgery* 2014; **11**: 249-256 [DOI: 10.1007/s1039-014-0864-2]
- 36 **Brocker KA**, Alt CD, Corteville C, Hallscheidt P, Lenz F, Sohn C. Short-range clinical, dynamic magnetic resonance imaging and P-QOL questionnaire results after mesh repair in female pelvic organ prolapse. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 2011; **157**: 107-112 [PMID: 21459506 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejogrb.2011.02.006]
- 37 **El Sayed RF**. Commentary on "MRI and CT of sacrocolpopexy". *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2013; **200**: 938-940 [PMID: 23521473 DOI: 10.2214/AJR.12.10218]
- 38 **van der Weiden RM**, Rociu E, Mannaerts GH, van Hooff MH, Vierhout ME, Withagen MI. Dynamic magnetic resonance imaging before and 6 months after laparoscopic sacrocolpopexy. *Int Urogynecol J* 2014; **25**: 507-515 [PMID: 24146073 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-013-2254-0]
- 39 **Rostaminia G**, Shobeiri SA, Quiroz LH. Surgical repair of bilateral levator ani muscles with ultrasound guidance. *Int Urogynecol J* 2013; **24**: 1237-1239 [PMID: 22885726 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-012-1912-y]
- 40 **Mukati MS**, Shobeiri SA. Transvaginal sling release with intraoperative ultrasound guidance. *Female Pelvic Med Reconstr Surg* 2013; **19**: 184-185 [PMID: 23611940 DOI: 10.1097/SPV.0b013e318285bbdd]

**P- Reviewer:** Tsikouras P, Zafrakas M **S- Editor:** Qiu S  
**L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Wu HL



## Evaluation of sentinel lymph nodes in vulvar, endometrial and cervical cancers

Jenna Emerson, Katina Robison

Jenna Emerson, Katina Robison, Program in Women's Oncology, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Women and Infants Hospital, Alpert Medical School, Brown University, Providence, RI 02905, United States

**Author contributions:** Emerson J was co-writer; Robison K was co-writer and edited review.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** The authors had no conflict of interest.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Katina Robison, MD, Program in Women's Oncology, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, WWomen and Infants Hospital, Alpert Medical School, Brown University, 101 Dudley Street, Providence, RI 02905, United States. [krobison@wihri.org](mailto:krobison@wihri.org)  
Telephone: +1-401-2741100  
Fax: +1-401-4537529

Received: July 3, 2015

Peer-review started: July 31, 2015

First decision: September 30, 2015

Revised: October 28, 2015

Accepted: November 23, 2015

Article in press: November 25, 2015

Published online: February 10, 2016

### Abstract

Sentinel lymph node (SLN) biopsies are a sensitive tool in evaluating lymph nodes for multiple cancers, and in some diseases they decrease morbidity in both the short- and long-term. SLN detection in gynecologic malignancies has been studied extensively over the

past decade. We review the current literature on SLN dissection in vulvar, endometrial and cervical cancers. Large, well-designed trials in each of the three types of cancer have demonstrated high sensitivity and low false-negative rates when SLN biopsy is performed in the correct patients and with an appropriate technical approach. In all of these cases the addition of ultra-staging to conventional pathology yields increased detection of micrometastatic disease. Biopsy of the sentinel nodes is feasible and safe in early vulvar malignancies, with multiple studies describing low recurrence rates in those women who have with negative SLNs. There does not appear to be a survival benefit to lymphadenectomy over SLN biopsy and quality of life is improved in women undergoing SLN biopsy. Optimal treatment strategies for women with positive nodal biopsies, particularly in cases with micrometastatic disease, remain unclear. Multiple large studies investigating the utility of SLN biopsy in endometrial malignancy have found that sentinel nodal status is a reliable predictor of metastases in women with low-risk disease. Prospective studies are ongoing and suggest sentinel nodal detection may soon become widely accepted as an alternative standard of care for select cases of endometrial cancer. In cervical cancer, SLN biopsy is accurate for diagnosing metastatic disease in early stage tumors ( $\leq 2$  cm diameter or stage  $\leq$  IB2) where the risk of metastasis is low. It is unknown if women who undergo SLN biopsy alone will have different survival outcomes than women who undergo complete lymphadenectomy in these cases. In a specific population of women with vulvar cancer, SLN dissection is an effective and safe alternative to complete dissection. It can be offered as an alternative management strategy in these women. In women who do undergo SLN biopsy, it is associated with improved quality of life. Promising evidence supporting the utility of SLN dissection in endometrial and cervical cancer continues to emerge, and it may soon become a reasonable option for select patients. However, continued research and refinement of appropriate patient selection and long-term follow-up are necessary.



**Key words:** Gynecologic malignancies; Sentinel lymph node; Endometrial cancer; Cervical cancer; Vulvar cancer

© **The Author(s) 2016.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** In a specific population of women with vulvar cancer, sentinel lymph node (SLN) dissection is an effective and safe alternative to complete dissection. It can be offered as an alternative management strategy in these women. Sentinel node biopsy is also associated with an improved quality of life. Promising evidence supporting the utility of SLN dissection in endometrial and cervical cancer continues to emerge, and it may soon become a reasonable option for select patients. However, continued research and refinement of appropriate patient selection and long-term follow-up are necessary.

Emerson J, Robison K. Evaluation of sentinel lymph nodes in vulvar, endometrial and cervical cancers. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 78-86 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/78.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.78>

## INTRODUCTION

Sentinel lymph node (SLN) biopsy has become the standard of care in multiple non-gynecologic malignancies. As a surgical technique, SLN biopsy was initially developed for the treatment of penile cancer in 1977, and was adopted into treatment strategies for breast cancer and melanoma shortly thereafter<sup>[1]</sup>. The SLN is the first node within a lymphatic chain which drains the primary tumor. As the first in a chain of lymph nodes, theoretically the sentinel node will be the first to receive metastatic disease. If the sentinel node is negative then, it is assumed that the remainder of the lymphatic basin is also without metastatic disease. One of the distinctive benefits of SLN biopsies is the opportunity to avoid "over-staging", the removal and dissection of non-diseased tissues in an effort to identify the extent of a patient's cancer. Furthermore, with fewer lymph nodes to examine, pathologists can perform more in-depth analysis on the relatively smaller volume of available tissues.

Application of SLN biopsy techniques in gynecologic malignancies has been studied extensively over the past decade as nodal dissections in these cancers can lead to long-term morbidities. In breast and vulvar cancers SLN biopsy is predictive of the disease status of the lymphatics and has demonstrated decreases in the significant short and long-term morbidities which are seen in complete lymphadenectomy. However, sampling of the SLN in other gynecologic malignancies is still investigational. We will review the continually

growing body of literature supporting SLN biopsy in the treatment of vulvar cancer, as well as reviewing the current evidence behind the use of SLN biopsy in endometrial and cervical cancers.

## VULVAR CANCER

Vulvar cancer is relatively uncommon, accounting for 5% of gynecologic malignancies<sup>[2]</sup>. Five thousand one hundred and fifty new cases of vulvar cancer and 1080 deaths attributable to the same are anticipated in the United States in 2015<sup>[2]</sup>. Traditional radical vulvectomy with en bloc inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy was associated with high morbidities including 70% of women suffering from chronic lymphedema<sup>[3]</sup>. Over time, in order to minimize surgical morbidity, the standard of care has shifted. It is now standard practice to perform vulvectomy or radical wide local excision, with deep or superficial inguinal femoral node dissection, instead of radical vulvectomy. Unfortunately, even with this less radical surgery complication rates remain significant. A 2013 review of complications in inguinal femoral nodal dissection reported lymphedema in 14%-48% of patients and formation of lymphocele in 7%-40% of patients. Furthermore they report wound infections in 21%-39% of patients, cellulitis in 21%-57% and wound breakdown in 17%-39% of cases<sup>[4]</sup>. This significant morbidity has led to the development of less invasive and less morbid methodologies, particularly the use of SLN biopsy. Indeed, at experienced centers and with select patients SLN sampling is the new standard of care<sup>[5]</sup>.

Survival rates in vulvar cancer are highly dependent upon inguinal femoral lymph node status; thus their evaluation is critical<sup>[6]</sup>. Five-year survival rates are 96%, 80% and 12% in women with negative inguinal femoral lymph nodes, two or less positive lymph nodes and more than two positive lymph nodes, respectively. Survival continues to fall significantly with increasing numbers of positive nodes beyond 2<sup>[7]</sup>. However, the majority of women that undergo lymphadenectomy will not have nodal disease. It has been shown that tumor size is prognostic of the risk of lymph node metastases with only 10%-15% of patients with vulvar tumors less than 20 mm having inguinal femoral metastases<sup>[6,8]</sup>. This suggests that up to 90% of patients could be spared the morbidity of complete lymphadenectomy if appropriately identified.

Levenback *et al.*<sup>[9]</sup> first described the application of SLN biopsy in vulvar malignancy, adopting technical features from the melanoma literature<sup>[9,10]</sup>. Multiple subsequent studies have demonstrated the safety, feasibility and low false negative rates of SLN biopsy in these patients<sup>[10-15]</sup>. The majority of studies use a dual-injection approach with pre-operative radioactive tracer injection of technetium-99 sulfur colloid (<sup>99m</sup>Tc) and isosulfan or methylene blue injection in the operating room<sup>[16]</sup>.

A systematic review published in 2015 by Covens *et al.*<sup>[17]</sup> reported high rates of sentinel node detection and low false-negative rates. Although they report significant variability among studies, the overall detection rate was 86.9%. Twenty five studies analyzed in this review reported SLN biopsy followed by inguinal femoral nodal dissection; the false negative rate for sentinel node biopsy among these studies was 6.6%<sup>[17]</sup>.

GOG 173 was a large prospective multicenter trial comparing SLN biopsy to inguinal femoral lymphadenectomy. Four hundred and fifty-nine patients with tumors between 2 and 6 cm and without signs of affected lymph nodes on clinical exam were included in the trial. All women underwent lymphatic mapping using radioactive tracer and blue dye. SLN biopsy was performed when possible, followed by complete lymphadenectomy. One or more SLN was found in 412 women, and 132 (31.6%) had lymph node metastases. Sensitivity and false-negative predictive value (FNPV) were 91.7% and 3.7%, respectively. Both were impacted by the size of the tumor; in those lesions less than 4 cm in diameter the FNPV was 2%, while it rose to 7.4% when size ranged from 4-6 cm<sup>[18]</sup>. Another large multicenter study, conducted by Hampl *et al.*<sup>[19]</sup>, evaluated accuracy and feasibility of SLN biopsy in women with T1-T3 vulvar cancer. They reported a 98% detection rate, 92.3% sensitivity and 7.7% false negative rate<sup>[19]</sup>.

This study included patients with large lesions (> 4 cm), and a wide range of experience in SLN biopsy among participating surgeons, likely contribute to the higher false negative rate.

One of the distinct advantages of SLN biopsies is the opportunity for ultra-staging. Levenback *et al.*<sup>[18]</sup> found that the mean total of lymph nodes resected with complete inguinal femoral dissection was 8.94, as compared to a mean of 1.54 lymph nodes with sentinel biopsy. With fewer nodes, the pathologist can focus efforts on examining smaller, serial sections, a technique known as ultra-staging. Pathologic examination of a SLN is likely to identify smaller metastases to these nodes. Those metastases measuring 0.2-2 mm in size are referred to as micrometastases, and while their clinical significance is not entirely understood in all gynecologic cancers they have been identified as predictors of relapse in melanoma and breast cancer. In addition, techniques such as immunohistochemical staining and reverse-transcriptase polymerase chain reaction analysis for cytokeratin expression can be added to hematoxylin and eosin staining to potential increase tumor cell detection rates<sup>[20]</sup>. Studies evaluating the impact of these methods on detection of metastatic tumor cells are varied and report a range of results. However, this is at least partially due to a lack of uniform techniques used across institutions<sup>[21]</sup>. Current expert opinion argues that the potential benefit provided by ultra-staging and immunohistochemical staining of sentinel nodes outweighs the risks of increased time, cost, and identification and treatment of metastases of uncertain

clinical significance<sup>[17]</sup>.

Initial studies evaluated SLN biopsy followed by complete nodal dissection. However, the large multicenter GROningen International Study on Sentinel nodes in Vulvar cancer (GROINSS-V-I) was the first to evaluate the safety of SLN biopsy alone.

Inclusion in this multicenter observational study required that patients have unilateral and unifocal tumors of the vulva smaller than 4 cm in diameter; only squamous cell cancers were included. Women with negative SLN evaluation following completion of ultra-staging underwent serial surveillance, while those with positive SLN underwent inguinal femoral lymphadenectomy. Of the 403 patients enrolled, 276 had negative SLNs. During a median follow-up period of 35 mo there were 8 episodes (2.9%) of groin recurrence. Furthermore, the investigators found a decrease in morbidity for patients who had only SLN biopsy when compared to women who underwent complete nodal dissection. Perhaps the best illustration of this is in the incidence of postoperative lymphedema. Less than 2% of women who had only SLN biopsy experienced lymphedema, compared to 25.2% of women who underwent complete lymphadenectomy<sup>[22]</sup>.

Unfortunately, groin nodal recurrence of vulvar cancer carries a dire prognosis, with 5 year survival rates ranging from 0%-17%<sup>[23,24]</sup>. In their meta-analysis, Covens *et al.*<sup>[17]</sup> included an analysis of recurrence rates when women were followed after SLN biopsy, superficial inguinal nodal dissection, or complete nodal dissection (involving dissection of the deep femoral lymph nodes). Twenty-three studies were included, with a broad range of follow-up durations. They reported a 6.6% (4.4-9.0) recurrence rate in women undergoing superficial nodal dissection and a 1.4% (0.4-2.9) recurrence rate with complete inguinal femoral dissection. Comparatively, the recurrence rate with sentinel node biopsy was between these two values, at 3.4% (1.8-5.4)<sup>[17]</sup>.

Identification of appropriate patients for sentinel node biopsy instead of complete inguinal femoral lymphadenectomy is another important factor. GROINSS-V-I reported an increased risk of recurrence in women with multifocal disease (11.8% vs 2.3%), suggesting that sentinel nodal biopsy is likely inadequate in this subset of patients<sup>[22]</sup>. Tumor size is another important predictor of nodal metastases. The largest studies evaluating SLN biopsy excluded patients with clinically suspicious nodes, and most would recommend complete groin lymphadenectomy in this group of patients<sup>[22]</sup>. GOG 173 demonstrated differences in both the rate of nodal metastasis and the false-negative SLN biopsy rate when comparing tumors of different sizes. In women with tumors measuring 2.0-3.9 cm the rates of nodal metastasis and false-negative SLN biopsy were 26.4% and 2%, respectively. Comparatively, women with tumors measuring 4-6 cm had nodal metastasis in 40.9% of cases and the false-negative rate was 7.4%<sup>[25]</sup>. Furthermore, tumors near the midline have increasing odds of bilateral lymphatic drainage, with

tumors located < 2 cm from the midline accounting for the majority of recurrences after SLN biopsy<sup>[26]</sup>.

Much of the research on SLN biopsy began as an effort to decrease morbidity from the surgical management of vulvar malignancy, which raises the question "Is quality of life (QoL) better for women that undergo SLN biopsy alone?". While all studies have shown decreased treatment related morbidity with SLN biopsy, a few studies have also shown that SLN biopsy improves overall QoL for women who undergo SLN biopsy compared to women who undergo complete groin lymphadenectomy<sup>[27-29]</sup>.

Questions of the cost-effectiveness of SLN biopsy have also been raised; the short-term increased costs associated with an additional surgical technique and possible increased risk of recurrence must be weighed against the longer term impacts that complete inguinal femoral lymphadenectomy have on both healthcare expenditures and quality of life. A cost-effectiveness model evaluating SLN biopsy in vulvar cancer found that SLN biopsy was both less costly and more effective than complete lymph node dissection. Only when the model was altered in such a way that lymphedema did not negatively impact quality of life, did complete inguinal lymphadenectomy become a cost effective option<sup>[30]</sup>.

Although there is a significant body of literature to verify the safety and feasibility of SLN biopsy in vulvar squamous cell cancer, the appropriate treatment in women with a positive sentinel node remains uncertain. The currently recruiting GROINSS-V-II/GOG 270 study aims to answer this question, treating women with positive sentinel nodes with radiation plus or minus chemotherapy, eliminating the complete inguinal femoral dissection. However, until those results become available, the standard of care remains complete dissection in the setting of nodal metastases. This is based upon GROINSS-V-I data demonstrating that when there is sentinel node metastasis present there is an unacceptably high risk of additional metastasis beyond that node, regardless of metastasis size<sup>[31]</sup>.

A 2008 statement issued by the International Sentinel Node Society states that SLN biopsy should be offered to patients with clinical stage I-II vulvar cancer when "the SLN biopsy is performed by a skilled multidisciplinary team in well-selected patients." We feel that SLN biopsy is appropriate when the tumor is  $\leq 4$  cm in diameter, there is no clinical evidence of groin involvement, and invasion is  $> 1$  mm<sup>[16,32]</sup>. Additionally, midline lesions necessitate bilateral SLN biopsy, and patients with multifocal tumors should undergo complete inguinal femoral dissection<sup>[22]</sup>. Furthermore, surgeons should demonstrate their ability to identify sentinel nodes before offering this technique to patients. This can best be accomplished by performing SLN biopsy with a standard technique followed by concurrent total lymphadenectomy<sup>[22,32]</sup>. The panel recommended that before utilizing SLN biopsy alone surgeons should successfully identify a SLN in ten successive cases, without any false-negatives<sup>[32]</sup>. Unfortunately, the

infrequent occurrence of vulvar cancer may make the necessary volume difficult to achieve for many gynecologic oncologists. Due to this low volume, some suggest that vulvar cancer is best treated in a limited number of specialized referral centers where patients can best benefit from maximally trained and experienced surgeons<sup>[17]</sup>.

## ENDOMETRIAL CANCER

An estimated 54870 new cases of endometrial cancer will be diagnosed in the United States in 2015, making it the most common of the gynecologic malignancies<sup>[2]</sup>. For the majority of newly diagnosed patients management includes complete surgical staging, which includes pelvic and para-aortic lymphadenectomy. Lymph node status is an important prognostic element in endometrial cancer, making lymphadenectomy a central factor in the initial treatment<sup>[33]</sup>. However, lymphadenectomy is not without risk. Low-risk patients undergoing lymphadenectomy experience increased morbidity, cost and operating room time without associated survival benefit<sup>[34]</sup>. Only about 10% of women with clinical stage I cancer will have disease-positive lymph nodes, and in women with superficial invasion and well differentiated tumors the rate of lymph node involvement falls to 3%-5%<sup>[35,36]</sup>. This indicates that 95%-97% of women with early stage cancer will have negative lymph nodes. However, inadequate staging often leads to increased postoperative therapy, particularly external beam radiation in "under-staged" individuals<sup>[37]</sup>. Given this clinical conundrum a less invasive approach for the evaluation of nodal basins may offer significant benefit.

A number of contemporary studies have now outlined the validity of lymphatic mapping in endometrial cancer. The SENTI-ENDO trial published in 2011 was a prospective multicenter cohort study assessing detection and accuracy of sentinel node biopsy in early endometrial malignancy. One hundred and thirty-three women underwent lymphatic mapping *via* intracervical injection of both <sup>99m</sup>Tc and blue dye, followed by complete pelvic nodal dissection. Sentinel nodes underwent more rigorous pathologic evaluation than non-sentinel nodes, with immunohistochemistry and ultra-staging. The negative predictive value and sensitivity for detection of metastatic disease in the lymph nodes were 97% and 84%, respectively. Of the three false-negative results, two were located in the contralateral pelvis and one was in the para-aortic nodes. There were no major adverse outcomes associated with the SLN biopsy approach<sup>[35]</sup>. This study successfully demonstrated that sentinel nodal status in endometrial cancer accurately predicts nodal metastatic disease.

More recently, Barlin *et al.*<sup>[38]</sup> published the outcomes of their systematic and stepwise approach to lymphatic mapping and SLN biopsy. The algorithm involves universal evaluation of the serosa and peritoneum, excision of mapped SLNs, excision of any non-sentinel clinically suspicious nodes, and a hemi-pelvic complete

node dissection on each side where no SLN is identified. In their study of 498 patients, 81% had at least one sentinel node. Thus, 19% required bilateral pelvic nodal dissection and 30% required unilateral nodal dissection. Using this approach they reported a false-negative rate of 2%, sensitivity of 98.1% and negative predictive value of 99.8%<sup>[38]</sup>. This process for evaluating pelvic nodes provides a notable improvement in the yield of SLN biopsy while still leading to adequate lymph node evaluation in patients without successful bilateral lymphatic mapping.

In endometrial cancer, the SLN technique varies between institutions. There are three primary SLN injection protocols used. It is important to note that the lymphatic drainage of the uterus is bilateral, and as such identification of lymph nodes on both sides of the pelvis is a key factor in the potential success or failure of any SLN detection approach. Injection modalities include intracervical injection, injection into the uterine serosa, and injection into the endometrium *via* hysteroscopy. A 2011 meta-analysis found the greatest detection rates with intracervical injection, although this result was not statistically significant<sup>[39]</sup>. The majority of large studies published since employed intracervical injection. Ease of access, ease of injection, anatomic plausibility for accurate mapping, and low frequency of distorting factors such as myomas or scar tissue from cervical procedures in patients with endometrial cancer have all been cited as reasons to favor cervical injection<sup>[40]</sup>.

Furthermore, three types of injected tracers, used alone or in combination with one another, provide variation between the published protocols and their results. Blue dye, <sup>99m</sup>Tc and indocyanine green (ICG) have all been shown to be efficacious in lymphatic mapping. The most prevalent strategies currently appear to be blue dye in combination with <sup>99m</sup>Tc, or ICG alone. Bilateral detection rates with the dye and <sup>99m</sup>Tc combination have ranged from 66%-69%<sup>[41-43]</sup>, while ICG ranges from 60%-79%<sup>[44-46]</sup>. A recent cohort study comparing successful mapping with either blue dye or ICG found a significant improvement in bilateral SLN detection with ICG. Additionally, patient BMI was a predictor of failed mapping with blue dye, while BMI did not impact mapping with ICG<sup>[45]</sup>. This is an important difference given the prevalence of obesity in women with endometrial cancer. How *et al*<sup>[43]</sup> published on the approach of combining all three agents into one injection, and in a cohort of 100 patients reported a bilateral detection rate of 76%.

Importantly, lymphatic mapping can identify sentinel nodes in areas which would not have been sampled with conventional lymphadenectomy and are three times more likely to contain metastases than non-sentinel nodes<sup>[40]</sup>. Jewell *et al*<sup>[46]</sup> reported slightly more than 10% of patients in their study had sentinel nodes located outside of the pelvic basin, primarily in the para-aortic region. Others report identifying significant numbers of nodes in the pre-sacral region, parametria and the hypogastric vein with lymphatic mapping<sup>[43]</sup>.

Expanding the field of dissection in the presence of variant drainage channels is generally done only when variance is identified, as is the case with lymphatic mapping.

The previously described studies pertain to patients with early stage disease. The Survival Effect of Para-aortic Lymphadenectomy in Endometrial Cancer study retrospectively evaluated overall survival in patients with endometrial malignancy who underwent either pelvic only or combined pelvic and para-aortic lymphadenectomy. Their results, published in 2010, found that more extensive lymphadenectomy improved survival in women with intermediate and high risk cancers, but not in women with low risk cancers<sup>[47]</sup>. Thus, SLN biopsy is likely only appropriate for women with early stage disease.

As previously described in the context of vulvar cancer, ultra-staging can provide added benefit when a select few nodes have been removed. Kim *et al*<sup>[48]</sup> report on 425 women who underwent SLN biopsy at the time of staging for low grade endometrial cancer. Ultra-staging was used when standard hematoxylin and eosin (H and E) staining did not identify metastatic disease, and the number of metastatic cancers diagnosed doubled with ultra-staging<sup>[48]</sup>. Others have also documented increased detection rates with ultra-staging<sup>[38,49]</sup>. The importance of these low-volume metastases should be underscored, as they are associated with worse outcomes and increased risk of recurrence<sup>[49,50]</sup>. However, the most appropriate management of these micrometastases remains unknown.

The low false negative rates and high sensitivity of sentinel nodal biopsy when done as part of a comprehensive algorithm make it a practical and appealing solution to the problem of staging women with early stage endometrial cancer. However, lymph node involvement is low for many women with early stage endometrial cancer and the survival benefit of adding SLN biopsy is unknown. At this time we feel SLN biopsy is investigational in women with endometrial cancer and should be done only on protocol. Routine pelvic and para-aortic lymphadenectomy should be performed on women at risk for lymph node metastasis. Additional information regarding long-term outcomes including overall survival among women undergoing SLN biopsy alone is still needed before we can determine which women will most benefit from the addition of a SLN biopsy and when we can omit pelvic and para-aortic lymphadenectomy.

## CERVICAL CANCER

Despite not being an element of the FIGO clinical staging for cervical cancer, lymph node status is one of the most influential factors in disease free and overall survival for women with early stage disease<sup>[51]</sup>. The current standard of care for women with cervical cancer treated surgically includes bilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy plus or minus para-aortic lymphadenectomy. This



procedure however comes with significant morbidity, such as prolonged operative times, nerve and vascular injury, lymphocysts, and lymphedema<sup>[52]</sup>. However, only about 15% of women with early stage disease have lymph node metastases, meaning that the majority of the women are exposed to the increased morbidity of lymphadenectomy without an associated survival benefit<sup>[53]</sup>. This creates a prime opportunity for sentinel node biopsy.

There are a multitude of studies investigating the accuracy of sentinel node biopsy in cervical malignancy, and a recent systematic reviewed by Kadkhodayan and others analyzed the results of 67 such articles. They determined that the pooled detection rate of sentinel nodal mapping was 89.2% (95%CI: 86.3%-91.6%), with an overall sensitivity of 90% (95%CI: 88%-92%). When comparing the results of all included studies, they found that SLN detection rates were lower when using blue dye alone, and highest when the combination of blue dye and radiotracer. They determined that dilution of blue dye, superficial injections, and cervical injections were all associated with higher detection rates<sup>[54]</sup>. It has also been reported that SLN detection is best when done within 30 min of blue dye injection; when searching 50 min or greater after injection nodes are not able to be identified<sup>[55]</sup>. Others have found slightly improved detection rates when radiotracer is injected the day prior to nodal biopsy as compared to 2 d prior, although the difference is small and not statistically significant<sup>[56]</sup>. Furthermore, minimally invasive techniques (*via* either conventional or robotic laparoscopy) yield improved detection as compared to an open approach<sup>[54]</sup>.

One important consideration in cervical cancer is the impact that positive lymph nodes have on indicated treatment. When lymph node metastases are detected during radical hysterectomy, para-aortic lymph node dissection is often performed and the remainder of the procedure is typically aborted, as the patient will subsequently require chemoradiation with the uterus and cervix *in situ*. Because of this, intraoperative detection of lymph node metastases is a very useful tool. Unfortunately the Kadkhodayan *et al*<sup>[54]</sup> review found that the pooled detection rate of lymph node disease with frozen section is low at 60%, a value which was influenced largely by the fact that frozen section analysis was not able to detect small macrometastatic and micrometastatic disease<sup>[54]</sup>.

Cibula *et al*<sup>[53]</sup> examined the prognostic significance of low volume SLN disease in 645 women with early-stage cervical cancer who underwent SLN biopsy followed by complete pelvic lymphadenectomy. They found that isolated tumor cells were not independently associated with a decrease in overall or recurrence free survival. However, the presence of micrometastases was an independent prognostic factor for overall survival, and was equivalent to the survival effect of macrometastases. This serves to highlight the important role of ultra-staging in the management of these patients. Unfortunately, the most appropriate management for these

isolated tumor cells remains unclear.

As cancer of the cervix is a midline disease, it must be assumed that tumors will drain to bilateral lymphatic basins. Failure of mapping on one side can be due to extensive tumor involvement on the un-mapped side, which in turn leads to significant false-negative rates with SLN detection. Cormier and others published an algorithm wherein all SLNs are removed, any suspicious nodes are removed whether they have mapped or not, and in the instance of only unilateral mapping contralateral pelvic nodal dissection and parametrectomy is done. They applied this method to a prospectively collected database of 122 patients who underwent SLN mapping followed by complete bilateral nodal dissection, and found that use of the algorithm would lead to detection of all cases of lymph node metastases, and avoid bilateral nodal dissection in 75% of cases<sup>[57]</sup>. Such an approach is likely the best way to optimize detection of metastatic disease while minimizing unnecessary complete nodal dissections.

Tumor size is also an important factor in the use of SLN biopsy in cervical cancer. When larger tumors are present there is a higher risk of replacement of lymph nodes with tumor, leading to decreased uptake of tracers. This can lead to either no identification of a sentinel node, or dye uptake by a non-sentinel node because of alterations in lymphatic drainage cause by tumor spread. Because of this a cutoff of SNL mapping only in tumors  $\leq 2$  cm or  $\leq$  IB2 has been suggested<sup>[54]</sup>.

To date, prospective studies on the survival outcomes of women who undergo SLN biopsy alone without concurrent pelvic lymphadenectomy are lacking. However, it is known that in a population of women with early stage disease those with positive lymph nodes do not see a survival advantage with more extensive lymphadenectomy. Conversely, women with negative lymph nodes do experience improved survival when a greater number of nodes are removed<sup>[58]</sup>. It is important to note that the study which reported those findings did not employ ultra-staging and it is possible that a portion of the "node negative" women who benefited from greater dissection would have in fact had micrometastatic disease detected with more advanced pathologic evaluation.

Based upon the above findings, SLN mapping in early stage cervical malignancy is a feasible and reliable approach for detecting metastatic disease. Given the morbidity of total pelvic lymph node dissection, and the relative infrequency with which metastatic disease is present in early cervical disease, SLN mapping has encouraging possibilities in select patients. However, larger prospective studies evaluating the long-term outcomes in patients who undergo SLN biopsy without subsequent complete lymphadenectomy are needed before clinical recommendations can be made.

## CONCLUSION

SLN biopsy is a well-developed technique that is now

the standard of care in melanoma, breast cancer and penile cancer. In women with early vulvar cancer sentinel node biopsy should be considered a feasible alternative to total inguinal femoral lymphadenectomy. When undertaken by a qualified multidisciplinary team SLN biopsy is a safe approach that improves a woman's quality of life. In fact, SLN biopsy is the standard of care at some institutions for vulvar cancer patients.

In endometrial cancer, when using the appropriate technique lymphatic mapping demonstrates high sensitivity for detecting metastatic disease. While prospective studies applying these findings are ongoing, currently available data are promising that sentinel nodal detection may soon become widely accepted as an alternative standard of care for select cases of endometrial cancer.

In cervical cancer, sentinel node biopsy is practical for women with small lesions ( $\leq 2$  cm) and has the potential to spare a substantial proportion of women the morbidity of extensive nodal dissection. When used in conjunction with an algorithm which accounts for incomplete bilateral mapping the diagnostic yield is quiet high, however prospective data on survival and outcomes of women who undergo SLN biopsy are needed before it can be considered a viable alternative to complete lymphadenectomy.

While the process of ultra-staging lends additional information about the spread of disease, large-scale prospective data are needed in all three of these cancers to better understand the significance and proper treatment of micrometastatic malignancy.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **Cabanas RM.** An approach for the treatment of penile carcinoma. *Cancer* 1977; **39**: 456-466 [PMID: 837331]
- 2 **Siegel RL,** Miller KD, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2015. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2015; **65**: 5-29 [PMID: 25559415 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21254]
- 3 **Podratz KC,** Symmonds RE, Taylor WF. Carcinoma of the vulva: analysis of treatment failures. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1982; **143**: 340-351 [PMID: 7081350]
- 4 **Wills A,** Obermair A. A review of complications associated with the surgical treatment of vulvar cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2013; **131**: 467-479 [PMID: 23863358 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2013.07.082]
- 5 **Robison K,** Fiascone S, Moore R. Vulvar cancer and sentinel lymph nodes: a new standard of care? *Expert Rev Anticancer Ther* 2014; **14**: 975-977 [PMID: 25027182 DOI: 10.1586/14737140.2014.940328]
- 6 **Homesley HD,** Bundy BN, Sedlis A, Yordan E, Berek JS, Jahshan A, Mortel R. Assessment of current International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics staging of vulvar carcinoma relative to prognostic factors for survival (a Gynecologic Oncology Group study). *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1991; **164**: 997-1003; discussion 1003-1004 [PMID: 2014852]
- 7 **van der Steen S,** de Nieuwenhof HP, Massuger L, Bulten J, de Hullu JA. New FIGO staging system of vulvar cancer indeed provides a better reflection of prognosis. *Gynecol Oncol* 2010; **119**: 520-525 [PMID: 20875914 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2010.08.036]
- 8 **Sedlis A,** Homesley H, Bundy BN, Marshall R, Yordan E, Hacker N, Lee JH, Whitney C. Positive groin lymph nodes in superficial squamous cell vulvar cancer. A Gynecologic Oncology Group Study. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1987; **156**: 1159-1164 [PMID: 3578430]
- 9 **Levenback C,** Burke TW, Gershenson DM, Morris M, Malpica A, Ross MI. Intraoperative lymphatic mapping for vulvar cancer. *Obstet Gynecol* 1994; **84**: 163-167 [PMID: 8041523]
- 10 **Ansink AC,** Sie-Go DM, van der Velden J, Sijmons EA, de Barros Lopes A, Monaghan JM, Kenter GG, Murdoch JB, ten Kate FJ, Heintz AP. Identification of sentinel lymph nodes in vulvar carcinoma patients with the aid of a patent blue V injection: a multicenter study. *Cancer* 1999; **86**: 652-656 [PMID: 10440693]
- 11 **De Cicco C,** Sideri M, Bartolomei M, Grana C, Cremonesi M, Fiorenza M, Maggioni A, Bocciolone L, Mangioni C, Colombo N, Paganelli G. Sentinel node biopsy in early vulvar cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2000; **82**: 295-299 [PMID: 10646880]
- 12 **de Hullu JA,** Hollema H, Piers DA, Verheijen RH, van Diest PJ, Mourits MJ, Aalders JG, van Der Zee AG. Sentinel lymph node procedure is highly accurate in squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva. *J Clin Oncol* 2000; **18**: 2811-2816 [PMID: 10920128]
- 13 **Levenback C,** Coleman RL, Burke TW, Bodurka-Bevers D, Wolf JK, Gershenson DM. Intraoperative lymphatic mapping and sentinel node identification with blue dye in patients with vulvar cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2001; **83**: 276-281 [PMID: 11606084]
- 14 **Moore RG,** DePasquale SE, Steinhoff MM, Gajewski W, Steller M, Noto R, Falkenberg S. Sentinel node identification and the ability to detect metastatic tumor to inguinal lymph nodes in squamous cell cancer of the vulva. *Gynecol Oncol* 2003; **89**: 475-479 [PMID: 12798714]
- 15 **Sliutz G,** Reinthaller A, Lantzsch T, Mende T, Sinzinger H, Kainz C, Koelbl H. Lymphatic mapping of sentinel nodes in early vulvar cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2002; **84**: 449-452 [PMID: 11855886]
- 16 **Oonk MH,** van de Nieuwenhof HP, de Hullu JA, van der Zee AG. The role of sentinel node biopsy in gynecological cancer: a review. *Curr Opin Oncol* 2009; **21**: 425-432 [PMID: 19593136 DOI: 10.1097/CCO.0b013e32832f3d53]
- 17 **Covens A,** Vella ET, Kennedy EB, Reade CJ, Jimenez W, Le T. Sentinel lymph node biopsy in vulvar cancer: Systematic review, meta-analysis and guideline recommendations. *Gynecol Oncol* 2015; **137**: 351-361 [PMID: 25703673]
- 18 **Levenback CF,** Ali S, Coleman RL, Gold MA, Fowler JM, Judson PL, Bell MC, De Geest K, Spirtos NM, Potkul RK, Leitao MM, Bakkum-Gamez JN, Rossi EC, Lentz SS, Burke JJ, Van Le L, Trimble CL. Lymphatic mapping and sentinel lymph node biopsy in women with squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva: a gynecologic oncology group study. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: 3786-3791 [PMID: 22753905 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.41.2528]
- 19 **Hampf M,** Hantschmann P, Michels W, Hillemanns P. Validation of the accuracy of the sentinel lymph node procedure in patients with vulvar cancer: results of a multicenter study in Germany. *Gynecol Oncol* 2008; **111**: 282-288 [PMID: 18804850 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2008.08.007]
- 20 **Pappa KI,** Rodolakis A, Christodoulou I, Gazouli M, Markaki S, Antsaklis A, Anagnostou NP. Comparative assessment of lymph node micrometastasis in cervical, endometrial and vulvar cancer: insights on the real time qRT-PCR approach versus immunohistochemistry, employing dual molecular markers. *Biomed Res Int* 2014; **2014**: 187684 [PMID: 24527437 DOI: 10.1155/2014/187684]
- 21 **Moore RG,** Granai CO, Gajewski W, Gordinier M, Steinhoff MM. Pathologic evaluation of inguinal sentinel lymph nodes in vulvar cancer patients: a comparison of immunohistochemical staining versus ultrastaging with hematoxylin and eosin staining. *Gynecol Oncol* 2003; **91**: 378-382 [PMID: 14599869]
- 22 **Van der Zee AG,** Oonk MH, De Hullu JA, Ansink AC, Vergote I, Verheijen RH, Maggioni A, Gaarenstroom KN, Baldwin PJ, Van Dorst EB, Van der Velden J, Hermans RH, van der Putten H, Drouin P, Schneider A, Sluiter WJ. Sentinel node dissection is safe in the treatment of early-stage vulvar cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 884-889 [PMID: 18281661 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.14.0566]
- 23 **Gonzalez Bosquet J,** Magrina JF, Gaffey TA, Hernandez JL, Webb MJ, Cliby WA, Podratz KC. Long-term survival and disease recurrence in patients with primary squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva. *Gynecol Oncol* 2005; **97**: 828-833 [PMID: 15896831]
- 24 **Katz A,** Eifel PJ, Jhingran A, Levenback CF. The role of radiation

- therapy in preventing regional recurrences of invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2003; **57**: 409-418 [PMID: 12957252]
- 25 **Coleman RL**, Ali S, Levenback CF, Gold MA, Fowler JM, Judson PL, Bell MC, De Geest K, Spirtos NM, Potkul RK, Leitao MM, Bakkum-Gamez JN, Rossi EC, Lentz SS, Burke JJ, Van Le L, Trimble CL. Is bilateral lymphadenectomy for midline squamous carcinoma of the vulva always necessary? An analysis from Gynecologic Oncology Group (GOG) 173. *Gynecol Oncol* 2013; **128**: 155-159 [PMID: 23201592 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2012.11.034]
  - 26 **Robison K**, Roque D, McCourt C, Stuckey A, DiSilvestro PA, Sung CJ, Steinhoff M, Granai CO, Moore RG. Long-term follow-up of vulvar cancer patients evaluated with sentinel lymph node biopsy alone. *Gynecol Oncol* 2014; **133**: 416-420 [PMID: 24631445 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2014.03.010]
  - 27 **Oonk MH**, van Os MA, de Bock GH, de Hullu JA, Ansink AC, van der Zee AG. A comparison of quality of life between vulvar cancer patients after sentinel lymph node procedure only and inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy. *Gynecol Oncol* 2009; **113**: 301-305 [PMID: 19297013 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2008.12.006]
  - 28 **Novackova M**, Halaska MJ, Robova H, Mala I, Pluta M, Chmel R, Rob L. A prospective study in the evaluation of quality of life after vulvar cancer surgery. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2015; **25**: 166-173 [PMID: 25415074 DOI: 10.1097/IGC.0000000000000313]
  - 29 **Forner DM**, Dakhlil R, Lampe B. Quality of life and sexual function after surgery in early stage vulvar cancer. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2015; **41**: 40-45 [PMID: 25468750 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2014.10.050]
  - 30 **McCann GA**, Cohn DE, Jewell EL, Havrilesky LJ. Lymphatic mapping and sentinel lymph node dissection compared to complete lymphadenectomy in the management of early-stage vulvar cancer: A cost-utility analysis. *Gynecol Oncol* 2015; **136**: 300-304 [PMID: 25478927 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2014.11.079]
  - 31 **Oonk MH**, van Hemel BM, Hollema H, de Hullu JA, Ansink AC, Vergote I, Verheijen RH, Maggioni A, Gaarenstroom KN, Baldwin PJ, van Dorst EB, van der Velden J, Hermans RH, van der Putten HW, Drouin P, Runnebaum IB, Sluiter WJ, van der Zee AG. Size of sentinel-node metastasis and chances of non-sentinel-node involvement and survival in early stage vulvar cancer: results from GROINSS-V, a multicentre observational study. *Lancet Oncol* 2010; **11**: 646-652 [PMID: 20537946 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(10)70104-2]
  - 32 **Levenback CF**, van der Zee AG, Rob L, Plante M, Covens A, Schneider A, Coleman R, Solima E, Hertel H, Barranger E, Obermair A, Roy M. Sentinel lymph node biopsy in patients with gynecologic cancers Expert panel statement from the International Sentinel Node Society Meeting, February 21, 2008. *Gynecol Oncol* 2009; **114**: 151-156 [PMID: 19457548 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2009.03.035]
  - 33 **Barlin JN**, Zhou Q, St Clair CM, Iasonos A, Soslow RA, Alektiar KM, Hensley ML, Leitao MM, Barakat RR, Abu-Rustum NR. Classification and regression tree (CART) analysis of endometrial carcinoma: Seeing the forest for the trees. *Gynecol Oncol* 2013; **130**: 452-456 [PMID: 23774300 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2013.06.009]
  - 34 **Benedetti Panici P**, Basile S, Maneschi F, Alberto Lissoni A, Signorelli M, Scambia G, Angioli R, Tateo S, Mangili G, Katsaros D, Garozzo G, Campagnutta E, Donadello N, Greggi S, Melpignano M, Raspagliesi F, Ragni N, Cormio G, Grassi R, Franchi M, Giannarelli D, Fossati R, Torri V, Amoroso M, Crocè C, Mangioni C. Systematic pelvic lymphadenectomy vs. no lymphadenectomy in early-stage endometrial carcinoma: randomized clinical trial. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2008; **100**: 1707-1716 [PMID: 19033573 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djn397]
  - 35 **Boronow RC**, Morrow CP, Creasman WT, Disaia PJ, Silverberg SG, Miller A, Blessing JA. Surgical staging in endometrial cancer: clinical-pathologic findings of a prospective study. *Obstet Gynecol* 1984; **63**: 825-832 [PMID: 6728365]
  - 36 **Creasman WT**, Morrow CP, Bundy BN, Homesley HD, Graham JE, Heller PB. Surgical pathologic spread patterns of endometrial cancer. A Gynecologic Oncology Group Study. *Cancer* 1987; **60**: 2035-2041 [PMID: 3652025]
  - 37 **Barakat RR**, Lev G, Hummer AJ, Sonoda Y, Chi DS, Alektiar KM, Abu-Rustum NR. Twelve-year experience in the management of endometrial cancer: a change in surgical and postoperative radiation approaches. *Gynecol Oncol* 2007; **105**: 150-156 [PMID: 17197012]
  - 38 **Barlin JN**, Khoury-Collado F, Kim CH, Leitao MM, Chi DS, Sonoda Y, Alektiar K, DeLair DF, Barakat RR, Abu-Rustum NR. The importance of applying a sentinel lymph node mapping algorithm in endometrial cancer staging: beyond removal of blue nodes. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **125**: 531-535 [PMID: 22366409 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2012.02.021]
  - 39 **Kang S**, Yoo HJ, Hwang JH, Lim MC, Seo SS, Park SY. Sentinel lymph node biopsy in endometrial cancer: meta-analysis of 26 studies. *Gynecol Oncol* 2011; **123**: 522-527 [PMID: 21945553 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.08.034]
  - 40 **Khouri-Collado F**, Murray MP, Hensley ML, Sonoda Y, Alektiar KM, Levine DA, Leitao MM, Chi DS, Barakat RR, Abu-Rustum NR. Sentinel lymph node mapping for endometrial cancer improves the detection of metastatic disease to regional lymph nodes. *Gynecol Oncol* 2011; **122**: 251-254 [PMID: 21570109 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.04.030]
  - 41 **Ballester M**, Dubernard G, Lécure F, Heitz D, Mathevet P, Marret H, Querleu D, Golfier F, Leblanc E, Rouzier R, Daraï E. Detection rate and diagnostic accuracy of sentinel-node biopsy in early stage endometrial cancer: a prospective multicentre study (SENTI-ENDO). *Lancet Oncol* 2011; **12**: 469-476 [PMID: 21489874 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(11)70070-5]
  - 42 **Abu-Rustum NR**. Sentinel lymph node mapping for endometrial cancer: a modern approach to surgical staging. *J Natl Compr Canc Netw* 2014; **12**: 288-297 [PMID: 24586087]
  - 43 **How J**, Gotlieb WH, Press JZ, Abitbol J, Pelmus M, Ferenczy A, Probst S, Gotlieb R, Brin S, Lau S. Comparing indocyanine green, technetium, and blue dye for sentinel lymph node mapping in endometrial cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2015; **137**: 436-442 [PMID: 25870917 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2015.04.004]
  - 44 **Rossi EC**, Ivanova A, Boggess JF. Robotically assisted fluorescence-guided lymph node mapping with ICG for gynecologic malignancies: a feasibility study. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **124**: 78-82 [PMID: 21996262 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.09.025]
  - 45 **Sinno AK**, Fader AN, Roche KL, Giuntoli RL, Tanner EJ. A comparison of colorimetric versus fluorometric sentinel lymph node mapping during robotic surgery for endometrial cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2014; **134**: 281-286 [PMID: 24882555 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2014.05.022]
  - 46 **Jewell EL**, Huang JJ, Abu-Rustum NR, Gardner GJ, Brown CL, Sonoda Y, Barakat RR, Levine DA, Leitao MM. Detection of sentinel lymph nodes in minimally invasive surgery using indocyanine green and near-infrared fluorescence imaging for uterine and cervical malignancies. *Gynecol Oncol* 2014; **133**: 274-277 [PMID: 24582865 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2014.02.028]
  - 47 **Todo Y**, Kato H, Kaneuchi M, Watari H, Takeda M, Sakuragi N. Survival effect of para-aortic lymphadenectomy in endometrial cancer (SEPAL study): a retrospective cohort analysis. *Lancet* 2010; **375**: 1165-1172 [PMID: 20188410 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(09)62002-X]
  - 48 **Kim CH**, Khoury-Collado F, Barber EL, Soslow RA, Makker V, Leitao MM, Sonoda Y, Alektiar KM, Barakat RR, Abu-Rustum NR. Sentinel lymph node mapping with pathologic ultrastaging: a valuable tool for assessing nodal metastasis in low-grade endometrial cancer with superficial myoinvasion. *Gynecol Oncol* 2013; **131**: 714-719 [PMID: 24099838 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2013.09.027]
  - 49 **Erkanli S**, Bolat F, Seydaoglu G. Detection and importance of micrometastases in histologically negative lymph nodes in endometrial carcinoma. *Eur J Gynaecol Oncol* 2011; **32**: 619-625 [PMID: 22335022]
  - 50 **Yabushita H**, Shimazu M, Yamada H, Sawaguchi K, Noguchi M, Nakanishi M, Kawai M. Occult lymph node metastases detected by cytokeratin immunohistochemistry predict recurrence in node-negative endometrial cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2001; **80**: 139-144 [PMID: 11161851]

- 51 **Biewenga P**, van der Velden J, Mol BW, Stalpers LJ, Schilthuis MS, van der Steeg JW, Burger MP, Buist MR. Prognostic model for survival in patients with early stage cervical cancer. *Cancer* 2011; **117**: 768-776 [PMID: 20922801 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.25658]
- 52 **Marin F**, Pleşca M, Bordea CI, Voinea SC, Burlănescu I, Ichim E, Jianu CG, Nicolăescu RR, Teodosie MP, Maher K, Blidaru A. Postoperative surgical complications of lymphadenohysterocolpectomy. *J Med Life* 2014; **7**: 60-66 [PMID: 24653760]
- 53 **Cibula D**, Abu-Rustum NR, Dusek L, Zikán M, Zaal A, Sevcik L, Kenter GG, Querleu D, Jach R, Bats AS, Dyduch G, Graf P, Klat J, Lacheta J, Meijer CJ, Mery E, Verheijen R, Zweemer RP. Prognostic significance of low volume sentinel lymph node disease in early-stage cervical cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **124**: 496-501 [PMID: 22120175 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.11.037]
- 54 **Kadkhodayan S**, Hasanzadeh M, Treglia G, Azad A, Yousefi Z, Zarifmahmoudi L, Sadeghi R. Sentinel node biopsy for lymph nodal staging of uterine cervix cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis of the pertinent literature. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2015; **41**: 1-20 [PMID: 25454828 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2014.09.010]
- 55 **Kushner DM**, Connor JP, Wilson MA, Hafez GR, Chappell RJ, Stewart SL, Hartenbach EM. Laparoscopic sentinel lymph node mapping for cervix cancer—a detailed evaluation and time analysis. *Gynecol Oncol* 2007; **106**: 507-512 [PMID: 17560635]
- 56 **Kraft O**, Sevcik L, Klát J, Koliba P, Curik R, Kríozvá H. Detection of sentinel lymph nodes in cervical cancer. A comparison of two protocols. *Nucl Med Rev Cent East Eur* 2006; **9**: 65-68 [PMID: 16791808]
- 57 **Cormier B**, Diaz JP, Shih K, Sampson RM, Sonoda Y, Park KJ, Alektiar K, Chi DS, Barakat RR, Abu-Rustum NR. Establishing a sentinel lymph node mapping algorithm for the treatment of early cervical cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2011; **122**: 275-280 [PMID: 21570713 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.04.023]
- 58 **Shah M**, Lewin SN, Deutsch I, Burke WM, Sun X, Herzog TJ, Wright JD. Therapeutic role of lymphadenectomy for cervical cancer. *Cancer* 2011; **117**: 310-317 [PMID: 20862747 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.25408]

**P- Reviewer:** Forner DM, Zambo K    **S- Editor:** Ji FF    **L- Editor:** A  
**E- Editor:** Wu HL





## Apoptosis and endometrial receptivity: Relationship with *in vitro* fertilization treatment outcome

Yulia S Antsiferova, Natalya Y Sotnikova

Yulia S Antsiferova, Natalya Y Sotnikova, Laboratory of Clinical Immunology, Federal State Research Institute of Maternity and Childhood named V.N.Gorodkov, Ivanovo 153009, Russia

**Author contributions:** Antsiferova YS and Sotnikova NY contributed to this paper.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** All authors have no conflict of interest related to the manuscript.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Yulia S Antsiferova, BD, PhD, Laboratory of Clinical Immunology, Federal State Research Institute of Maternity and Childhood named V.N.Gorodkov, Myakisheva St, 5-24, Ivanovo 153009, Russia. [niimid.immune@mail.ru](mailto:niimid.immune@mail.ru)  
 Telephone: +7-905-1558676  
 Fax: +7-493-2336256

Received: June 27, 2015

Peer-review started: July 7, 2015

First decision: August 26, 2015

Revised: November 9, 2015

Accepted: December 1, 2015

Article in press: December 2, 2015

Published online: February 10, 2016

### Abstract

Apoptosis is an important process in the reconstruction of endometrium within the menstrual cycle. The balance between cell proliferation and apoptosis regulates the periodic repair and shedding of endometrial cells and leads to the menstruation or prepare the mucosal layer

of endometrium for the implantation of the embryo. Many factors with pro- and antiapoptotic action, such as B cell lymphoma/leukemia-2 and inhibitors apoptosis proteins families, caspases, tumor necrosis factor receptors, phosphatase and tensin homolog, proliferator-activated receptor gamma, microRNAs and others are differently expressed in the endometrial tissue at phases of menstrual cycle. Receptivity of the endometrium at the period of "window of implantation" is associated with the significant increase of apoptosis in endometrium to allow the embryo to be successfully implanted. The impairment of apoptosis regulation in the endometrium at this period often is observed in infertile women with endometriosis, tubal factor, polycystic ovary syndrome, *etc.* In many cases the impairment of apoptosis regulation in the endometrium is the main cause of *in vitro* fertilization (IVF) treatment failure in these patients. As of today, the exact mechanisms and factors mediating the apoptotic process in normal endometrium and in infertile women are not fully understood. Herein, the literature data concerning the endometrial apoptosis regulation in general, and in light of the influence of apoptosis upon IVF treatment outcome are reviewed. The possibility to use some parameters of endometrial apoptosis for prediction of the successful pregnancy achievement in women participating in IVF protocols also is discussed.

**Key words:** Apoptosis; Endometrium; Receptivity; *In vitro* fertilization

© The Author(s) 2016. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Endometrial receptivity depends on many factors and apoptosis regulation as well. Compromised fertility and *in vitro* fertilization (IVF) failure is often associated with the impairment of endometrial apoptosis during "window of implantation". Understanding of the molecule mechanisms involved in apoptosis regulation in the infertile women might have a great value and let us to use them as predictors of endometrial dysfunctions

to improve implantation rate in IVF program.

Antsiferova YS, Sotnikova NY. Apoptosis and endometrial receptivity: Relationship with *in vitro* fertilization treatment outcome. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 87-96 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/87.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.87>

## INTRODUCTION

In the last decades *in vitro* fertilization (IVF) is widely used for the treatment of infertility in couples with unexplained subfertility, male subfertility, endometriosis or tubal pathology<sup>[1]</sup>. The impact of different clinical parameters (infertility etiology, female age, time of infertility, thickness of the endometrial tissue, the quantity of follicles and amount of the progesterone on the day of hCG injection, etc.) on the outcome of the IVF treatment was proved<sup>[1-4]</sup>. Analysis of the data received from different clinical centers shows that maximum achievable pregnancy rate in IVF doesn't exceed 50% per embryo transfer cycle and the average clinical pregnancy rate is between 27% and 40%<sup>[5-8]</sup>. Despite some evident technical improvement of IVF protocol, it is clear now that the percentage of the pregnancy onset cannot be made higher due to the manipulation with the embryo transfer procedure and conditions of embryo cultivation or by optimal choice of blastocysts<sup>[9]</sup>. Many studies have demonstrated that the function and receptivity endometrium must be considered as the main limiting factors in the pregnancy onset after IVF, because for accomplishing an implantation, pregnancy and subsequent live child birth endometrium should be ready to accept the embryo<sup>[9-11]</sup>. One can see now that overcoming the difficulties in improvements to ART will require a deeper insight in the contact between the endometrium and embryo<sup>[12]</sup>.

It is well known that the success of the embryo implantation depends on some morphologic and biochemical modifications of the human endometrium during menstrual cycle<sup>[9]</sup>. These processes are controlled by a plethora of different factors, including ovarian steroids and its receptors, cytokines, growth factors, adhesion molecules, transcriptional factors and many others<sup>[13]</sup>. Recent investigations have demonstrated an importance of apoptosis in the processes of endometrial tissue reconstruction during menstrual cycle<sup>[10]</sup>. The balance between cell proliferation and apoptosis regulates the periodic repair and shedding of endometrial cells and leads to the menstruation or prepare the mucosal layer of endometrium for the implantation of the embryo<sup>[14]</sup>.

According to classical definition, given by Kerr *et al.*<sup>[15]</sup> in 1972, "apoptosis, or programmed cell death, is characterized by the fragmentation and enfolding of cell compartments into membrane-covered apoptotic bodies that are removed without any immune response

or damage of the surrounding cells". Caspases, or intracellular cysteine proteases, are the main enzymes in the process of apoptosis cascades execution<sup>[16]</sup>. At the beginning of the apoptotic pathway the initiator caspases, like caspase-8 and -9 are activated, and the later morphological changes of the apoptotic cell are mediated by the action of effector caspases, like caspase-3<sup>[16]</sup>. Now two apoptotic signaling pathways, the extrinsic and intrinsic, have been established. The extrinsic apoptotic cascade is activated by ligation of specific death receptors, expressed on the cell-surface, *i.e.*, Fas, tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor or TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand (TRAIL) receptor<sup>[17]</sup>. After binding with specific ligands these death receptors are oligomerized, involving Fas-associated death domain (FADD) and procaspase-8 with subsequent appearance of the death-inducing signaling complex, activation of caspase-8 and development of intracellular apoptotic signaling cascades. This results in morphological and biochemical changes in the cell, characteristic for apoptosis<sup>[18]</sup>. The intrinsic mechanism of apoptosis is activated by a large spectrum of intracellular death signals, such as damage of DNA, stress, and diminishing of the growth factors value<sup>[19]</sup>. In the result of these apoptotic signals, the mitochondrial membrane became permeabilized and a lot of pro-apoptotic proteins that are typically located in the intermembrane space, *i.e.*, cytochrome c, release into the cytoplasm to trigger the caspase-9 activation<sup>[20]</sup>. Subsequently both extrinsic and intrinsic apoptosis pathways result in the activation of the caspase-3. They are regulated by numerous molecules with pro- and anti-apoptotic action, among them the best known factors which are belonged to the B cell lymphoma/leukemia-2 (Bcl-2) and inhibitors apoptosis proteins (IAP) families.

The Bcl-2 family comprises 25 members with pro- and anti-apoptotic effects. Bcl-2-family members that have four Bcl-2 homology (BH) domains (Bcl-2, MCL-1, A1/Bfl-1, Bcl-B/Bcl2L10, and BCL-xL) possess the anti-apoptotic action due to inhibition of their pro-apoptotic counterparts *via* protein-protein interactions<sup>[21,22]</sup>. The pro-apoptotic family members are divided into two subgroups: those having multiple BH domains (effector proteins), such as Bcl-2-associated X protein (BAX), BAK, and BOK (Bcl-2 related ovarian killer), and containing only the BH3 domain (BID, BIM, PUMA, NOXA, BIK, BAD, HRK, and BMF)<sup>[21,22]</sup>. The members of IAPs family prevent the activation of caspases-3, -7 and -9 and thereby inhibit apoptosis<sup>[23]</sup>. Today 8 human IAP family members are identified and divided into 3 classes (1, 2 and 3) according to the presence or absence of a RING or caspase activation recruitment domain and the homology of their baculovirus IAP repeat domains<sup>[23]</sup>. The best known member of class 1 IAP family is X-linked IAP (XIAP), which is also known as hILP, MIHA and BIC4. It inhibits caspases-3, -7 and -9, but it does not influence on caspase-8<sup>[23]</sup>. The class 2 IAP family member NAIP is expressed in adult liver, placenta and central nervous system and inhibits caspases-3 and -7,

but not caspases-1, -4, -5, or -8. Class 3 IAP members such as survivin is mostly expressed in the fetal tissues, but not in most normal adult tissues<sup>[23]</sup>. Recently it was demonstrated that survivin is also expressed in the endometrium of healthy women<sup>[24]</sup>. In addition to these factors there are many others proteins and enzymes which are directly or indirectly involved in the apoptosis of different types of endometrial cells during menstrual cycle. Study of the distribution and expression of these apoptosis regulators can give us new data concerning endometrium functioning in normal and pathological conditions. And understanding of the molecule mechanisms involved in apoptosis regulation in the infertile women might have a great value and let us to use them as predictors of endometrial dysfunctions to improve implantation rate in IVF program.

## LITERATURE RESEARCH

In this study we review the data of the most important factors regulating apoptosis in normal endometrium at proliferative and secretory phase of cycle and in endometrium of women with compromised infertility, who participate in IVF protocols. The literature data concerning the role of apoptosis in the establishment of endometrial receptivity during the "window of implantation" and association of the parameters of endometrial apoptosis with the IVF treatment outcome also has been described. To this purpose we conducted a search at <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/electronic> database using the following keywords: (1) "endometrium and apoptosis"; (2) "endometrial receptivity"; (3) "endometrium and IVF"; (4) "implantation window"; (5) "endometrium and IVF success"; and (6) "endometrium, infertility, apoptosis". A literature review of English-language papers published by May 2015 has been performed. The selection of articles was based on their titles and abstracts with subsequent analysis the texts of the related articles.

## APOPTOSIS IN THE NORMAL ENDOMETRIUM

Endometrium is a mucosal inner layer of the myometrium<sup>[25]</sup>. Steroid hormones (estrogens, progesterone, androgens and glucocorticoids) tightly regulate endometrium function and morphological changes during menstrual cycle<sup>[25,26]</sup>. Noyes, Hertig and Rock had described these morphological changes in 1950<sup>[26]</sup>. These changes are characterized by the alteration of the cellular morphology and expression of some molecules on the cell membrane as well as a synthesis and production of different biologically active factors<sup>[26]</sup>. The dominant hormone within proliferative phase of the menstrual cycle is estrogen, the secretory phase is determined by high production of the progesterone<sup>[9]</sup>. There are several types of cells in the endometrial tissue, including luminal and glandular epithelial cells,

stromal fibroblastic cells, immune cells and blood vessels<sup>[25]</sup>. The number, activity, structure and function of the endometrial tissue cells are significantly changed during the proliferative and secretory phases of menstrual cycle. It was established that endometrial cell proliferation and cell death are directly regulated by numerous factors, including cytokines, growth factors, proteolytic enzymes, transcriptional factors and different apoptosis-related factors as well<sup>[9,27,28]</sup>.

The proliferative phase is associated with follicular growth and increased estrogen secretion, leading to endometrial reconstruction<sup>[29]</sup>. This phase of menstrual cycle is accompanied by the active cells proliferation and angiogenesis to provide the nutrition of the developing new endometrium<sup>[9]</sup>. All tissue components (glands, stromal and endothelial cells) show proliferation, with DNA nuclear and RNA cytoplasmic syntheses, which peak on days 8-10 of the cycle, reflecting maximum concentration of estrogen receptors in the endometrium<sup>[29]</sup>. It was demonstrated that insulin-like growth factors (IGF), vascular endothelial growth factor, epidermal growth factor (EGF) system, transforming growth factor (TGF)- $\alpha$  and amphiregulin are highly expressed in endometrium during proliferative phase<sup>[9,30,31]</sup>. The action of all these factors is directed towards the tissue proliferation, and very little apoptosis was detected in the endometrium during this period<sup>[32]</sup>. It was supposed that the high level of Bcl-2 expression by the glandular epithelial cells leads to the inhibition of apoptosis in the endometrial tissue during proliferative phase of cycle<sup>[32-34]</sup>. Bcl-2 as apoptosis inhibitor reduces oxygen free radicals, blocks the intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  influx into cell organelles, decreases p53-dependent apoptosis, and antagonizes c-Myc<sup>[35-37]</sup>. High level of Bcl-2 expression likely mediates the reduction of mitochondrial-induced apoptosis of the endometrial epithelial cells and leads to proliferation of endometrial cells, thereby making the endometrial tissue thicker<sup>[33,34]</sup>. Estrogen increases the cellular proliferation during the proliferative phase of menstrual cycle due to inhibition of the tumor suppressor gene phosphatase and tensin homolog (*PTEN*)<sup>[9]</sup>. This gene increases the apoptosis of endometrial cells by down-regulating the Akt-depending signal pathway<sup>[38]</sup>.

Progesterone plays the main role in the secretory endometrial transformation during the second half of menstrual cycle, suppressing proliferation and inducing cell differentiation<sup>[39]</sup>. After ovulation, the granulosa cells undergo luteinization and form part of the corpus luteum, which secretes progesterone<sup>[40]</sup>. The influence of the progesterone on epithelial cell proliferation is proved by the observation that progesterone completely inhibits estrogen-induced DNA synthesis and suppresses cell proliferation<sup>[41]</sup>. Progesterone also antagonizes the stimulatory action of many oncogenes that are likely to mediate estrogen-induced growth<sup>[29]</sup>. Progesterone inhibits the estrogen regulation of cyclin D1 nuclear translocation resulting in the hypophosphorylation of Rb and p107 proteins and a block in G1-S phase development<sup>[42]</sup>. The inhibitory action

of progesterone on Akt-depended signal pathway with subsequent suppression of cells proliferation was also demonstrated<sup>[43]</sup>.

The apoptosis in the normal secretory endometrium is proposed to promote elimination of the senescent or dysfunctional cells and to provide the tissue repair at each menstrual cycle<sup>[44]</sup>. The abundance of the apoptotic cells is maximal in the glandular epithelium and much less in the stroma<sup>[44]</sup>. It was demonstrated that different apoptosis-related factors are involved in the regulation of secretory endometrial cell transformation. It was found that after entering the secretory phase, Bcl-2 expression in endometrium is declined<sup>[32,33]</sup>. At the same time the increase of the proapoptotic factor BAX expression was noted in the endometrium at this phase of cycle<sup>[33]</sup>. The function of BAX is opposite to that of Bcl-2. It can accelerate the apoptosis and the ratio of Bcl-2: BAX defines if a cell lives or dies<sup>[33]</sup>. The BAX proteins form BAX/BAX homodimers, which lead to cytochrome C release and caspases activation with subsequent induction of the endometrial epithelial cells apoptosis<sup>[45,46]</sup>. It was also shown that endometrial stromal cells apoptosis in the secretory phase of cycle was increased due to caspase activity, based on the up-regulation of specific receptors Fas and TRAIL-R2<sup>[47]</sup>. Different expression of DNA fragmentation factor of 45 kDa (DFF45) was found in endometrium during the menstrual cycle. In normal endometrium, a lowest DFF45 expression was detected in the late proliferative phase secretory endometrium and maximal endometrial tissue staining for DFF45 was observed in an early secretory phase of the menstrual cycle<sup>[48-50]</sup>. Much more DFF45-positive cells were found in the endometrial glands in comparison to stroma, irrespective of menstrual cycle phase<sup>[48,49]</sup>. It is known that the DNA damage during apoptosis is a consequence of activation of the DFF40/DFF45 complex. DFF40 (DNA fragmentation factor of 40 kDa) causes the direct DNA fragmentation while DFF45 acts as a DFF40 inhibitor and as its chaperone<sup>[49]</sup>. Therefore, the DFF45 is required for adequate DFF40 synthesis and the high level of DFF45 expression in the secretory endometrium can reflect the high intensity of endometrial cells apoptosis. Recently it was shown that the immunoreactivity of the peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma (PPAR $\gamma$ ) protein was more pronounced in secretory-phase endometrium than in that the proliferative endometrium<sup>[51]</sup>. PPAR $\gamma$  agonists can trigger terminal differentiation, suppress cell proliferation, increase apoptosis, and inhibit inflammation in many cancer models, so the high level of PPAR $\gamma$  expression can mediate the induction of apoptosis in the secretory endometrial tissue. Immunoelectron microscopic study of Fas and FasL molecules expression demonstrated their different expression in human endometrial glandular cells during the menstrual cycle<sup>[52]</sup>. Fas and FasL were found mostly on the Golgi apparatus during the late proliferative phase and on apical membranes and Golgi-transporting vesicles during the late secretory phase. Thus, it was shown that apoptosis

**Table 1 Regulation of apoptosis in normal endometrium during menstrual cycle**

Proliferative phase		Secretory phase	
Increased expression	Inhibited expression	Increased expression	Inhibited expression
Bcl-2 Fas, FasL	p53 PTEN PPAR $\gamma$ DFF45	BAX Fas, FasL TRAIL-R PTEN Caspase-3 PPAR $\gamma$ DFF 45	Bcl-2

Bcl-2: B cell lymphoma/leukemia-2; PTEN: Phosphatase and tensin homolog; PPAR $\gamma$ : Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma; TRAIL: TNF-related apoptosis-inducing ligand; DFF45: DNA fragmentation factor of 45 kDa.

of human endometrial glandular cells is suppressed by Bcl-2 expression on the proliferative phase and induced by the Fas/FasL system in an autocrine or paracrine way on the secretory phase<sup>[34]</sup>.

Thus, literature data clearly demonstrate the tight association of endometrial apoptosis intensity with the hormonally-dependent changes of endometrial tissue morphology. The summarized data, concerning the expression of pro- and anti-apoptotic factors during different phases of the menstrual cycle, is presented in the Table 1.

## APOPTOSIS AND ENDOMETRIAL RECEPTIVITY

It is well known, that a short period of time during the mid- to late-secretory phase exhibits a highest readiness of endometrium for embryo implantation and this period is called as the "window of implantation"<sup>[9]</sup>. This period is extremely important for the preparation of endometrium to the acceptance of the implanted embryo. In humans the endometrium becomes susceptible to blastocyst implantation at 6-8 d after ovulation and remains susceptible for approximately 4 d (cycle days 20-24)<sup>[25]</sup>. Last years there have appeared a number of studies aimed at the identification of potential markers of receptivity<sup>[53]</sup>. These studies were devoted to the investigation of the molecular changes and apoptosis regulation that takes place in the endometrium during the "window of implantation". It was shown that apoptosis in the human endometrium plays an essential role for endometrial receptivity and early implantation. An imbalance of pro- and anti-apoptotic events in the secretory endometrium seems to be involved in implantation disorders and consecutive pregnancy complications<sup>[47]</sup>.

It was established that at the beginning of the implantation window the changes of apoptosis in endometrium become most intensive. Increase of apoptosis activity may have significance for the decidualization processes establishment in endometrium



during the late secretory phase. It was shown that decidualization includes differentiation and apoptosis of epithelial as well as stromal cell compartments<sup>[53]</sup>. The morphological changes that characterize decidualization take place in the endometrium without respect to conception<sup>[9]</sup>. All the cells in the endometrium are influenced by these changes. Epithelial cells are undergoing glandular secretory transformation. Stromal cells decidualization is associated with production and secretion of numerous decidual proteins such as prolactin, IGF binding protein-1 (IGBP-1) and tissue factor<sup>[54,55]</sup>. Endometrium is infiltrated by a large amount of different types of immune cells, including NK, T-lymphocytes, and macrophages<sup>[9]</sup>. On the secretory phase, vascular remodeling takes place, with the main angiogenic mechanisms leading to coiling and intussusceptions of the spiral arteries<sup>[56]</sup>. All these changes prepare endometrium for the successful implantation of the blastocyst.

Successful implantation supposedly is associated with the apposition and attachment of the embryo to the endometrial epithelial cells and adequate invasion in the endometrial stroma<sup>[9]</sup>. It was established that several mechanisms facilitate the embryo adhesion. Pinopodes change the concentration of endometrial fluids at the implantation site<sup>[9]</sup>. Mucins, in particular MUC1, take part in the selection of implantation site, because MUC1 barrier on the luminal epithelium prevents the interactions between the embryo and the endometrium, but the blastocyst itself cleaves MUC1 and defines the most appropriate site of implantation<sup>[57]</sup>. Integrins, especially  $\alpha_v\beta_3$ , and their receptor osteopontin are highly expressed in the endometrium at the period of the window of implantation<sup>[56]</sup>. The important role of leukaemia-inhibitory factor (LIF), matrix metalloproteinase's family, TGF- $\beta$ , colony stimulating factor-1, transcription factor home box gene *HOXA10*, cytokines IL-1, IL-11, IL-15 in implantation also has been clearly demonstrated<sup>[9,58,59]</sup>. But during this step of embryo attachment endometrial stroma is not susceptible to the apoptotic events<sup>[9]</sup>.

Apoptosis evidently takes part in the regulation of the process of blastocyst invasion. It was shown that on the initial steps of implantation the uterine epithelium of the implantation chamber undergoes apoptosis by the influence of the interacting blastocyst in mouse model<sup>[60]</sup>. With progressing of implantation, the regression of decidual cells results in a restricted and coordinated invasion of trophoblast cells into the maternal compartment due to the balanced expression of BAX, Bcl-2 and caspase-9 proteins in the decidual compartment and the high level of caspase-3 synthesis in the apoptotic uterine epithelium<sup>[60]</sup>. It was also shown that apoptosis-inducing factor might play an important role during mouse embryo implantation<sup>[61]</sup>. Tumor suppressor p53 is important for embryonic implantation because of transcriptional up-regulation of uterine LIF. It was reported, that simultaneous activation of p53 and estrogen receptor took place in the endometrial

tissues during implantation to coordinately regulate LIF production<sup>[62]</sup>.

So, apoptosis is crucial for embryo implantation, rescuing the endometrium from apoptosis in the apposition phase and then providing the successful invasion of blastocyst by locally induced cells death in the site of the embryo and endometrial surface contact. But it is obvious that many apoptosis-regulating factors directly involved in the interaction between the embryo and endometrium have not yet been studied both in healthy women and in the infertile patients.

## APOPTOSIS IN THE ENDOMETRIUM OF INFERTILE WOMEN

It is well established that in women with certain gynecologic diseases, including endometriosis, tubal disease, and polycystic ovary syndrome (PCOS), endometrial receptivity is compromised, leading to infertility and pregnancy loss<sup>[58]</sup>. Supposedly, regulation of apoptosis in the endometrium of infertile women also is impaired. It was reported that the endometrial Wilms tumor suppressor gene (*WT1*) in fertile women is highly expressed during the period of the window of implantation, but the endometrial *WT1* expression was decreased in patients with PCOS during the secretory phase of the cycle<sup>[63]</sup>. The group of women with PCOS also was characterized by the higher stromal expression of Bcl-2 and p27, lower expression of EGF receptor in comparison with the fertile women. It was found, that apoptosis level was significantly reduced in the endometrial samples of women with PCOS<sup>[63]</sup>. These changes can hinder the success of decidualization and endometrial receptivity in infertile patients with PCOS<sup>[63]</sup>. In another work the changes in the apoptosis-related genes expression in the endometrium during the window of implantation were demonstrated in PCOS patients<sup>[64]</sup>. Five apoptosis-associated genes (including *Bcl-2*) were up regulated and four (including *FADD*) were downregulated. Authors concluded that the diminishing of the cell apoptosis at the period of the window of implantation in PCOS patients can result in the reduced endometrial receptivity<sup>[64]</sup>.

Another gynecological pathology - chronic endometritis also can compromise human fertility and lead to abnormal uterine bleeding, pain, and reproductive failures. In women with chronic endometritis the expressions of Bcl-2 and BAX in endometrium were up-regulated, while caspase-8 was down-regulated<sup>[65]</sup>. Possibly the altered expression of these genes in the endometrium can be responsible for the impaired endometrial receptivity and the presence of endometrial hyperplastic lesions in women affected by chronic endometritis<sup>[65]</sup>.

The spontaneous apoptosis, which is regulated by Bcl-2, BAX, p53, during the window of implantation in women with unexplained infertility was studied. In another work<sup>[66]</sup>. It was found, that reduced amount

of apoptotic cells, weak immunoreactivity of p53 and strong immunoreactivity of Bcl-2 took place in the endometrium of infertile women compared with the fertile women. Authors suggest that this finding might be an important factor of defective implantation compromising fertility in this group of patients<sup>[66]</sup>.

The changed endometrial microRNAs (miRNAs) expression profile was shown during the window of implantation for women with repeated implantation failure (RIF)<sup>[67]</sup>. In recent years miRNAs are intensively studied. Now miRNAs are considered as key posttranscriptional regulators. As members of small non-coding RNA family, miRNAs are transcribed from specific genes spread over multiple locations in all human chromosomes except the Y chromosome. The mature miRNAs incorporate into the RNA induced silencing complex and, through complementary binding to the 3' UTR of specific target genes, post-transcriptionally regulate their expression<sup>[68]</sup>. It was identified 13 miRNAs, differentially expressed in endometrial samples of patients with RIF. Among these genes 10 miRNAs were more expressed (including miR 145, 23b and 99a) and 3 were less expressed<sup>[12]</sup>. These miRNAs participate in the regulation of p53 signaling and cell cycle pathways. It was also shown that during window of implantation in the natural menstrual cycle, endometrial miRNA 22 was considerably higher in patients with RIF in comparison with control group<sup>[12]</sup>. Simultaneously, experiments using animal models demonstrated that miRNA 22 up-regulation contributed to the inhibition of the embryo implantation in mice<sup>[69]</sup>. Thus, these promising results allow to conclude, that the RIF-associated miRNAs could be used as new candidates for diagnosis and treatment of embryo implantation failures<sup>[12]</sup>.

Significant changes of endometrial apoptosis were noted in women with endometriosis. Now it is widely accepted that pathogenesis of endometriosis is directly connected with the resistance of eutopic endometrial cells to apoptosis-induced signals which enable endometrial cells to escape immunosurveillance in the peritoneal cavity and to be implanted and growing in ectopic location<sup>[28,32,70]</sup>. Numerous literature data support this hypothesis. About 20 years ago the high level of Bcl-2 expression was for the first time demonstrated in the endometrial stroma of women with endometriosis and later these data was confirmed by different groups<sup>[28,32,70,71]</sup>. It was also shown that increased expression of anti-apoptotic factors and decreased expression of pro-apoptotic factors took place in the eutopic endometrium from women with endometriosis compared with endometrium from healthy women<sup>[72]</sup>. Both mRNA and protein amounts of several members of IAP family with anti-apoptotic action (c-IAP1, c-IAP2, XIAP and Survivin) were more expressed in women with endometriosis then in healthy donors<sup>[73]</sup>. In the endometrium of women with ovarian endometriosis the lower level of DFF45 expression was observed then

that in both normal eutopic proliferatory and secretory endometrium. These results also directly evidence in favor of reduced apoptosis in the endometrium of patients with endometriosis<sup>[48]</sup>. Our research group also studied the expression of some factors with pro- and anti-apoptotic action in the endometrium of infertile women with endometriosis. We have found that in the endometrium of women with endometriosis during "window of implantation" the level of XIAP mRNA expression was significantly higher than that in the endometrium of healthy women<sup>[74]</sup>. Evidently taking together all these data about the impairment of endometrial apoptosis can explain the severe deficiency of endometrial receptivity which was noted for patients with endometriosis<sup>[28,32]</sup>.

We have studied the character of apoptosis in the endometrium of women with tubal factor infertility, because these patients represent the most numerous clinical group of women participating in IVF protocols, so the estimation of their endometrial receptivity is of grate clinical value for improvement of IVF success. We have studied 73 women with tubal factor infertility, which planned to participate in IVF program. In women with tubal factor of infertility the increased level of the expression of pro-apoptotic factor PTEN mRNA with simultaneously elevated expression of mRNAs of anti-apoptotic factors XIAP and HSP27 were noted comparing to that in healthy women<sup>[74]</sup>. It is well known that XIAP is one of the important inhibitors of apoptosis, which is able to bind with caspase-9, -2 and -7 and inactivate their activity<sup>[75]</sup>. The XIAP expression is strongly elevated in patients with different types of tumors and the high level of XIAP production is associated with the poor prognosis<sup>[75]</sup>. The elevated expression of HSP27 also effectively protects cells from apoptosis<sup>[76]</sup>. It was found that HSP27 interacts and inhibits components of both stress- and receptor-induced apoptotic pathways<sup>[76]</sup>. It was shown that HSP27 could prevent activation of caspases by direct sequestering cytochrome c released from mitochondria into cytosol<sup>[76]</sup>. As we have mentioned above, normally during the window of implantation the increase of apoptosis in endometrial tissue is noted, so the high level of the production of anti-apoptotic factors might be estimated as negative factor which can reduce the receptivity of endometrium of women with tubal factor infertility. But it must be noted that the synthesis of PTEN was considerably increased in endometrium of women with tubal factor infertility. The tumor suppressor PTEN is also known as mutated gene in multiple advanced cancer 1, was discovered independently by two groups in 1997<sup>[38]</sup>. Somatic mutations of PTEN were identified as a prevalent event in different type of tumors, including tumors of the endometrium, brain, skin and prostate<sup>[38]</sup>. PTEN is a non-redundant, evolutionarily conserved dual-specific phosphatase. PTEN is capable to remove phosphates from protein and lipid substrates<sup>[77]</sup>. The primary target

**Table 2** Expression of apoptosis-related genes in the endometrium of women with fertility problems during window of implantation

Clinical group	Studied gene	Character of expression	Ref.
Chronic endometritis	Bcl-2	Up-regulated	Yan <i>et al</i> <sup>[64]</sup>
	BAX	Up-regulated	
	Caspase-8	Down-regulated	
Unexplained infertility	Bcl-2	Strong immunoreactivity	Vatansever <i>et al</i> <sup>[66]</sup>
	p53	Weak immunoreactivity	
RIF	miR 145, 23b,99a (involved in p53 signaling)	Over expressed	Revel <sup>[12]</sup>
PCOS	Bcl-2 and p27	Increased expression	Gonzalez <i>et al</i> <sup>[63]</sup>
	FADD	Down-regulated	Yan <i>et al</i> <sup>[64]</sup>
Tubal factor	PTEN, XIAP, HSP27	Increased expression	Antsiferova <i>et al</i> <sup>[74]</sup>
Endometriosis	Bcl-2	Up-regulated	Jones <i>et al</i> <sup>[71]</sup> ; Harada <sup>[32]</sup> ; Nasu <i>et al</i> <sup>[28]</sup>
	IAP-proteins (c-IAP1, c-IAP2, XIAP, Survivin)	Up-regulated	Antsiferova <i>et al</i> <sup>[74]</sup> ; Uegaki <i>et al</i> <sup>[73]</sup>
	DFF45	Low level	Banas <i>et al</i> <sup>[48]</sup>

Bcl-2: B cell lymphoma/leukemia-2; RIF: Repeated implantation failure; PCOS: Polycystic ovary syndrome; FADD: Fas-associated death domain; PTEN: Phosphatase and tensin homolog; XIAP: X-linked inhibitors apoptosis proteins; DFF45: DNA fragmentation factor of 45 kDa.

of PTEN is the lipid second messenger intermediate PIP3 (phosphatidylinositol 3, 4, 5-trisphosphate). PTEN removes the phosphate from the  $\gamma$ -position of the inositol ring to generate PIP2 (phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate) thereby preventing intracellular signaling through the PI3K/Akt pathway<sup>[77]</sup>. It is known that Akt is the main downstream effector of PI3K (phosphoinositide 3-kinase) signaling that can phosphorylate a wide range of substrates and, thus, activate cell growth, proliferation and survival<sup>[38,77]</sup>. Today it is well known that PTEN function affects different cellular processes such as cell-cycle progression, cell proliferation, apoptosis, aging, DNA damage response, angiogenesis, muscle contractility, and other<sup>[77]</sup>. Recently the participation of PTEN in trophoblast invasion and decidual regression during human pregnancy was demonstrated<sup>[78]</sup>. Taking into account these properties of PTEN we suggested that the high level of PTEN mRNA expression in the endometrium of patients with tubal factor infertility might be estimated as positive mechanism, which compensates the over expression of anti-apoptotic factors and facilitates the preparing of endometrium to the implantation<sup>[74]</sup>.

Summarized data about the character of apoptosis regulation in the endometrium of women with infertility are present in the Table 2.

## ENDOMETRIAL APOPTOSIS AND IVF TREATMENT OUTCOME

Now it is evident that endometrial gene expression during receptive phase is associated with the IVF treatment outcome in infertile women. Recently the comparison of apoptosis-related genes expression in the endometrium of patients who achieved a successful pregnancy and those of patients who was not successful after at least two failed ICSI cycles was performed. And this comparative analysis showed a significant different expression of genes, involving in apoptosis, such as caspase-8, -10, FADD, APAF1, and ANXA4 in the endometrium of women with different ICSI outcome<sup>[79]</sup>.

We also studied the relationship between the character of apoptosis-related genes expression in endometrium during window of implantation and successes of IVF treatment in women with tubal factor of infertility and with endometriosis. We found that in women with tubal factor of infertility implantation failures were associated with the lowest amount of PTEN mRNA expression in the endometrium<sup>[74]</sup>. These results evidence that this factor is essential for implantation and estimation of PTEN synthesis in the endometrium and can be used as the predictor of endometrial receptivity at least in infertile women with tubal factor. In group of women with endometriosis the pregnancy ongoing was achieved in those patients who initially had the minimal level of anti-apoptotic factors XIAP and HSP27 expression in the endometrium. So, it can be concluded that the high level of the activity of anti-apoptotic factors negatively influence the endometrial receptivity in infertile women with endometriosis. Probably the future investigations will allow us to identify the best receptive endometrial gene expression profile which can be used as an effective prognostic tool for IVF patients<sup>[79]</sup>.

## CONCLUSION

Normally, in secretory phase of menstrual cycle, namely during the window of implantation, the increase of tissue apoptosis is noted. Probably, this phenomenon is important for the establishment of endometrial receptivity and provides the adequate invasion of the implanted blastocyst in the endometrial stroma. Regulation of apoptosis is impaired in infertile women. In most cases the impairment of endometrial receptivity is associated with the decrease of apoptosis in endometrium during period of "window implantation". The estimation of the activity of apoptosis in the endometrium during the window of implantation surely gives us the important information about the endometrial receptivity. The further investigations of this problem would likely let us to better understand the mechanisms of endometrial receptivity and to develop new predictors

of IVF outcome.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **van Loendersloot LL**, van Wely M, Limpens J, Bossuyt PM, Repping S, van der Veen F. Predictive factors in in vitro fertilization (IVF): a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Hum Reprod Update* 1991; **16**: 577-589 [PMID: 20581128 DOI: 10.1093/humupd/dmq015]
- 2 **Coccia ME**, Rizzello F, Mariani G, Bulletti C, Palagiano A, Scarselli G. Impact of endometriosis on in vitro fertilization and embryo transfer cycles in young women: a stage-dependent interference. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand* 2011; **90**: 1232-1238 [PMID: 21793811 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0412.2011.01247.x]
- 3 **Kummer N**, Benadiva C, Feinn R, Mann J, Nulsen J, Engmann L. Factors that predict the probability of a successful clinical outcome after induction of oocyte maturation with a gonadotropin-releasing hormone agonist. *Fertil Steril* 2011; **96**: 63-68 [PMID: 21565337 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2011.04.050]
- 4 **Cai QF**, Wan F, Huang R, Zhang HW. Factors predicting the cumulative outcome of IVF/ICSI treatment: a multivariable analysis of 2450 patients. *Hum Reprod* 2011; **26**: 2532-2540 [PMID: 21771773 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/der228]
- 5 **van Loendersloot L**, Repping S, Bossuyt PM, van der Veen F, van Wely M. Prediction models in in vitro fertilization; where are we? A mini review. *J Adv Res* 2014; **5**: 295-301 [PMID: 25685496 DOI: 10.1016/j.jare.2013.05.002]
- 6 **Levin D**, Jun SH, Dahan MH. Predicting pregnancy in women undergoing in-vitro fertilization with basal serum follicle stimulating hormone levels between 10.0 and 11.9 IU/L. *J Turk Ger Gynecol Assoc* 2015; **16**: 5-10 [PMID: 25788842 DOI: 10.5152/jtgga.2015.15218]
- 7 **Zhao J**, Zhang Q, Wang Y, Li Y. Endometrial pattern, thickness and growth in predicting pregnancy outcome following 3319 IVF cycle. *Reprod Biomed Online* 2014; **29**: 291-298 [PMID: 25070912 DOI: 10.1016/j.rbmo.2014.05.011]
- 8 **Lee GH**, Song HJ, Lee KS, Choi YM. Current status of assisted reproductive technology in Korea, 2010. *Clin Exp Reprod Med* 2015; **42**: 8-13 [PMID: 25874168 DOI: 10.5653/cerm.2015.42.1.8]
- 9 **Strowitzki T**, Germeyer A, Popovici R, von Wolff M. The human endometrium as a fertility-determining factor. *Hum Reprod Update* 2006; **12**: 617-630 [PMID: 16832043]
- 10 **Garrido N**, Navarro J, García-Velasco J, Remoh J, Pellice A, Simón C. The endometrium versus embryonic quality in endometriosis-related infertility. *Hum Reprod Update* 2002; **8**: 95-103 [PMID: 11866246]
- 11 **Gnainsky Y**, Dekel N, Granot I. Implantation: mutual activity of sex steroid hormones and the immune system guarantee the maternal-embryo interaction. *Semin Reprod Med* 2014; **32**: 337-345 [PMID: 24959815 DOI: 10.1055/s-0034-1376353]
- 12 **Revel A**. Defective endometrial receptivity. *Fertil Steril* 2012; **97**: 1028-1032 [PMID: 22542142 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2012.03.039]
- 13 **Rashid NA**, Lalitkumar S, Lalitkumar PG, Gemzell-Danielsson K. Endometrial receptivity and human embryo implantation. *Am J Reprod Immunol* 2011; **66** Suppl 1: 23-30 [PMID: 21726335 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0897.2011.01048.x]
- 14 **Szmidt M**, Sysa P, Niemiec T, Urbańska K, Bartyzel B. Regulation of apoptosis in endometrium preparation for menstruation or embryo implantation. *Ginekolog* 2010; **81**: 856-859 [PMID: 21365903]
- 15 **Kerr JF**, Wyllie AH, Currie AR. Apoptosis: a basic biological phenomenon with wide-ranging implications in tissue kinetics. *Br J Cancer* 1972; **26**: 239-257 [PMID: 4561027]
- 16 **Boyce M**, Degterev A, Yuan J. Caspases: an ancient cellular sword of Damocles. *Cell Death Differ* 2004; **11**: 29-37 [PMID: 14647235 DOI: 10.1038/sj.cdd.4401339]
- 17 **Kaufmann T**, Strasser A, Jost PJ. Fas death receptor signalling: roles of Bid and XIAP. *Cell Death Differ* 2012; **19**: 42-50 [PMID: 21959933 DOI: 10.1038/cdd.2011.121]
- 18 **Fulda S**, Debatin KM. Extrinsic versus intrinsic apoptosis pathways in anticancer chemotherapy. *Oncogene* 2006; **25**: 4798-4811 [PMID: 16892092 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1209608]
- 19 **Franklin JL**. Redox regulation of the intrinsic pathway in neuronal apoptosis. *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2011; **14**: 1437-1448 [PMID: 20812874 DOI: 10.1089/ars.2010.3596]
- 20 **Pradelli LA**, Bénéteau M, Ricci JE. Mitochondrial control of caspase-dependent and -independent cell death. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2010; **67**: 1589-1597 [PMID: 20151314 DOI: 10.1007/s00018-010-0285-y]
- 21 **Czabotar PE**, Lessene G, Strasser A, Adams JM. Control of apoptosis by the BCL-2 protein family: implications for physiology and therapy. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2014; **15**: 49-63 [PMID: 24355989 DOI: 10.1038/nrm3722]
- 22 **Goldar S**, Khaniani MS, Derakhshan SM, Baradaran B. Molecular mechanisms of apoptosis and roles in cancer development and treatment. *Asian Pac J Cancer Prev* 2015; **16**: 2129-2144 [PMID: 25824729 DOI: 10.7314/APJCP.2015.16.6.2129]
- 23 **Schimmer AD**. Inhibitor of apoptosis proteins: translating basic knowledge into clinical practice. *Cancer Res* 2004; **64**: 7183-7190 [PMID: 15492230]
- 24 **Ai Z**, Yin L, Zhou X, Zhu Y, Zhu D, Yu Y, Feng Y. Inhibition of survivin reduces cell proliferation and induces apoptosis in human endometrial cancer. *Cancer* 2006; **107**: 746-756 [PMID: 16826583]
- 25 **Diedrich K**, Fauser BC, Devroey P, Griesinger G. The role of the endometrium and embryo in human implantation. *Hum Reprod Update* 2007; **13**: 365-377 [PMID: 17548368]
- 26 **Timeva T**, Shterev A, Kyurkchiev S. Recurrent implantation failure: the role of the endometrium. *J Reprod Infertil* 2014; **15**: 173-183 [PMID: 25473625]
- 27 **Meresman GF**, Olivares C, Vighi S, Alfie M, Irigoyen M, Etchepareborda JJ. Apoptosis is increased and cell proliferation is decreased in out-of-phase endometria from infertile and recurrent abortion patients. *Reprod Biol Endocrinol* 2010; **8**: 126 [PMID: 20969784 DOI: 10.1186/1477-7827-8-126]
- 28 **Nasu K**, Nishida M, Kawano Y, Tsuno A, Abe W, Yuge A, Takai N, Narahara H. Aberrant expression of apoptosis-related molecules in endometriosis: a possible mechanism underlying the pathogenesis of endometriosis. *Reprod Sci* 2011; **18**: 206-218 [PMID: 21193803 DOI: 10.1177/1933719111039205]
- 29 **Lopes IM**, Barakat MC, Simões Mde J, Simões RS, Barakat EC, Soares Jr JM. Endometrium in women with polycystic ovary syndrome during the window of implantation. *Rev Assoc Med Bras* 2011; **57**: 702-709 [PMID: 22249553]
- 30 **Ejskjaer K**, Sørensen BS, Poulsen SS, Mogensen O, Forman A, Nexø E. Expression of the epidermal growth factor system in human endometrium during the menstrual cycle. *Mol Hum Reprod* 2005; **11**: 543-551 [PMID: 16100239]
- 31 **Demir R**, Yaba A, Huppertz B. Vasculogenesis and angiogenesis in the endometrium during menstrual cycle and implantation. *Acta Histochem* 2010; **112**: 203-214 [PMID: 19481785 DOI: 10.1016/j.acthis.2009.04.004]
- 32 **Harada T**, Kaponis A, Iwabe T, Taniguchi F, Makrydimas G, Sofikitis N, Paschopoulos M, Paraskevaidis E, Terakawa N. Apoptosis in human endometrium and endometriosis. *Hum Reprod Update* 2004; **10**: 29-38 [PMID: 15005462]
- 33 **Hu J**, Yuan R. The expression levels of stem cell markers importin13, c-kit, CD146, and telomerase are decreased in endometrial polyps. *Med Sci Monit* 2011; **17**: BR221-BR227 [PMID: 21804459]
- 34 **Abe H**, Shibata MA, Otsuki Y. Caspase cascade of Fas-mediated apoptosis in human normal endometrium and endometrial carcinoma cells. *Mol Hum Reprod* 2006; **12**: 535-541 [PMID: 16870953]
- 35 **Amstad PA**, Liu H, Ichimiya M, Berezsky IK, Trump BF, Buhimschi IA, Gutierrez PL. BCL-2 is involved in preventing oxidant-induced cell death and in decreasing oxygen radical production. *Redox Rep* 2001; **6**: 351-362 [PMID: 11865975]
- 36 **He H**, Lam M, McCormick TS, Distelhorst CW. Maintenance of



- calcium homeostasis in the endoplasmic reticulum by Bcl-2. *J Cell Biol* 1997; **138**: 1219-1228 [PMID: 9298978]
- 37 **Eischen CM**, Packham G, Nip J, Fee BE, Hiebert SW, Zambetti GP, Cleveland JL. Bcl-2 is an apoptotic target suppressed by both c-Myc and E2F-1. *Oncogene* 2001; **20**: 6983-6993 [PMID: 11704823]
  - 38 **Zhang S**, Yu D. PI(3)king apart PTEN's role in cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2010; **16**: 4325-4330 [PMID: 20622047 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-09-2990]
  - 39 **Maruyama T**, Yoshimura Y. Molecular and cellular mechanisms for differentiation and regeneration of the uterine endometrium. *Endocr J* 2008; **55**: 795-810 [PMID: 18580040]
  - 40 **Daya S**. Luteal support: progestogens for pregnancy protection. *Maturitas* 2009; **65** Suppl 1: S29-S34 [PMID: 19913373 DOI: 10.1016/j.maturitas.2009.09.012]
  - 41 **Vasquez YM**, DeMayo FJ. Role of nuclear receptors in blastocyst implantation. *Semin Cell Dev Biol* 2013; **24**: 724-735 [PMID: 23994285 DOI: 10.1016/j.semdb.2013.08.004]
  - 42 **Tong W**, Pollard JW. Progesterone inhibits estrogen-induced cyclin D1 and cdk4 nuclear translocation, cyclin E- and cyclin A-cdk2 kinase activation, and cell proliferation in uterine epithelial cells in mice. *Mol Cell Biol* 1999; **19**: 2251-2264 [PMID: 10022912]
  - 43 **Lam EW**, Shah K, Brosens JJ. The diversity of sex steroid action: the role of micro-RNAs and FOXO transcription factors in cycling endometrium and cancer. *J Endocrinol* 2012; **212**: 13-25 [PMID: 21382987 DOI: 10.1530/JOE-10-0480]
  - 44 **Reis FM**, Petraglia F, Taylor RN. Endometriosis: hormone regulation and clinical consequences of chemotaxis and apoptosis. *Hum Reprod Update* 2013; **19**: 406-418 [PMID: 23539633 DOI: 10.1093/humupd/dmt010]
  - 45 **Taylor LJ**, Jackson TL, Reid JG, Duffy SR. The differential expression of oestrogen receptors, progesterone receptors, Bcl-2 and Ki67 in endometrial polyps. *BJOG* 2003; **110**: 794-798 [PMID: 14511960]
  - 46 **Otsuki Y**. Apoptosis in human endometrium: apoptotic detection methods and signaling. *Med Electron Microsc* 2001; **34**: 166-173 [PMID: 11793192]
  - 47 **Fluhr H**, Spratte J, Bredow M, Heidrich S, Zygmunt M. Constitutive activity of Erk1/2 and NF- $\kappa$ B protects human endometrial stromal cells from death receptor-mediated apoptosis. *Reprod Biol* 2013; **13**: 113-121 [PMID: 23719115 DOI: 10.1016/j.repbio.2013.03.001]
  - 48 **Banas T**, Skotniczny K, Basta A. DFF45 expression in ovarian endometriomas. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 2009; **146**: 87-91 [PMID: 19535198 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejogrb.2009.05.024]
  - 49 **Banas T**, Basta P, Knafel A, Skotniczny K, Jach R, Hajdyla-Banas I, Grabowska O. DFF45 expression in human endometrium is associated with menstrual cycle phases and decreases after menopause. *Gynecol Obstet Invest* 2012; **73**: 177-182 [PMID: 22378161 DOI: 10.1159/000331647]
  - 50 **Popiela TJ**, Wicherek L, Radwan M, Sikora J, Banas T, Basta P, Kulczycka M, Grabiec M, Obrzut B, Kalinka J. The differences in RCAS1 and DFF45 endometrial expression between late proliferative, early secretory, and mid-secretory cycle phases. *Folia Histochem Cytobiol* 2007; **45** Suppl 1: S157-S162 [PMID: 18292826]
  - 51 **Ren P**, Zhang Y, Huang Y, Yang Y, Jiang M. Functions of Peroxisome Proliferator-Activated Receptor Gamma (PPAR $\gamma$ ) in Gynecologic Disorders. *Clin Med Insights Oncol* 2015; **9**: 43-49 [PMID: 25987855 DOI: 10.4137/CMO.s23527]
  - 52 **Yamashita H**, Otsuki Y, Matsumoto K, Ueki K, Ueki M. Fas ligand, Fas antigen and Bcl-2 expression in human endometrium during the menstrual cycle. *Mol Hum Reprod* 1999; **5**: 358-364 [PMID: 10321808]
  - 53 **Garrido-Gómez T**, Dominguez F, Simón C. Proteomics of embryonic implantation. *Handb Exp Pharmacol* 2010; **(198)**: 67-78 [PMID: 20839087 DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-02062-9\_5]
  - 54 **Akali KC**, Gibori G, Khan SA. The involvement of apoptotic regulators during in vitro decidualization. *Eur J Endocrinol* 2003; **149**: 69-75 [PMID: 12824868]
  - 55 **Christian M**, Marangos P, Mak I, McVey J, Barker F, White J, Brosens JJ. Interferon-gamma modulates prolactin and tissue factor expression in differentiating human endometrial stromal cells. *Endocrinology* 2001; **142**: 3142-3151 [PMID: 11416037]
  - 56 **Gambino LS**, Wreford NG, Bertram JF, Dockery P, Lederman F, Rogers PA. Angiogenesis occurs by vessel elongation in proliferative phase human endometrium. *Hum Reprod* 2002; **17**: 1199-1206 [PMID: 11980738]
  - 57 **Singh H**, Aplin JD. Adhesion molecules in endometrial epithelium: tissue integrity and embryo implantation. *J Anat* 2009; **215**: 3-13 [PMID: 19453302 DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-7580.2008.01034.x]
  - 58 **Lessey BA**. Assessment of endometrial receptivity. *Fertil Steril* 2011; **96**: 522-529 [PMID: 21880273 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2011.07.1095]
  - 59 **Singh M**, Chaudhry P, Asselin E. Bridging endometrial receptivity and implantation: network of hormones, cytokines, and growth factors. *J Endocrinol* 2011; **210**: 5-14 [PMID: 21372150 DOI: 10.1530/JOE-10-0461]
  - 60 **Joswig A**, Gabriel HD, Kibschull M, Winterhager E. Apoptosis in uterine epithelium and decidua in response to implantation: evidence for two different pathways. *Reprod Biol Endocrinol* 2003; **1**: 44 [PMID: 12801416]
  - 61 **Zhang LY**, Hua YP, An TZ, Zuo RJ, Nie WT, Wang LB, Shan CH. Temporal and spatial expression of AIF in the mouse uterus during early pregnancy. *Front Biosci (Elite Ed)* 2012; **4**: 1182-1194 [PMID: 22201945]
  - 62 **Feng Z**, Zhang C, Kang HJ, Sun Y, Wang H, Naqvi A, Frank AK, Rosenwaks Z, Murphy ME, Levine AJ, Hu W. Regulation of female reproduction by p53 and its family members. *FASEB J* 2011; **25**: 2245-2255 [PMID: 21402718 DOI: 10.1096/fj.10-180166]
  - 63 **Gonzalez D**, Thackeray H, Lewis PD, Mantani A, Brook N, Ahuja K, Margara R, Joels L, White JO, Conlan RS. Loss of WT1 expression in the endometrium of infertile PCOS patients: a hyperandrogenic effect? *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2012; **97**: 957-966 [PMID: 22238403 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2011-2366]
  - 64 **Yan L**, Wang A, Chen L, Shang W, Li M, Zhao Y. Expression of apoptosis-related genes in the endometrium of polycystic ovary syndrome patients during the window of implantation. *Gene* 2012; **506**: 350-354 [PMID: 22789864 DOI: 10.1016/j.gene.2012.06.037]
  - 65 **Di Pietro C**, Cicinelli E, Guglielmino MR, Ragusa M, Farina M, Palumbo MA, Cianci A. Altered transcriptional regulation of cytokines, growth factors, and apoptotic proteins in the endometrium of infertile women with chronic endometritis. *Am J Reprod Immunol* 2013; **69**: 509-517 [PMID: 23351011 DOI: 10.1111/aji.12076]
  - 66 **Vatansever HS**, Lacin S, Ozbilgin MK. Changed Bcl: Bax ratio in endometrium of patients with unexplained infertility. *Acta Histochem* 2005; **107**: 345-355 [PMID: 16139338]
  - 67 **Revel A**, Achache H, Stevens J, Smith Y, Reich R. MicroRNAs are associated with human embryo implantation defects. *Hum Reprod* 2011; **26**: 2830-2840 [PMID: 21849299 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/der255]
  - 68 **Chegini N**. Uterine microRNA signature and consequence of their dysregulation in uterine disorders. *Anim Reprod* 2010; **7**: 117-128 [PMID: 22328907]
  - 69 **Ma HL**, Gong F, Tang Y, Li X, Li X, Yang X, Lu G. Inhibition of Endometrial Tiam1/Rac1 Signals Induced by miR-22 Up-Regulation Leads to the Failure of Embryo Implantation During the Implantation Window in Pregnant Mice. *Biol Reprod* 2015; **92**: 152 [PMID: 25926441]
  - 70 **Bondza PK**, Maheux R, Akoum A. Insights into endometriosis-associated endometrial dysfunctions: a review. *Front Biosci (Elite Ed)* 2009; **1**: 415-428 [PMID: 19482656]
  - 71 **Jones RK**, Searle RF, Bulmer JN. Apoptosis and bcl-2 expression in normal human endometrium, endometriosis and adenomyosis. *Hum Reprod* 1998; **13**: 3496-3502 [PMID: 9886539]
  - 72 **Taniguchi F**, Kaponis A, Izawa M, Kiyama T, Deura I, Ito M, Iwabe T, Adonakis G, Terakawa N, Harada T. Apoptosis and endometriosis. *Front Biosci (Elite Ed)* 2011; **3**: 648-662 [PMID: 21196342]
  - 73 **Uegaki T**, Taniguchi F, Nakamura K, Osaki M, Okada F, Yamamoto O, Harada T. Inhibitor of apoptosis proteins (IAPs) may be effective therapeutic targets for treating endometriosis. *Hum Reprod* 2015; **30**: 149-158 [PMID: 25376458 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/deu288]

- 74 **Antsiferova YS**, Sotnikova NY, Bogatova IK, Boitsova AV. Changes of apoptosis regulation in the endometrium of infertile women with tubal factor and endometriosis undergoing in vitro fertilization treatment. *JBRA Assisted Reproduction* 2014; **18**: 2-6 [DOI: 10.5935/1518-0557.20130084]
- 75 **Schimmer AD**, Dalili S, Batey RA, Riedl SJ. Targeting XIAP for the treatment of malignancy. *Cell Death Differ* 2006; **13**: 179-188 [PMID: 16322751]
- 76 **Schmitt E**, Gehrmann M, Brunet M, Multhoff G, Garrido C. Intracellular and extracellular functions of heat shock proteins: repercussions in cancer therapy. *J Leukoc Biol* 2007; **81**: 15-27 [PMID: 16931602]
- 77 **Bononi A**, Agnoletto C, De Marchi E, Marchi S, Patergnani S, Bonora M, Giorgi C, Missiroli S, Poletti F, Rimessi A, Pinton P. Protein kinases and phosphatases in the control of cell fate. *Enzyme Res* 2011; **2011**: 329098 [PMID: 21904669 DOI: 10.4061/2011/329098]
- 78 **Laguë MN**, Detmar J, Paquet M, Boyer A, Richards JS, Adamson SL, Boerboom D. Decidual PTEN expression is required for trophoblast invasion in the mouse. *Am J Physiol Endocrinol Metab* 2010; **299**: E936-E946 [PMID: 20858757 DOI: 10.1152/ajpendo.00255.2010]
- 79 **Allegra A**, Marino A, Peregrin PC, Lama A, García-Segovia A, Forte GI, Núñez-Calonge R, Agueli C, Mazzola S, Volpes A. Endometrial expression of selected genes in patients achieving pregnancy spontaneously or after ICSI and patients failing at least two ICSI cycles. *Reprod Biomed Online* 2012; **25**: 481-491 [PMID: 22999554 DOI: 10.1016/j.rbmo.2012.07.019]

**P- Reviewer:** Cosmi E, Yokoyama Y   **S- Editor:** Ji FF   **L- Editor:** A  
**E- Editor:** Wu HL



## Review of the current surgical management of vulval cancer

Sarah L Platt, Kristyn M Manley, John B Murdoch

Sarah L Platt, Kristyn M Manley, John B Murdoch, Department of Gynaecological Oncology, St. Michael's Hospital, University Hospitals Bristol NHS Trust, Bristol BS2 8EG, United Kingdom

**Author contributions:** Platt SL and Manley KM contributed equally to this paper with conception and design of the study, literature review and analysis, drafting and critical revision and editing, and final approval of the final version; Murdoch JB reviewed the final version.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** No potential conflicts of interest. No financial support.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Dr. Sarah L Platt, MBChB, MRCOG, BSc (Hons), Department of Gynaecological Oncology, St. Michael's Hospital, University Hospitals Bristol NHS Trust, Southwell Street, Bristol BS2 8EG, United Kingdom. [sarah.platt@uhbristol.nhs.uk](mailto:sarah.platt@uhbristol.nhs.uk)  
Telephone: +44-117-3425810  
Fax: +44-117-3425792

Received: July 20, 2015  
Peer-review started: July 23, 2015  
First decision: November 6, 2015  
Revised: December 3, 2015  
Accepted: January 5, 2016  
Article in press: January 7, 2016  
Published online: February 10, 2016

### Abstract

Currently in the United Kingdom, 1200 cases of vulval cancer are diagnosed per annum accounting for 6% of female genital cancers. Although classically a

condition that affects older women and associated with lichen sclerosus, there has been a greater incidence of vulval squamous tumours in young women due to the increasing prevalence of promoting human papillomavirus (HPV). The advent of a vaccination programme against HPV 16 and 18, the main aetiological causes of vulval intraepithelial neoplasia and cervical intraepithelial neoplasia, may reduce the incidence in future generations. Primary surgery is the current gold standard treatment and although mortality rates have reduced by 40% since the 1970s, radical vulval resections are associated with significant morbidity such as wound breakdown, infection, lymphoedema and psychosexual consequences. Over the past decade there has been a move to less mutilating procedures in women diagnosed with early vulval cancer. This is in combination with the introduction of new surgical methods such as sentinel lymph node testing, more directed radiotherapy and chemotherapy options. These treatment methods are being assessed in clinical trials to determine their associated recurrence rates, survival rates and morbidity. Most vulval cancers are squamous cell in origin but, there are other histological subtypes including Paget's disease and vulval melanoma which can require different management approaches. The objective of this paper is to review the current literature on the management of vulval cancer, summarise the new treatments which are being developed and the associated evidence.

**Key words:** Vulval cancer; Paget's disease; Human papilloma virus; Sentinel lymph nodes; Inguinofemoral groin node dissection

© **The Author(s) 2016.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** One thousand and two hundred cases of vulval cancer are diagnosed annually in the United Kingdom. Primary surgery is the current gold standard treatment but radical vulval resections are associated with significant morbidity so there has been a move to less mutilating surgical procedures. Sentinel lymph node testing, more directed radiotherapy and chemotherapy

are all currently being assessed in clinical trials and the advent of the HPV vaccination programme may reduce the incidence in future generations. The objective of this paper is to review the current literature on the management of vulval cancer and summarise the new treatments and the associated evidence.

Platt SL, Manley KM, Murdoch JB. Review of the current surgical management of vulval cancer. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 97-101 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/97.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.97>

## INTRODUCTION

Currently in the United Kingdom, 1200 cases of vulval cancer are diagnosed per annum accounting for 6% of female genital cancers<sup>[1]</sup>. Due to the increasing prevalence of promoting human papillomavirus (HPV), the incidence of vulval squamous tumours has been increasing in young women<sup>[2]</sup>. The advent of a vaccination programme against HPV 16 and 18, the main aetiological causes of vulval intraepithelial neoplasia (VIN) and cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN), may reduce the incidence in future generations<sup>[3]</sup>. Primary surgery is the current gold standard treatment and although mortality rates have reduced by 40% since the 1970s, radical vulval resections are associated with significant morbidity such as wound breakdown, infection, lymphoedema and psychosexual consequences<sup>[1,4-6]</sup>. Over the past decade there has been a move to less mutilating procedures in women diagnosed with early vulval cancer and this review paper outlines the current trends in treatment of women with vulval cancer, both early and advanced.

## RESEARCH

A systematic literature search was performed using PubMed, Cochrane and EMBASE, using search criteria of "vulval cancer - early and late", "Paget's disease of the vulva", "sentinel lymph node testing in vulval cancer", "HPV and vulval cancer" and "surgery, radiotherapy and chemotherapy for vulval cancer". Fifty-four papers were identified and thirty were directly referenced in this review paper.

## DISCUSSION

### Treatment of early cancer

For the management of stage I and II (Table 1), current studies have advocated a policy of "less is more"; wide local excision (WLE) reduces the significant morbidity associated with radical vulvectomy and recurrence rates are low<sup>[7,8]</sup>. It is recommended that tumours should be excised, ideally with a 2-cm excision margin down to the inferior fascia of the urogenital diaphragm and

**Table 1 Staging system for vulvar cancer of the international federation of gynaecology and obstetrics**

IA	Tumour confined to the vulva or perineum, $\leq 2$ cm in size with stromal invasion $\leq 1$ mm, negative nodes
IB	Tumour confined to the vulva or perineum, $> 2$ cm in size or with stromal invasion $> 1$ mm, negative nodes
II	Tumour of any size with adjacent spread (1/3 lower urethra, 1/3 lower vagina, anus), negative nodes
IIIA	Tumour of any size with positive inguino-femoral lymph nodes (1) 1 lymph node metastasis greater than or equal to 5 mm (2) 1-2 lymph node metastasis(es) of less than 5 mm
IIIB	(1) 2 or more lymph nodes metastases greater than or equal to 5 mm (2) 3 or more lymph nodes metastases less than 5 mm
IIIC	Positive node(s) with extracapsular spread
IVA	(1) Tumour invades other regional structures (2/3 upper urethra, 2/3 upper vagina), bladder mucosa, rectal mucosa, or fixed to pelvic bone (2) Fixed or ulcerated inguino-femoral lymph nodes
IVB	Any distant metastasis including pelvic lymph nodes

the fascia over the symphysis pubis<sup>[9]</sup>. Studies suggest that microscopic excision margins beyond 8 mm are associated with low recurrence rates, whilst margins less than 8 mm carry a recurrence rate of around 50%<sup>[10]</sup>. Moreover, larger surgical excision margins allow for the reduction and contraction of tissues following pathological preparation techniques. The dissection of inguino-femoral lymph nodes is dependent upon the depth of invasion and the site of the tumour; lateral tumours have more than 1 cm of healthy tissue beyond the WLE which does not affect midline anatomy and drain to the ipsilateral groin node. Resection of these nodes alone is safe with similar recurrence rates to bilateral dissection if the contralateral vulva is disease free<sup>[7,11]</sup>. With midline lesions, which occur less frequently, bilateral groin node dissection is required but pelvic lymph node dissection is not necessary due to the recognised pattern of lymphatic drainage<sup>[11]</sup>.

Hacker *et al*<sup>[12]</sup> 1993 investigated the correlation between depth of invasion and nodal involvement (Table 2). The evidence suggests that women with early vulval cancer (FIGO Ia) are at very low risk of nodal involvement if the depth is less than 1 mm and WLE alone is appropriate in this cohort. Women with a FIGO stage IB and above have a significant risk of groin node metastasis and therefore bilateral resection is recommended.

A Cochrane Review has assessed randomised control trials which have compared primary radiotherapy of the inguinofemoral lymph nodes to inguinofemoral lymph node dissection in women with early stage vulval cancer. This review concluded that groin node recurrence rates were increased (RR = 10.21, 95%CI: 0.59-175) with primary radiotherapy but lymphoedema was reduced (RR = 0.06, 95%CI: 0.00-1.03) and so were life-threatening cardiovascular complications (RR = 0.08, 95%CI: 0.00-1.45). Even though the review only included one study, which had a small number of participants ( $n = 52$ ), it appears safer to excise the lymph nodes at present until the outcome of larger



**Table 2** Correlation between depth of invasion and nodal metastasis in vulval SCC

Depth of invasion	Percentage of positive nodes
< 1 mm	0%
1-2 mm	7.6%
2-3 mm	8.4%
3-5 mm	26.7%
> 5 mm	34.2%

randomised control trials are available<sup>[13]</sup>.

### Lymph nodes

The method of lymph node dissection has also moved towards more conservative approaches: *En bloc* "butterfly" dissection has been replaced by the triple incision technique<sup>[14]</sup>. Additionally, there is some evidence that preservation of the fascia lata and saphenous vein can reduce the post-operative morbidity of lymphoedema without jeopardising outcome<sup>[15]</sup>.

Recent advances in the management of vulval cancer have focused on sentinel lymph node testing. As lymph node metastases are only present in 30% of women with early vulval cancer, a significant number of women will be at risk of substantial postoperative morbidity and have negative lymph nodes. Different techniques to identify sentinel nodes have been used in trials, based on experience with different cancer types such as breast cancer and cutaneous melanoma. The best detection rates are seen when a combination of blue dye and technetium-based tests are used<sup>[16]</sup>. The GROINSS-VI trial concluded that patients with early stage vulval cancer and a negative sentinel node have low rates of groin recurrence (2%-3%), excellent survival rates at 3 years (97%) and minimal morbidity<sup>[17]</sup>. Groin recurrence with positive nodes was reported as 9%. However, other studies have suggested that detection rates and recurrence rates can vary significantly and the trial concluded that an element of quality control is required to ensure that an adequate level of surgical expertise and experience is present within an institution. Sentinel node techniques are therefore best suited to larger centres with higher case numbers. Additionally, data on longer-term recurrence is limited<sup>[18]</sup>. The GROINSS-VII trial is ongoing and seeks to treat patients with metastatic sentinel lymph nodes directly with radiotherapy instead of inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy followed by radiotherapy, thus theoretically reducing the morbidity of dual modality treatment<sup>[17]</sup>. In this trial, radiotherapy alone is restricted to patients with sentinel node metastases measuring  $\leq$  2 mm due to the known poor prognosis associated with sentinel node metastases measuring over 2 mm<sup>[19]</sup>.

### Adjuvant therapies

Adjuvant radiotherapy is offered to all patients who are found to have positive lymph nodes. The recent AGO-CaRE-1 study indicated that prognosis is improved

in node positive patients, although when compared to those patients who are node negative the overall prognosis is poorer. Progression-free survival at 3 years was 39.6% in lymph node positive patients receiving adjuvant radiotherapy, 25.9% in LN positive patients without adjuvant treatment and 75.2% in lymph node negative patients<sup>[20]</sup>. It has been suggested that prognosis may be improved with the use of chemoradiation rather than radiotherapy alone, as this has been successful in the management of other squamous cell cancers such as anal and cervical cancer. No randomised controlled trials have yet been performed, but initial studies have indicated good clinical responses with acceptable toxicity<sup>[2]</sup>.

### Treatment of advanced vulval cancer

FIGO stage 3 and 4 tumours are characterised by local extension, pain, discharge, bleeding and odour. Management can be very difficult, particularly as lymph node metastases are present in approximately 50% and can ulcerate into the groin or can be fixed to the femoral vessels<sup>[14]</sup>. These patients have the option of ultra-radical surgery involving partial or total pelvic exenteration with the burden of a urostomy or colostomy, or treatment with chemotherapy or radiotherapy<sup>[21,22]</sup>. Results and prognosis can be poor, with symptom control often being the preferred option.

### Post-operative complications and psychosexual consequences

The drive for a move towards more conservative surgery is related to the significant morbidity associated with excision of vulval lesions and lymph node dissection. Patients often have post-operative wound infections or dehiscence, prolonging hospital stays and require ongoing outpatient care. Moreover, inguinofemoral lymph node removal is associated with wound breakdown, lymphocyst formation, infection, lower limb lymphoedema and chronic cellulitis<sup>[23]</sup>.

Excision of the clitoris, distortion of the vulval anatomy and changes to bowel and bladder function can also have significant psychological effects<sup>[24]</sup>. Many patients will become sexually inactive, and as expected, this trend seems to increase with the extent of surgical excision<sup>[25]</sup>.

### Paget's disease of the vulva

Extramammary Paget's disease can rarely affect the vulva (1%-5% of vulval malignancies), and is defined as an intraepidermal adenocarcinoma. The management is primarily surgical, but can be particularly complex to manage due to a multicentric pattern and irregular margins, resulting in up to 44% local recurrence rates<sup>[26]</sup>. Paget's disease can be sub-classified into intraepithelial and invasive types, with a significantly greater recurrence rate in invasive lesions of 67% compared with 9% in intraepithelial lesions over a median follow-up period of 69 mo in a recent study by

Nomura *et al*<sup>[27]</sup>. Distant metastases tend to be rare, with management focusing on surveillance and repeat surgical excisions. Alternative treatments that have been used with varying effects are local and systemic chemotherapy, radiotherapy, photodynamic therapy, laser therapy and Moh's micrographic surgery.

### Impact of a HPV vaccine

The development and implementation of a vaccine against the highly oncogenic HPV genotypes 16 and 18, which account for 70% of CIN and VIN, have been projected to decrease the incidence and morbidity of pre-cancerous and cancerous genital disease. Indeed, the Future II trial, a randomised control trial which compared women given a HPV vaccine to placebo, showed a vaccine efficacy of 75% for low grade warty or basaloid VIN<sup>[28]</sup>.

Despite these promising results, HPV is the main aetiological cause in only 30%-40% of invasive vulval cancers<sup>[29]</sup>. Differentiated VIN is responsible for 65%-80% of vulval cancers and arises in older women (55-85 years old) with concomitant vulval dermatoses such as lichen sclerosis, lichen planus or lichen simplex. Other histological subtypes include melanomas (3%), Bartholin's gland tumours (5%), adenocarcinomas (< 1%) secondary to Paget's disease and sarcomas (1%-2%)<sup>[3]</sup>. It seems apparent that the predicted decrease in incidence of cervical cancer following the introduction of the vaccine may not have such significant effects on the prevalence of vulval cancer, particularly in the aging population. Management of this cohort needs to be individualised to their medical comorbidities and therefore topical treatments such as Imiquimod and Cidofovir are being investigated to determine their efficacy in treating VIN so the morbidity of surgery, as outlined in this review, can be circumvented. Studies have shown a reduction of 25% in lesion size over 20 wk of treatment but this has to be weighed against the acute discomfort following application of the cream and the lack of long term data assessing recurrence rates<sup>[30]</sup>.

## CONCLUSION

This overview of vulval cancer management summarises the current surgical approach, with an emphasis on conservative surgery that minimises the risk of recurrence whilst maintaining body function. There are important developments being made in the introduction of new management methods, most notably sentinel node testing. Current practice is limited by the availability of evidence and therefore further trials investigating existing and novel surgical management of vulval cancer will be vital. The results of ongoing sentinel node trials will give more information on longer-term recurrence rates and streamlining treatment modalities. Furthermore, reviewing resection margins in a more formal trial setting would also be valuable, whilst other trials researching chemo-radiation and the role of HPV may further change the direction of vulval cancer

management.

## REFERENCES

- 1 Cancer Research UK [Accessed 2015 Jun 11]. Available from: URL: <http://www.cancerresearchuk.org/health-professional/cancer-statistics/statistics-by-cancer-type/vulval-cancer>
- 2 Jones RW, Baranyai J, Stables S. Trends in squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva: the influence of vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia. *Obstet Gynecol* 1997; **90**: 448-452 [PMID: 9277660 DOI: 10.1016/S0029-7844(97)00298-6]
- 3 Hildesheim A, Han CL, Brinton LA, Kurman RJ, Schiller JT. Human papillomavirus type 16 and risk of preinvasive and invasive vulvar cancer: results from a seroepidemiological case-control study. *Obstet Gynecol* 1997; **90**: 748-754 [PMID: 9351758 DOI: 10.1016/S0029-7844(97)00467-5]
- 4 Andersen BL, Hacker NF. Psychosexual adjustment after vulvar surgery. *Obstet Gynecol* 1983; **62**: 457-462 [PMID: 6888823]
- 5 Howlander N, Noone AM, Krapcho M, Garshell J, Neyman N, Altekruse SF, Kosary CL, Yu M, Ruhl J, Tatalovich Z, Cho H, Mariotto A, Lewis DR, Chen HS, Feuer EJ, Cronin KA (eds). SEER Cancer Statistics Review 1975-2010. Bethesda MD, USA: National Cancer Institute 2013. Available from: URL: [http://seer.cancer.gov/archive/csr/1975\\_2010/](http://seer.cancer.gov/archive/csr/1975_2010/)
- 6 Surgeon SR, Brinton LA, Devesa SS, Kurman RJ. In situ and invasive vulvar cancer incidence trends (1973 to 1987). *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1992; **166**: 1482-1485 [PMID: 1595803 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9378(92)91623-I]
- 7 Ansink A, van der Velden J. Surgical interventions for early squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2000; (2): CD002036 [PMID: 10796849]
- 8 Magrina JF, Gonzalez-Bosquet J, Weaver AL, Gaffey TA, Webb MJ, Podratz KC, Cornella JL. Primary squamous cell cancer of the vulva: radical versus modified radical vulvar surgery. *Gynecol Oncol* 1998; **71**: 116-121 [PMID: 9784331 DOI: 10.1006/gyno.1998.5149]
- 9 Falconer AD, Hirschowitz L, Weeks J, Murdoch J. The impact of improving outcomes guidance on surgical management of vulval squamous cell cancer in southwest England (1997-2002). *BJOG* 2007; **114**: 391-397 [PMID: 17378814 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.2006.01181.x]
- 10 Heaps JM, Fu YS, Montz FJ, Hacker NF, Berek JS. Surgical-pathologic variables predictive of local recurrence in squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva. *Gynecol Oncol* 1990; **38**: 309-314 [PMID: 2227541 DOI: 10.1016/0090-8258(90)90064-R]
- 11 Burke TW, Levenback C, Coleman RL, Morris M, Silva EG, Gershenson DM. Surgical therapy of T1 and T2 vulvar carcinoma: further experience with radical wide excision and selective inguinal lymphadenectomy. *Gynecol Oncol* 1995; **57**: 215-220 [PMID: 7729737 DOI: 10.1006/gyno.1995.1128]
- 12 Hacker NF, Van der Velden J. Conservative management of early vulvar cancer. *Cancer* 1993; **71**: 1673-1677 [PMID: 8431905 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.2820710436]
- 13 van der Velden J, Fons G, Lawrie TA. Primary groin irradiation versus primary groin surgery for early vulvar cancer. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2011; (5): CD002224 [PMID: 21563133 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002224]
- 14 De Hullu JA, Hollema H, Lolkema S, Boezen M, Boonstra H, Burger MP, Aalders JG, Mourits MJ, Van Der Zee AG. Vulvar carcinoma. The price of less radical surgery. *Cancer* 2002; **95**: 2331-2338 [PMID: 12436439 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.10969]
- 15 Rouzier R, Haddad B, Dubernard G, Dubois P, Paniel BJ. Inguinofemoral dissection for carcinoma of the vulva: effect of modifications of extent and technique on morbidity and survival. *J Am Coll Surg* 2003; **196**: 442-450 [PMID: 12648697 DOI: 10.1016/S1072-7515(02)01895-1]
- 16 Lawrie TA, Patel A, Martin-Hirsch PP, Bryant A, Ratnavelu ND, Naik R, Ralte A. Sentinel node assessment for diagnosis of groin lymph node involvement in vulval cancer. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; **6**: CD010409 [PMID: 24970683 DOI: 10.1002/14651858]
- 17 Van der Zee AG, Oonk MH, De Hullu JA, Ansink AC, Vergote

- I, Verheijen RH, Maggioni A, Gaarenstroom KN, Baldwin PJ, Van Dorst EB, Van der Velden J, Hermans RH, van der Putten H, Drouin P, Schneider A, Sluiter WJ. Sentinel node dissection is safe in the treatment of early-stage vulvar cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 884-889 [PMID: 18281661 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.14.0566]
- 18 **Levenback CF**, Ali S, Coleman RL, Gold MA, Fowler JM, Judson PL, Bell MC, De Geest K, Spirtos NM, Potkul RK, Leitao MM, Bakkum-Gamez JN, Rossi EC, Lentz SS, Burke JJ, Van Le L, Trimble CL. Lymphatic mapping and sentinel lymph node biopsy in women with squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva: a gynecologic oncology group study. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: 3786-3791 [PMID: 22753905 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.41.2528]
  - 19 **Oonk MH**, van Hemel BM, Hollema H, de Hullu JA, Ansink AC, Vergote I, Verheijen RH, Maggioni A, Gaarenstroom KN, Baldwin PJ, van Dorst EB, van der Velden J, Hermans RH, van der Putten HW, Drouin P, Runnebaum IB, Sluiter WJ, van der Zee AG. Size of sentinel-node metastasis and chances of non-sentinel-node involvement and survival in early stage vulvar cancer: results from GROINSS-V, a multicentre observational study. *Lancet Oncol* 2010; **11**: 646-652 [PMID: 20537946]
  - 20 **Mahner S**, Jueckstock J, Hilpert F, Neuser P, Harter P, de Gregorio N, Hasenburger A, Schouli J, Habermann A, Hillemanns P, Fuerst S, Strauss HG, Baumann K, Thiel F, Mustea A, Meier W, du Bois A, Griebel LF, Woelber L. Adjuvant therapy in lymph node-positive vulvar cancer: the AGO-CaRE-1 study. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2015; **107**: pii: dju426 [PMID: 25618900 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/dju426]
  - 21 **van der Velden J**, Ansink A. In regards to Katz et al.: The role of radiation therapy in preventing regional recurrences of invasive squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva (Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys 2003; **57**: 409-418). *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2004; **58**: 1635; author reply 1635-1636 [PMID: 15050345 DOI: 10.1016/S0360-3016(03)00591-1]
  - 22 **Moore DH**, Ali S, Koh WJ, Michael H, Barnes MN, McCourt CK, Homesley HD, Walker JL. A phase II trial of radiation therapy and weekly cisplatin chemotherapy for the treatment of locally-advanced squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva: a gynecologic oncology group study. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **124**: 529-533 [PMID: 22079361 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.11.003]
  - 23 **Gaarenstroom KN**, Kenter GG, Trimbos JB, Agous I, Amant F, Peters AA, Vergote I. Postoperative complications after vulvectomy and inguinofemoral lymphadenectomy using separate groin incisions. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2003; **13**: 522-527 [PMID: 12911732 DOI: 10.1046/j.1525-1438.2003.13304.x]
  - 24 **Crowther ME**, Corney RH, Shepherd JH. Psychosexual implications of gynaecological cancer. *BMJ* 1994; **308**: 869-870 [PMID: 8173361 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.308.6933.869]
  - 25 **Andersen BL**, van Der Does J. Surviving gynecologic cancer and coping with sexual morbidity: an international problem. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 1994; **4**: 225-240 [PMID: 11578412]
  - 26 **Shepherd V**, Davidson EJ, Davies-Humphreys J. Extramammary Paget's disease. *BJOG* 2005; **112**: 273-279 [PMID: 15713139 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.2004.00438.x]
  - 27 **Nomura H**, Matoda M, Okamoto S, Kondo E, Omatsu K, Kato K, Takeshima N. Clinicopathologic features and treatment outcomes of primary extramammary Paget disease of the vulva. *J Low Genit Tract Dis* 2015; **19**: 145-148 [PMID: 25105720 DOI: 10.1097/LGT0000000000000063]
  - 28 **FUTURE II Study Group**. Quadrivalent vaccine against human papillomavirus to prevent high-grade cervical lesions. *N Engl J Med* 2007; **356**: 1915-1927 [PMID: 17494925 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa061741]
  - 29 **De Vuyst H**, Clifford GM, Nascimento MC, Madeleine MM, Franceschi S. Prevalence and type distribution of human papillomavirus in carcinoma and intraepithelial neoplasia of the vulva, vagina and anus: a meta-analysis. *Int J Cancer* 2009; **124**: 1626-1636 [PMID: 19115209 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.24116]
  - 30 **van Seters M**, van Beurden M, ten Kate FJ, Beckmann I, Ewing PC, Eijkemans MJ, Kagie MJ, Meijer CJ, Aaronson NK, Kleijnan A, Heijmans-Antonissen C, Zijlstra FJ, Burger MP, Helmerhorst TJ. Treatment of vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia with topical imiquimod. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **358**: 1465-1473 [PMID: 18385498 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa072685]

**P- Reviewer:** Kruse AJ, Khajehei M, Rovas L, Yokoyama Y

**S- Editor:** Qi Y **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Wu HL



## Imperative for improvements and international convergence of intrapartum fetal monitoring: A bird's eye view

Shashikant L Sholapurkar

Shashikant L Sholapurkar, Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Princess Anne Wing, Royal United Hospital Bath NHS Trust, Bath BA1 3LE, United Kingdom

**Author contributions:** Sholapurkar SL conceived and wrote the manuscript.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** Author has no conflict of interest or funding to declare.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Shashikant L Sholapurkar, MD, DNB, MRCOG, Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Princess Anne Wing, Royal United Hospital Bath NHS Trust, Combe Park, Bath BA1 3LE, United Kingdom. [s.sholapurkar@nhs.net](mailto:s.sholapurkar@nhs.net)  
Telephone: +44-1225-429341  
Fax: +44-1225-825464

Received: August 17, 2015  
Peer-review started: August 21, 2015  
First decision: October 13, 2015  
Revised: October 25, 2015  
Accepted: November 23, 2015  
Article in press: November 25, 2015  
Published online: February 10, 2016

### Abstract

Intrapartum fetal monitoring has been criticized for the lack of evidence of improvement in fetal outcome despite causing increased operative intervention. Paradoxically, cardiotocography (CTG) has been a major

driver for litigation for neonatal neurological injury. This analytical review tries to explore why extensive clinical studies and trials over 50 years have failed to demonstrate or bring about significant improvement in intrapartum fetal monitoring. There seems a need for significant reform. International congruence on most aspects of CTG interpretation [definitions of fetal heart rate (FHR) parameters, CTG recording speed, 3-tier systems, *etc.*] is highly desirable to facilitate future meaningful clinical studies, evaluation and progress in this field. The FHR changes are non-specific and poor surrogate for fetal well-being. As a compromise for maintaining low false-negative results for fetal acidemia, a high false-positive value may have to be accepted. The need for redefining the place of adjuvant tests of fetal well-being like fetal blood sampling or fetal electrocardiography (ECG) is discussed. The FHR decelerations are often deterministic (center-stage) in CTG interpretation and 3-tier categorization. It is discussed if their scientific and physiological classification (avoiding framing and confirmation biases) may be best based on time relationship to uterine contractions alone. This may provide a more sound foundation which could improve the reliability and further evolution of 3-tier systems. Results of several trials of fetal ECG (STAN) have been inconclusive and a need for a fresh approach or strategy is considered. It is hoped that the long anticipated Computer-aided analysis of CTG will be more objective and reliable (overcome human factors) and will offer valuable support or may eventually replace visual CTG interpretation. In any case, the recording and archiving all CTGs digitally and testing cord blood gases routinely in every delivery would be highly desirable for future research. This would facilitate well designed retrospective studies which can be very informative especially when prospective randomised controlled trials are often difficult and resource-intensive.

**Key words:** Cardiotocography; Electronic fetal monitoring



toring; Fetal heart rate decelerations; Intrapartum fetal monitoring; Intrapartum fetal surveillance; Fetal electrocardiography; Computerised cardiotocography

© **The Author(s) 2016.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Intrapartum fetal monitoring remains unsatisfactory because of the variability and errors in the interpretation of cardiotocographs and lack of proven benefit. Extensive clinical studies over the last 50 years have given divergent results because of the heterogeneity. There is a need for a significant reform of electronic fetal monitoring (EFM) with every aspect critically examined and debated. This analytical essay presents an overview of the current and newer modalities of EFM. It examines controversies and opportunities for improvement in American and European practice. Avoidance of biases, international congruence in terminology/standardization and refinement of adjunctive tests of fetal well-being are explored.

Sholapurkar SL. Imperative for improvements and international convergence of intrapartum fetal monitoring: A bird's eye view. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 102-109 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/102.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.102>

## INTRODUCTION

Cardiotocography (CTG) or the interpretation of fetal heart rate (FHR) patterns has been the most widely accepted and practiced method of intrapartum fetal monitoring for over 50 years. However, it remains the most controversial and problematic issue in Obstetrics despite being the commonest medical procedure in the western world and also the most extensively studied<sup>[1,2]</sup>. Controlled prospective trials show that caesarean section and operative delivery rates are increased with continuous CTG without improvement in fetal/neonatal short or long term outcomes irrespective of low or high risk labours<sup>[3]</sup>. Nevertheless, the CTG has become a "standard of care" expected especially in the presence of common risk factors. Severe perinatal hypoxia remains rare but can lead to distressing catastrophic outcomes like perinatal death or permanent neurological damage. Most developed countries spend big sums of money on litigation for cerebral palsy. For example the National Health Service in England paid out £3.1 billion (49% value of all claims) for negligence linked to maternity care in the past decade, mainly for cerebral palsy and errors in the interpretation of CTGs<sup>[4]</sup>. The term electronic fetal monitoring (EFM) is generally used to encompass techniques other than simple auscultation of FHR with a stethoscope or Doppler device. Although perceived to be a "defensive" practice, it is the EFM that has been the main driver for the increasing litigation for neonatal neurological injury and cerebral palsy<sup>[5]</sup>.

This financial imperative (rightly or wrongly) pushes the issue of "intrapartum fetal monitoring" to the top of the patient safety agenda. This of course highlights the need, opportunity and potential to improve intrapartum fetal monitoring and patient safety. There is a strong desire and wish for some other different modern technology to replace CTG. However, presently it is difficult to see which cutting edge technology would be user-friendly, relatively non-invasive, and at the same time cost-effective and suitable for mass-application to the physiological process of childbirth. National Professional bodies have devised 3-tier systems of CTG interpretation which utilise multiple FHR parameters in different combinations with increasing degrees of abnormalities with an aim to achieve acceptable positive and negative predictive values to detect fetal academia<sup>[1,6-11]</sup>. However, the North American 3-tier has been found wanting<sup>[2,12,13]</sup> with a major drawback that almost 80% of all FHR tracings fall in the Category II of indeterminate significance<sup>[12]</sup>. "Early" decelerations are extremely rare and all other FHR decelerations (late and all variable decelerations) fall in the category II<sup>[12]</sup>. The clinicians can "continue to observe", "evaluate further" or "deliver" on individualized basis as no management algorithm can be prescribed for category 2, which has been a major criticism<sup>[12,13]</sup>. In the United Kingdom, there have been no significant clinical trials of the 3-tier system but the concept of "atypical variable decelerations" (with major impact on classification of CTGs) has been found to be flawed<sup>[4]</sup>. The National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) has recently abandoned the sub-classification of variable decelerations into "typical" and "atypical"<sup>[6]</sup>. Moreover, the CTG has a 99.8% false positive rate in predicting CP (cord pH < 7.00)<sup>[3]</sup> and there is scant evidence if at all that EFM has improved neonatal well-being. The very high disappointment with EFM has led Sartwelle *et al*<sup>[5]</sup> to argue that EFM is a "junk science". They propose that during medico-legal proceedings, the evidence from EFM should be considered invalid and inadmissible, based on the "Daubert doctrine" which excludes "junk science" from the courtrooms. They make a strong reasoned argument for a "change in course or abandonment of the ship (*i.e.*, EFM)"; a wake-up call for Obstetricians<sup>[5]</sup>.

This brief analytical review is mainly directed at Obstetricians and midwives and intended to encourage a wide debate on the current perspectives, possible deficiencies, remedies, and future developments. It is not a "systematic review" of EFM which has already been presented by NICE and other national professional bodies<sup>[1,6,8,10,14,15]</sup>. This limited review is not intended to be entirely comprehensive or all-inclusive. Indeed some facets of EFM, not essential to the thesis presented, would be outside the remit of this paper. The issues and opinions described remain controversial by very nature but need to be debated and some experts may hold different views. The main focus is "CTG and FHR patterns especially decelerations". Other techniques

like “intermittent auscultation (IA) of FHR”, fetal electrocardiography (ECG) (STAN or ST analysis), fetal oximetry and computerised CTG interpretation will be discussed briefly and not in-depth. The 3-tier systems of CTG interpretation in specific or proposing an alternative “proven” system are not the subject or purpose of this review.

## EFM AND EVIDENCE BASED MEDICINE

EFM (CTG) became a routine clinical practice following pioneering work of Hon and Caldeyro-Barcia in 1950s<sup>[16,17]</sup>. Following the revolution of “evidence based medicine” (EBM) since 1980s, EFM has been subjected numerous clinical studies and trials. The International Federation of Gynaecology and Obstetrics (FIGO)<sup>[11]</sup> first proposed a 3-tier system of graded FHR abnormalities, variations of which have been adopted by most national guidelines to standardise the terminology as well as clinical intervention. But none of the national 3-tier classifications were published with the estimate of their sensitivity or false positivity<sup>[18]</sup>. A recent high quality study found no correlation of American 3-tier system to neonatal acidemia<sup>[13]</sup>. Although there are studies showing good correlation between CTG and neonatal acidemia, the overall quality of available evidence of reliability of CTG can be summarized in the words of NICE as, “The evidence is of moderate and low quality that there is moderate to low degree of association between different FHR parameters and neonatal acidosis”<sup>[6]</sup>. The extensive experience, evaluation and application of EBM has done very little to lessen these controversies. The reasons seem to be as follows: (1) the significant variations in definitions and grading of FHR parameters in different studies over the years make it extremely difficult to draw valid conclusions. Moreover, different and variable benchmarks of fetal outcome like pH (7.05 to 7.20); base deficit (-8.0 to -12.0), lactate, Apgar scores, etc. further complicate comparisons; (2) outcomes of importance (e.g., hypoxemic ischemic encephalopathy) are very rare so that large numbers of cases would be needed to show a difference; (3) it is almost impossible to separate “treatment effect” because the intervention in presence of abnormal CTG modifies the neonatal outcome. It is unethical and impractical to conduct truly blinded randomised controlled trials (RCTs); (4) the fetal heart rate is only a surrogate for fetal hypoxia and not a very good one<sup>[6]</sup>; (5) complex tasks of “pattern recognition” together with clinical evaluation may not be captured in simple algorithms and not reflected in the research trials and reviews<sup>[6]</sup>. Previous studies have often produced contradictory results owing to methodological and logistical limitations. This also means that definitive evidence from clinical studies (hard to come) need not be a precondition for the reform of CTG interpretation if prompted and supported by careful systematic observation, deliberation and restoration of physiological principles. There is a place for Bayesian approach with variable emphasis on observational data<sup>[19]</sup>; and

(6) framing and Confirmation biases: These poorly recognised biases seem important correctable factors. “Anchoring/framing bias” is the tendency to create coherent initial picture without examining all available information<sup>[20-22]</sup>. “Confirmation bias” follows when we selectively focus upon evidence that supports our beliefs, while ignoring more comprehensive evidence that disproves these idea<sup>[20-22]</sup>. These biases are said to be very common and may particularly apply to interpretation of FHR decelerations<sup>[22]</sup> which are centre-stage in interpretation of CTG<sup>[23]</sup>.

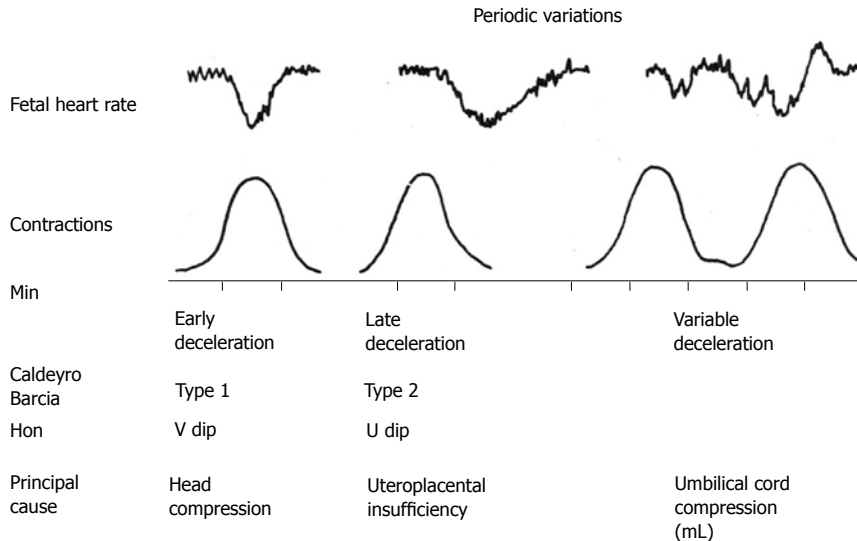
Despite the lack of good quality evidence of improvement in neonatal outcome overall, many Obstetricians believe that failure to use EFM may lead to bad outcome. The CTG generates an explicit confirmation and documentation of FHR which can be reassuring to patients and health workers, but has a potential to provoke anxiety as well. Recently the author conducted a survey of personal preferences of clinicians in our Institute with existing liberal culture of “IA of FHR”. They were reminded of the evidence that CTG is not reliable in preventing CP or intrapartum hypoxia even in the presence of risk factors but does increase the operative delivery rate. All 14 Obstetricians and 11 of 15 midwives still chose to have CTG for themselves or their partners in the presence of risk factors. Thus, there seems a disconnect between the “evidence” and the beliefs/experience of birth-attendants themselves. Secondly, they seem to judge any harm from EFM in a different context/balance.

## POSSIBLE REMEDIES TO IMPROVE CTG INTERPRETATION

There is a scope to make significant improvements and international congruence in CTG interpretation although one could not expect it to become a perfect test. The remedial measures could start by addressing variations and flaws/biases in categorization of FHR decelerations, variations in 3-tier CTG interpretation systems, standardization of CTG recording speed and refining the place of confirmatory tests of fetal well-being like fetal scalp blood sampling (FSBS).

## VARIATIONS IN CATEGORIZATION OF FHR PARAMETERS

There is relative consistency and uniformity in defining normal and abnormal baseline FHR, baseline variability and accelerations in different countries on both sides of the Atlantic over the last 50 years. However, the opposite is true when it comes to FHR decelerations which are more complex to interpret by very nature. Unfortunately, unambiguous and specific standardised definitions of FHR decelerations are missing in NICE guidelines<sup>[5,6]</sup> thus leaving several different sources to propose their own definitions often based on arbitrary and sometimes unscientific or implausible (fictional)



**Figure 1** Diagrammatic representation of early, late and variable decelerations as practiced in British Obstetrics before 2007 (Reproduced with kind permission from "Principles of Obstetrics" by Bryan Hibbard, 1988)<sup>[26]</sup>. Note the apparent rapid descent of early decelerations. CTG paper speed 1 cm/min.

criteria<sup>[4]</sup>. This can constitute major framing biases which can go on to corrupt subsequent systems of interpretation incorporating them. FHR decelerations are the most common aberrant features and thus often deterministic in classifying CTGs into the 3-tier systems. Indeed the FHR decelerations were the "low hanging fruit" (generally with major correlation to outcomes) which were immediately picked up by the pioneers like Hon *et al*<sup>[16]</sup> and the group of Caldeyro-Bracia<sup>[17]</sup> based on clearly discernible observational evidence<sup>[22]</sup>. They categorised FHR decelerations based on time relationship to contractions only as indeed reflected in the terminology itself<sup>[16,17]</sup>. As a secondary hypothesis, they proposed that the early decelerations may be the result of head compression and those with variable time relationship to contractions may be due to cord compression although their classification was not primarily "etiological"<sup>[16,17,24]</sup>. Similar categorization was rooted and practiced in British Obstetrics until very recently which meant "early" decelerations were the most common variety (Figure 1)<sup>[25-28]</sup>. FHR decelerations can be said to be of two main types, one due to benign parasympathetic (vagal) reflex and other due to hypoxic (chemoreceptor) vagal reflex or direct suppression of myocardium in later stages<sup>[24]</sup>. The clue to differentiating this is in the "timing" rather than "shape" since hypoxia during contraction has a lag time to develop or worsen<sup>[24]</sup>. FHR decelerations which start recovering immediately after the peak of contraction (early timing) are not likely to have hypoxic component and hence it would be important to appropriately recognise them as benign ("early"). On the other hand the etiology of decelerations would always remain putative and possibly multifactorial with one of the causes predominant<sup>[24]</sup>. Although the current American and European categorizations of FHR decelerations seems to claim its foundation and legitimacy from the pioneering work and terminology

of Edward Hon, they constitute a significant departure from Hon's original description<sup>[16]</sup>. Sometime in the late 20<sup>th</sup> century the American classification of decelerations seems to have become primarily "etiological" despite the many pitfalls. All decelerations with rapid descent were presumed to be due to cord compression even though head-compression could also cause rapid decelerations<sup>[23-25]</sup>. Thus all rapid decelerations were by definition called "variable" even though majority of them started early during contractions with nadir corresponding to the peak of contraction (early timing). This paradoxically made "early benign decelerations" extremely rare in the recent American practice. Does this represent a framing bias in need of correction? Terms that are specific, precise and truly descriptive (embody what it says on the tin) tend to be useful or convey meaningful information. Misleading (ambiguous) terminology can lead to loss of meaning. Moreover, the major focus on putative "repeated cord compression" as a main cause for development of fetal hypoxemia lacks clinical evidence and ignores the most likely cause of hypoxemia namely the repeated drop in maternal uteroplacental perfusion during contractions (especially on the background of reduced uteroplacental reserve or excessive uterine action). Etiological classification (misconstrued?) placing vast majority of FHR decelerations in the category of "variable decelerations" - based on unscientific hypotheses and misjudged application of animal experiments<sup>[22,24]</sup> - does not seem to have worked and indeed has been suggested to lead to loss of meaning. The pathophysiological hypotheses proposed for "cord compression decelerations" have several contradictions and "rapid" descent of decelerations does not discriminate between decelerations due to cord or head compression<sup>[22,24]</sup>. The heterogeneity in categorization of FHR decelerations and the interpretation of their significance (pathological nature) has been so great over the years and in different studies

in various countries that it has become impossible to draw any valid conclusions from the huge amount of clinical studies available in the literature. Although, more meaningful research is always welcome, it has been hard to come in this field, and should not be a precondition for examining validity of every aspect of CTG interpretation. Debating and arguing in a deliberative and interactive context can also help us to reach valid conclusions or closer to the scientific truth<sup>[22]</sup>. There is a substantial observational and experimental evidence that shape or rate of descent of FHR decelerations does not correlate to etiology of decelerations or fetal condition<sup>[17]</sup>. It would be greatly beneficial to reform the categorization of FHR decelerations in the USA and Europe correcting the framing/confirmations biases and flaws - the compatibility of which with scientific practice can be debated. Such a reform could go a long way in improving the reliability and further evolution of 3-tier systems. Simply standardization/uniform adoption and application of EBM principles on their own are unlikely to compensate for fundamental framing and confirmation biases.

## CTG RECORDING SPEED

On the surface, it may seem unimportant that there is a difference in the CTG recording speed in different countries *viz* 3 cm/min in North America and 1 cm/min in United Kingdom and Australia-New Zealand. However, the CTG speed represents the horizontal scale and determines the "apparent" shape of the FHR waveforms especially decelerations. Thus gradual decelerations (U shaped) on an American CTG would appear rapid (V shaped) on British CTG. In fact the faster speed of CTG (3 cm/min) may have (erroneously?) drawn more attention to the shape of the deceleration waveform. Baseline variability, accelerations and decelerations can be judged quite well on CTGs with both speeds. With abandonment of reliance on so called atypical features of FHR decelerations, it is no longer necessary to look for FHR variability during a deceleration, which may have been possible with faster CTG speed of 3 cm/min. In any case this was never found practically useful. The slower CTG speed (1 cm/min) does seem to have one distinct advantage that FHR patterns over much longer time periods, *e.g.*, 30-60 min can be visually examined and interpreted at a glance whether on a paper tracing or on a monitor screen. Since visual characterization and analysis of FHR waveforms has been of such critical importance, it would be highly desirable to adopt one uniform speed of CTG tracing across the globe to reduce heterogeneity in description and interpretation.

## CONFIRMATORY/ADJUNCTIVE TESTS OF FETAL WELL-BEING

FHR is a relatively non-specific and poor surrogate for fetal condition<sup>[6]</sup>. Thus, with the current CTG interpretation, to achieve a very low false negative value

for fetal acidemia, one has to settle for high false positive rate. In some clinical situations abnormal CTG may be enough to expedite delivery. But many times an adjunctive test may be necessary. In the United Kingdom, FSBS is a widely accepted and practiced test. Even FSBS is no stranger to controversy. There are reviews which propose that addition of FSBS to CTG interpretation does not improve outcomes or reduce operative intervention<sup>[29]</sup>. However, such meta-analyses are fraught with significant flaws and biases arising from dubious and variable quality of studies included. This seems another example as to how evidence from meta-analysis of several clinical studies runs counter to practically observed benefits of a long accepted practice. Vast majority of British hospitals use FSBS and find it practically useful in every day practice and hence it is unlikely that FSBS will be abandoned in British practice any time soon. FSBS following an abnormal CTG is quite often shows normal result thus allowing continuation of labor and often achieving vaginal delivery. It seems possible that FSBS result may be falsely positive (acidemic) because of stasis of blood flow in peripheral tissues especially in the presence of significant caput; but it is the extremely low "false negative" rate of FSBS that makes it very useful in day to day practice. FSBS is uncommon in American practice, but that probably leaves a gap to be filled. Fetal scalp stimulation test and vibroacoustic stimulation test seem promising<sup>[15]</sup> but they need to be more extensively and systematically studies. The role of fetal ECG (STAN) is discussed later.

## IA

NICE suggests that about 45% of all labors are at low risk for fetal hypoxia and strongly recommends IA for these labors with fairly specific criteria to switch over to CTG<sup>[6]</sup>. The RCTs of IA vs CTG have shown equivalent perinatal outcome with reduced operative intervention in low risk labours<sup>[3]</sup>. However, even meta-analysis of these trials is underpowered to show possible differences because of rarity of serious adverse outcomes. Fortunately, the incidence of significant birth asphyxia in the absence of risk factors or an acute intrapartum adverse event is very low. Hence, a few regimes of IA can be quite loose or relaxed without frequent noticeable adverse events. For example, in Netherlands where all home births receive IA only, no structured guidelines are followed and as a convention FHR is auscultated every 2 h or so in the active first stage (personal correspondence with Jonge A de, 2015)<sup>[30]</sup>. NICE on the other hand recommends counting FHR with Doppler or Pinard stethoscope for 60 s after a contraction every 15 min in first stage and every 5 min in second stage of labor<sup>[6,7]</sup>. The intention is to detect/suspect late FHR decelerations<sup>[6]</sup>. In developing countries like China and India, the vast majority of labors (low and high risk) are monitored by IA and local protocols are often unstructured and variable; but are likely to be increasingly modelled on



NICE guidelines (personal correspondence). With the increasing use of IA, it is hoped that there may be future refinements<sup>[31,32]</sup>. However, it seems unlikely that more RCTs of IA vs CTG (requiring very large number of subjects) will be conducted in future.

## FETAL ECG

Fetal ECG is recorded with a fetal scalp electrode. The ST segment analysis (STAN) has been practiced for over a decade mainly in Nordic countries but also in a few centres in United Kingdom and United States. Being a new arrival, STAN has undergone relatively ample evaluation in well-designed clinical trials. But, Five RCTs and five systematic reviews with meta-analyses have shown very divergent results<sup>[33]</sup>. Does this suggest that we may be looking for marginal gains here? Moreover, an absence of clear background, lack of transparency and a sense of Magic Black Box have been associated with STAN<sup>[33]</sup>. Most importantly and perplexingly, an ST event is supposed to lose its significance if the CTG is "normal". Hence, STAN results (unlike FSBS) seem dependent on the traditional CTG interpretation. Thus any major changes in the CTG interpretation<sup>[2,6]</sup> would further complicate the interpretation of the trials of CTG + STAN vs CTG alone by changing the "starting line" as well as the "finishing line". The largest RCT in United States on 11108 women did not show improved fetal outcomes or reduction in operative delivery unlike some of the trials in Europe<sup>[15,34]</sup>. The authors of this trial highlighted the need for caution when extrapolating results from studies outside the United States. This seems a major weakness in application of STAN, because the interpretation of "non-reassuring CTG" (e.g., Category II of American 3-tier system) varies markedly between United States, Europe, United Kingdom, Australia and New-Zealand. Moreover, the Category II of American 3-tier system has been shown to be clinically unhelpful and already an additional algorithm<sup>[2]</sup> has been proposed to identify the "real" non-reassuring CTGs within the Category II, which may become part of ACOG guidelines. At the same time there are some Obstetric units in Europe<sup>[35]</sup> and Australia (personal correspondence) which have abandoned the use of STAN because of serious adverse outcomes. All these seem major challenges to STAN and a different strategy which evaluates STAN results independent of CTG may need to be considered.

## INTRAPARTUM FETAL PULSE OXIMETRY

This technology involves attachment of light emitting sensor to fetal scalp or temple to measure the proportion of haemoglobin that is carrying oxygen: Thus oxygenation. A recent Cochrane review found that intrapartum fetal pulse oximetry (IFPO) as adjunct to CTG (thus again dependent on correct interpretation of CTG) did not improve neonatal outcome or reduce the overall incidence of caesarean<sup>[36]</sup>. Again IFPO in parallel to CTG

and FSBS may need to be subjected to more extensive clinical studies.

## COMPUTERISED CTG INTERPRETATION

It is hoped that the long anticipated computer aided analysis of CTG will be more objective and reliable (overcome human factors) and may eventually replace visual CTG interpretation. However, despite the exponential increase in analytical and functional power of digital technology in the last decade, the development and adoption of "computerised CTG" has remarkably lagged behind. The difficulties are providing good quality evidence of its reliability or superiority over visual CTG interpretation, licensing and medicolegal considerations. Secondly, although the computerised CTG interpretation takes away inter-observer variation, there can be variations in FHR signal sampling and processing<sup>[15]</sup>, and there may be a need for standardization probably supported by clinical trials, a challenging task in the field of EFM. Many singular instruments/parameters like "total deceleration area", "short-term variability", "approximate entropy" and "phase-rectified signal averaging" have been shown to correlate to fetal status to variable degrees. But a much "stronger" correlation with useful positive and negative predictive values would be required for clinical application. It is worth noting that the FHR patterns during the expulsive second stage are quite different from first stage (more frequent and deeper decelerations and higher variability). A mental adjustment is made for this difference during visual CTG interpretation which may not occur in computerised analysis. Hence, separate/different computerised analysis criteria (e.g., deceleration area) for the first and second stage of labour would be highly desirable or indeed may improve correlation with fetal status<sup>[24]</sup>. One could argue that the computerised analysis should emulate the principles of visual CTG interpretation. The results of the "INFANT study"<sup>[38]</sup> evaluating a computer based "Intelligent Fetal Assessment" system (K2MS, Plymouth)<sup>[37]</sup> vs continuous CTG are eagerly awaited. The "Infant" (Intelligent Fetal Assessment) software emulates the principles of visual interpretation and provides 4 colour-coded categories<sup>[37]</sup>. Will such softwares need to be recalibrated and re-evaluated when visual CTG interpretation is changed significantly<sup>[2,6]</sup>? These are major challenges. Another software PeriCALM Patterns™ (PeriGen, Princeton, NJ, United States) attempts to recognise EFM patterns based on baseline, baseline variability, FHR decelerations and contractions<sup>[18]</sup>. The "Infant" as well as PeriCALM™ do not claim to replace human visual CTG interpretation but propose to provide additional support at present. In any case, the recording and archiving all CTGs digitally and testing cord blood gases routinely in every delivery would be highly desirable. This would facilitate well designed retrospective studies which can be very informative especially when prospective RCTs are often impractical and resource-intensive.

## COMMON PITFALLS IN INTRAPARTUM FETAL MONITORING

Errors in CTG interpretation are possible at any of the three stages involved namely signal acquisition, interpretation of signal (e.g., FHR pattern) and clinical intervention<sup>[18]</sup>.

### Signal acquisition

The technology of obtaining FHR record with external Doppler and fetal scalp electrode has improved remarkably. Both maternal and fetal heart rates should be recorded and displayed which should eliminate mistaking maternal heart rate signal as FHR. A good record of timing and duration of contractions should be obtained in order to correlate them to any FHR decelerations.

### Interpretation of FHR patterns

Variation in interpretation of CTG remains a problem although a lot of standardisation of terminology and analysis has been achieved over last 15 years by most national guidelines<sup>[1,6-11,14]</sup>. The current 3-tier systems are a graded classification of increasing abnormality of combinations of many FHR parameters like baseline, baseline variability and types of decelerations. Experts admit that CTG interpretation still has an element of "art" (expertise and intuition) in addition to "science based rules"<sup>[6]</sup>. Moreover, if standardisation is of the wrong sort then it is likely to be misleading and counterproductive. Framing/confirmation biases should not be dismissed as only of "academic interest"<sup>[39]</sup>. A major or critical framing bias would corrupt all consequent structures (e.g., 3-tier systems) and developments. Thus the guidelines for CTG interpretation are still evolving and could undergo further material change. Secondly, similar CTG abnormalities have a more serious implication (higher positive predictive value) in the presence of high risk factors like growth retardation, thick meconium staining, infection, etc. Lastly, several human factors can affect interpretation like tiredness, tunnel vision, and failure of situational awareness etc<sup>[18]</sup>. These should be addressed by working hours regulations, appropriate staffing levels, fresh eyes approach and regular training updates/skills drills.

### Clinical intervention

This final step is directly responsible for improving fetal outcome and safety<sup>[18]</sup>. The type and speed of clinical intervention has to be fine-tuned to the degree and evolution/progression of CTG abnormality in the given clinical scenario. It is a complex balance to undertake appropriate action without unduly increasing operative intervention. Automated warning systems when based on more reliable computerised CTG interpretation criteria would be very useful to improve patient safety.

## CONCLUSION

Visual analysis of complex FHR patterns in response

to uterine contractions (CTG) in the context of clinical setting remains the most widely practiced method of intrapartum fetal monitoring. National guidelines, (scientific) standardisation of terminology and structured systems of interpretation are important. However, there has been major criticism and disappointment associated with CTG. Hence, it seems urgent and important to have a fresh unbiased thorough assessment, reform CTG interpretation and eliminate any obvious framing/confirmation biases to restore scientific/physiological basis supplemented by clinical studies. International congruence on most aspects of CTG interpretation (definitions of FHR parameters, CTG recording speed, 3-tier systems, etc.) is highly desirable to facilitate future meaningful clinical studies, evaluation and progress. The birth attendants should apply critical thinking and reflection to all techniques of EFM and clinical cases/context, so that they can develop the ability (science and art) to make that final all-inclusive management decision. They should actively participate in the debate in this very practical and clinical subject thus contributing to the future knowledge and developments.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists.** ACOG Practice Bulletin No. 106: Intrapartum fetal heart rate monitoring: nomenclature, interpretation, and general management principles. *Obstet Gynecol* 2009; **114**: 192-202 [PMID: 19546798 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e3181aef106]
- 2 **Clark SL,** Nageotte MP, Garite TJ, Freeman RK, Miller DA, Simpson KR, Belfort MA, Dildy GA, Parer JT, Berkowitz RL, D'Alton M, Rouse DJ, Gilstrap LC, Vintzileos AM, van Dorsten JP, Boehm FH, Miller LA, Hankins GD. Intrapartum management of category II fetal heart rate tracings: towards standardization of care. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2013; **209**: 89-97 [PMID: 23628263 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2013.04.030]
- 3 **Alfirevic Z,** Devane D, Gyte GM. Continuous cardiotocography (CTG) as a form of electronic fetal monitoring (EFM) for fetal assessment during labour. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2013; **5**: CD006066 [PMID: 23728657 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.cd006066.pub2]
- 4 **Sholapurkar SL.** Interpretation of British experts' illustrations of fetal heart rate (FHR) decelerations by Consultant Obstetricians, Registrars and midwives: A prospective observational study - Reasons for major disagreement with experts and implications for clinical practice. *Open J Obstet Gynecol* 2013; **6**: 454-465 [DOI: 10.4236/ojog.2013.36085]
- 5 **Sartwelle TP,** Johnston JC. Cerebral palsy litigation: change course or abandon ship. *J Child Neurol* 2015; **30**: 828-841 [PMID: 25183322 DOI: 10.1177/0883073814543306]
- 6 **National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE).** National Collaborating Centre for Women's and Children's Health. Intrapartum care - Care of healthy women and their babies during childbirth. Guideline No 190., London (UK): 2014. [Accessed 2015 May 15]. Available from: URL: <http://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg190/resources/guidance-intrapartum-care-care-of-healthy-women-and-their-babies-during-childbirth-pdf>
- 7 **National Collaborating Centre for Women's and Children's Health.** Intrapartum Care - Care of healthy women and their babies during childbirth. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (NICE) clinical guideline 55, London (UK): 2007. [Accessed 2014 Jan 15]. Available from: URL: <http://guidance.nice.org.uk/CG55>
- 8 **The Royal Australian and New Zealand College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists (RANZCOG).** Intrapartum fetal surveillance.

- Clinical Guidelines - Third Edition 2014. [Accessed 2014 Oct 10]. Available from: URL: <http://www.ranzcog.edu.au/college-statements-guidelines.html>
- 9 **Asia and Oceania Federation of Obstetrics and Gynecology (AFOG)**. Consensus workshop on electronic fetal monitoring. Miyazaki, Japan, February 2009. [Accessed 2015 Jun 20]. Available from: URL: <http://www.aofog.org/sites/all/files/consensus-workshop-in-miyazaki>
  - 10 **Society of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists of Canada (SOGC)**. Fetal health surveillance: Antepartum and intrapartum consensus guideline. Clinical Practice Guideline No 197, 2007. [accessed 2015 Jul 10]. Available from: URL: <http://sogc.org/wp-content/uploads/2013/01/gui197CPG0709r.pdf>
  - 11 **International Federation of Gynaecology and Obstetrics (FIGO)**. FIGO News - Guidelines for the use of fetal monitoring. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 1987; **25**: 159-167
  - 12 **Coletta J**, Murphy E, Rubeo Z, Gyamfi-Bannerman C. The 5-tier system of assessing fetal heart rate tracings is superior to the 3-tier system in identifying fetal acidemia. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2012; **206**: 226.e1-226.e5 [PMID: 22244473 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2011.12.014]
  - 13 **Cahill AG**, Roehl KA, Odibo AO, Macones GA. Association and prediction of neonatal acidemia. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2012; **207**: 206.e1-206.e8 [PMID: 22939728 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2012.06.046]
  - 14 **Ayres-de-Campos D**, Spong CY, Chandrachar E. For the FIGO intrapartum fetal monitoring consensus panel. Cardiotocography. FIGO consensus guidelines on intrapartum fetal monitoring. Safe Motherhood and Newborn Health Committee Co-ordinator: Diogo Ayres-de-Campos. Available from: URL: <http://www.jsog.or.jp/international/pdf/CTG.pdf>
  - 15 **Visser GHA**, Ayres-de-Campos D. For the FIGO intrapartum fetal monitoring consensus panel. Adjunctive Technologies. FIGO consensus guidelines on intrapartum fetal monitoring. Safe Motherhood and Newborn Health Committee Co-ordinator: Diogo Ayres-de-Campos. Available from: URL: [http://www.jsog.or.jp/international/pdf/adjunctive\\_technologies.pdf](http://www.jsog.or.jp/international/pdf/adjunctive_technologies.pdf)
  - 16 **Hon EH**, Quilligan EJ. Electronic evaluation of fetal heart rate. IX. Further observations on "pathologic" fetal bradycardia. *Clin Obstet Gynecol* 1968; **11**: 145-167 [PMID: 5653675 DOI: 10.1097/00003081-196803000-00009]
  - 17 **Mendez-bauer C**, Poseiro JJ, Arellano-herandez G, Zambrana MA, Caldeyro-barcia R. Effects of atropine on the heart rate of the human fetus during labor. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1963; **85**: 1033-1053 [PMID: 13934833]
  - 18 **Hamilton EF**, Warrick PA. New perspectives in electronic fetal surveillance. *J Perinat Med* 2013; **41**: 83-92 [PMID: 23565511 DOI: 10.1515/jpm-2012-0024]
  - 19 **Hornbuckle J**, Vail A, Abrams KR, Thornton JG. Bayesian interpretation of trials: the example of intrapartum electronic fetal heart rate monitoring. *BJOG* 2000; **107**: 3-10 [PMID: 10645854 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.2000.tb11571.x]
  - 20 **Nickerson RS**. Confirmation bias: a ubiquitous phenomenon in many guises. *Rev Gen Psychol* 1998; **2**: 175-200 [DOI: 10.1037/1089-2680.2.2.175]
  - 21 **Pines JM**. Profiles in patient safety: confirmation bias in emergency medicine. *Acad Emerg Med* 2006; **13**: 90-94 [PMID: 16365325 DOI: 10.1111/j.1553-2712.2006.tb00990.x]
  - 22 **Sholapurkar SL**. Categorization of Fetal Heart Rate Decelerations in American and European Practice: Importance and Imperative of Avoiding Framing and Confirmation Biases. *J Clin Med Res* 2015; **7**: 672-680 [PMID: 26251680 DOI: 10.14740/jocmr2166w]
  - 23 **Westgate JA**, Wibbens B, Bennet L, Wassink G, Parer JT, Gunn AJ. The intrapartum deceleration in center stage: a physiologic approach to the interpretation of fetal heart rate changes in labor. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2007; **197**: 236.e1-236.11 [PMID: 17826402 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2007.03.063]
  - 24 **Sholapurkar SL**. Critical evaluation of American categorization of fetal heart rate (FHR) decelerations and three tier classification—Shortcomings, contradictions, remedies and need for debate. *Open J Obstet Gynecol* 2013; **3**: 362-370 [DOI: 10.4236/ojog.2013.33067]
  - 25 **Sholapurkar SL**. The conundrum of vanishing early decelerations in British obstetrics, a step backwards? Detailed appraisal of British and American classifications of fetal heart rate decelerations - fallacies of emphasis on waveform and putative aetiology. *J Obstet Gynaecol* 2012; **32**: 505-511 [PMID: 22779949 DOI: 10.3109/01443615.2012.689029]
  - 26 **Hibbard BM**. Assessment of fetal condition during labor. In: Hibbard BM. Principles of Obstetrics. 1st ed. London: Butterworth & Co. (Publishers) Ltd, 1988: 472-489
  - 27 **Edington PT**, Sibanda J, Beard RW. Influence on clinical practice of routine intra-partum fetal monitoring. *Br Med J* 1975; **3**: 341-343 [PMID: 239781 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.3.5979.341]
  - 28 **Steer PJ**, Little DJ, Lewis NL, Kelly MC, Beard RW. The effect of membrane rupture on fetal heart rate in induced labour. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol* 1976; **83**: 454-459 [PMID: 1276104 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.1976.tb00865.x]
  - 29 **Chandrachar E**. Fetal scalp blood sampling during labour: is it a useful diagnostic test or a historical test that no longer has a place in modern clinical obstetrics? *BJOG* 2014; **121**: 1056-1060; discussion 1060-1062 [PMID: 24597746 DOI: 10.1111/1471-0528.13162]
  - 30 **de Jonge A**, Geerts CC, van der Goes BY, Mol BW, Buitendijk SE, Nijhuis JG. Perinatal mortality and morbidity up to 28 days after birth among 743 070 low-risk planned home and hospital births: a cohort study based on three merged national perinatal databases. *BJOG* 2015; **122**: 720-728 [PMID: 25204886 DOI: 10.1111/1471-0528.13084]
  - 31 **Sholapurkar SL**. Intermittent auscultation of fetal heart rate during labour - a widely accepted technique for low risk pregnancies: but are the current national guidelines robust and practical? *J Obstet Gynaecol* 2010; **30**: 537-540 [PMID: 20701496 DOI: 10.3109/01443615.2010.484108]
  - 32 **Sholapurkar SL**. Intermittent Auscultation in Labor: Could It Be Missing Many Pathological (Late) Fetal Heart Rate Decelerations? Analytical Review and Rationale for Improvement Supported by Clinical Cases. *J Clin Med Res* 2015; **7**: 919-925 [PMID: 26566404 DOI: 10.14740/jocmr2298w]
  - 33 **Langhoff-Roos J**. CTG or STAN--with or without FBS? *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand* 2014; **93**: 531-532 [PMID: 24889046 DOI: 10.1111/aogs.12410]
  - 34 **Belfort MA**, Saade GR, Thom E, Blackwell SC, Reddy UM, Thorp JM Jr, Tita AT, Miller RS, Peaceman AM, McKenna DS, Chien EK, Rouse DJ, Gibbs RS, El-Sayed YY, Sorokin Y, Caritis SN, VanDorsten JP, Eunice Kennedy Shriver National Institute of Child Health and Human Development Maternal-Fetal Medicine Units Network. A Randomized Trial of Intrapartum Fetal ECG ST-Segment Analysis. *N Engl J Med* 2015; **373**: 632-641 [PMID: 26267623 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1500600]
  - 35 **Dokus K**, Zubor P, Matasova K, Visnovsky J, Danko J. Impact of fetal pulse oximetry and ST analysis surveillance withdrawal on rates of obstetric surgery and frequency of low birth umbilical artery pH: a cause of rising caesarean rates? *J Obstet Gynaecol* 2013; **33**: 685-688 [PMID: 24127954 DOI: 10.3109/01443615.2013.817978]
  - 36 **East CE**, Begg L, Colditz PB, Lau R. Fetal pulse oximetry for fetal assessment in labour. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; **10**: CD004075 [PMID: 25287809 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.cd004075.pub4]
  - 37 **INFANT Study**. A study of decision support in women requiring CTG monitoring in labour. Clinical Trials Unit - University College London - Gower Street - London. Available from: URL: <http://www.ucl.ac.uk/cctu/researchareas/womenshealth/infant>
  - 38 **Infant**: Intelligent fetal assessment. K2 Medical Systems, Plymouth, UK. Available from: URL: <http://www.k2ms.com/iFMTS-INFANT.html>
  - 39 **Clark SL**. Reply: To PMID 23628263. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2014; **210**: 175-176 [PMID: 23999421 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2013.08.036]

**P- Reviewer:** Bernardes J, Chang YL, Hen YS, Zhang XQ

**S- Editor:** Ji FF **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Wu HL



## Overview of embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma of cervix in women over 40-year-old

Malala Razakanaivo, Nam P Nguyen, Juliette Thariat, Vincent Molinie, Anne-Therese Vlastos, Claire Verschraegen, Vincent Vinh-Hung

Malala Razakanaivo, Joseph Ravoahangy Andrianavalona  
University Hospital, Antananarivo 101, Madagascar

Nam P Nguyen, Radiation Oncology, Howard University  
Hospital, Washington, DC 20060, United States

Juliette Thariat, Antoine-Lacassagne Cancer Center, University  
Nice Sophia Antipolis, 06189 Nice Cedex, France

Juliette Thariat, Rare Cancer Network, Lausanne 1011,  
Switzerland

Vincent Molinie, Department of Pathology, University Hospital  
of Martinique, Fort-de-France 97200, Martinique

Anne-Therese Vlastos, Geneva Gynecology and Obstetrics,  
Place des Philosophes, 1205 Geneva, Switzerland

Claire Verschraegen, Division of Hematology Oncology,  
University of Vermont Cancer Center, Burlington, VT 05405,  
United States

Vincent Vinh-Hung, Radiation Oncology, University Hospital of  
Martinique, Fort-de-France 97200, Martinique

Vincent Vinh-Hung, Radiotherapy Department, UZ Brussel,  
Vrije Universiteit Brussel, 1090 Jette, Belgium

Nam P Nguyen, Juliette Thariat, Vincent Vinh-Hung,  
International Geriatric Radiotherapy Group (<http://igrg.org/>),  
Washington, DC 20060, United States

**Author contributions:** Original concept and design were developed by Nguyen NP, Thariat J and Vinh-Hung V; literature search was performed by Razakanaivo M, Nguyen NP, Verschraegen C and Vinh-Hung V; data revisions were carried out by Nguyen NP, Thariat J, Verschraegen C and Vinh-Hung V; statistical analyses were performed by Vinh-Hung V; Razakanaivo M, Molinie V and Vlastos AT contributed to the writing of the manuscript; all authors approved the final version.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** The authors have no conflicts of interests to report.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Vincent Vinh-Hung, MD, PhD, Radiation Oncology, University Hospital of Martinique, Hôpital Clarac, Bd Pasteur, Fort-de-France 97200, Martinique. [anhxang@gmail.com](mailto:anhxang@gmail.com)  
**Telephone:** +596-696-542019  
**Fax:** +596-596-632254

**Received:** June 27, 2015  
**Peer-review started:** June 30, 2015  
**First decision:** August 16, 2015  
**Revised:** November 11, 2015  
**Accepted:** December 13, 2015  
**Article in press:** December 14, 2015  
**Published online:** February 10, 2016

### Abstract

The literature on cervical embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma (RMS) is reviewed here to identify management guidelines for middle-aged women diagnosed with this rare type of gynecologic cancer. Specifically, the PubMed, Web of Science and Google Scholar databases, were searched to find published case series on cervical embryonal RMS reporting on four or more patients, of whom at least one was > 40-year-old. The  $\chi^2$  test was used to assess heterogeneity. Five articles published between 1986 and 2013 were identified, reporting on a total of 47 patients, of whom 22 (46.8%) were older and 25 (53.2%) younger than 40-year-old. Although the two age groups did not differ significantly by stage of disease or radiotherapy treatment, the older age group



received less chemotherapy (55% *vs* 90%,  $P = 0.008$ ) and had more hysterectomy (86% *vs* 43%,  $P = 0.009$ ). Follow-up data was missing for 18/47 (38.3%) patients. Among the 29 patients with follow-up data, survival was shorter in the older group, with 8/12 (67%) alive and 3 with disease at a median follow-up of 2.6 years, as compared with the younger group that had 15/17 (88%) alive and none with disease at a median follow-up of 3.5 years. The longest survivals among the older women were observed in those who received radiotherapy, including one case with a resected lung metastasis. A prospective multi-institutional collaboration and better follow-up are needed to determine the optimal management of cervical embryonal RMS. Long-term survival appears feasible if management is accompanied by chemotherapy and radiotherapy.

**Key words:** Embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma; Botryoid sarcoma; Cervix; Middle-aged adults; Chemotherapy; Radiotherapy; Review

© The Author(s) 2016. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** The present review of adult cervical embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma case series summarizes 5 studies reporting on 47 female patients, 22 of whom were > 40-year-old. Women over 40 had worse disease-free survival but also received less chemotherapy administration. Although radiotherapy was not often used, the longest survival in the > 40 age group was observed among those who received radiotherapy, including a case with resected lung metastasis. The review argues for multimodality management in this rare disease.

Razakanaivo M, Nguyen NP, Thariat J, Molinie V, Vlastos AT, Verschraegen C, Vinh-Hung V. Overview of embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma of cervix in women over 40-year-old. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 110-117 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/110.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.110>

## INTRODUCTION

Rhabdomyosarcoma (RMS), a mesenchymal tumor with the potential to differentiate into skeletal muscle, is the most common soft tissue sarcoma in children<sup>[1,2]</sup>. It is a complex disease that can originate in any part of the body, from the head or neck to the limbs. The major histologic subtypes are the alveolar rhabdomyosarcoma (ARMS) and the embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma (ERMS). ARMS is frequently characterized by the translocation of t (2; 13) PAX3-FOXO1 and t (1; 13) PAX7-FOXO1, while ERMS typically has a loss of heterozygosity of the short arm of chromosome 11<sup>[1,2]</sup>. ERMS is further divided into two classifications for the sarcoma botryoid variant or spindle cell variant<sup>[2]</sup>. Considerable improvements in the survival of ERMS patients have been attributed to

**Table 1 Intergroup Rhabdomyosarcoma Study Group pretreatment clinical staging system**

Stage	Sites of primary tumor	Tumor size, cm	Regional lymph nodes	Distant metastases
1	Orbit, non-parameningeal head/neck; genito-urinary non-bladder/prostate; biliary tract	Any size	N0 or N1 or Nx	M0
2	All other sites	≤ 5 cm	N0 or Nx	M0
3	All other sites	≤ 5 cm	N1	M0
		> 5 cm	N0 or N1 or Nx	
4	Any site	Any size	N0 or N1 or Nx	M1

N0: Absence of nodal spread; N1: Regional nodes involved; Nx: Unknown nodal status; M0: No metastases; M1: Distant metastases at diagnosis.

intensive chemotherapy<sup>[3]</sup>. While RMS is rare, cervical location is exceedingly rare in adults, but a well-known entity. Thus far, only 10 adult cases of women > 40-year-old have been reported in the literature<sup>[4]</sup>. The present review aims to define the presentation of cervical RMS in adult women. We examined how outcomes of women > 40-year-old compared with younger women diagnosed with ERMS.

## LITERATURE ON ERMS

The PubMed and Web of Science databases were searched for publications on ERMS. The key word combinations used were "rhabdomyosarcoma and embryonal" or "sarcoma and botryoid\*" and "cervical or cervix". The search was expanded manually using Google Scholar. Articles selected were case series reporting on four or more patients with cervical ERMS, among whom at least one was 40-year-old or older. The cutoff age of 40-year-old was chosen because fertility might be less of a concern than in younger women. We also took into consideration a bimodal age distribution around 40 years<sup>[5,6]</sup>. We focused on ERMS because of its preponderance among cervical sarcomas, representing 64.0% of all cervical sarcomas<sup>[7]</sup>.

Two classification systems most commonly used were the pre-treatment TNM-based staging classification (Table 1), and the Intergroup Rhabdomyosarcoma Study Group (IRSG) clinical grouping based on operative pathology (Table 2). Tumor-node-metastasis classification has 4 stages (1-4) varying on the site of primary tumor, tumor size (T), regional lymph node involvement (N) and presence or absence of distant metastases (M). The IRSG classifies tumors in four groups (I-IV). Group I tumors are localized and completely resectable; however, based on whether they are confined to an organ/muscle or infiltrate outside is further classified as groups IA or IB, respectively. Tumors in group II are subdivided into three subgroups (A-C). In these tumors, the microscopic disease remains at margins and/or regional nodes. Group III (A-B) tumors

**Table 2 Intergroup Rhabdomyosarcoma Study Group surgical grouping system**

Group I	Localized disease, completely resected (clear margins, negative regional nodes)
IA	Confined to organ or muscle of origin
IB	Infiltration outside organ or muscle of origin
Group II	Microscopic disease remaining (at margins or in regional nodes)
IIA	Grossly resected tumors with microscopic residual tumor
IIB	Regional disease, completely resected, with nodes involved and/or tumor extension into an adjacent organ
IIC	Regional disease, with involved nodes, grossly resected, but with evidence of microscopic residual tumor
Group III	Incomplete resection or biopsy with gross residual disease remaining
IIIA	After biopsy
IIIB	After major surgical resection
Group IV	Distant metastases present at onset

are characterized by an incomplete resection or biopsy with gross residual disease remaining. Group IV tumors have distant metastases present at onset.

Data extracted from the publications were cross-tabulated by age group, the source of publication, and clinical grouping. For the analyses, we considered a pooled survival analysis using established methods<sup>[8]</sup>. However, upon browsing the publications, we realized that firstly there were no randomized trials, and secondly data were too scarce to allow advanced analyses<sup>[9]</sup>, providing inferential statistical outcomes would be misleading. We restricted the analyses to ad-hoc descriptive statistics, using the  $\chi^2$  test only to indicate heterogeneity of the data. If patients in a group received significantly more treatment than the other group, we would report the *P* value to indicate the heterogeneous treatment attribution. However, if survival outcome differed, we would not test the survival difference. We detailed each retrieved publication as a “vignette”, so as to preserve a direct link with the source. We designed, after the fact, the cross tabulation to go one step beyond the narrative, without overextending to the pretense of a pooled review or a meta-analysis<sup>[10]</sup>.

### Review of ERMS case studies

A total of five eligible publications out of 6180 links from the three internet databases were identified (Figure 1, flowchart according to Moher *et al*<sup>[11]</sup>).

(1) Montag *et al*<sup>[5]</sup>: 4 cases of cervical ERMS; 18-42-year-old. One cervical ERMS patient was 42-year-old; (2) Brand *et al*<sup>[12]</sup>: 5 cases of cervical ERMS; 0-48-year-old. One cervical ERMS patient was 48-year-old; (3) Ferguson *et al*<sup>[13]</sup>: 15 cases of RMS embryonal and non-embryonal, of which 8 were cervical; 17-58-year-old. Five cervical ERMS patients were over 40-year-old; (4) Kriseman *et al*<sup>[14]</sup>: 11 cases; 3-52-year-old. ERMS in 10 cases, undifferentiated RMS in 1 case. Two cervical ERMS patients were > 40-year-old; and (5) Li *et al*<sup>[15]</sup>: 25 cases of ERMS, of which 20 were cervical; 20-89-year-old. Thirteen cervical ERMS patients were > 40-year-old.

Three additional publications also reported adult case series; however, there were no patients > 40-year-old<sup>[16-18]</sup>. Hence, these three publications were not selected for the review.

There were 47 patients with cervical ERMS from the five eligible case studies, with a mean age of 36-year-old at presentation (median, 33 years; range, 1-89 years). Table 3 summarizes patient characteristics according to age group. Table 4 provides the distribution by age and the IRSG grouping.

Montag *et al*<sup>[5]</sup> reported 6 cases of ERMS, diagnostic period unspecified, 4 of which involved the cervix or the cervix and uterus, and 2 of which had involvement of only uterus<sup>[5]</sup>. Five patients had a history of vaginal bleeding starting at 6 wk to 16 mo before the diagnosis. The ages of patients with a cervical origin were 18-, 21-, 26-, and 42-year-old. One patient had a vaginal protrusion of the tumor. The 42-year-old patient had a history of vaginal polyp excision, which had occurred 4 mo earlier. She was treated with a total abdominal hysterectomy (TAH), bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy (BSO), omental biopsy, and pelvic and paraaortic lymph node biopsies. There was no evidence of extra-uterine disease. The patient received external postoperative radiation therapy consisting of 4500 cGy to the whole pelvis and an additional 4000 cGy to the vaginal cuff with radium brachytherapy. Nine months later, the patient developed a metastasis in the right lung. No other site of recurrence could be documented. The patient underwent resection of the upper lobe of the right lung followed by intravenous chemotherapy with nine cycles of doxorubicin and dacarbazine, then nine other cycles combining vincristine, actinomycin-D and cyclophosphamide (VAC), duration unspecified. The patient was alive without evidence of disease 10 years after her initial surgery. The younger patients were treated with radical hysterectomy and bilateral pelvic lymph node dissection (PLND). The 3 younger cervical ERMS patients all received postoperative chemotherapy, and 2 of them also preoperative chemotherapy. They were alive without evidence of disease 17 mo, 7 years, and 8 years after their surgery, respectively. The authors insisted on the importance of initial staging, which included cystoscopy, radiological exams and scans, as the single most important factor affecting prognosis and survival. For non-metastatic locally advanced disease, chemotherapy and radiotherapy have been used to convert inoperable RMS into a resectable disease. The authors argued that surgery followed by adjuvant chemotherapy and, occasionally, radiotherapy for residual disease produced the highest survival rates. An interesting point was the aggressive management of oligometastases in the patient with the longest survival.

Brand *et al*<sup>[12]</sup> reported 4 cases of ERMS of the uterine cervix diagnosed between 1960 and 1986. Patients were 17-mo-old, 2 were 17-year-old, and 1 was 48-year-old. The patients had a history of vaginal bleeding for 1 to 8 mo prior to the diagnosis of ERMS. The patient over 40 was treated with TAH-BSO. She received eight

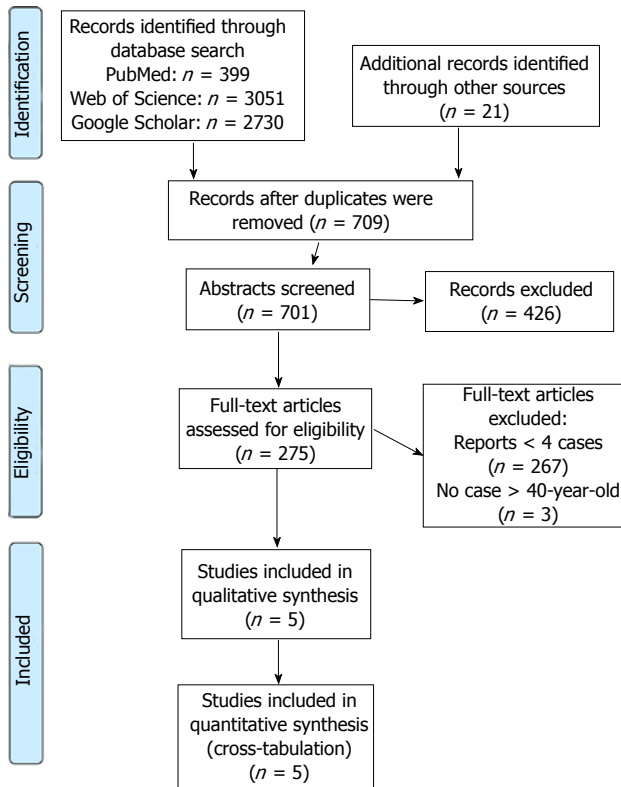


Figure 1 Flow diagram of studies selection.

cycles of cyclophosphamide over a 3-mo period. Vaginal ERMS recurrence was diagnosed 2 mo later, for which she received whole pelvis external radiation (5400 cGy) and intravaginal radium therapy (3500 cGy). She was alive without evidence of malignancy 22 years after the initial treatment. Among the  $\leq 40$ -year-old patients, the 17-mo-old infant presented with pulmonary, bone and brain metastases (Group IV, definition in Table 2). She received vincristine, dactinomycin and doxorubicin over 3 years and was reported to be alive and free of disease 8 years after the diagnosis of ERMS. The two other  $\leq 40$ -year-old patients, who were both 17-year-old, presented with Group IA disease (definition in Table 2, localized disease), and received both TAH-BSO. One received postoperative radiotherapy and was diagnosed with bone metastasis at 1 mo after the radiotherapy; she died with metastatic disease 1 year after the initial diagnosis of ERMS. The other 17-year-old received adjuvant chemotherapy with dactinomycin and vincristine; she was alive and free of disease at 1 year after the initial diagnosis of ERMS. In the series, the outcome of the 48-year-old patient was comparable to that of the younger patients. Brand and colleagues stressed the importance of neo-adjuvant chemotherapy to conserve the function of the bladder, rectum, vagina, and ovaries when feasible. The author considered the role of radiotherapy unclear and did not recommend it for the Group I patients.

Ferguson *et al*<sup>[13]</sup> reported 8 cases of cervical ERMS treated between January 1963 and December 2003. Five patients were  $> 40$ -year-old at diagnosis (range,

46-58 years). All women older than 40 years presented with early-stage disease. The primary therapy for these women was surgery with TAH/BSO/PLND, except for 1 patient who had no BSO. Four of the women received adjuvant therapy, 2 with radiation alone and 2 in combination with chemotherapy. Three patients were alive without evidence of disease at 7, 27, and 37 mo after the diagnosis. Two patients who did not receive chemotherapy died of the disease. Among the 3 younger patients (age at diagnosis: 17-, 22-, and 32-year-old), 2 had a recurrence of the disease. Time to progression was 7 and 9 mo, and these 2 patients died of disease at 5 and 8 mo after recurrence, respectively. The authors stated that survival in women with gynecologic ERMS was not as favorable as compared to the pediatric population but emphasized that ERMS in adults is responsive to chemotherapy. They argued that adequate initial treatment should be multidisciplinary with surgery, radiation, and combination chemotherapy to offer the best chance of survival.

Kriseman *et al*<sup>[14]</sup> reported 11 cases of cervical ERMS between 1980 and 2010. Vaginal bleeding or discharge was present in all 11 patients, and 4 patients also had a protruding vaginal mass as a presenting symptom. Two patients had no staging information available. The other 9 had disease classified as IRSG group I, for whom the authors also provided International Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) staging information intended for carcinoma rather than sarcoma<sup>[19,20]</sup>. All patients received surgery at some point during the treatment. Two patients were  $> 40$ -year-old at diagnosis (49 and 52 years). The 49-year-old patient had FIGO stage IB1 disease (tumor  $\leq 4$  cm). She was treated with TAH-BSO and received adjuvant chemotherapy (cyclophosphamide, doxorubicin, vincristine, and dacarbazine) and radiation beginning 6 mo after the diagnosis (4600 cGy delivered over 31 d). Six years later, this patient was diagnosed with an unresectable high-grade adenocarcinoma of the right parotid which metastasized to the lungs and caused her death. The 52-year-old patient had FIGO stage IB2 disease (tumor  $> 4$  cm). She was treated by cone biopsy and did not receive adjuvant therapy. The patient was in complete remission 19 mo after the end of the treatment. The 9 younger patients presented with stage IB1 disease (2 cases), stage IB2 disease (3 cases), stage IIA disease (tumor involving upper 2/3 of the vagina, without parametrial invasion; 1 case), and stage unknown (2 cases). Eight patients were treated by cone biopsy, and 1 had a TAH. Neo-adjuvant chemotherapy was given in 2/9 cases. Post-operative chemotherapy was given in 6/9 cases. Five patients were alive without evidence of disease at 4, 6, 23, 35, and 121 mo after completion of therapy. One patient was alive with the disease following a local recurrence, 1 died of the disease, 1 died of unknown cause, and 1 died of complications related to neutropenic fever. The authors stressed the importance of multimodal therapy, even at an early stage. They found no differences in

**Table 3** Case-series of cervical embryonal rhabdomyosarcomas reporting on > 4 patients, of whom at least one was > 40-year-old

Author Year Cases	Women ≤ 40-year-old				Women > 40-year-old			
	<i>n</i>	Age, yr	1 <sup>st</sup> treatment ( <i>n</i> )	Follow-up (yr)	<i>n</i>	Age, yr	1 <sup>st</sup> treatment ( <i>n</i> )	Follow-up (yr)
Montag <i>et al</i> <sup>[5]</sup> 1986 <i>n</i> = 4	3	18, 21, 26	TAH (3), BSO (2), LND (2); CT (3)	Alive NED at 1.4 yr, 7 yr, and 8 yr	1	42	TAH-BSO- LND; RT + BT	No local recurrence, but lung metastasis at 9 mo, resection and CT; Alive NED after 10 yr
Brand <i>et al</i> <sup>[12]</sup> 1987 <i>n</i> = 4	3	1.4, 17, 17	TAH (2), BSO (1), LND (1), no surgery (1); CT (2), RT (1)	Died WD at 0.5 yr (case no RT); Alive NED at 1 yr and 8 yr	1	48	TAH-BSO; CT	Vaginal recurrence at 2 mo, pelvic RT + intravaginal brachytherapy; Alive NED after 22 yr
Ferguson <i>et al</i> <sup>[13]</sup> 2007 <i>n</i> = 8	3	17, 22, 32	Unknown (1), TAH (2), BSO (1), LND (2); CT (2), RT (2)	Died WD at 1.8 yr (case CT + RT); Alive NED at 0.2 yr and 10 yr (RT)	5	46, 51, 52, 56, 58	TAH-BSO- LND (4); TAH- LND (1); CT (2); RT (2); BT (2)	Dead WD (2) 1 yr and 1.4 yr after; Alive NED (3) at 0.6 yr, 2 yr, and 3 yr
Kriseman <i>et al</i> <sup>[14]</sup> 2012 <i>n</i> = 11	9	3, 12, 13, 17, 18, 18, 27, 33, 34	No surgery (2), cone biopsy (6), polypectomy (1), TAH-BSO (1), CT (8), RT (1)	No FU (4), Died at date not reported (1) Alive NED (5) at 0.3 yr, 0.5 yr, 2 yr, 3 yr, and 10 yr	2	49  52	TAH-BSO; CT; RT  Cone biopsy; no adjuvant therapy	No recurrence, died after 6 yr from the second primary tumor, adenocarcinoma of parotid; Alive NED after 1.5 yr
Li <i>et al</i> <sup>[15]</sup> 2013 <i>n</i> = 20	7	20, 21, 23, 26, 29, 29, 31	Unknown (2), polypectomy (4), TAH (1) CT (3)	No FU (5); Alive NED (3) at 3.5 yr, 6 yr, and 8 yr	13	54  46 73	TAH  TAH; CT Polypectomy	Alive WD (vaginal recurrence) at 0.4 yr Alive NED at 3 yr Died at 0.4 yr with lung metastasis and a second primary tumor, ductal breast carcinoma No FU data
Summary <i>n</i> = 47	25	Median age 21 yr (range 1-34 yr)	Surgery: TAH 9/21 (42.9%), CT: 18/20 (90.0%), RT: 4/19 (21.1%)	No FU: 8 (32.0%), Alive: 15/17(88.0%), 0 WD, Median FU, 3.5 yr Died: 3/17 (17.6%), at median 1.1 yr	22	Median age 50 yr (range 42-89 yr)	Surgery: TAH 12/14 (85.7%) CT: 6/11 (54.5%) RT: 4/11 (36.4%)	No FU: 10 (45.5%) Alive: 8/12 (66.7%), 3 WD, Median FU 2.6 yr Died: 4 (33.3%), at median 1.2 yr

TAH: Total abdominal hysterectomy; BSO: Bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy; LND: Lymph node dissection; NED: No evidence of disease; WD: With disease; CT: Chemotherapy; RT: External radiotherapy; BT: Brachytherapy; FU: Follow-up.

treatment or survival among women > 19-year-old and younger patients.

Li *et al*<sup>[15]</sup> reported 20 cases of cervical ERMS. Eleven patients were > 40-year-old. A cervical polyp was the most common clinical presentation. The diagnosis was made by biopsy (1 case), polypectomy (8 cases), and hysterectomy (2 cases). Therapeutic modalities were not available for all patients. Of the 3 patients with follow-up, 1 was alive without evidence of disease 3 years later; this case had received chemotherapy. One patient was alive with the disease at 5 mo after treatment. One patient died with pulmonary nodules at 5 mo after the treatment. Seven patients < 40-year-old were diagnosed by biopsy (2 cases) and polypectomy (5 cases). Follow-up data was available for 3 cases. These patients were alive without evidence of disease at 3.5, 6, and 8 years after chemotherapy. Li *et al*<sup>[15]</sup> compared the microscopic diagnosis of cervical ERMS in adults but reported no particular age-related morphological pattern. Their series' age distribution showed a bimodal pattern with a peak at 40-49 years, but the authors did

not comment. The authors discussed the importance of considering ERMS in the differential diagnosis of uterine corpus or cervical spindle cell tumors, regardless of the patient's age.

### Synthetic overview

Both adult and pediatric patients with cervical ERMS presented with vaginal bleeding and sometimes tumor protruding out of the vagina. However, in adults, symptoms can last up to 16 mo<sup>[5]</sup>; in contrast, in pediatric series, the vaginal bleeding and spotting lasted for 1 wk or less<sup>[18]</sup>.

Histologically, ERMS tumors are characterized by myxoid stroma or edematous hypocellular spindle cell proliferation with cellular condensation beneath epithelial surfaces (cambium layer)<sup>[5,12,13,15]</sup>. Pathological diagnosis is based on the demonstration of skeletal muscle differentiation, morphologically, and with the use of immunohistochemistry for the coexpression of desmin and myogenin<sup>[5,13,15]</sup>. Ki-67 expression is usually elevated, and estrogen and progesterone receptors are



absent<sup>[15]</sup>. ERMS differs from ARMS in that the stroma in ERMS is variably loose and shows dense cellularity within a myxoid matrix, whereas ARMS cells tend to cluster into nests that may be separated by fibrous septa<sup>[2]</sup>.

Genetic alterations have yet to be clinically explored in cervical ERMS. In pathology series, there are frequent allelic losses, most notably in the chromosomal region 11p15.5<sup>[2]</sup>. Loss of heterozygosity on the short arm of chromosome 11 suggests inactivation of tumor suppressor genes<sup>[21]</sup>. Diverse gene fusions have been reported in subsets of ERMS<sup>[22,23]</sup>, fusion-positive PAX3/7-FOXO1 in 7 of 31 ERMS, and hyperploidy associated with gains of chromosomes 2, 8 and 12<sup>[24]</sup>. While a discussion of genetic lesions is beyond the purpose of the present review, the lesions may potentially explain heterogeneity of cases and the increased risk for multiple primary cancers that have been reported by several authors<sup>[14,16,18]</sup>. FOXO1 translocation status will be used as a risk stratification criterion in future pediatric RMS studies<sup>[3]</sup>.

Staging did not seem to differ across different age groups; however, diagnostic work-up was missing in half of the cases reviewed (Table 4). The case series spanned across a long time period, from as early as 1960, whereas current imaging procedures differ considerably. Patients who had a negative positron emission tomography (PET) following induction chemotherapy and radiotherapy had a better local relapse-free survival than RMS patients who had a positive PET (94% vs 75%,  $P = 0.02$ )<sup>[25]</sup>. PET might replace conventional staging imaging studies<sup>[3,26,27]</sup>. None of the case series reported the use of PET.

There were substantial differences in the management between the two age groups in the pooled data, though this could not be ascertained within each paper (Table 3). Data on hysterectomy was more often missing in older women than in younger women [36% (8/22 patients) vs 16% (4/25 patients)]. Among documented cases, hysterectomy rates were higher in older women [86% (12/14 patients) vs 43% (9/21 patients)]. In older women, chemotherapy was used less often (55% vs 90%), but radiotherapy more often (36% vs 21%). These differences may be due to the desire to preserve fertility in younger patients.

Chemotherapy and radiotherapy data were missing more frequently for the older than the younger patients (50% vs 22%). Among those with available information, the most commonly used chemotherapy regimens in 20 patients > 40-year-old included VAC (13 patients, 65.0%), VA (2 patients, 10.0%), and vincristine, doxorubicin and cyclophosphamide (VDC) (2 patients, 10.0%). One patient received VDC plus dacarbazine and cyclophosphamide. Two patients received a non-VAC regimen (etoposide alone<sup>[13]</sup> or cisplatin and doxorubicin combination<sup>[14]</sup>). Overall, 85% of the chemotherapy regimens followed a pediatric protocol, regardless of age group<sup>[28-30]</sup>.

The death rate was twice as high in patients >

**Table 4 Intergroup Rhabdomyosarcoma Study Group clinical grouping of the 5 case-series of cervical embryonal rhabdomyosarcomas, overwhelming missing data**

IRSG clinical stage	Women ≤ 40-year-old <i>n</i> = 25 <i>n</i> (%)	Women > 40-year-old <i>n</i> = 22 <i>n</i> (%)
NA	11 (44.0)	13 (59.1)
I	11 (44.0)	9 (40.9)
II	1 (4.0)	0 (0.0)
III	1 (4.0)	0 (0.0)
IV	1 (4.0)	0 (0.0)

IRSG: Intergroup Rhabdomyosarcoma Study Group; NA: Unknown, not available, or could not be inferred from the reports.

40-year-old than in the younger age group. Older patients who survived had more residual disease than the younger patients. The poorer outcome might be explained by lower chemotherapy administration rate (Table 3). The follow-up data was missing across all age groups, but was especially high in the older group (45% vs 32%), precluding reliable comparison. In the most recent publications, the frequency of surgery appeared to decrease, and radiotherapy was infrequently given, even in women over 40 (Table 3). The median time of death or the last follow-up among younger patients who received radiotherapy was 1 year, which raises the question whether or not these patients had been selected because of more advanced disease. The longest survivals were observed among those who received external beam radiotherapy and brachytherapy. The reported survival times in that subset ranged between extremes, from 1.4 and 2 years<sup>[13]</sup> through 6<sup>[14]</sup>, 10<sup>[5]</sup>, to 22 years in a patient who received early salvage radiotherapy and brachytherapy<sup>[12]</sup>.

The limitations of our study have been a small sample size and a retrospective approach; nevertheless, EMRS is sensitive to chemotherapy and radiotherapy. Since ovarian preservation is less of a concern in women who are over 40 years old, radiotherapy could be applied in those who have metastatic pelvic and/or paraaortic lymph nodes or residual disease following surgery. In patients whose tumors are locally unresectable, chemoradiation may be given either preoperatively or to the patient who is not a surgical candidate because of associated co-morbidity. In patients who present with distant metastases, induction chemotherapy and reassessment for loco-regional treatment after chemotherapy may be an option, depending on the response to chemotherapy. In the era of modern radiotherapy techniques such as stereotactic body radiotherapy and image-guided radiotherapy, long-term remission may be feasible even when the patient has distant metastases<sup>[31]</sup>. Because of the rarity of the disease, the feasibility of prospective studies is questionable. An international registry for rare tumors could be used as a depository and a resource on treatment data and long-term follow-up.

## CONCLUSION

ERMS is an exceedingly rare disease among middle-aged women. An international registry could help determine the optimal treatment of patients at various disease stages. Long-term survival is possible with multimodality treatments, as the tumor is chemo- and radio-sensitive. A multidisciplinary team approach is essential for optimal therapy. In the future, genomics might provide new therapeutic opportunities.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors would like to thank Dayleen De Riggs and Kristen L. Young for their help in the preparation of this manuscript.

## REFERENCES

- Hayes-Jordan A, Andrassy R. Rhabdomyosarcoma in children. *Curr Opin Pediatr* 2009; **21**: 373-378 [PMID: 19448544 DOI: 10.1097/MOP.0b013e32832b4171]
- Parham DM, Barr FG. Classification of rhabdomyosarcoma and its molecular basis. *Adv Anat Pathol* 2013; **20**: 387-397 [PMID: 24113309 DOI: 10.1097/PAP.0b013e3283182a92d0d]
- Hawkins DS, Gupta AA, Rudzinski ER. What is new in the biology and treatment of pediatric rhabdomyosarcoma? *Curr Opin Pediatr* 2014; **26**: 50-56 [PMID: 24326270 DOI: 10.1097/MOP.0000000000000041]
- Baiocchi G, Faloppa CC, Osório CA, Kumagai LY, Fukazawa EM, Cunha IW. Embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma of the uterine cervix in a 47-year-old woman. *J Obstet Gynaecol Res* 2011; **37**: 940-946 [PMID: 21410833 DOI: 10.1111/j.1447-0756.2010.01449.x]
- Montag TW, D'ablaing G, Schlaerth JB, Gaddis O, Morrow CP. Embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma of the uterine corpus and cervix. *Gynecol Oncol* 1986; **25**: 171-194 [PMID: 3758828 DOI: 10.1016/0090-8258(86)90098-3]
- Simon JH, Paulino AC, Ritchie JM, Mayr NA, Buatti JM. Presentation, prognostic factors and patterns of failure in adult rhabdomyosarcoma. *Sarcoma* 2003; **7**: 1-7 [PMID: 18521362 DOI: 10.1080/1357714031000114147]
- Fadare O. Uncommon sarcomas of the uterine cervix: a review of selected entities. *Diagn Pathol* 2006; **1**: 30 [PMID: 16981999 DOI: 10.1186/1746-1596-1-30]
- Vinh-Hung V, Verschraegen C. Breast-conserving surgery with or without radiotherapy: pooled-analysis for risks of ipsilateral breast tumor recurrence and mortality. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2004; **96**: 115-121 [PMID: 14734701 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djh246]
- Vinh-Hung V, Bourgain C, Vlastos G, Cserni G, De Ridder M, Storme G, Vlastos AT. Prognostic value of histopathology and trends in cervical cancer: a SEER population study. *BMC Cancer* 2007; **7**: 164 [PMID: 17718897 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-7-164]
- Murad MH, Montori VM, Ioannidis JP, Jaeschke R, Devereaux PJ, Prasad K, Neumann I, Carrasco-Labra A, Agoritsas T, Hatala R, Meade MO, Weyer P, Cook DJ, Guyatt G. How to read a systematic review and meta-analysis and apply the results to patient care: users' guides to the medical literature. *JAMA* 2014; **312**: 171-179 [PMID: 25005654 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2014.5559]
- Moher D, Liberati A, Tetzlaff J, Altman DG. Preferred reporting items for systematic reviews and meta-analyses: the PRISMA statement. *Int J Surg* 2010; **8**: 336-341 [PMID: 20171303]
- Brand E, Berek JS, Nieberg RK, Hacker NF. Rhabdomyosarcoma of the uterine cervix. Sarcoma botryoides. *Cancer* 1987; **60**: 1552-1560 [PMID: 3621128 DOI: 10.1002/1097-0142(19871001)60]
- Ferguson SE, Gerald W, Barakat RR, Chi DS, Soslow RA. Clinicopathologic features of rhabdomyosarcoma of gynecologic origin in adults. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2007; **31**: 382-389 [PMID: 17325479 DOI: 10.1097/01.pas.0000213352.87885.75]
- Kriseman ML, Wang WL, Sullinger J, Schmeler KM, Ramirez PT, Herzog CE, Frumovitz M. Rhabdomyosarcoma of the cervix in adult women and younger patients. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **126**: 351-356 [PMID: 22609112 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2012.05.008]
- Li RF, Gupta M, McCluggage WG, Ronnett BM. Embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma (botryoid type) of the uterine corpus and cervix in adult women: report of a case series and review of the literature. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2013; **37**: 344-355 [PMID: 23348207 DOI: 10.1097/PAS.0b013e32831826e0271]
- Daya DA, Scully RE. Sarcoma botryoides of the uterine cervix in young women: a clinicopathological study of 13 cases. *Gynecol Oncol* 1988; **29**: 290-304 [PMID: 3278956]
- Guoling Z, Mingzhi C, Baisheng W. Comprehensive treatment for sarcoma botryoides of uterine cervix. *Chin J Cancer Res* 1991; **3**: 68-70 [DOI: 10.1007/BF02671297]
- Dehner LP, Jarzembowski JA, Hill DA. Embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma of the uterine cervix: a report of 14 cases and a discussion of its unusual clinicopathological associations. *Mod Pathol* 2012; **25**: 602-614 [PMID: 22157934 DOI: 10.1038/modpathol.2011.185]
- Sobin LH, Gospodarowicz M, Wittekind C. TNM Classification of Malignant Tumours, 7th ed. Oxford, UK: Wiley-Blackwell, 2009: 206-211
- Mutch DG. The new FIGO staging system for cancers of the vulva, cervix, endometrium and sarcomas. *Gynecol Oncol* 2009; **115**: 325-328 [DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2009.10.050]
- Loh WE, Scrabble HJ, Livanos E, Arboleda MJ, Cavenee WK, Oshimura M, Weissman BE. Human chromosome 11 contains two different growth suppressor genes for embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1992; **89**: 1755-1759 [PMID: 1347425]
- Calabrese G, Guanciali Franchi P, Stuppia L, Rossi C, Bianchi C, Antonucci A, Palka G. Translocation (8; 11)(q12-13; q21) in embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma. *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 1992; **58**: 210-211 [PMID: 1551093]
- Sirvent N, Trassard M, Ebran N, Attias R, Pedeutour F. Fusion of EWSR1 with the DUX4 facioscapulohumeral muscular dystrophy region resulting from t(4; 22)(q35; q12) in a case of embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma. *Cancer Genet Cytogenet* 2009; **195**: 12-18 [PMID: 19837262 DOI: 10.1016/j.cancergencyto.2009.06.011]
- Nishimura R, Takita J, Sato-Otsubo A, Kato M, Koh K, Hanada R, Tanaka Y, Kato K, Maeda D, Fukayama M, Sanada M, Hayashi Y, Ogawa S. Characterization of genetic lesions in rhabdomyosarcoma using a high-density single nucleotide polymorphism array. *Cancer Sci* 2013; **104**: 856-864 [PMID: 23578105 DOI: 10.1111/cas.12173]
- Dharmarajan KV, Wexler LH, Gavane S, Fox JJ, Schoder H, Tom AK, Price AN, Meyers PA, Wolden SL. Positron emission tomography (PET) evaluation after initial chemotherapy and radiation therapy predicts local control in rhabdomyosarcoma. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2012; **84**: 996-1002 [PMID: 22560547 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2012.01.077]
- Casey DL, Wexler LH, Fox JJ, Dharmarajan KV, Schoder H, Price AN, Wolden SL. Predicting outcome in patients with rhabdomyosarcoma: role of [(18)f]fluorodeoxyglucose positron emission tomography. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2014; **90**: 1136-1142 [PMID: 25539372 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijrobp.2014.08.005]
- Dong Y, Zhang X, Wang S, Chen S, Ma C. [18F]FDG PET/CT is useful in initial staging, restaging for pediatric rhabdomyosarcoma. *Q J Nucl Med Mol Imaging* 2015 May 21; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25996974]
- Arndt CA, Hawkins DS, Meyer WH, Sencer SF, Neglia JP, Anderson JR. Comparison of results of a pilot study of alternating vincristine/doxorubicin/cyclophosphamide and etoposide/ifosfamide with IRS-IV in intermediate risk rhabdomyosarcoma: a report from the Children's Oncology Group. *Pediatr Blood Cancer* 2008; **50**: 33-36 [PMID: 17091486 DOI: 10.1002/pbc.21093]
- Raney RB, Walterhouse DO, Meza JL, Andrassy RJ, Breneman JC, Crist WM, Maurer HM, Meyer WH, Parham DM, Anderson JR. Results of the Intergroup Rhabdomyosarcoma Study Group D9602 protocol, using vincristine and dactinomycin with or without cyclophosphamide and radiation therapy, for newly diagnosed

- patients with low-risk embryonal rhabdomyosarcoma: a report from the Soft Tissue Sarcoma Committee of the Children's Oncology Group. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 1312-1318 [PMID: 21357783 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2010.30.4469]
- 30 **Hawkins DS**, Spunt SL, Skapek SX. Children's Oncology Group's 2013 blueprint for research: Soft tissue sarcomas. *Pediatr Blood Cancer* 2013; **60**: 1001-1008 [PMID: 23255356 DOI: 10.1002/pbc.24435]
- 31 **Navarria P**, Ascolese AM, Tomatis S, Cozzi L, De Rose F, Mancosu P, Alongi F, Clerici E, Lobefalo F, Tozzi A, Reggiori G, Fogliata A, Scorsetti M. Stereotactic body radiotherapy (sbrt) in lung oligometastatic patients: role of local treatments. *Radiat Oncol* 2014; **9**: 91 [PMID: 24694067 DOI: 10.1186/1748-717X-9-91]

**P- Reviewer:** Sonoda K **S- Editor:** Kong JX **L- Editor:** A

**E- Editor:** Wu HL



## Basic Study

# Alpha1B adrenoceptor expression is a marker of reduced survival and increased tumor recurrence in patients with endometrioid ovarian cancer

Dascha Deutsch, Suha Deen, Frank Entschladen, Clare Coveney, Robert Rees, Kurt S Zänker, Desmond George Powe

Dascha Deutsch, Frank Entschladen, Kurt S Zänker, Institute of Immunology, University of Witten/Herdecke, DE-58448 Witten, Germany

Suha Deen, Desmond George Powe, Department of Cellular Pathology, Queens Medical Centre, Nottingham University Hospitals Trust, Nottingham NG7 2UH, United Kingdom

Clare Coveney, Robert Rees, Desmond George Powe, the John van Geest Cancer Research Centre, Nottingham Trent University, Nottingham NG11 8NS, United Kingdom

**Author contributions:** Powe DG contributed to study concept and design, acquisition and analysis of data, data interpretation and manuscript production; Deutsch D contributed to acquisition and analysis of data, data interpretation and manuscript production, laboratory experiments; Deen S contributed to supply of tissue samples and clinical data; Entschladen F contributed to study concept and manuscript production; Coveney C contributed to laboratory experiments; Rees R and Zänker KS contributed to project management.

**Supported by** Financial support from the Fritz Bender Foundation (Munich; to Dascha Deutsch, Frank Entschladen and Kurt S Zänker); from the Nottingham University Hospital Trustees (contributed to the reagent costs).

**Institutional review board statement:** This study was approved by the Derbyshire ethics committee (reference 07/H0401/156) and Department of Research and Innovation, Queens Medical Centre, Nottingham University Hospitals Trust, Nottingham NG7 2UH, United Kingdom.

**Institutional animal care and use committee statement:** No animals were used in this study.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** The authors have declared no conflict of interest.

**Data sharing statement:** No additional data are available.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Desmond George Powe, PhD, Principal Healthcare Research Scientist, Department of Cellular Pathology, Queens Medical Centre, Nottingham University Hospitals Trust, Derby Road, Nottingham NG7 2UH, United Kingdom. [des.powe@nottingham.ac.uk](mailto:des.powe@nottingham.ac.uk)  
Telephone: +44-115-9249924-63484  
Fax: +44-115-9709759

Received: April 24, 2015  
Peer-review started: April 29, 2015  
First decision: June 9, 2015  
Revised: October 14, 2015  
Accepted: November 10, 2015  
Article in press: November 11, 2015  
Published online: February 10, 2016

## Abstract

**AIM:** To investigate the expression patterns of different adrenoceptor isoforms in ovarian cancer and their association with survival and tumor recurrence.

**METHODS:** The protein expression levels of  $\alpha 1B$ ,  $\alpha 2C$  and  $\beta 2$  adrenoceptor were assessed in unselected ovarian cancer using immunohistochemistry on microarrayed archival tissue samples. A database containing clinical and pathology parameters and follow-up was used



to investigate the association between adrenoceptor isoform expression with ovarian specific survival and tumor recurrence, using univariate and multivariate statistical analysis.

**RESULTS:** Expression of  $\alpha 1B$  showed an association with reduced ovarian specific survival ( $P = 0.05$ ; CI: 1.00-1.49) and increased tumor recurrence ( $P = 0.021$ , CI: 1.04-1.69) in the whole patient group. On sub-analysis the expression of  $\alpha 1B$  in endometrioid cancers ( $\chi^2 = 5.867$ ,  $P = 0.015$ ) was found to predict reduced ovarian specific survival and increased tumor recurrence independently of tumor grade, clinical stage and chemotherapy. An association with clinical outcome was not seen for  $\alpha 2C$  or  $\beta 2$  AR.

**CONCLUSION:** Alpha1B adrenoceptor protein was found to predict increased risk of tumor recurrence and reduced mortality in patients with endometrioid type ovarian cancer and should be investigated as a biomarker for identifying patients at increased risk of disease progression. Furthermore,  $\alpha$  adrenergic receptor antagonists with  $\alpha 1B$  selectivity should be investigated as a possible adjuvant therapy for treating patients with endometrioid cancer. Proof of principle could be tested in a retrospective population study.

**Key words:** Alpha adrenoceptor; Beta adrenoceptor;  $\beta$ -blockers;  $\alpha$ -blockers; Ovarian cancer; Prognosis; Cancer therapy

© The Author(s) 2016. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Epidemiological studies suggest that  $\beta$ -blockers might have a role in reducing metastatic spread and tumor recurrence and thereby prolong patient survival in some cancer types. In this novel study we found  $\alpha 1B$  adrenoceptor is a biomarker of tumor recurrence in endometrioid ovarian cancer. Further studies are needed to test if selective  $\alpha 1$  adrenergic receptor antagonists inhibit tumor recurrence and prolong survival in patients with this type of cancer.

Deutsch D, Deen S, Entschladen F, Coveney C, Rees R, Zänker KS, Powe DG. Alpha1B adrenoceptor expression is a marker of reduced survival and increased tumor recurrence in patients with endometrioid ovarian cancer. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 118-126 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/118.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.118>

## INTRODUCTION

Ovarian cancer is the fifth leading cause of cancer related death amongst women in the United Kingdom and the second most common gynaecological malignancy. The lifetime risk of developing ovarian cancer is

estimated at 1 in 68 for women in the United States<sup>[1]</sup>. It arises with non-specific symptoms, thus about 70% of patients are diagnosed with late stage disease with a 5-year survival rate of less than 30%. In contrast, patients diagnosed with early-stage disease have a > 90% 5-year survival rate<sup>[2]</sup>. Endometrioid type tumors account for 10%-20% ovarian cancers and compared to other forms have a relatively better 5-year survival rate. Patients would benefit from earlier cancer detection improved therapies for preventing metastasis and disease recurrence.

Increased levels of catecholamine hormones are linked with poor prognosis in ovarian cancer<sup>[3-5]</sup> possibly explained by their ability at promoting cell invasion and proliferation via activation of adrenergic receptors (adrenoceptors, AR)<sup>[5,6]</sup>. Recent laboratory studies suggest that beta adrenergic receptor antagonists ( $\beta$ -blockers) abrogate cancer cell migration<sup>[7-9]</sup>, an essential element of metastasis, and disrupt the stress/inflammatory/cancer pathway interactions<sup>[10]</sup>. Sloan *et al*<sup>[10]</sup> showed that epinephrine-induced beta2 ( $\beta 2$ ) adrenoceptor activated cancer cells produce mediators that recruit tumor associated macrophages, and the process is inhibited by the  $\beta$ -blocker propranolol<sup>[11]</sup>.

There are 9 adrenoceptor subtypes classified in two major classes,  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , belonging to the G-protein coupled receptor family<sup>[12]</sup>. Promiscuous AR coupling results in the activation of multiple cancer cell signalling pathways<sup>[13]</sup>. Included among these,  $\beta 2$  activation induces phosphokinase A (PKA) and ERK<sup>[14]</sup> cell signalling in response to upregulation of cyclic AMP (cAMP)<sup>[15]</sup>, leading to migration in some cancer cell types. ERK1/2 phosphorylation may occur following  $\alpha 1B$  adrenoceptor activation in ovarian cancer cells<sup>[15-17]</sup> but opposing this,  $\alpha 2C$  adrenoceptor can preferentially inhibit cAMP and PKA gene transcription<sup>[17]</sup>. For this reason it can be hypothesised that activation of  $\alpha 2C$  adrenoceptors may have an anti-cancer regulatory role compared to  $\alpha 1B$  and  $\beta 2$  receptors.

A small number of conflicting population studies have investigated the impact of  $\beta$ -blocker usage on survival in ovarian cancer patients. These have either shown potential benefits<sup>[7,18]</sup> or no effectiveness<sup>[19,20]</sup>. Such differences could possibly be explained by AR expression heterogeneity and so the current study is designed to assess the distribution and pattern of  $\alpha 1B$ ,  $\alpha 2C$  and  $\beta 2$  AR proteins expressed in ovarian tumors and association with clinical outcome. Knowledge of this information will improve the study design when assessing the feasibility of using adrenergic receptor antagonists for targeted adjuvant cancer therapeutics. It was found that  $\alpha 1B$  rather than  $\beta 2$  adrenoceptor expression correlated with poor survival and tumor recurrence in epithelioid tumors.

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

The protein expression of  $\alpha 1B$ ,  $\alpha 2C$  and  $\beta 2$  was chara-

cterised in formalin-fixed paraffin-embedded tissue microarrays of ovarian cancer from unselected patients attending Nottingham University Hospitals Trust. Damaged tissue cores and those that did not contain invasive carcinoma were censored. The study was approved by the Derbyshire ethics committee (07/H0401/156).

### Patient selection

Following a diagnosis of ovarian cancer, patients were selected for chemotherapy treatment according to the East Midlands Cancer Network ovarian cancer treatment algorithm (<http://www.eastmidlandscancernetwork.nhs.uk/Library/OvarianTreatmentAlgorithm.pdf>). Tissue microarrays were produced by incorporating cores of archival formalin fixed ovarian tumor tissue from Nottingham patients presenting in 1991-2006. The presence of cancer was confirmed by a pathologist. Clinicopathological data was available for patients up to 240 mo post-diagnosis and was categorised as poor (< 60 mo) or better (> 60 mo) prognosis.

### Immunohistochemistry

Four micron thick TMA sections had immunohistochemistry performed using a linked streptavidin peroxidase/biotinylated AB technique in accordance to the supplier's recommendations (DAKO, Cambs, United Kingdom). Microwave antigen retrieval was performed in 0.01 mol/mL citrate buffer (pH6). The primary antibodies were previously optimized in full face breast cancer tissues as previously described<sup>[21]</sup> and in ovarian TMA sections with negative controls. Primary rabbit polyclonal antibodies against  $\alpha$ 1B (ab13297, Abcam, Cambs, United Kingdom),  $\alpha$ 2C (ab46536, Abcam), and  $\beta$ 2 (ab13163, Abcam) AR were used diluted at 1:50, 1:750 and 1:450, respectively.

### Statistical analysis

Statistical analysis was performed using statistical software, SPSS 20.0 (SPSS Inc., Chicago, IL, United States). Levels of adrenoceptor protein expression were microscopically assessed for staining intensity in malignant epithelium only and patients categorised into negative (negative or weak intensity) verse positive (moderate to strong intensity). Patients with missing clinical data were censored. Association between AR expression and different clinicopathology factors was evaluated using the non-parametric  $\chi^2$  test. Survival and tumor recurrence analysis was modelled using the Kaplan-Meier method with a univariate log rank test to assess significance. Patients that died due to causes other than ovarian cancer were censored during survival analysis. Multivariate Cox proportional hazard regression (95%CI) was used to evaluate the independence of adrenoceptors for predicting survival and tumor recurrence compared to other clinical variables. A *P* value of < 0.05 was considered to indicate statistical significance.

**Table 1** Distribution of adrenoceptor protein expression according to age, tumor type and tumor grade in patients with ovarian cancer

		Adrenergic receptor	Absent	Present	$\chi^2$	<i>P</i>
Age at diagnosis	< 49	$\alpha$ -1B	25 (66)	13 (34)	1.076	0.584
	50-69		55 (59)	38 (41)		
	> 70		24 (54)	20 (46)		
	< 49	$\alpha$ -2C	11 (29)	27 (71)	2.600	0.273
	50-69		38 (42)	52 (58)		
	> 70		19 (45)	23 (55)		
	< 49	$\beta$ 2	9 (31)	20 (69)	1.956	0.376
	50-69		36 (43)	47 (57)		
	> 70		13 (33)	26 (67)		
Tumour type	High grade serous	$\alpha$ -1B	49 (55)	40 (45)	14.648	0.005
	Low grade serous		4 (67)	2 (33)		
	Endometrioid		25 (60)	17 (40)		
	Clear cell		16 (94)	1 (6)		
	Mucinous		4 (29)	10 (71)		
	High grade serous	$\alpha$ -2C	44 (48)	47 (52)	11.038	0.026
	Low grade serous		4 (67)	2 (33)		
	Endometrioid		8 (21)	31 (79)		
	Clear cell		6 (35)	11 (65)		
	Mucinous		5 (33)	10 (67)		
	High grade serous	$\beta$ 2	25 (32)	54 (68)	13.559	0.009
	Low grade serous		1 (17)	5 (83)		
Tumour grade	Endometrioid		20 (54)	17 (46)		
	Clear cell		8 (61)	5 (39)		
	Mucinous		1 (9)	10 (91)		
	1	$\alpha$ -1B	11 (42)	15 (58)	3.472	0.176
	2		6 (55)	5 (45)		
	3		81 (62)	50 (38)		
	1	$\alpha$ -2C	9 (35)	17 (65)	0.456	0.796
	2		4 (36)	7 (64)		
	3		54 (41)	77 (59)		
	1	$\beta$ 2	4 (18)	18 (82)	4.236	0.12
	2		4 (44)	5 (56)		
	3		47 (41)	68 (59)		
Mortality (5 yr)	No	$\alpha$ -1B	55 (69)	25 (31)	4.821	0.028
	Yes		47 (52)	43 (48)		
	< 5 yr	$\alpha$ -2C	31 (39)	48 (61)	0.001	0.969
	> 5 yr		34 (39)	52 (61)		
	< 5 yr	$\beta$ 2	25 (36)	44 (64)	0.284	0.594
	> 5 yr		32 (41)	47 (59)		

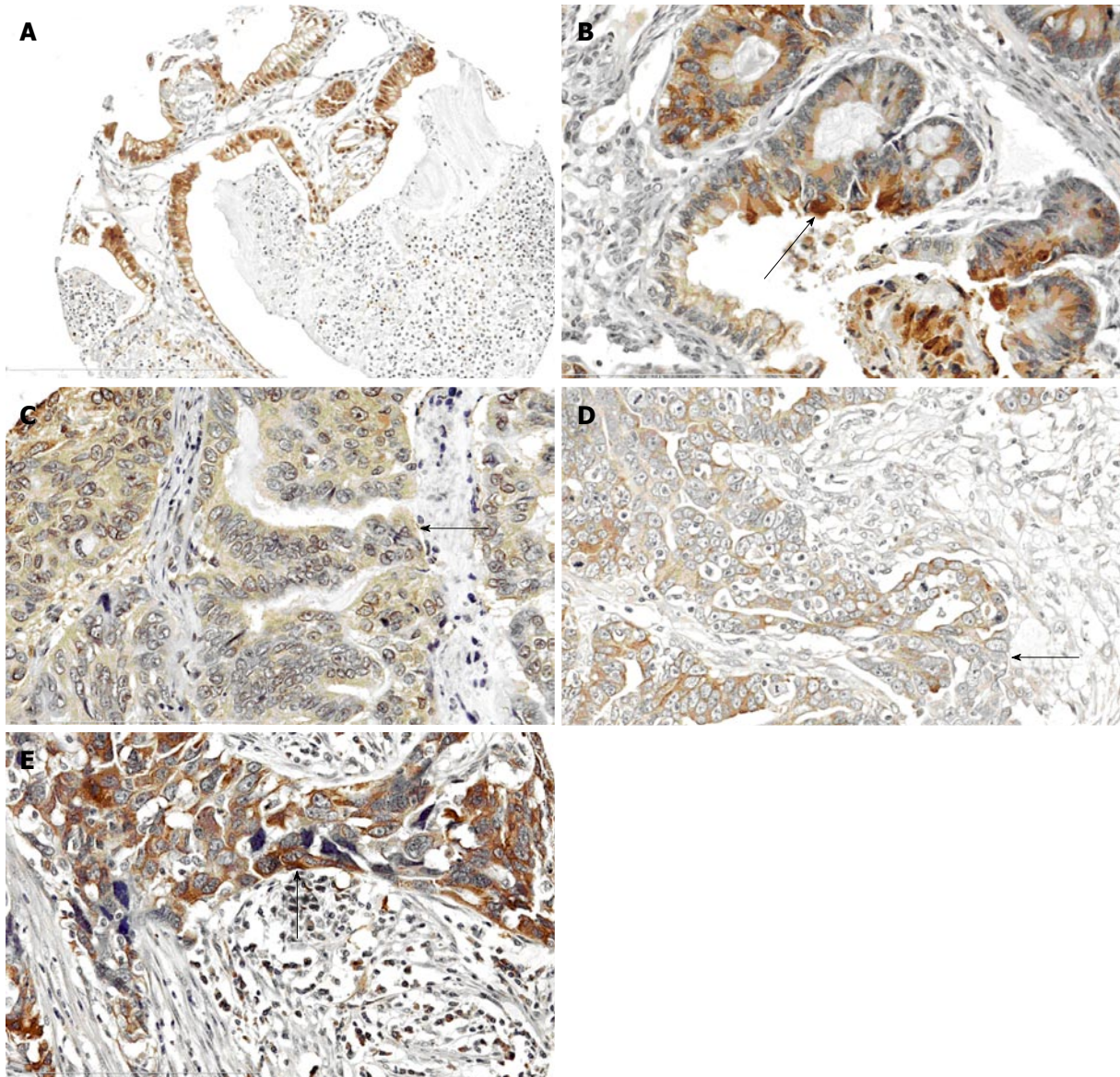
Proportion of patients showing each adrenoceptor (percentage).

## RESULTS

### Patient characteristics and adrenoceptor expression

Tissue cores were available for assessment in 168 patients stained for  $\alpha$ 1B and  $\alpha$ 2C expression and 146 for  $\beta$ 2 adrenoceptor protein. The reduced number of cores available for  $\beta$ 2 assessment was due to detachment during immunohistochemistry processing. Adrenoceptor protein appeared localised in the cytoplasm of malignant ovarian tissue (Figure 1).





**Figure 1** Following immunostaining, adrenergic receptor proteins were seen as brown staining in ovarian cancer tissue. A: Strong  $\alpha 1B$  staining in a mucinous tumor; B: Strong  $\alpha 1B$  - high grade serous tumor; C: Moderate  $\alpha 2C$  - endometrioid tumor; D: Weak  $\beta 2$ -AR - high grade serous tumor; E: Strong  $\beta 2$ -AR - high grade serous tumor. AR: Adrenergic receptor.

The median age at cancer diagnosis was 61 years (range 31-87) and the proportion of different cancer subtypes is shown in Table 1. Just over half (53%) of the patient cohort investigated in this study were categorised with poor survival (less than 5 years post-diagnosis) and the remainder survived 5-20 years.

The distribution of adrenoceptor expression differed by tumor type with 41%, 60%, 62% of the full cohort showing expression of  $\alpha 1B$ ,  $\alpha 2C$  and  $\beta 2$  respectively (Table 1). Increased  $\alpha 1B$  expression was more frequently seen in mucinous cancers but in contrast was reduced in low grade serous and clear cell tumors. Levels of  $\alpha 2C$  were increased in endometrioid, clear cell and mucinous tumors.  $\beta 2$  expression was more frequently increased in high and low grade serous tumors and mucinous cancers (Table 1). No association was found between individual adrenoceptor types and tumor grade or clinical

stage (Table 1). Patients with tumors expressing  $\alpha 2C$  adrenoceptor showed an association with low stage clinical disease (Table 2).

### Clinical outcome

A Kaplan-Meier technique with a log rank test was used to model the independence of adrenoceptor protein expression in predicting ovarian cancer specific survival and tumor recurrence in the full patient cohort. High  $\alpha 1B$  protein expression was associated with reduced survival across the full patient cohort due to ovarian cancer specific mortality ( $P = 0.05$ ; 95%CI: 1.00-1.49), resulting in a reduction in the median survival time from 63.5 to 44 mo (Figure 2 and Table 3). Similarly,  $\alpha 1B$  adrenoceptor protein expression was associated with increased tumor recurrence ( $P = 0.021$ , 95%CI: 1.04-1.69). A subanalysis of survival ( $\chi^2 = 3.907$ ,  $P =$

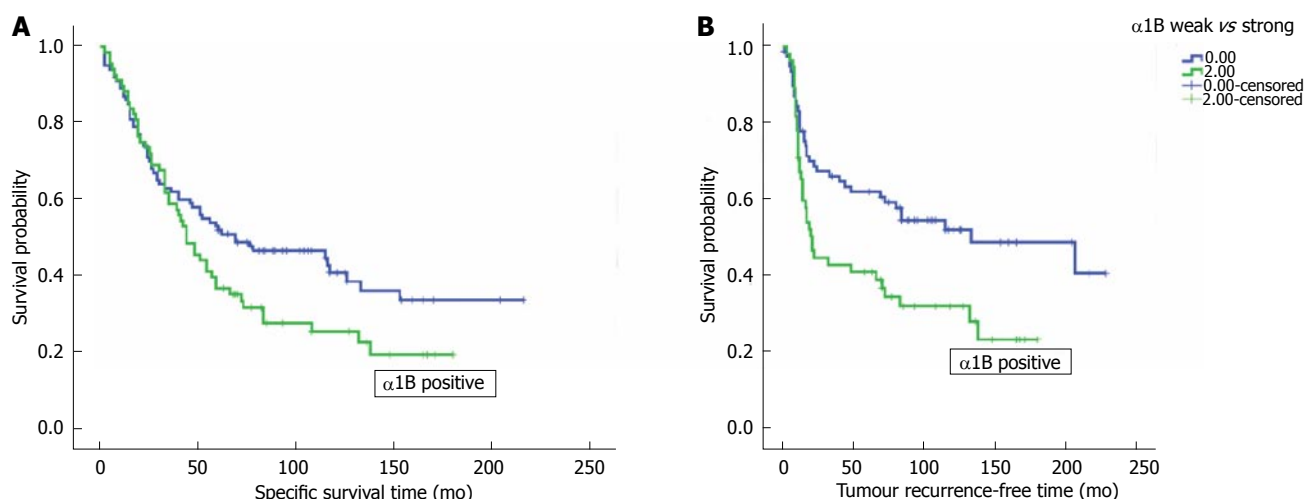


Figure 2 High alpha1B protein expression (green curve) showed an association with poor survival ( $P = 0.045$ ) (A), and (B) tumor recurrence ( $P = 0.007$ ) in the whole cohort of patients with ovarian cancer.

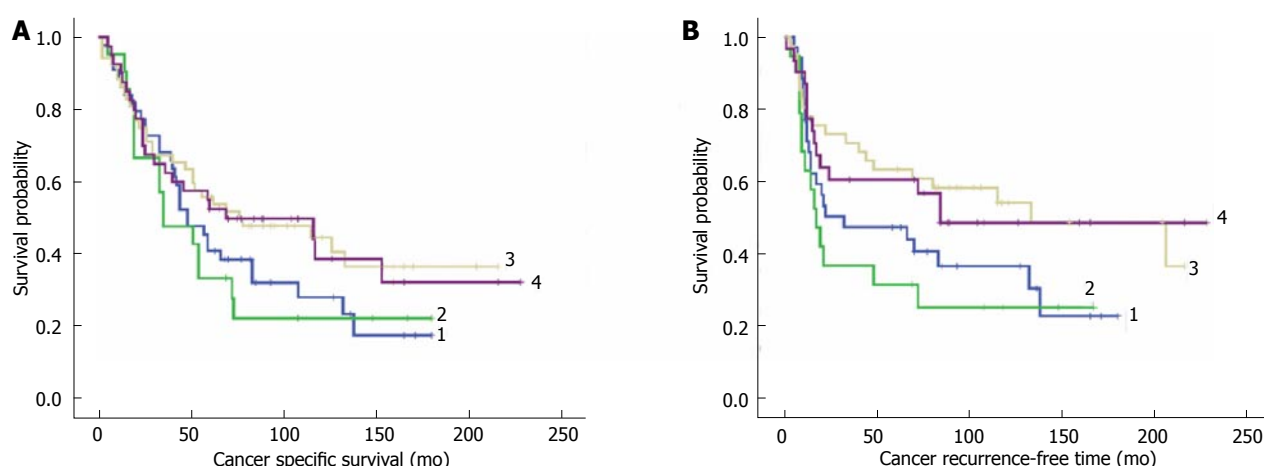


Figure 3 Four adrenoceptor groups were modelled for (A) ovarian cancer specific survival ( $P = 0.284$ ) and (B) tumor recurrence ( $P = 0.061$ ) according to the relative expression of  $\alpha 1B$  and  $\alpha 2C$ . Group 1:  $\alpha 1B^{\text{positive}}/\alpha 2C^{\text{positive}}$ ; Group 2:  $\alpha 1B^{\text{positive}}/\alpha 2C^{\text{negative}}$ ; Group 3:  $\alpha 1B^{\text{negative}}/\alpha 2C^{\text{positive}}$ ; Group 4:  $\alpha 1B^{\text{negative}}/\alpha 2C^{\text{negative}}$ . Patients showing  $\alpha 1B$  expression (Groups 1 and 2) showed worse survival compared to patients that had  $\alpha 2C$  positive tumors without  $\alpha 1B$  expression.

0.048) and tumor recurrence ( $\chi^2 = 5.867$ ,  $P = 0.015$ ) in the different cancer subclasses showed an association with endometrioid type cancer. No association was found for  $\alpha 2C$  or  $\beta 2$  AR with survival or tumor recurrence.

In the full patient cohort, tumor adrenoceptor protein expression showed no association with chemoresistance or responsiveness. A subanalysis of patients with endometrioid tumors showed similar results.

#### Relative expression of $\alpha 1B$ and $\alpha 2C$ adrenoceptor proteins: Association with survival

To test the hypothesis that patient clinical outcome might be influenced by the balance of  $G_s$ -adrenoceptor proteins ( $\alpha 1B$  and  $\beta 2$  are proposed biomarkers of disease progression) compared to those with  $G_i$ -protein affinity ( $\alpha 2C$  is proposed as a biomarker of good prognosis), patients were categorised into different groups according to their relative expression levels of tumor-stimulating  $\alpha 1B$  and tumor-inhibitory  $\alpha 2C$ . Four patient groups were defined comprising: Group

1:  $\alpha 1B^{\text{positive}}/\alpha 2C^{\text{positive}}$ ; Group 2:  $\alpha 1B^{\text{positive}}/\alpha 2C^{\text{negative}}$ ; Group 3:  $\alpha 1B^{\text{negative}}/\alpha 2C^{\text{positive}}$ ; and Group 4:  $\alpha 1B^{\text{negative}}/\alpha 2C^{\text{negative}}$ .

No significant difference was identified between the four adrenoceptor groups with ovarian cancer specific survival ( $\chi^2 = 4.211$ ,  $P = 0.240$ ) or tumor recurrence ( $\chi^2 = 7.361$ ,  $P = 0.061$ ). For tumor recurrence, the best separation between plots was achieved between the singly positive Group 2 ( $\alpha 1B^{\text{positive}}/\alpha 2C^{\text{negative}}$ ) and Group 3 ( $\alpha 1B^{\text{negative}}/\alpha 2C^{\text{positive}}$ ) ( $\chi^2 = 5.136$ ,  $P = 0.023$ ). Groups showing co-expression of  $\alpha 1B/\alpha 2C$  showed intermediate risk of tumor recurrence suggesting the presence of  $\alpha 2C$  expression has a modifying effect on  $\alpha 1B$  expression population studies (Figure 3).

Similarly, the relationship involving relative expression between  $\beta 2$  and  $\alpha 2C$  was tested by defining 4 patient subgroups: Group 1:  $\beta 2^{\text{positive}}/\alpha 2C^{\text{positive}}$ ; Group 2:  $\beta 2^{\text{positive}}/\alpha 2C^{\text{negative}}$ ; Group 3:  $\beta 2^{\text{negative}}/\alpha 2C^{\text{positive}}$ ; and Group 4:  $\beta 2^{\text{negative}}/\alpha 2C^{\text{negative}}$ .

The effect of clinical outcome was assessed using



**Table 2** Distribution of adrenoceptor protein expression in patients with ovarian cancer according to clinical stage, chemotherapy received and chemotherapy failure

		Adrenergic receptor	Absent	Present	$\chi^2$	P
Clinical stage	1	$\alpha$ 1B	39 (65)	21 (35)	2.486	0.478
	2		12 (50)	12 (50)		
	3		47 (59)	33 (41)		
	4		4 (44)	5 (56)		
	1	$\alpha$ 2C	17 (29)	41 (71)	6.014	0.111
	2		10 (42)	14 (58)		
	3		38 (49)	40 (51)		
	4		2 (25)	6 (75)		
	1	$\beta$ 2	18 (37)	31 (63)	6.508	0.089
	2		4 (20)	16 (80)		
	3		31 (42)	43 (58)		
	4		5 (71)	2 (29)		
Stage 1 vs other stages	Stage 1	$\alpha$ 1B	37 (63)	22 (37)	0.894	0.344
	Other stages		59 (55)	48 (45)		
	Stage 1	$\alpha$ 2C	17 (29)	42 (71)	4.376	0.036
	Other stages		49 (45)	59 (55)		
	Stage 1	$\beta$ 2	18 (36)	32 (64)	0.090	0.764
	Other stages		37 (39)	59 (61)		
Chemotherapy regimen	Before surgery	$\alpha$ 1B	11 (58)	8 (42)	0.734	0.693
	After surgery		84 (57)	62 (43)		
	Before surgery	$\alpha$ 2C	8 (42)	11 (58)	0.702	0.704
	After surgery		58 (40)	87 (60)		
	Before surgery	$\beta$ 2	8 (47)	9 (53)	1.316	0.518
	After surgery		46 (36)	80 (64)		
Chemotherapy resistance	Refractory	$\alpha$ 1B	8 (80)	2 (20)	2.647	0.266
	Resistant within 6 mo		4 (44)	5 (56)		
	Responsive		72 (58)	52 (42)	2.342	0.310
	Refractory	$\alpha$ 2C	2 (25)	6 (75)		
	Resistant within 6 mo		6 (60)	4 (40)	1.010	0.604
	Responsive		50 (41)	73 (59)		
	Refractory	$\beta$ 2	5 (56)	4 (44)		
	Resistant within 6 mo		4 (40)	6 (60)		
	Responsive		40 (38)	64 (62)		

Proportion of patients showing each adrenoceptor (percentage).

Kaplan-Meier with a log rank test. No significant difference was seen between the patient subgroups when considering survival ( $\chi^2 = 2.253$ ,  $P = 0.689$ ) or tumor recurrence-free time ( $\chi^2 = 0.463$ ,  $P = 0.927$ ).

#### $\alpha$ 1B is an independent prognostic biomarker

Multivariate Cox regression hazard analysis was used to test the independence of  $\alpha$ 1B as a prognostic biomarker for predicting ovarian cancer specific survival and tumor

**Table 3** A Cox regression analysis was performed to test the independence of tumor  $\alpha$ 1B protein expression as a biomarker compared to tumor grade, clinical stage and chemotherapy treatment

	HR	95%CI		P value
Cancer specific survival				
Alpha1B expression	1.221	1.000	1.493	0.050
Tumor grade	1.353	0.992	1.844	0.056
Clinical stage	1.922	1.529	2.416	< 0.001
Chemotherapy	0.556	0.283	1.090	0.087
Tumor recurrence				
Alpha1B expression	1.326	1.043	1.687	0.021
Tumor grade	1.390	0.949	2.035	0.091
Clinical stage	2.469	1.825	3.340	< 0.001
Chemotherapy	0.614	0.257	1.467	0.272

Tumor  $\alpha$ 1B protein is an independent marker of reduced cancer-associated survival and increased tumor recurrence.

recurrence in patients with ovarian cancer. Tumor grade, clinical stage and systemic chemotherapy were included in the model.  $\alpha$ 1B adrenoceptor expression was found to contribute significant prediction ability concerning survival (HR = 1.221,  $P = 0.05$ , 95%CI: 1.000-1.493) and tumor recurrence (HR = 1.326,  $P = 0.021$ , 95%CI: 1.043-1.687) over and above the routinely used clinical parameters included in the model (Table 3).

## DISCUSSION

Ovarian cancer has a complex pathogenesis but recent studies have focused on the association between cancer progression and stress<sup>[4,22,23]</sup> involving the catecholamine hormones epinephrine and norepinephrine, and activation of  $\beta$ 2 adrenoceptors. A recent paradigm proposed for a mouse model of breast cancer suggests cross-talk between cancer cells and macrophages triggering pro-metastasis cell signalling<sup>[10]</sup>. This paradigm might also extend to ovarian cancer because macrophages are implicated in ovarian metastasis, immunosuppression, angiogenesis and poor clinical outcome<sup>[24,25]</sup>. Consequently, it has been proposed that blockade of adrenoceptors using  $\beta$ -blockers could inhibit tumor progression in a number of cancer types including ovary<sup>[7]</sup>, breast<sup>[26-28]</sup>, prostate<sup>[29]</sup> and skin<sup>[30,31]</sup>. In addition, there is increasing evidence from patient<sup>[21]</sup> and *in vitro*<sup>[32]</sup> studies that alpha adrenoceptors are also implicated in breast cancer progression and for this reason we sought to identify the distribution and pattern of different adrenoceptor types in ovarian cancer patients.

The pattern of adrenoceptor expression was altered in different ovarian tumor types but overall, no association was found with tumor grade. Serous and endometrioid tumors generally differ in their prognostic outlook with the endometrioid type having better prognosis. A significant difference in pro-( $\beta$ 2) and anti-migratory ( $\alpha$ 2C) adrenoceptor expression patterns was identified. Compared to serous tumors, endometrioid cancers less frequently expressed  $\beta$ 2 receptors (46% vs 68%) and were more likely to show  $\alpha$ 2 receptor

expression (79% vs 52%). But a subset of patients (40%) with endometrioid tumors expressed high levels of  $\alpha 1B$  protein and this correlated with poor prognosis due to a significantly shortened survival time and reduced tumor recurrence-free interval, independently of chemotherapy, tumor grade and clinical stage. The pathogenesis of endometrioid tumors is thought to be associated with endometriosis<sup>[33]</sup> and notable gene mutations in the phosphoinositide-3-kinase (PI3K) cell signalling pathway including PIK3CA and *PTEN* genes<sup>[34]</sup> in endometrial-derived cancer<sup>[35]</sup>. Activation of adrenoceptors provide a route to PI3K upregulation via the intermediary cAMP. Our findings suggest that  $\alpha 1B$  is a candidate biomarker and here it identified 17% of patients with endometrioid type cancer that require more intensive therapy and follow-up surveillance. Moreover, our findings suggest adrenoceptor antagonists and PI3K inhibitors provide potential for a targeted adjuvant therapy approach to complement existing therapies. In considering candidate anti- $\alpha$  adrenergic receptor drugs consideration has to be given to their selectivity and adverse effects. Alpha AR antagonists are used in the treatment of benign prostatic hyperplasia (*e.g.*, Prazosin, Doxazosin), urinary tract symptoms and hypertension. The non-selective drugs phenoxybenzamine and phentolamine would not be advocated, whereas some current tricyclic antidepressants could be considered but a recent study found amitriptyline, nortriptyline and imipramine are relatively weak  $\alpha 1B$  antagonists<sup>[36]</sup>. More promising is the recent development of a new family of 8-OMe benzodioxane analogues of the research drug WB4101 which has been shown to have high affinity for  $\alpha 1B$  AR<sup>[37]</sup>. The side effects of  $\alpha 1$  antagonists including postural hypotension (Prazosin, Doxazosin), arrhythmia and CNS disturbances (tricyclic antidepressants) can be reduced by careful titration and active monitoring.

Cancer cell line studies have shown that norepinephrine activates  $\alpha$  AR resulting in HIF1 $\alpha$  dependent vascular endothelial growth factor transcription, required for angiogenesis<sup>[38]</sup>. Interestingly, Park *et al.*<sup>[38]</sup> found that the  $\alpha 1$  adrenoceptor inhibitor prazosin blocks the angiogenic pathway in the epithelial-to-mesenchymal type MDA-MB-231 breast cancer cell line, but not in liver (SK-Hep1) or prostate (PC3) cancer cells<sup>[38]</sup>. To translate this to ovarian cancer, we tested the proposal that  $\alpha 1B$  and 2C adrenoceptors might have an opposing promoting and inhibitory affect respectively on cancer progression and survival. To do this, patients were subclassified according to  $\alpha/\beta$  adrenoceptor phenotype, by comparing survival in patients with tumors expressing only one adrenoceptor ( $\alpha 1B$ ,  $\alpha 2C$  or  $\beta 2$  positive) to those with co-expression of  $\alpha 2C$ . Although Kaplan-Meier models suggest  $\alpha 2C$  expression improves tumor recurrence-free times the finding was insignificant. Further studies are needed to better stratify patients for assessing possible therapeutic response to adrenoceptor antagonists.

No significant association between  $\beta 2$  protein expression

levels and clinical outcome was found in this study. Recent laboratory studies show a significant pathologic role for neuroendocrine-induced progression in ovarian cancer (reviewed by Kang *et al.*<sup>[39]</sup>), mediated by the  $\beta$  adrenoceptor activated cAMP - PKA cell signalling pathway. Increased cAMP activates Rap guanine-nucleotide-exchange-factor 3 (EPAC) leading to increased cell: Matrix adhesion needed for cancer cell implantation. Cancer growth is maintained due to enhanced cell survival resulting from  $\gamma$ Src-FAK signalling and STAT3 induced angiogenesis. These mechanisms explain the murine *in vivo* observation that the  $\beta 2$  antagonist propranolol inhibits ovarian cell growth<sup>[40]</sup>. However, other *in vitro* studies suggest that  $\beta$ -blockers would not be effective. In some instances,  $\beta 2$  agonists have been found to reduce cell proliferation<sup>[32,41,42]</sup> and migration<sup>[43]</sup>. In the latter case, it is proposed that  $\beta$  blockers could actually increase ovarian disease progression by promoting cell migration. Another explanation is that  $\beta$  blockers induce increased cell proliferation leaving unopposed  $\alpha 2C$  AR activity<sup>[42]</sup> in contrast to our findings suggesting that  $\alpha 1B$  is moderated by  $\alpha 2C$  in ovarian cancer. Recent proof-of-concept population studies of  $\beta$ -blocker users among ovarian cancer patients have produced conflicting findings. One study showed an association between increased progression-free survival (PFS) in users ( $n = 23$ ) compared to non-users<sup>[7]</sup>. In contrast, a more recent study found no benefit in PFS or overall survival in platinum-sensitive patients prescribed  $\beta$ -blockers ( $n = 8$ )<sup>[5]</sup>. Clearly, larger studies are needed allowing for possible confounders and tumor receptor typing. Although previous studies have focused on the use of  $\beta$ -blockers to retard disease progression, the results presented here and in a recent breast cancer study<sup>[21]</sup> suggest that the possible therapeutic benefits of alpha adrenoceptor antagonists should be investigated.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank Brett Blackburn and Claire Boag for photographic assistance.

## COMMENTS

### Background

Many cancers are treatable by surgery, radio-/chemotherapy, or targeted drug treatments, or any combination of these. In some instances a cancer can spread (metastasise) to tissues distant from the original site. This process can place a patient at increased risk of disease progression and demise and in addition, it can present clinicians with more challenging medical management of a patient's disease. Knowledge about the biological process involved in cancer spread is increasing but there remains an unmet need to develop new treatment approaches to prevent it. Being able to identify patients that are at increased risk of metastasis can rationalise clinical management by focusing extensive treatment on those that will best benefit. Laboratory experiments have shown that some cancer cells are stimulated to migrate when adrenergic receptor proteins (stress receptors) are activated by stress hormones. Drugs are available that inhibit adrenergic receptor function and could be used to neutralise certain cancer cell functions.

### Research frontiers

Identifying the expression pattern of adrenergic receptors (AR) in different cancer

types and their association with disease progression and survival could provide insight into using AR inhibitor drugs for targeted anti-cancer treatment.

### Innovations and breakthroughs

The expression pattern of 3 AR proteins ( $\alpha$ B1,  $\alpha$ 2C and  $\beta$ 2) was investigated and its significance statistically related to survival and metastasis outcome in patients with different types of ovarian cancer. Only  $\alpha$ B1 was found to predict shortened survival and increased risk of tumor recurrence, especially in patients with endometrioid type cancer, independently of tumour grade, clinical stage and chemotherapy treatment.

### Applications

The results suggest that adrenergic receptor antagonists with anti- $\alpha$ B1 selectivity could be used to limit disease progression in patients with endometrioid type tumors expressing  $\alpha$ B1 AR.

### Terminology

Metastasis development is a major cause of mortality in patients with cancer and involves a multistep biological pathway resulting in tumor cells leaving the primary cancer and disseminating to distant body tissues. AR belong to a family of G protein-coupled receptors comprising 9 members.

### Peer-review

This is a well written paper.

## REFERENCES

- Copeland LJ. Chapter 11 - Epithelial Ovarian Cancer. In Philip JDM, William T. Creasman MD (eds): Clinical Gynecologic Oncology (Seventh Edition). Edinburgh: Mosby, 2007: 313-367
- Howlander N, Noone AM, Krapcho M, Neyman N, Aminou R (Eds): SEER Cancer statistics review, 1975-2009 (Vintage 2009 Population). MD: National Cancer Institute, Bethesda, 2012. Available from: URL: [http://seer.cancer.gov/csr/1975\\_2009\\_pops09/](http://seer.cancer.gov/csr/1975_2009_pops09/)
- Lee JW, Shahzad MM, Lin YG, Armaiz-Pena G, Mangala LS, Han HD, Kim HS, Nam EJ, Jennings NB, Halder J, Nick AM, Stone RL, Lu C, Lutgendorf SK, Cole SW, Lokshin AE, Sood AK. Surgical stress promotes tumor growth in ovarian carcinoma. *Clin Cancer Res* 2009; **15**: 2695-2702 [PMID: 19351748 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-08-2966]
- Sood AK, Bhatti R, Kamat AA, Landen CN, Han L, Thaker PH, Li Y, Gershenson DM, Lutgendorf S, Cole SW. Stress hormone-mediated invasion of ovarian cancer cells. *Clin Cancer Res* 2006; **12**: 369-375 [PMID: 16428474 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-05-1698]
- Thaker PH, Lutgendorf SK, Sood AK. The neuroendocrine impact of chronic stress on cancer. *Cell Cycle* 2007; **6**: 430-433 [PMID: 17312398 DOI: 10.4161/cc.6.4.3829]
- Armaiz-Pena GN, Lutgendorf SK, Cole SW, Sood AK. Neuroendocrine modulation of cancer progression. *Brain Behav Immun* 2009; **23**: 10-15 [PMID: 18638541 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbi.2008.06.007]
- Diaz ES, Karlan BY, Li AJ. Impact of beta blockers on epithelial ovarian cancer survival. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **127**: 375-378 [PMID: 22819786 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2012.07.102]
- Sood AK, Armaiz-Pena GN, Halder J, Nick AM, Stone RL, Hu W, Carroll AR, Spanuth WA, Deavers MT, Allen JK, Han LY, Kamat AA, Shahzad MM, McIntyre BW, Diaz-Montero CM, Jennings NB, Lin YG, Merritt WM, DeGeest K, Vivas-Mejia PE, Lopez-Berestein G, Schaller MD, Cole SW, Lutgendorf SK. Adrenergic modulation of focal adhesion kinase protects human ovarian cancer cells from anoikis. *J Clin Invest* 2010; **120**: 1515-1523 [PMID: 20389021 DOI: 10.1172/JCI40802]
- Lutgendorf SK, DeGeest K, Dahmouch L, Farley D, Penedo F, Bender D, Goodheart M, Buckers TE, Mendez L, Krueger G, Clevenger L, Lubaroff DM, Sood AK, Cole SW. Social isolation is associated with elevated tumor norepinephrine in ovarian carcinoma patients. *Brain Behav Immun* 2011; **25**: 250-255 [PMID: 20955777 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbi.2010.10.012]
- Sloan EK, Priceman SJ, Cox BF, Yu S, Pimentel MA, Tangkanangkul V, Arevalo JM, Morizono K, Karanikolas BD, Wu L, Sood AK, Cole SW. The sympathetic nervous system induces a metastatic switch in primary breast cancer. *Cancer Res* 2010; **70**: 7042-7052 [PMID: 20823155 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-10-0522]
- Wei W, Mok SC, Oliva E, Kim SH, Mohapatra G, Birrer MJ. FGF18 as a prognostic and therapeutic biomarker in ovarian cancer. *J Clin Invest* 2013; **123**: 4435-4448 [PMID: 24018557 DOI: 10.1172/JCI70625]
- Entschladen F, Zänker KS, Powe DG. Heterotrimeric G protein signaling in cancer cells with regard to metastasis formation. *Cell Cycle* 2011; **10**: 1086-1091 [PMID: 21430442 DOI: 10.4161/cc.10.7.15208]
- Evans BA, Broxton N, Merlin J, Sato M, Hutchinson DS, Christopoulos A, Summers RJ. Quantification of functional selectivity at the human  $\alpha$ (1A)-adrenoceptor. *Mol Pharmacol* 2011; **79**: 298-307 [PMID: 20978120 DOI: 10.1124/mol.110.067454]
- Enserink JM, Price LS, Methi T, Mahic M, Sonnenberg A, Bos JL, Taskén K. The cAMP-Epac-Rap1 pathway regulates cell spreading and cell adhesion to laminin-5 through the  $\alpha$ 3beta1 integrin but not the  $\alpha$ 6beta4 integrin. *J Biol Chem* 2004; **279**: 44889-44896 [PMID: 15302884 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M404599200]
- Fredriksson JM, Lindquist JM, Bronnikov GE, Nedergaard J. Norepinephrine induces vascular endothelial growth factor gene expression in brown adipocytes through a  $\beta$ -adrenoreceptor/cAMP/protein kinase A pathway involving Src but independently of Erk1/2. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 13802-13811 [PMID: 10788502 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.275.18.13802]
- Buffin-Meyer B, Crassous PA, Delage C, Denis C, Schaak S, Paris H. EGF receptor transactivation and PI3-kinase mediate stimulation of ERK by  $\alpha$ (2A)-adrenoreceptor in intestinal epithelial cells: a role in wound healing. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2007; **574**: 85-93 [PMID: 17655843 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejphar.2007.07.014]
- Karkoulas G, Mastrogianni O, Lymperopoulos A, Paris H, Flordellis C.  $\alpha$ (2)-Adrenergic receptors activate MAPK and Akt through a pathway involving arachidonic acid metabolism by cytochrome P450-dependent epoxigenase, matrix metalloproteinase activation and subtype-specific transactivation of EGFR. *Cell Signal* 2006; **18**: 729-739 [PMID: 16098714 DOI: 10.1016/j.cellsig.2005.06.014]
- Diaz ES, Karlan BY, Li AJ. Impact of Beta Blockers on Epithelial Ovarian Cancer Survival. *Obstet Gynecol Surv* 2013; **68**: 109-110 [DOI: 10.1097/01.ogx.0000427623.57640.65]
- Eskander R, Bessonova L, Chiu C, Ward K, Culver H, Harrison T, Randall L. Beta blocker use and ovarian cancer survival: A retrospective cohort study. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **127**: S21 [DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2012.07.059]
- Johannesdottir SA, Schmidt M, Phillips G, Glaser R, Yang EV, Blumenfeld M, Lemeshow S. Use of  $\beta$ -blockers and mortality following ovarian cancer diagnosis: a population-based cohort study. *BMC Cancer* 2013; **13**: 85 [PMID: 23433478 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-13-85]
- Powe DG, Voss MJ, Habashy HO, Zänker KS, Green AR, Ellis IO, Entschladen F. Alpha- and beta-adrenergic receptor (AR) protein expression is associated with poor clinical outcome in breast cancer: an immunohistochemical study. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2011; **130**: 457-463 [PMID: 21298476 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-011-1371-z]
- Lutgendorf SK, Cole S, Costanzo E, Bradley S, Coffin J, Jabbari S, Rainwater K, Ritchie JM, Yang M, Sood AK. Stress-related mediators stimulate vascular endothelial growth factor secretion by two ovarian cancer cell lines. *Clin Cancer Res* 2003; **9**: 4514-4521 [PMID: 14555525]
- Thaker PH, Han LY, Kamat AA, Arevalo JM, Takahashi R, Lu C, Jennings NB, Armaiz-Pena G, Bankson JA, Ravoori M, Merritt WM, Lin YG, Mangala LS, Kim TJ, Coleman RL, Landen CN, Li Y, Felix E, Sanguino AM, Newman RA, Lloyd M, Gershenson DM, Kundra V, Lopez-Berestein G, Lutgendorf SK, Cole SW, Sood AK.

- Chronic stress promotes tumor growth and angiogenesis in a mouse model of ovarian carcinoma. *Nat Med* 2006; **12**: 939-944 [PMID: 16862152 DOI: 10.1038/nm1447]
- 24 **Cole SW**, Sood AK. Molecular pathways: beta-adrenergic signaling in cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2012; **18**: 1201-1206 [PMID: 22186256 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-0641]
  - 25 **Robinson-Smith TM**, Isaacsohn I, Mercer CA, Zhou M, Van Rooijen N, Husseinadeh N, McFarland-Mancini MM, Drew AF. Macrophages mediate inflammation-enhanced metastasis of ovarian tumors in mice. *Cancer Res* 2007; **67**: 5708-5716 [PMID: 17575137 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-06-4375]
  - 26 **Barron TI**, Connolly RM, Sharp L, Bennett K, Visvanathan K. Beta blockers and breast cancer mortality: a population- based study. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 2635-2644 [PMID: 21632503 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2010.33.5422]
  - 27 **Melhem-Bertrandt A**, Chavez-Macgregor M, Lei X, Brown EN, Lee RT, Meric-Bernstam F, Sood AK, Conzen SD, Hortobagyi GN, Gonzalez-Angulo AM. Beta-blocker use is associated with improved relapse-free survival in patients with triple-negative breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 2645-2652 [PMID: 21632501 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2010.33.4441]
  - 28 **Powe DG**, Voss MJ, Zänker KS, Habashy HO, Green AR, Ellis IO, Entschladen F. Beta-blocker drug therapy reduces secondary cancer formation in breast cancer and improves cancer specific survival. *Oncotarget* 2010; **1**: 628-638 [PMID: 21317458]
  - 29 **Grytli HH**, Fagerland MW, Fosså SD, Taskén KA, Håheim LL. Use of  $\beta$ -blockers is associated with prostate cancer-specific survival in prostate cancer patients on androgen deprivation therapy. *Prostate* 2013; **73**: 250-260 [PMID: 22821802]
  - 30 **De Giorgi V**, Grazzini M, Gandini S, Benemei S, Lotti T, Marchionni N, Geppetti P. Treatment with  $\beta$ -blockers and reduced disease progression in patients with thick melanoma. *Arch Intern Med* 2011; **171**: 779-781 [PMID: 21518948 DOI: 10.1001/archinternmed.2011.131]
  - 31 **Lemeshow S**, Sørensen HT, Phillips G, Yang EV, Antonsen S, Riis AH, Lesinski GB, Jackson R, Glaser R.  $\beta$ -Blockers and survival among Danish patients with malignant melanoma: a population-based cohort study. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2011; **20**: 2273-2279 [PMID: 21933972 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-11-0249]
  - 32 **Gargiulo L**, Copsel S, Rivero EM, Galés C, Sénard JM, Lüthy IA, Davio C, Bruzzone A. Differential  $\beta_2$ -adrenergic receptor expression defines the phenotype of non-tumorigenic and malignant human breast cell lines. *Oncotarget* 2014; **5**: 10058-10069 [PMID: 25375203]
  - 33 **Melin A**, Sparén P, Bergqvist A. The risk of cancer and the role of parity among women with endometriosis. *Hum Reprod* 2007; **22**: 3021-3026 [PMID: 17855408 DOI: 10.1093/humrep/dem209]
  - 34 **Oda K**, Stokoe D, Taketani Y, McCormick F. High frequency of coexistent mutations of PIK3CA and PTEN genes in endometrial carcinoma. *Cancer Res* 2005; **65**: 10669-10673 [PMID: 16322209 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-05-2620]
  - 35 **Weigelt B**, Warne PH, Lambros MB, Reis-Filho JS, Downward J. PI3K pathway dependencies in endometrioid endometrial cancer cell lines. *Clin Cancer Res* 2013; **19**: 3533-3544 [PMID: 23674493 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-12-3815]
  - 36 **Nojimoto FD**, Mueller A, Hebel-Barbosa F, Akinaga J, Lima V, Kiguti LR, Pupo AS. The tricyclic antidepressants amitriptyline, nortriptyline and imipramine are weak antagonists of human and rat  $\alpha 1B$ -adrenoceptors. *Neuropharmacology* 2010; **59**: 49-57 [PMID: 20363235 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuropharm.2010.03.015]
  - 37 **Fumagalli L**, Pallavicini M, Budriesi R, Bolchi C, Canovi M, Chiarini A, Chiodini G, Gobbi M, Laurino P, Micucci M, Straniero V, Valoti E. 6-methoxy-7-benzofuranoxo and 6-methoxy-7-indoloxo analogues of 2-[2-(2,6-Dimethoxyphenoxy)ethyl]aminomethyl-1,4-benzodioxane (WB4101): 1 discovery of a potent and selective  $\alpha 1D$ -adrenoceptor antagonist. *J Med Chem* 2013; **56**: 6402-6412 [PMID: 23902232 DOI: 10.1021/jm400867d]
  - 38 **Park SY**, Kang JH, Jeong KJ, Lee J, Han JW, Choi WS, Kim YK, Kang J, Park CG, Lee HY. Norepinephrine induces VEGF expression and angiogenesis by a hypoxia-inducible factor-1 $\alpha$  protein-dependent mechanism. *Int J Cancer* 2011; **128**: 2306-2316 [PMID: 20715173 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.25589]
  - 39 **Kang Y**, Lutgendorf S, Hu W, Cole SW, Sood AK. Stress related neuroendocrine influences in ovarian cancer. *Current Cancer Therapy Reviews* 2012; **8**: 100-109 [DOI: 10.2174/157339412800675315]
  - 40 **Landen CN**, Lin YG, Armaiz Pena GN, Das PD, Arevalo JM, Kamat AA, Han LY, Jennings NB, Spannuth WA, Thaker PH, Lutgendorf SK, Savary CA, Sanguino AM, Lopez-Berestein G, Cole SW, Sood AK. Neuroendocrine modulation of signal transducer and activator of transcription-3 in ovarian cancer. *Cancer Res* 2007; **67**: 10389-10396 [PMID: 17974982 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-07-0858]
  - 41 **Carie AE**, Sebt SM. A chemical biology approach identifies a beta-2 adrenergic receptor agonist that causes human tumor regression by blocking the Raf-1/Mek-1/Erk1/2 pathway. *Oncogene* 2007; **26**: 3777-3788 [PMID: 17260025 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1210172]
  - 42 **Pérez Piñero C**, Bruzzone A, Sarappa MG, Castillo LF, Lüthy IA. Involvement of  $\alpha 2$ - and  $\beta 2$ -adrenoceptors on breast cancer cell proliferation and tumour growth regulation. *Br J Pharmacol* 2012; **166**: 721-736 [PMID: 22122228 DOI: 10.1111/j.1476-5381.2011.01791.x]
  - 43 **Bastian P**, Balcarek A, Altanis C, Strell C, Niggemann B, Zaenker KS, Entschladen F. The inhibitory effect of norepinephrine on the migration of ES-2 ovarian carcinoma cells involves a Rap1-dependent pathway. *Cancer Lett* 2009; **274**: 218-224 [PMID: 18849110 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2008.09.008]

**P- Reviewer:** Rovas L, Zafrakas M, Zhang XQ **S- Editor:** Ji FF  
**L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Wu HL





## Observational Study

# Variation in use of menopausal hormone treatment on risk of health outcomes

Soo-Keat Khoo, Lee Tripcony

Soo-Keat Khoo, School of Medicine, University of Queensland and Royal Brisbane and Women's Hospital, Brisbane, Queensland 4029, Australia

Lee Tripcony, Oncology Services, Royal Brisbane and Women's Hospital, Brisbane, Queensland 4029, Australia

**Author contributions:** Khoo SK contributed to the concept and design of the study, assisted in patient supervision and wrote the manuscript; Tripcony L provided management of the data base and statistical analysis, and assisted in writing the manuscript.

**Institutional review board statement:** The study was reviewed and approved by the Ethics Committee of the Royal Women's Hospital and subsequently by the Royal Brisbane and Women's Hospital (ref RWH 99/17) (see attached).

**Informed consent statement:** All study participants were given information about the study and provided informed written consent before recruitment and enrolment. All data were de-identified.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** Both authors declare no conflict of interest in the findings of the study.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Soo-Keat Khoo, MD, Professor, FRANZCOG, School of Medicine, University of Queensland, Royal Brisbane and Women's Hospital, Level 6 Ned Hanlon Building, Brisbane, Queensland 4029, Australia. [hoo@uq.edu.au](mailto:hoo@uq.edu.au)  
Telephone: +61-7-33655205  
Fax: +61-7-33655211

Received: July 1, 2015  
Peer-review started: July 8, 2015  
First decision: September 18, 2015

Revised: October 12, 2015  
Accepted: November 23, 2015  
Article in press: November 25, 2015  
Published online: February 10, 2016

## Abstract

**AIM:** To determine the relative risk of selected serious outcomes with variations in use of menopausal hormone treatment (MHT).

**METHODS:** A cohort of 489 women, randomly recruited at age 40-79 years, from a longitudinal study of urbanised population was a study group and was followed for 14 years. Four selected outcomes (coronary artery disease, stroke, peripheral artery disease, breast cancer) were tested. Each woman on entry to the study was interviewed by a dedicated medical practitioner, and data on menstrual and menopausal history and health status were obtained. Outcome information was ascertained by questionnaire and medical reports from attending medical practitioners. In case of death, cause of death was checked with the Registry of Births, Deaths, Marriages and Divorce. This information was available for all women. An ever-user of MHT was defined as use for 6 mo or more at any time during the study. A late start of MHT was defined as 3 years or more from onset of menopause. The generalised linear statistical package was used to examine the data; univariate logistic regression models were used to describe the relationship between patient characteristics and a disease outcome, followed by stepwise multivariate analysis, controlling for age, lifestyle factors and co-morbidities.

**RESULTS:** The risk of ever-use of MHT was significantly increased only for peripheral artery disease (RR = 2.16; 0.99, 4.71;  $P = 0.05$ ), and not for coronary artery disease, stroke and breast cancer. A late start of MHT (three years or more from onset of menopause) was

associated with significantly increased risks for coronary artery disease (RR = 2.56; 1.15, 5.72;  $P = 0.02$ ) and peripheral artery disease (RR = 4.42; 1.55, 12.64;  $P = 0.005$ ), and use after age 60 years with significantly increased risks for coronary artery disease (RR = 4.98; 2.19, 11.55;  $P < 0.001$ ), stroke (RR = 2.99; 1.11, 8.08;  $P = 0.03$ ) and peripheral artery disease (RR = 4.18; 1.24, 14.14;  $P = 0.02$ ). Use up to 10 years was not associated with significant risk for all outcomes. These risks were confirmed by stepwise multi variate analysis, adjusting for age at recruitment, body mass index, smoking, physical activity and alcohol use, and existing diabetes, mellitus, hypertension and hypercholesterolaemia. Regardless of variations in use, risk for breast cancer was not found.

**CONCLUSION:** The study confirms ever-use of MHT affected only risk of peripheral artery disease; but some use variations could have adverse effects.

**Key words:** Menopausal hormone treatment; Variation in use; Risk outcomes

© The Author(s) 2016. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** In contrast to larger studies, this small observational study examined effects of various ways of use of menopausal hormone treatment (MHT) when given for clinical indications. Of the four selected outcomes available at 14 years follow-up, overall risk was only increased for peripheral artery disease but not for coronary artery disease, stroke and breast cancer. However, risk was increased for coronary artery disease and peripheral disease when MHT was started more than three years after menopause in women over 60 years.

Khoo SK, Tripcony L. Variation in use of menopausal hormone treatment on risk of health outcomes. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 127-133 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/127.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.127>

## INTRODUCTION

Since the findings of the Women's Health Initiative (WHI) were reported in 2002, there has been considerable research activity in analyses, re-analyses and meta-analyses of available and new data on the risks of use of hormone therapy at and after menopause. The reason for termination of the combined oestrogen plus progestogen arm of the WHI was a significant increase in risk of several health outcomes, namely breast cancer, coronary artery disease, stroke and deep vein thrombosis<sup>[1]</sup>. However, the reason for termination of the oestrogen-only arm of the same study, was different - the increase in risk was only significant for one outcome - stroke - and the risks of breast cancer

and coronary artery disease were not increased<sup>[2]</sup>. Other studies such as the Million Women Study (MWS)<sup>[3]</sup> and the California Teachers Study<sup>[4]</sup>, have added more information to an emerging complex plethora of data which gives rise to a variety of opinions and recommendations from international expert bodies. An excellent and comprehensive review of the risks and benefits of use is given by Davey<sup>[5]</sup>.

Much attention has been given to obtain a better understanding of the vascular risks, especially in the heart and brain, and to reconcile the differences in outcomes of menopausal hormone treatment (MHT) between observational and randomised controlled studies. Lessons from monkey models suggest variable effects due to timing of treatment<sup>[6]</sup>. Whereas surgically-induced oestrogen deficiency results in premature coronary artery atherosclerosis, the process is prevented when replacement oestrogen is given early but not so when given late after the deficiency. This is the concept of a "window of opportunity" to explain the variable findings in women. It is proposed that oestrogen has a beneficial effect on arteries in younger women by preventing or delaying atherosclerosis; but when given to older women with advanced plaque formation, the effect may be absent or even, deleterious. However, the Kronos Study failed to show a good effect<sup>[7]</sup>, whilst a Danish Study reported reduced risk of mortality and myocardial infarction<sup>[8]</sup>.

In view of these variable findings, clinicians need to be aware that MHT may have different effects and risk outcomes when given in different ways and at different times of the woman's life. In this study, the effects of variations in use of MHT were tested in a cohort of women from a Longitudinal Study of Ageing in Women (LAW Study). Use variations included ever-use, timing of initiation of treatment from menopause, types of regimen, age at start or stopping treatment, and duration of treatment. The outcomes selected for their clinical importance included coronary artery disease, stroke, peripheral artery disease and breast cancer. We report the findings after 14 years of follow-up.

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

The women in this study belonged to a cohort who have been recruited for a multidisciplinary longitudinal study on ageing and to date, follow-up has reached 14 years. The design and recruitment procedures of the overall study have been previously described<sup>[9]</sup>. Approval was given by the Ethics Committee of the Royal Brisbane and Women's Hospital. Informed consent was also obtained from all women recruited into the overall Study.

The cohort was recruited by random invitation from the electoral roll, based on age stratification into four age-decades: 40-49 years, 50-59 years, 60-69 years and 70-79 years. Each woman on entry to the study was interviewed by a dedicated medical practitioner on an annual basis. In addition to other specific questions

**Table 1** Distribution of outcomes and variation of use of menopausal hormone therapy in study cohort

	No. of women	
	Never-users	Ever-users
No. of events during 14 yr follow-up (% in group)		
Coronary artery disease	33 (11.5%)	29 (14.3%)
Stroke	23 (8.0%)	19 (9.4%)
Peripheral arteria disease	10 (3.5%)	19 (9.4%)
Breast cancer	20 (6.9%)	12 (5.9%)
Timing of initiation of therapy from onset of menopause		
“Early start” ( $\leq 3$ yr)	-	162 (80.2%)
“Late start” ( $> 3$ yr)	-	40 (19.8%)
Type of regimen		
Oestrogen-only	-	30 (14.8%)
Oestrogen + progestogen	-	168 (83.2%)
Tibolone	-	4
Combination of treatment strategy		
Early start plus oestrogen-only	-	20 (9.9%)
Early start plus oestrogen + progestogen	-	140 (69.3%)
Late start plus oestrogen-only	-	10 (4.9%)
Late start plus oestrogen + progestogen	-	28 (13.9%)
Other	-	4
Age of patient when treatment started		
20-39 yr	-	17 (8.4%)
40-49 yr	-	85 (42.0%)
50-59 yr	-	82 (40.6%)
60-69 yr	-	18 (8.9%)
70-79 yr	-	17 (8.4%)
Age of patient when treatment stopped		
20-39 yr	-	0
40-49 yr	-	20 (9.9%)
50-59 yr	-	85 (42.1%)
60-69 yr	-	69 (34.1%)
70-79 yr	-	28 (13.9%)
Duration of use (yr)		
< 1	-	15 (7.4%)
1-5	-	67 (33.2%)
6-10	-	37 (18.3%)
11-15	-	45 (22.3%)
16-20	-	19 (9.4%)
21-25	-	11 (5.4%)
> 25	-	7 (3.4%)
Total No. of women	287	202

and assessments required by the other projects, information was obtained on use of MHT to include detailed menstrual and menopausal history and health status. Follow-up was continued by questionnaires on an annual basis to ascertain use of MHT, menopausal status as well as development of serious health outcomes, as determined by the attending medical practitioner. In particular, coronary artery disease, stroke, peripheral artery diseases (including carotid, femoral and popliteal arteries) and breast cancer were specifically ascertained. In women in whom information was uncertain, confirmation was made by direct contact with the attending medical practitioner. If death had occurred, cause of death was checked with the Registry of Births, Deaths, Marriages and Divorce, Department of Justice and Attorney-General, Queensland.

An ever-user of MHT was defined as a woman who had used MHT for 6 mo or more at any time during the

study period of 14 years.

A cut-off time of three years was used to define timing of initiation of MHT in relation to onset of menopause. An “early start” user was a woman who had started within three years of onset of menopause; a “late start” user was one who had started MHT more than three years after menopause.

### Statistical analysis

The analysis was revised and performed by a Biomedical Statistician (co-author: Lee Tripcony). The generalised linear statistical package (GLIM4) was used to examine the data. Univariate logistic regression models were used to describe the relationship between patient characteristics and a disease outcome. Variations in use of MHT analysed were used by patient (never-user, ever-user), timing of initiation of treatment in relation to onset of menopause (never “early start”, “late start”), type of regimen (never, oestrogen-only, oestrogen plus progestogen), age of starting or stopping treatment (in categories), and duration of use (in categories). The dependent variables or outcome events were coronary artery disease, stroke, peripheral artery disease, and breast cancer. Hazard ratios with 95% CIs and *P* values were constructed. A *P* value  $\leq 0.05$  (two-sided) was taken to represent a significant association. From these results, only factors that had a *P* value  $< 0.1$  were included in the stepwise construction of the multivariate model. Lifestyle and other factors fitted to the model included age at recruitment, body mass index, alcohol use, physical activity, smoking, and existing conditions at entry to study (diabetes mellitus, hypertension and hypercholesterolaemia).

## RESULTS

There were 489 women in the cohort. Their ages in the two groups were comparable: 202 ever-users with mean age of 61.0 years (range 44-79; 95%CI: 59.9-62.0) and 287 never-users with mean age of 57.9 years (range 41-80; 95%CI: 56.4-59.3).

As shown in Table 1, the difference in the incidence of the four outcomes between never-users and ever-users was greatest for peripheral artery disease (3.5% vs 9.4%) and least for breast cancer (6.9% vs 5.9%).

Interestingly, 19.8% of women started MHT more than three years after menopause; 17.3% started MHT when aged 60 years or more, and 48.0% stopped MHT after age 60 years or more. There was a wide range of duration of use; 33.2% had used MHT for 1-5 years, another 50.0% for 6-20 years. Surprisingly, there were 8.9% of women who had used MHT for more than 20 years.

As expected, the majority (80.2%) of ever-users started treatment within 3 years of menopause, but there was still 19.8% who started late (17 women started MHT at age 70 years or more). A sub-group of 30 women had a hysterectomy and removal of both

**Table 2** Menopausal hormone treatment and risk of serious outcomes: Ever-use, timing of initiation of treatment and type of regimen

	Relative risk estimate (95%CI)			
	Coronary artery disease	Stroke	Peripheral artery disease	Breast cancer
Ever-use	1.29 (0.76, 2.20) <i>P</i> = 0.35	1.14 (0.61, 2.14) <i>P</i> = 0.69	2.16 (0.99, 4.71) <i>P</i> = 0.05 <sup>1</sup>	0.84 (0.40, 1.76) <i>P</i> = 0.65
Timing of initiation from onset of menopause				
Early start	1.02 (0.56, 1.86) <i>P</i> = 0.94	1.04 (0.52, 2.06) <i>P</i> = 0.92	1.65 (0.69, 3.94) <i>P</i> = 0.26	0.97 (0.45, 2.08) <i>P</i> = 0.94
Late start	2.57 (1.15, 5.72) <i>P</i> = 0.02 <sup>1</sup>	1.57 (0.56, 4.37) <i>P</i> = 0.39	4.42 (1.55, 12.64) <i>P</i> = 0.0052	0.34 (0.05, 2.37) <i>P</i> = 0.28
Type of regimen				
Oestrogen only	2.34 (0.93, 5.88) <i>P</i> = 0.07	0.78 (0.18, 3.49) <i>P</i> = 0.75	5.01 (1.62, 15.48) <i>P</i> = 0.005	2.05 (0.65, 6.46) <i>P</i> = 0.22
Oestrogen + progestogen	1.16 (0.65, 2.06) <i>P</i> = 0.62	1.23 (0.64, 2.37) <i>P</i> = 0.53	1.59 (0.67, 3.79) <i>P</i> = 0.30	0.67 (0.29, 1.55) <i>P</i> = 0.35
Combination of treatment strategy				
Early start plus oestrogen-only	2.57 (0.88, 7.52) <i>P</i> = 0.09	1.22 (0.27, 5.56) <i>P</i> = 0.80	1.32 (0.16, 10.78) <i>P</i> = 0.80	2.36 (0.64, 8.72) <i>P</i> = 0.20
Early start plus oestrogen + progestogen	0.86 (0.44, 1.66) <i>P</i> = 0.65	1.03 (0.50, 2.12) <i>P</i> = 0.94	1.72 (0.70, 4.26) <i>P</i> = 0.24	0.81 (0.35, 1.89) <i>P</i> = 0.62
Late start plus oestrogen-only	1.92 (0.39, 9.45) <i>P</i> = 0.42	NC	16.73 (4.12, 67.91) <i>P</i> < 0.001 <sup>2</sup>	1.48 (0.18, 12.29) <i>P</i> = 0.71
Late start plus oestrogen + progestogen	3.08 (1.26, 7.55) <i>P</i> = 0.01 <sup>1</sup>	2.38 (0.83, 6.83) <i>P</i> = 0.11	0.93 (0.12, 7.46) <i>P</i> = 0.94	NC

NC: No convergence due to small numbers. By multivariate analysis adjusting for age at recruitment, body mass index, smoking, physical activity and alcohol use, co-morbidities (diabetes mellitus, hypertension, hypercholesterolaemia) shows: <sup>1</sup>*P* 0.05 – 0.01; <sup>2</sup>*P* < 0.01.

ovaries (for benign pathology) before the expected menopausal age (45-55 years). They were treated by an oestrogen-only regimen; treatment was started usually after the surgery, 17 of them were aged 20-39 years, and the other 13 women were aged less than 45 years. At that period 2000-2002, only oral oestrogen only regimen was available.

### Ever-use, timing of initiation of treatment and type of regimen

As shown in Table 2, there was no significant increase in risk estimate for coronary artery disease, stroke and breast cancer in ever-users, compared with never-users. However, in ever-users, the overall risk of peripheral artery disease was significantly increased by two-fold (RR = 2.15; 0.99, 4.71; *P* = 0.05). This association was confirmed after adjusting for age, body mass index, alcohol use, physical activity, smoking and co-morbidities.

Whilst "early start" of MHT was not significantly

increased for all four outcomes, "late start" was associated with a significant risk increase for coronary artery disease by 2½-fold (RR = 2.57; 1.15, 5.72; *P* = 0.02) and for peripheral artery disease by more than 4-fold (RR = 4.42; 1.55, 12.64; *P* = 0.005). A "late start" was confirmed after adjusting for other factors to be an adverse independent factor for coronary artery disease and peripheral artery disease.

Essentially, MHT was given as an oestrogen-only regimen (oral or transdermal) or oestrogen plus progestogen continuous regimen (oral or transdermal). For the oestrogen-only regimen, the risk was only significantly increased for peripheral artery disease by 5-fold (RR = 5.01; 1.62, 15.48; *P* = 0.005). The combined oestrogen plus progestogen regimen did not have an effect on any outcome. When the type of regimen was paired with the timing of initiating treatment, the risk for coronary artery disease was significantly increased by three-fold with "late start" together with the combination treatment (RR = 3.08; 1.26, 7.55; *P* = 0.01), and the risk for peripheral artery disease was significantly increased by 16-fold with "late start" together with the oestrogen-only regimen (RR = 16.73; 4.12, 67.91; *P* < 0.001). The significant independent adverse association between "late start" plus oestrogen + progestogen combination and coronary artery disease was confirmed by multivariate analysis, as was the association between "late start" plus oestrogen-only regimen and peripheral artery disease.

There were no other significant effects of MHT on other outcomes. Notably, the risk for breast cancer was not significantly affected by any variation in use.

### Age of patient at start and stopping of MHT and duration of use

As shown in Table 3, there was no significant effect of age when treatment was started on risk of the outcomes until the late age group of 60-79 years (35 women in the cohort). For these women, the risk for coronary artery disease and peripheral artery disease was significantly increased (RR = 7.70; 2.85, 20.76; *P* < 0.001, and RR = 5.01; 1.27, 19.80; *P* = 0.02, respectively). The age when treatment was stopped had a similar effect on these two outcomes, when the risk was significantly increased in women aged 60-79 years.

There was a wide range of duration of use - from less than one year (but more than six months to be included) to 21-25 years (11 women) and more than 25 years (seven women, one woman used MHT for a record 31 years). There was no significant impact of duration of use on the outcomes, except for peripheral artery disease where the risk was significantly increased when use continued for 21-25 years (RR = 5.57; 1.07, 28.92; *P* = 0.04) and for more than 25 years (RR = 10.03; 1.75, 57.58; *P* = 0.01).

Notably, duration of use had no effect on risk of



**Table 3** Variation of use of menopausal hormone treatment and risk of serious outcomes : Age of patient and duration of use

	Relative risk estimate (95%CI)			
	Coronary artery disease	Stroke	Peripheral artery disease	Breast cancer
Age of patient when treatment started (yr)				
20-39	0.48 (0.07, 3.35) <i>P</i> = 0.47	0.68 (0.09, 5.35) <i>P</i> = 0.72	1.57 (0.19, 12.79) <i>P</i> = 0.67	0.83 (0.11, 6.57) <i>P</i> = 0.87
40-49	1.14 (0.55, 2.37) <i>P</i> = 0.72	0.98 (0.41, 2.37) <i>P</i> = 0.97	2.25 (0.85, 5.96) <i>P</i> = 0.10	0.66 (0.22, 1.97) <i>P</i> = 0.45
50-59	0.83 (0.37, 1.87) <i>P</i> = 0.65	1.18 (0.51, 2.75) <i>P</i> = 0.69	1.63 (0.55, 4.79) <i>P</i> = 0.37	0.87 (0.32, 2.38) <i>P</i> = 0.78
60-79	7.7 (2.85, 20.76) <i>P</i> < 0.001	2.19 (0.59, 8.11) <i>P</i> = 0.24	5.01 (1.27, 19.80) <i>P</i> = 0.02	1.67 (0.36, 7.77) <i>P</i> = 0.52
Age of patient when treatment stopped (yr)				
20-39	1.36 (0.38, 4.88) <i>P</i> = 0.64	1.22 (0.27, 5.56) <i>P</i> = 0.80	2.79 (0.57, 13.53) <i>P</i> = 0.20	1.48 (0.32, 6.85) <i>P</i> = 0.61
40-49	0.48 (0.18, 1.27) <i>P</i> = 0.50	0.54 (0.18, 1.59) <i>P</i> = 0.26	0.92 (0.25, 3.37) <i>P</i> = 0.90	0.32 (0.97, 1.41) <i>P</i> = 0.13
50-59	1.3 (0.61, 2.80) <i>P</i> = 0.50	1.24 (0.51, 3.00) <i>P</i> = 0.64	2.83 (1.06, 7.60) <i>P</i> = 0.04	1.75 (0.74, 4.16) <i>P</i> = 0.20
60-79	4.98 (2.19, 11.55) <i>P</i> < 0.001	2.99 (1.11, 8.08) <i>P</i> = 0.03	4.18 (1.24, 14.14) <i>P</i> = 0.02	NC
Duration of use (yr)				
< 1	1.1 (0.24, 5.04) <i>P</i> = 0.90	NC	3.59 (0.72, 17.75) <i>P</i> = 0.12	1.91 (0.40, 8.98) <i>P</i> = 0.41
1-5	0.76 (0.31, 1.87) <i>P</i> = 0.55	1.28 (0.53, 3.11) <i>P</i> = 0.59	1.18 (0.32, 4.34) <i>P</i> = 0.81	0.85 (0.28, 2.57) <i>P</i> = 0.77
6-10	2.12 (0.90, 5.03) <i>P</i> = 0.09	0.3 (0.04, 2.32) <i>P</i> = 0.25	1.43 (0.31, 6.74) <i>P</i> = 0.65	0.37 (0.40, 2.85) <i>P</i> = 0.34
11-15	0.75 (0.26, 2.20) <i>P</i> = 0.60	1.69 (0.65, 4.38) <i>P</i> = 0.28	3.14 (1.04, 9.50) <i>P</i> = 0.04	0.95 (0.27, 3.35) <i>P</i> = 0.94
16-20	2.75 (0.93, 8.11) <i>P</i> = 0.07	1.29 (0.28, 5.92) <i>P</i> = 0.74	NC	0.74 (0.09, 5.84) <i>P</i> = 0.78
21-25	2.89 (0.73, 11.41) <i>P</i> = 0.13	2.44 (0.50, 11.92) <i>P</i> = 0.27	5.57 (1.07, 28.92) <i>P</i> = 0.04	1.33 (0.16, 10.96) <i>P</i> = 0.79
26+	1.28 (0.15, 10.97) <i>P</i> = 0.82	1.83 (0.21, 15.80) <i>P</i> = 0.58	10.03 (1.75, 57.58) <i>P</i> = 0.01	NC

NC: No convergence due to small numbers.

coronary artery disease, stroke and breast cancer.

## DISCUSSION

When our LAW study was planned some 14 years ago, it was considered an opportunity to test the effects of the variables in the use of MHT because there was a suitable group of women aged 40-79 years at recruitment who were randomly invited from the population to join the study. The findings of WHI study gave an impetus to

investigate the impact of variation in use such as early and late initiation of treatment and type of hormone regimen on relative risks of major clinical outcomes. For this report, we chose arterial conditions in the heart, brain and periphery (carotid, femoral, popliteal arteries). We included peripheral artery disease because of its association with older women and there were 29 events in our study. This study differed from other large studies in several aspects: the women were given MHT by their individual medical practitioners because of clinical indications, not to asymptomatic volunteers; the study was longitudinal and non-interventional, not randomised placebo-controlled; the cohort was smaller but closely followed for 14 years with very good outcome information on all the women; and despite the smaller cohort size, there were adequate outcome events to allow the power for analysis, based on relative risks estimated by comparison with an adequate group of never-ever users, as reference.

The present study confirms the general view that MHT is generally safe in healthy women. However, it may have unfavourable effects on the vascular system, both arterial and venous. In particular, risks of cardiovascular disease have been extensively analysed - with differing results between cohort, retrospective and prospective observational studies and randomised controlled studies. Whereas the observational studies (liable to inherent bias such as the "healthy user effect") demonstrated a significant 40%-60% reduction in risk of disease and of mortality<sup>[10-12]</sup>, the controlled studies (susceptible to faulty matching, loss to follow-up) showed no significant decrease, or even an increase as found by the WHI study with a risk increase with the oestrogen plus progestogen regimen<sup>[2]</sup> and a decrease with the oestrogen-only regimen<sup>[1]</sup>. We found in our prospective and observational study a significant increase in risk of clinically-reported coronary artery disease only with "late start" to initiate treatment more than three years from onset of menopause, and when treatment was started when the woman was much older, aged 60-79 years. This age-group is certainly considered contra-indicated now to start MHT but some of these women had been treated more than 20-30 years ago, based on a different set of evidence. Notably, ever-use of MHT generally had no significant effect on coronary artery disease, a common health outcome in ageing. We believe the increased risk associated with "late start" reflected old practice when MHT was considered safe and beneficial to the heart; since WHI, the older and less healthy women were advised to stop MHT by their medical practitioner. Therefore, our findings on risk of coronary artery disease support use in women within three years from menopause and started before age 60 years; duration of use did not appear to have a significant impact on the disease.

Risk of stroke with MHT was variably estimated by many studies, with the view that risk was increased with ischaemic stroke but not with haemorrhagic stroke<sup>[13,14]</sup>. Although the risks were increased in WHI studies (RR =

1.31; 1.02, 1.68 ischaemic stroke), they were not found in the post intervention phase of the study<sup>[15-16]</sup>. There appears to be general agreement that the risks for all types of stroke were increased, as in total stroke, non-fatal but stroke leading to disability; and no significant heterogeneity with any subgroups<sup>[17]</sup>. However, an association with oestrogen dose has been reported<sup>[18]</sup>, but not with age or time since menopause, or with low dose transdermal patch. We found no effect of MHT on risk of stroke, regardless of current or past use, timing of initiation of treatment from menopause or hormone content in the 42 events recorded in our cohort. The younger user effect may explain the finding, or more follow-up time is required to show this effect in light of the increasing incidence of hypertension with time in the cohort.

There is one vascular outcome seldom analysed with MHT - that is, the effect on peripheral artery disease. Because the disease is a component of the spectrum of arterial diseases, we decided to investigate its risk as a clinical condition which is less studied in epidemiological studies because it occurs less frequently - 29 events in our cohort of 489 women. We included clinically-proven diseases in the carotid, femoral and popliteal systems. As shown in the results, MHT had a strong impact on the risk of peripheral artery disease during follow-up of 14 years. The risk was significantly increased with "ever-use" and "late start", oestrogen-only regimen, and older age of women when treatment was started or stopped, and confirmed as a significant adverse association by multivariate analysis after adjusting for lifestyle factors and co-morbidities. This is the only outcome where duration of use had a significant impact; from a duration of 11 years onward, the risk was significantly increased. We believe that the effect relates more to older women who already have existing atherosclerosis of the peripheral arteries.

Breast cancer was the cancer outcome selected for analysis because of its frequency of occurrence and the known influence of hormones on the breast. Consideration has been given to contributing factors such as type of MHT, duration of use, body mass, interval between menopause and initiation of therapy, previous MHT, mammographic density<sup>[5]</sup>. Generally, the studies suggest an increase in risk. The Collaborative Group found the risk of breast cancer increased by 2.3% (RR = 1.023; 1.011, 1.036) per year of use, reaching 35% (RR = 1.35; 1.21, 1.49) after five years<sup>[19]</sup>. The Million Women Study also found an increased risk for oestrogen plus progestogen regimen by 100% (RR = 2.00; 1.88, 2.13) and less with oestrogen-only regimen by 30% (RR = 1.30; 1.21, 1.45), with no differences between routes of administration<sup>[3]</sup>. Also, an increased risk of breast cancer was found with increasing body weight - with a 3.1% increase per kg/m<sup>2</sup> of body mass index<sup>[20]</sup>. However, the increased risk was significantly greater in thin women using MHT, than overweight and obese women. The importance of timing of initiation of MHT from onset of menopause, the so-called "gap

time" or defined in our study as "early start" and "late start" has been highlighted in more recent studies. The WHI and MWS studies found an increased risk when the cut-off was 10 years after menopause, with the risks greater when MHT was given late (RR = 2.04 vs 1.53) for oestrogen plus progestogen regimens. For oestrogen-only regimens, the risk estimate fell from 1.43 to an insignificant 1.05. The reasoning behind these findings is based on the premise that exogenous hormones accelerate growth of pre-existing occult breast cancer (mitogenic and not carcinogenic) and differential sensitivity of breast tissue to hormones is related to age and menopausal status. We found no significant effect of MHT on risk of breast cancer, regardless of the use variation analysed. It is possible the small number of events (32 events) of breast cancer in our study, did not allow an appropriate calculation of risk estimate in the cohort. However, it is reassuring that there was no apparent significant risk increase.

In conclusion, the study found the use of MHT was associated with no overall increased risk of coronary artery disease, stroke and breast cancer, and an increased risk of peripheral artery disease. However, variation in use may have an adverse impact on some outcomes, for example, when MHT was started long after onset of menopause in much older women over the age of 60 years, there was a significant increase in risk for coronary artery disease and peripheral artery disease.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

We thank the Royal Brisbane & Women's Hospital Foundation for a large grant to support the main study, A Longitudinal Assessment of Ageing in Women (LAW). We are grateful to A/Prof S O'Neill, past Clinical Director of the LAW Study and the women in the cohort for their dedication, making this study possible.

## COMMENTS

### Background

The study examined the effects of hormones (estrogen and progestogen) given in different ways on long-term serious outcomes in post-menopausal women. This field of clinical remains controversial because of mixed reports.

### Research frontiers

The area of women's health continues to be argued about whether hormone treatment is beneficial or harmful.

### Peer-review

The availability of long-term use data is consistent with previous experience and might have been more directly related to the women on ET for post-oophorectomy life.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **Rossouw JE**, Anderson GL, Prentice RL, LaCroix AZ, Kooperberg C, Stefanick ML, Jackson RD, Beresford SA, Howard BV, Johnson KC, Kotchen JM, Ockene J. Risks and benefits of estrogen plus progestin in healthy postmenopausal women: principal results From

- the Women's Health Initiative randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2002; **288**: 321-333 [PMID: 12117397]
- 2 **Anderson GL**, Limacher M, Assaf AR, Bassford T, Beresford SA, Black H, Bonds D, Brunner R, Brzyski R, Caan B, Chlebowski R, Curb D, Gass M, Hays J, Heiss G, Hendrix S, Howard BV, Hsia J, Hubbell A, Jackson R, Johnson KC, Judd H, Kotchen JM, Kuller L, LaCroix AZ, Lane D, Langer RD, Lasser N, Lewis CE, Manson J, Margolis K, Ockene J, O'Sullivan MJ, Phillips L, Prentice RL, Ritenbaugh C, Robbins J, Rossouw JE, Sarto G, Stefanick ML, Van Horn L, Wactawski-Wende J, Wallace R, Wassertheil-Smoller S. Effects of conjugated equine estrogen in postmenopausal women with hysterectomy: the Women's Health Initiative randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2004; **291**: 1701-1712 [PMID: 15082697]
- 3 **Beral V**. Breast cancer and hormone-replacement therapy in the Million Women Study. *Lancet* 2003; **362**: 419-427 [PMID: 12927427]
- 4 **Stram DO**, Liu Y, Henderson KD, Sullivan-Halley J, Luo J, Saxena T, Reynolds P, Chang ET, Neuhausen SL, Horn-Ross PL, Bernstein L, Ursin G. Age-specific effects of hormone therapy use on overall mortality and ischemic heart disease mortality among women in the California Teachers Study. *Menopause* 2011; **18**: 253-261 [PMID: 20881652 DOI: 10.1097/gme.0b013e3181f0839a]
- 5 **Davey DA**. Update: estrogen and estrogen plus progestin therapy in the care of women at and after the menopause. *Womens Health (Lond Engl)* 2012; **8**: 169-189 [PMID: 22375720]
- 6 **Clarkson TB**, Appt SE. Controversies about HRT--lessons from monkey models. *Maturitas* 2005; **51**: 64-74 [PMID: 15883111 DOI: 10.1016/j.maturitas.2005.02.016]
- 7 **Harman SM**, Black DM, Naftolin F, Brinton EA, Budoff MJ, Cedars MI, Hopkins PN, Lobo RA, Manson JE, Merriam GR, Miller VM, Neal-Perry G, Santoro N, Taylor HS, Vittinghoff E, Yan M, Hodis HN. Arterial imaging outcomes and cardiovascular risk factors in recently menopausal women: a randomized trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2014; **161**: 249-260 [PMID: 25069991 DOI: 10.7326/M14-0353]
- 8 **Schierbeck LL**, Rejnmark L, Tofteng CL, Stilgren L, Eiken P, Mosekilde L, Køber L, Jensen JE. Effect of hormone replacement therapy on cardiovascular events in recently postmenopausal women: randomised trial. *BMJ* 2012; **345**: e6409 [PMID: 23048011]
- 9 **Khoo SK**, O'Neill S, Travers C, Oldenburg B. Age-related changes relevant to health in women: design, recruitment, and retention strategies for the Longitudinal Assessment of Women (LAW) study. *J Womens Health (Larchmt)* 2008; **17**: 135-146 [PMID: 18240990 DOI: 10.1089/jwh.2006.0291]
- 10 **Grodstein F**, Stampfer MJ, Colditz GA, Willett WC, Manson JE, Joffe M, Rosner B, Fuchs C, Hankinson SE, Hunter DJ, Hennekens CH, Speizer FE. Postmenopausal hormone therapy and mortality. *N Engl J Med* 1997; **336**: 1769-1775 [PMID: 9187066 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199706193362501]
- 11 **Harman SM**, Naftolin F, Brinton EA, Judelson DR. Is the estrogen controversy over? Deconstructing the Women's Health Initiative study: a critical evaluation of the evidence. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2005; **1052**: 43-56 [PMID: 16024750]
- 12 **Bush TL**. Evidence for primary and secondary prevention of coronary artery disease in women taking oestrogen replacement therapy. *Eur Heart J* 1996; **17** Suppl D: 9-14 [PMID: 8869876 DOI: 10.1093/eurheartj/17.suppl\_D.9]
- 13 **Wassertheil-Smoller S**, Hendrix SL, Limacher M, Heiss G, Kooperberg C, Baird A, Kotchen T, Curb JD, Black H, Rossouw JE, Aragaki A, Safford M, Stein E, Laowattana S, Mysiw WJ. Effect of estrogen plus progestin on stroke in postmenopausal women: the Women's Health Initiative: a randomized trial. *JAMA* 2003; **289**: 2673-2684 [PMID: 12771114]
- 14 **Heiss G**, Wallace R, Anderson GL, Aragaki A, Beresford SA, Brzyski R, Chlebowski RT, Gass M, LaCroix A, Manson JE, Prentice RL, Rossouw J, Stefanick ML. Health risks and benefits 3 years after stopping randomized treatment with estrogen and progestin. *JAMA* 2008; **299**: 1036-1045 [PMID: 18319414]
- 15 **LaCroix AZ**, Chlebowski RT, Manson JE, Aragaki AK, Johnson KC, Martin L, Margolis KL, Stefanick ML, Brzyski R, Curb JD, Howard BV, Lewis CE, Wactawski-Wende J. Health outcomes after stopping conjugated equine estrogens among postmenopausal women with prior hysterectomy: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2011; **305**: 1305-1314 [PMID: 21467283 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2011.382]
- 16 **Magliano DJ**, Rogers SL, Abramson MJ, Tonkin AM. Hormone therapy and cardiovascular disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *BJOG* 2006; **113**: 5-14 [PMID: 16398764]
- 17 **Grodstein F**, Manson JE, Stampfer MJ, Rexrode K. Postmenopausal hormone therapy and stroke: role of time since menopause and age at initiation of hormone therapy. *Arch Intern Med* 2008; **168**: 861-866 [PMID: 18443262 DOI: 10.1001/archinte.168.8.861]
- 18 **Renoux C**, Dell'aniello S, Garbe E, Suissa S. Transdermal and oral hormone replacement therapy and the risk of stroke: a nested case-control study. *BMJ* 2010; **340**: c2519 [PMID: 20525678 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.c2519]
- 19 **Leibnitz L**, Lungwitz HW, Bär B. Incubation chamber for the treatment of serial sections. *Z Med Labortech* 1976; **17**: 352-354 [PMID: 1023546]
- 20 **Howlander N**, Noone AM, Krapcho M, Garshell J, Miller D, Altekruse SF, Kosary CL, Yu M, Ruhl J, Tatalovich Z, Mariotto A, Lewis DR, Chen HS, Feuer EJ, Cronin KA. SEER Cancer Statistics Review 1975-2008, National Cancer Institute based on November 2010 Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results programme (SEER) data submission, posted SEER website, 2011. Available from: URL: [http://seer.cancer.gov/archive/csr/1975\\_2008/](http://seer.cancer.gov/archive/csr/1975_2008/)

**P- Reviewer:** He JY, Horvat R **S- Editor:** Qiu S **L- Editor:** A  
**E- Editor:** Wu HL



## Postpartum intrauterine device contraception: A review

Shadi Rezai, Pameela Bisram, Hasan Nezam, Ray Mercado, Cassandra E Henderson

Shadi Rezai, Ray Mercado, Cassandra E Henderson, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Lincoln Medical and Mental Health Center, Bronx, NY 10451, United States

Pameela Bisram, St. George's University School of Medicine, Grenada, West Indies

Hasan Nezam, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, University of Toledo Medical Center, Toledo, OH 43614, United States

Author contributions: All of the authors contributed significantly to this investigation.

Conflict-of-interest statement: No author has any conflict of interest or financial disclosure to report.

Data sharing statement: Not applicable.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

Correspondence to: Cassandra E Henderson, MD, CDE, Director of Maternal Fetal Medicine, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Lincoln Medical and Mental Health Center, 234 East 149<sup>th</sup> Street, Bronx, NY 10451, United States. [cassandra.henderson@nychhc.org](mailto:cassandra.henderson@nychhc.org)  
Telephone: +1-718-5795513  
Fax: +1-718-5794469

Received: March 30, 2015

Peer-review started: March 31, 2015

First decision: July 10, 2015

Revised: November 2, 2015

Accepted: November 24, 2015

Article in press: November 25, 2015

Published online: February 10, 2016

### Abstract

**AIM:** To review the safety (infection, perforation) and

efficacy (expulsion, continuation rates, pregnancy) of intrauterine device (IUD) insertion in the postpartum period.

**METHODS:** MEDLINE, PubMed and Google Scholar were searched for randomized controlled trials and prospective cohort studies of IUD insertions at different times during the postpartum period. Time of insertion during the postpartum period was documented specifically, immediate post placenta period (within 10 min), early post placenta period (10 min to 72 h), and delayed/interval period (greater than 6 wk). Other study variables included mode of delivery, vaginal *vs* cesarean, manual *vs* use of ring forceps to insert the IUD.

**RESULTS:** IUD insertion in the immediate postpartum (within 10 min of placental delivery), early postpartum (10 min up to 72 h) and Interval/Delayed (6 wk onward) were found to be safe and efficacious. Expulsion rates were found to be highest in the immediate postpartum groups ranging from 14% to 27%. Immediate post placental insertion found to have expulsion rates that ranged from 3.6% to 16.2%. Expulsion rate was significantly higher after insertion following vaginal *vs* cesarean delivery. The rates of infection, perforation and unplanned pregnancy following postpartum IUD insertion are low. Method of insertion such as with ring forceps, by hand, or another placement method unique to the type of IUD did not show any significant difference in expulsion rates. Uterine perforations are highest in the delayed/interval IUD insertion groups. Breastfeeding duration and infant development are not affected by delayed/interval insertion of the non-hormonal (copper) IUD or the Levonorgestrel IUD. Timing of the Levonorgestrel IUD insertion may affect breastfeeding.

**CONCLUSION:** IUD insertion is safe and efficacious during the immediate postpartum, early postpartum and delayed postpartum periods. Expulsion rates are highest after vaginal delivery and when inserted during the immediate postpartum period. IUD associated infection rates were not increased by insertion during the postpartum period over interval insertion rates.



There is no evidence that breastfeeding is negatively affected by postpartum insertion of copper or hormone-secreting IUD. Although perforation rates were higher when inserted after lactation was initiated. Randomized controlled trials are needed to further elucidate the consequence of lactation on postpartum insertion. Despite the concerns regarding expulsion, perforation and breastfeeding, current evidence indicates that a favorable risk benefit ratio in support of postpartum IUD insertion. This may be particularly relevant for women for whom barriers exist in achieving desired pregnancy spacing.

**Key words:** Access to intrauterine devices; Contraception; Expulsion; Intrauterine device; Long acting reversible contraception; Postpartum contraception; Postpartum intrauterine device; Postpartum intrauterine device placement; Post-placental insertion

© The Author(s) 2016. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Intrauterine device (IUD) insertion is safe and efficacious during the immediate postpartum, early postpartum and delayed postpartum periods. Expulsion rates are highest after vaginal delivery and when inserted during the immediate postpartum period. IUD associated infection rates were not increased by insertion during the postpartum period over interval insertion rates. Despite the concerns regarding expulsion, perforation and breastfeeding, current evidence indicates that a favorable risk benefit ratio in support of postpartum IUD insertion.

Rezai S, Bisram P, Nezam H, Mercado R, Henderson CE. Postpartum intrauterine device contraception: A review. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(1): 134-139 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i1/134.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i1.134>

## INTRODUCTION

The intrauterine device (IUD), a form of long acting reversible contraception (LARC), is one of the most effective contraceptive methods available as well as one of the safest. Its effectiveness can largely be attributed to its low rate of unintended pregnancy that is likely due to its use being patient-independent<sup>[1]</sup>. Its safety is supported by recent literature, which documents low rates of infection, perforation, and expulsion that should not deter a clinician from offering it as a contraception option. Furthermore, IUD insertion is not only a viable option for the nulliparous, but should also be considered as an option during the postpartum period<sup>[1]</sup>.

An inter-pregnancy interval of less than 24 mo has been shown to be associated with increased maternal/infant morbidity and mortality when compared to longer inter pregnancy intervals<sup>[2,3]</sup>. Postpartum IUD insertion

is a useful way to achieve recommended pregnancy spacing. Safe and efficacious postpartum insertion of the IUD may occur up to 48 h after delivery of the placenta, and 4-6 wk postpartum<sup>[4,5]</sup>. Although the immediate placement has been associated with a higher expulsion rate, the benefits of immediate insertion for preventing unplanned pregnancy in select populations may outweigh the risk of expulsion<sup>[4,5]</sup>.

Postpartum IUD insertion has no affect on breastfeeding. It is particularly important that recent studies have documented that even the levonorgestrel-releasing devices have no affect on breastfeeding<sup>[6-9]</sup>. The levonorgestrel containing IUD has only a local effect on the endometrium with minimal transfer to the serum and even lower levels detected in the breast milk. Women can therefore be reassured that the use of an IUD during the postpartum period will not prevent them from providing their infant with breast milk that is of adequate quantity and quality.

Although IUD insertion in the postpartum period is highly favored by the current literature, many barriers of insertion still exist such as failure to return for postpartum follow up, lack of access to IUD<sup>[10]</sup>, lack of knowledge by provider, and inadvertent early pregnancy<sup>[11]</sup>. Some of these barriers can be overcome with immediate postpartum insertion<sup>[12]</sup> as women are more motivated to obtain contraception and counseling services are readily available at this time<sup>[11,13]</sup>.

The objective of this review is to evaluate the safety and efficacy of IUD insertion in the postpartum, with special attention to specific time frames for insertion that are associated with the best clinical outcomes. Additionally, data supporting the safety of IUDs in breastfeeding is used to further reinforce support for the insertion of IUDs in the postpartum period<sup>[14]</sup>.

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

### Selection criteria

**Inclusion criteria:** Randomized controlled trials and prospective cohort studies.

**Participants:** Postpartum women off with no contraindications to IUD insertion.

**Intervention time:** IUD insertions during any time during the postpartum period, Immediate post placenta period (within 10 min), early post placenta period (10 min to 72 h), and delayed/interval period (greater than 6 wk). Other comparators included vaginal or cesarean deliveries, manual or ring forceps placement and IUD type.

**Types of outcomes:** Expulsion, pregnancy, continuation, infection and perforation rates. Measurements of quantity and quality of milk production were assessed by breastfeeding duration and infant growth.

**Exclusion criteria:** Retrospective studies, no time of

postpartum insertion, no cases of immediate or delayed postpartum IUD insertion.

## RESULTS

Fifteen studies were included. Ten evaluated the safety (infections, perforations) and efficacy (expulsion, pregnancy, continuation of use) of postpartum IUD insertion. Five studies evaluated the effect on breast-feeding of both non-secreting and hormone secreting IUDs.

### **Evaluation of safety and efficacy by comparing insertion at different time periods**

The safety and efficacy of IUD insertion within 10 min of placenta delivery, early postpartum (10 min to 48 h) and interval/delayed insertion (4-6 wk postpartum) were supported by 4 studies. Expulsion rates were highest when the insertion occurred in the early and immediate postpartum periods. Low complication rates and no significant difference between groups was found for infection, uterine perforation, and unplanned pregnancy<sup>[5,15-18]</sup>.

Two of the four studies compared the three postpartum periods of insertion finding a statistically significant increase in expulsion rate during the immediate postpartum and early postpartum period when compared to interval insertion<sup>[16,17]</sup>. Two randomized controlled trials compared only two time periods; immediate post-partum and interval period, finding<sup>[15,18]</sup>. Vaginal deliveries were shown to have higher rates of expulsion across the included studies<sup>[15-18]</sup>.

### **Evaluation of safety and efficacy for immediate postpartum period insertion**

Results of 6 prospective observational studies on IUD insertion only during the immediate postpartum period (within 10 min post placenta) have shown that immediate insertion is safe and efficacious whether after cesarean or vaginal birth<sup>[2,13,19-21]</sup>.

Immediate postpartum IUD insertion is a common practice in countries such as India and China. Two large multicenter studies, one with 300 women, and the other with 2733 women showed lower than expected expulsion rates than the rest of the studies included in this review. However, these studies conducted in India and China reported rates of complications such as infection, perforations and unplanned pregnancy similar to other studies that we reviewed<sup>[2,22]</sup>. A more thorough study with multiple follow up evaluations and acknowledgement of those lost to follow-up showed expulsion rates that were more representative of the current literature<sup>[21]</sup>.

A possible explanation for the exceptionally lower expulsion rates in the two studies mentioned above is that Singal *et al*<sup>[22]</sup> did not take into account patients who were lost to follow up. Kumar *et al*<sup>[2]</sup> had a follow up period of only six weeks, which is not adequate

for evaluating safety and efficacy of postpartum IUD insertion. Despite this, these studies provide insight on the use of IUDs in countries where immediate postpartum insertion may be most valuable.

These two studies from India and China demonstrated that regardless of insertion method there is no significant difference in expulsion rates. Although method of insertion has not been shown to affect the safety and efficacy, complication rates are affected by method of delivery. Expulsion rates have been shown to be significantly higher after vaginal delivery vs cesarean section<sup>[21]</sup>.

### **Effect of the copper or levonorgestrel IUD on lactation**

Further motivation for a woman to choose an IUD in the postpartum is the fact that both the copper IUD and Levonorgestrel operate locally on the endometrium. Therefore, there is no affection on lactation. Four studies, demonstrated the safety of IUD use during breast-feeding<sup>[7,9,23,24]</sup>.

Two randomized controlled trials compared hormone-secreting to copper IUD demonstrated no significant differences in breast-feeding performance (quantity, duration) and infant growth/development (quality) when inserted in the delayed/interval period to evaluate the effect of hormonal contraception on breast feeding success, a double-blind randomized controlled trial found that breast feeding continuation rates and infant growth were not affected by progestin only or combined oral contraception<sup>[7,9]</sup>.

The only study that examined the timing of IUD insertion and its effect on breastfeeding, while not reaching significance found that women in the delayed insertion group continued to breast feed at the 6 mo follow-up and had longer breastfeeding duration compared to the immediate post placental group<sup>[15]</sup>. These findings certainly support further studies to determine what if any role timing of postpartum insertion has on breastfeeding.

## DISCUSSION

Reports we reviewed found that IUD expulsion rates are higher in immediate and early postpartum insertion when compared to delayed insertion at the postpartum follow up visit. In general, reported IUD expulsion rates range from 2%-10%<sup>[25]</sup>. In contrast, immediate postpartum expulsion can range from 4%-27% within one year of insertion<sup>[5]</sup>.

The reason for higher expulsion rates in immediate postplacental and early postpartum insertion is unclear but is most likely multifactorial. Incorrect insertion by health care providers due to inexperience and/or lack of skill in achieving high fundal placement may play a role<sup>[2,3,14,22]</sup>. Another explanation for the increased expulsion rate may be due the type of delivery since insertion immediately after a vaginal delivery has been shown to have a higher expulsion rate than after

cesarean<sup>[5,21,26]</sup>. One study went as far as recommending that immediate IUD insertion be contraindicated after vaginal delivery due to such high expulsion rates in comparison to cesarean: (after a vaginal birth, 50% (ultrasound only) + 27.8% (clinical examination); and post-cesarean section, 0% [ $P < 0.001$ ; odds ratio (OR) = 5.75, 95%CI: 2.36-14.01]<sup>[26]</sup>. Method of insertion, whether by hand or by forceps after a vaginal delivery, demonstrate similar expulsion rates, thus is unlikely to be a contributing factor<sup>[20]</sup>.

Despite higher expulsion rate, the immediate postpartum period provides an opportunity for patient counseling on the possibility of expulsion. Although rates of expulsion are higher in the immediate postpartum, the convenience of insertion after delivery of the placenta may outweigh the expulsion potential by increasing access to effective contraception. This may be especially relevant for select populations that may not return for follow up and be come at risk for an unplanned pregnancy.

Infection and perforations were examined to assess factors that affect the safety of postpartum IUD insertion. For the non-postpartum patient, perforations occur at a rate of about 1/1000 or less insertions<sup>[27]</sup>. Where as in the postpartum, the studies used for this review demonstrated a range from no perforations to slightly increased rates over that for interval insertion. The most important determinant of uterine perforation based on these studies is the time of insertion. In one study, when compared to interval insertion, there was an increased perforation rate at 0-3 mo postpartum insertion (OR = 11.7, 95%CI: 2.8-49.2) and an even higher increase at 3-6 mo postpartum insertion (OR = 13.2, 95%CI: 2.8-62). However the rates did not increase in the immediate postpartum insertion or after 6 mo<sup>[28]</sup>. Another study not included in the results section, showed that women had a 10 fold risk of uterine perforation if the IUD was inserted during lactation<sup>[29]</sup>. With these results, it seems that the puerperium period poses an increased risk of uterine perforation with IUD insertion especially if the woman is lactating. It is possible that the associated hormonal and structural changes that take place during the puerperium period, such as thinning of endometrial wall, make the uterus more prone to perforation<sup>[14]</sup>. The Mirena is especially implicated in perforations with insertion during lactation, likely due to the compounded effects from progestins and other hormonal changes during lactation that cause endometrial wall thinning<sup>[6]</sup>.

The infection rate (PID) with most of the studies used in this review either demonstrated no infection or very low rates that were not any different than the rates of non-postpartum women. All women in these studies were screened for STIs before insertion, and excluded if positive. These results agree with the current accepted rate of PID after IUD insertion of 0%-2% when no infection was present previously and 0%-5% when insertion occurs with an undetected infection<sup>[30]</sup>.

Furthermore, studies indicate that with prompt treatment with positive chlamydia cultures after IUD insertion are unlikely to develop PID even with retention of the IUD<sup>[31]</sup>. The Mirena may even decrease the risk of PID due to the thickening of the cervical mucus and thinning of the endometrium<sup>[32]</sup>. Overall, we found that that IUD insertion at anytime does not significantly increase the risk of PID.

Studies on the effect of IUDs on lactation generally show no detrimental effect on the duration, quantity, and quality of lactation<sup>[6]</sup>. There may be a theoretical negative effect of progestins on breastfeeding, (which is why it is rated Category 2 by United States Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraception) but more trials need to be completed to evaluate this proposed lactation risk. Also, an evaluation of the timing of levonorgestrel-IUD insertion and lactation indicated that women who received immediate postpartum insertion had a shorter duration of breastfeeding and were less exclusive with breastfeeding than women who received delayed insertion<sup>[23]</sup>. The author's suggests that because withdrawal from progesterone helps to initiate lactation, the progestins (from the IUD) placed in the immediate postpartum period, may act to inhibit lactogenesis. However, progestin-only contraception is recommended by the United States Medical Eligibility Criteria for Contraceptive (Category 2) with or without breastfeeding in the immediate postpartum.

Postpartum (including while breastfeeding) insertion of IUD is recommended by ACOG as a safety and effective method of contraception. It is safe and effective to insert an IUD (copper or levonorgestrel-releasing) in the immediate postpartum period (within 10 min of placental delivery)<sup>[33,34]</sup> despite higher expulsion rates since the benefits may outweigh the risks in select populations. Insertion of the copper or levonorgestrel IUD 10 min to 4 wk and at or after 4 wk has also shown to be safe and effective. Overall, LARC methods have very few contraindications and most women are eligible for its use during the postpartum period<sup>[35]</sup>.

IUD insertion is efficacious and safe during the immediate postpartum, early postpartum and delayed postpartum periods<sup>[36]</sup>. Expulsion rates are highest in when inserted during the immediate postpartum period after vaginal deliveries. In addition, infection and perforation rates following postpartum IUD insertion are low. Delayed insertion of the copper and levonorgestrel IUDs was found to have no affect breastfeeding initiation. However, immediate postpartum insertion was associated with a decrease breastfeeding duration and exclusivity. Adequately powered randomized controlled trials are needed to further elucidate the effect of timing of postpartum IUD insertion has on lactation<sup>[37]</sup>. In spite of expulsion, perforations and breastfeeding duration concerns, IUD insertion in the postpartum should remain a viable family planning option for many women<sup>[24]</sup>. This may be particularly important for select populations where the benefits may outweigh the risk

of failing to achieve desired pregnancy spacing.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors would like to thank Ms. Judith Wilkinson, Medical Librarian at Lincoln Medical and Mental Health Center Science Library, for providing the reference articles.

## COMMENTS

### Background

The intrauterine device (IUD), a form of long acting reversible contraception (LARC), is one of the most effective contraceptive methods available as well as one of the safest. Its safety is supported by recent literature, which documents low rates of infection, perforation, and expulsion that should not deter a clinician from offering it as a contraception option.

### Research frontiers

Despite the concerns regarding expulsion, perforation and breastfeeding, current evidence indicates that a favorable risk benefit ratio in support of postpartum IUD insertion. This may be particularly relevant for women for whom barriers exist in achieving desired pregnancy spacing.

### Innovations and breakthroughs

IUD insertion is not only a viable option for the nulliparous, but should also be considered as an option during the postpartum period.

### Applications

Despite the concerns regarding expulsion, perforation and breastfeeding, current evidence indicates that a favorable risk benefit ratio in support of postpartum IUD insertion. This may be particularly relevant for women for whom barriers exist in achieving desired pregnancy spacing.

### Terminology

LARC: Methods include the IUD and the birth control implant. Both methods are highly effective in preventing pregnancy, last for several years, and are easy to use; Postpartum: A postpartum period or postnatal period is the period beginning immediately after the birth of a child and extending for about 6 wk. Less frequently used are the terms puerperium or puerperal period.

### Peer-review

This is a good article.

## REFERENCES

- 1 American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. ACOG Practice Bulletin No. 121: Long-acting reversible contraception: Implants and intrauterine devices. *Obstet Gynecol* 2011; **118**: 184-196 [PMID: 21691183 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e318227f05e]
- 2 Kumar S, Sethi R, Balasubramanian S, Charurat E, Lalchandani K, Semba R, Sood B. Women's experience with postpartum intrauterine contraceptive device use in India. *Reprod Health* 2014; **11**: 32 [PMID: 24755312 DOI: 10.1186/1742-4755-11-32]
- 3 Shukla M, Qureshi S. Post-placental intrauterine device insertion--a five year experience at a tertiary care centre in north India. *Indian J Med Res* 2012; **136**: 432-435 [PMID: 23041736]
- 4 Grimes DA, Lopez LM, Schulz KF, Van Vliet HA, Stanwood NL. Immediate post-partum insertion of intrauterine devices. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2010; **(5)**: CD003036 [PMID: 20464722 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD003036.pub2]
- 5 Sonalkar S, Kapp N. Intrauterine device insertion in the postpartum period: a systematic review. *Eur J Contracept Reprod Health Care* 2015; **20**: 4-18 [PMID: 25397890 DOI: 10.3109/13625187.2014.971454]
- 6 Goldstuck ND, Steyn PS. Intrauterine contraception after cesarean section and during lactation: a systematic review. *Int J Womens Health* 2013; **5**: 811-818 [PMID: 24348074 DOI: 10.2147/IJWH.S53845]
- 7 Heikkilä M, Luukkainen T. Duration of breast-feeding and development of children after insertion of a levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine contraceptive device. *Contraception* 1982; **25**: 279-292 [PMID: 6804164]
- 8 Rodrigues da Cunha AC, Dorea JG, Cantuaria AA. Intrauterine device and maternal copper metabolism during lactation. *Contraception* 2001; **63**: 37-39 [PMID: 11257247]
- 9 Shaamash AH, Sayed GH, Hussien MM, Shaaban MM. A comparative study of the levonorgestrel-releasing intrauterine system Mirena versus the Copper T380A intrauterine device during lactation: breast-feeding performance, infant growth and infant development. *Contraception* 2005; **72**: 346-351 [PMID: 16246660]
- 10 Goodman SR, Benedict C, Reeves MF, Pera-Floyd M, Dela Cruz M, Foster-Rosales A. Minimizing Barriers to IUD use: the impact of post-abortion IUD, simplified screening criteria and staff re-introduction. *Contraception* 2006; **74**: 180 [DOI: 10.1016/j.contraception.2006.05.009]
- 11 Ogburn JA, Espey E, Stonehocker J. Barriers to intrauterine device insertion in postpartum women. *Contraception* 2005; **72**: 426-429 [PMID: 16307964]
- 12 Van Der Pas MT, Delbeke L, Van Dets H. Comparative performance of two copper-wired IUDs (ML Cu 250 and T Cu 200: immediate postpartum and interval insertion. *Contracept Deliv Syst* 1980; **1**: 27-35 [PMID: 12261715]
- 13 Celen S, Möröy P, Sucak A, Aktulay A, Danişman N. Clinical outcomes of early postplacental insertion of intrauterine contraceptive devices. *Contraception* 2004; **69**: 279-282 [PMID: 15033401]
- 14 Farr G, Rivera R. Interactions between intrauterine contraceptive device use and breast-feeding status at time of intrauterine contraceptive device insertion: analysis of TCu-380A acceptors in developing countries. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1992; **167**: 144-151 [PMID: 1442918]
- 15 Chen BA, Reeves MF, Hayes JL, Hohmann HL, Perriera LK, Creinin MD. Postplacental or delayed insertion of the levonorgestrel intrauterine device after vaginal delivery: a randomized controlled trial. *Obstet Gynecol* 2010; **116**: 1079-1087 [PMID: 20966692 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e3181f73fac]
- 16 Dahlke JD, Terpstra ER, Ramseyer AM, Busch JM, Rieg T, Magann EF. Postpartum insertion of levonorgestrel--intrauterine system at three time periods: a prospective randomized pilot study. *Contraception* 2011; **84**: 244-248 [PMID: 21843688 DOI: 10.1016/j.contraception.2011.01.007]
- 17 Eroğlu K, Akkuzu G, Vural G, Dilbaz B, Akin A, Taşkin L, Haberal A. Comparison of efficacy and complications of IUD insertion in immediate postplacental/early postpartum period with interval period: 1 year follow-up. *Contraception* 2006; **74**: 376-381 [PMID: 17046378]
- 18 Whitaker AK, Endres LK, Mistretta SQ, Gilliam ML. Postplacental insertion of the levonorgestrel intrauterine device after cesarean delivery vs. delayed insertion: a randomized controlled trial. *Contraception* 2014; **89**: 534-539 [PMID: 24457061 DOI: 10.1016/j.contraception.2013.12.007]
- 19 Tatum HJ, Beltran RS, Ramos R, Van Kets H, Sivin I, Schmidt FH. Immediate postplacental insertion of GYNE-T 380 and GYNE-T 380 postpartum intrauterine contraceptive devices: randomized study. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1996; **175**: 1231-1235 [PMID: 8942493]
- 20 Xu JX, Rivera R, Dunson TR, Zhuang LQ, Yang XL, Ma GT, Chi IC. A comparative study of two techniques used in immediate postplacental insertion (IPPI) of the Copper T-380A IUD in Shanghai, People's Republic of China. *Contraception* 1996; **54**: 33-38 [PMID: 8804806]
- 21 Zhou SW, Chi IC. Immediate postpartum IUD insertions in a Chinese hospital--a two year follow-up. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 1991; **35**: 157-164 [PMID: 1680090]



- 22 **Singal S**, Bharti R, Dewan R, Divya A, Batra A, Sharma M, Mittal P. Clinical Outcome of Postplacental Copper T 380A Insertion in Women Delivering by Caesarean Section. *J Clin Diagn Res* 2014; **8**: OC01-OC04 [PMID: 25386484 DOI: 10.7860/JCDR/2014/10274.4786]
- 23 **Chen BA**, Reeves MF, Creinin MD, Schwarz EB. Postplacental or delayed levonorgestrel intrauterine device insertion and breastfeeding duration. *Contraception* 2011; **84**: 499-504 [PMID: 22018124 DOI: 10.1016/j.contraception.2011.01.022]
- 24 **Espey E**, Ogburn T, Leeman L, Singh R, Ostrom K, Schrader R. Effect of progestin compared with combined oral contraceptive pills on lactation: a randomized controlled trial. *Obstet Gynecol* 2012; **119**: 5-13 [PMID: 22143258 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e31823dc015]
- 25 **Hatcher RA**, Trussell J, Nelson AL, Cates W, Stewart FH, Kowal D editor. Contraceptive technology: nineteenth revised edition. New York, NY: Ardent Media, 2007: (Clinical Practice Tools: Contraceptive Efficacy Tools: 19-47) and (Contraceptive efficacy: 747-826)
- 26 **Letti Müller AL**, Lopes Ramos JG, Martins-Costa SH, Palma Dias RS, Valério EG, Hammes LS, Glitz CL, Zucatto AE, Vettori DV, Magalhães JA. Transvaginal ultrasonographic assessment of the expulsion rate of intrauterine devices inserted in the immediate postpartum period: a pilot study. *Contraception* 2005; **72**: 192-195 [PMID: 16102554]
- 27 Mechanism of action, safety and efficacy of intrauterine devices. Report of a WHO Scientific Group. *World Health Organ Tech Rep Ser* 1987; **753**: 1-91 [PMID: 3118580]
- 28 **Caliskan E**, Oztürk N, Dilbaz BO, Dilbaz S. Analysis of risk factors associated with uterine perforation by intrauterine devices. *Eur J Contracept Reprod Health Care* 2003; **8**: 150-155 [PMID: 14667326]
- 29 **Heartwell SF**, Schlesselman S. Risk of uterine perforation among users of intrauterine devices. *Obstet Gynecol* 1983; **61**: 31-36 [PMID: 6823347]
- 30 **Committee on Adolescent Health Care Long-Acting Reversible Contraception Working Group**, The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists. Committee opinion no. 539: adolescents and long-acting reversible contraception: implants and intrauterine devices. *Obstet Gynecol* 2012; **120**: 983-988 [PMID: 22996129]
- 31 **Grimes DA**. Intrauterine device and upper-genital-tract infection. *Lancet* 2000; **356**: 1013-1019 [PMID: 11041414]
- 32 **Toivonen J**, Luukkainen T, Allonen H. Protective effect of intrauterine release of levonorgestrel on pelvic infection: three years' comparative experience of levonorgestrel- and copper-releasing intrauterine devices. *Obstet Gynecol* 1991; **77**: 261-264 [PMID: 1899136]
- 33 **O'Hanley K**, Huber DH. Postpartum IUDs: keys for success. *Contraception* 1992; **45**: 351-361 [PMID: 1516367]
- 34 **Xu JX**, Reusché C, Burdan A. Immediate postplacental insertion of the intrauterine device: a review of Chinese and the world's experiences. *Adv Contracept* 1994; **10**: 71-82 [PMID: 8030457]
- 35 **American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists Committee on Gynecologic Practice**; Long-Acting Reversible Contraception Working Group. ACOG Committee Opinion no. 450: Increasing use of contraceptive implants and intrauterine devices to reduce unintended pregnancy. *Obstet Gynecol* 2009; **114**: 1434-1438 [PMID: 20134301 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e3181c6f965]
- 36 **Brown T**. Contraceptive Placement at Delivery Trumps Delayed Placement, WebMD LLC [Accessed 2015 Jun 17]. Available from: URL: <http://www.medscape.com/viewarticle/846328>
- 37 **Shikary ZK**, Betrabet SS, Patel ZM, Patel S, Joshi JV, Toddywala VS, Toddywala SP, Patel DM, Jhaveri K, Saxena BN. ICMR task force study on hormonal contraception. Transfer of levonorgestrel (LNG) administered through different drug delivery systems from the maternal circulation into the newborn infant's circulation via breast milk. *Contraception* 1987; **35**: 477-486 [PMID: 3113823]

**P- Reviewer:** Khajehei M **S- Editor:** Ji FF **L- Editor:** A  
**E- Editor:** Wu HL





Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**

8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA

Telephone: +1-925-223-8242

Fax: +1-925-223-8243

E-mail: [bpgoffice@wjgnet.com](mailto:bpgoffice@wjgnet.com)

Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjgnet.com>



# World Journal of *Obstetrics and Gynecology*

*World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016 May 10; 5(2): 140-209



## Editorial Board

2012-2016

The *World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology* Editorial Board consists of 172 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in obstetrics and gynecology. They are from 39 countries, including Australia (6), Austria (2), Belgium (6), Brazil (4), Canada (2), China (8), Egypt (3), Finland (2), France (2), Germany (1), Greece (10), Hungary (1), India (3), Iran (3), Israel (6), Italy (13), Japan (6), Jordan (2), Lithuania (1), Malawi (1), Malaysia (1), Mexico (1), Netherlands (3), Nigeria (1), Norway (2), Poland (1), Portugal (1), Qatar (1), Saudi Arabia (3), Serbia (1), Slovenia (1), South Korea (3), Spain (3), Sweden (2), Thailand (3), Turkey (8), United Kingdom (9), United States (45), Venezuela (1).

### EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

Bo Jacobsson, *Gothenburg*

### GUEST EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS

Wing P Chan, *Taipei*  
Chie-Pein Chen, *Taipei*  
Shi-Yann Cheng, *Yunlin*  
Song-Nan Chow, *Taipei*  
Peng-Hui Wang, *Taipei*

### MEMBERS OF THE EDITORIAL BOARD



#### Australia

Ashwini L Chand, *Melbourne*  
Steven D Fleming, *Brisbane*  
Ankit Jain, *Coffs Harbour*  
Marjan Khajehei, *Westmead*  
Gavin P Sacks, *Sydney*  
Jing Sun, *Brisbane*



#### Austria

Susanne Huber, *Vienna*  
Edgar Petru, *Graz*



#### Belgium

Marc FD Baay, *Antwerp*  
Christophe Blockeel, *Brussel*  
Patricio E Donoso, *Brussels*

Yves Jacquemyn, *Edegem*  
Ekaterine Tskitishvili, *Liege*  
Jan B Vermorken, *Edegem*



#### Brazil

Cicero de Andrade Urban, *Curitiba*  
Carlos KB Ferrari, *Barra do Garças*  
Wellington P Martins, *Ribeirão Preto*  
Maria I Rosa, *Criciúma*



#### Canada

Emmanuel Bujold, *Quebec*  
Paul J Hoskins, *Vancouver*



#### China

Cherng-Jye Jeng, *Nanjing*  
Jian-Xin Li, *Nanjing*  
Dan Xie, *Guangzhou*



#### Egypt

Hesham E Abdel-Hady, *Mansoura*  
Ahmed S El Hefnawy, *Mansoura*  
Ahmed Nasr, *Assiut*



#### Finland

Johan O Fellman, *Helsinki*  
Kari J Syrjänen, *Turku*



#### France

Cherif Y Akladios, *Strasbourg*  
Souhail Alouini, *Orleans*



#### Germany

Safaa H Al-Hasani, *Luebeck*



#### Greece

Byro Asimakopoulos, *Alexandroupolis*  
Anastasios Athanasopoulos, *Patras*  
Panagiotis Christopoulos, *Athens*  
Ioannis E Messinis, *Larisa*  
Athanasios G Papatsoris, *Athens*  
Georgios Partsinevelos, *Athens*  
Kitty Pavlakis, *Athens*  
Konstantinos A Toulis, *Salonika*  
Panagiotis PT Tsikouras, *Alexandroupolis*  
Menelaos Zafrafas, *Thessaloniki*



#### Hungary

Jozsef G Joo, *Budapest*



#### India

Chinmoy K Bose, *Kolkata*  
Pralhad Kushtagi, *Mangalore*  
Niraj N Mahajan, *Mumbai*



**Iran**

Hossein Fallahzadeh, *Yazd*  
 Abbas A Ghaderi, *Shiraz*  
 Ramesh Omranipour, *Tehran*

**Israel**

Zeev Blumenfeld, *Haifa*  
 Sorina Grisaru-Granovsky, *Jerusalem*  
 Alexander Ioscovich, *Jerusalem*  
 Marwan Odeh, *Nahariya*  
 Eyal Sheiner, *Beer Sheva*  
 Johnny S Younis, *Tiberias*

**Italy**

Sandrine ML Chamayou, *Sant'Agata Li Battiati*  
 Federico Coccolini, *Bergamo*  
 Erich Cosmi, *Padua*  
 Vassilios Fanos, *Cagliari*  
 Roberta Granese, *Messina*  
 Anna M Marconi, *Milano*  
 Filippo Murina, *Milan*  
 Felice Petraglia, *Siena*  
 Giuseppe Rizzo, *Rome*  
 Emilio Sacco, *Roma*  
 Giulio A Santoro, *Treviso*  
 Andrea Tinelli, *Lecce*  
 Emanuela Turillazzi, *Foggia*

**Japan**

Madoka Furuhashi, *Nagoya*  
 Takeshi Maruo, *Kobe*  
 Kaei Nasu, *Oita*  
 Yuzuru Niibe, *Kanagawa*  
 Kenzo Sonoda, *Fukuoka*  
 Yoshihito Yokoyama, *Aomori*

**Jordan**

Moamar Al-Jefout, *Karak*  
 Zouhair O Amarin, *Irbid*

**Lithuania**

Linas Rovas, *Klaipeda*

**Malawi**

Fanuel Lampiao, *Blantyre*

**Malaysia**

Geok Chin Tan, *Kuala Lumpur*

**Mexico**

Alfonso Dueñas-González, *Tlalpan*

**Moldova**

Fanuel Lampiao, *Blantyre*

**Netherlands**

Marieke J Claas, *Utrecht*  
 Wendy Koster, *Utrecht*  
 Arnold-Jan Kruse, *Maastricht*

**Nigeria**

Chibuike O Chigbu, *Enugu*

**Norway**

Andrej M Grjibovski, *Oslo*  
 Svein Rasmussen, *Bergen*

**Poland**

Andrzej Winciewicz, *Kielce*

**Portugal**

Renato MN Jorge, *Porto*

**Qatar**

Sajjad ur Rahman, *Doha*

**Saudi Arabia**

Ismail Al-Badawi, *Riyadh*  
 Mamdoh Eskandar, *Abha*  
 Hans-Juergen Schulten, *Jeddah*

**Serbia**

Miroslava G Dugalic, *Belgrade*

**Slovenia**

Spela Smrkolj, *Ljubljana*

**South Korea**

Kwang-Hyun Baek, *Seongnam*  
 Min Hyung Jung, *Seoul*  
 Sue Kyung Park, *Seoul*

**Spain**

Santiago Palacios, *Madrid*  
 Faustino R Perez-Lopez, *Zaragoza*  
 Antonio Pinero, *Murcia*

**Sweden**

Eva M Wiberg-Itzel, *Stockholm*

**Thailand**

Pisake NA Lumbiganon, *Khon Kaen*  
 Vorapong Phupong, *Bangkok*  
 Viroj Wiwanitkit, *Bangkok*

**Turkey**

Metin Akbulut, *Denizli*  
 Cem Baykal, *Istanbul*  
 Husnu Celik, *Elazig*  
 Cem Dane, *Istanbul*  
 Polat Dursun, *Ankara*  
 Erdin Ilter, *Istanbul*  
 Mehmet Kefeli, *Kurupelit*  
 Kamile Kukulu, *Antalya*

**United Kingdom**

Suha Deen, *Nottingham*  
 Stergios K Doumouchtsis, *London*  
 Mona A El-Bahrawy, *London*  
 Alaa A El-Ghobashy, *Leeds*  
 Ayman A Ewies, *Birmingham*  
 Myra S Hunter, *London*  
 Paul D Losty, *Liverpool*  
 Tim M Reynolds, *Burton-on-Trent*  
 Ariel Zosmer, *London*

**United States**

Muktar H Aliyu, *Nashville*  
 Priya R Bhosale, *Houston*  
 Donald P Braun, *Zion*  
 Chunxia Cao, *Gainesville*  
 Waldemar A Carlo, *Birmingham*  
 Linda R Chambliss, *Phoenix*  
 Teresa P Diaz-Montes, *Baltimore*  
 Steven M Donn, *Ann Arbor*  
 Omar F Duenas, *New York*  
 Marilyn B Escobedo, *Oklahoma City*  
 Robert Freedman, *Detroit*  
 Elizabeth S Ginsburg, *Boston*  
 Sergio G Golombek, *Valhalla*  
 Michael P Goodman, *Davis*  
 Diane M Harper, *Louisville*  
 Matthew H Ho, *Los Angeles*  
 Patricia B Hoyer, *Tucson*  
 Mei-Hua Huang, *Los Angeles*  
 William W Hurd, *Cleveland*  
 Gabor B Huszar, *New Haven*  
 Amer K Karam, *Los Angeles*  
 Justin P Lavin, *Akron*  
 Linda E May, *Kansas City*  
 Zaher Merhi, *Brooklyn*  
 Nash S Moawad, *Gainesville*  
 Lisa E Moore, *Albuquerque*

Robert D Moore, *Atlanta*  
David G Mutch, *St Louis*  
Nihar R Nayak, *Palo Alto*  
Anita L Nelson, *Manhattan Beach*  
Farr R Nezhat, *New York*  
Robert W Powers, *Pittsburgh*  
Andersen Robyn , *Seattle*  
Werner Schaefer, *Pittsburgh*

Gerald P Schatten, *Pittsburgh*  
Hen Y Sela, *New York*  
Sherri L Stewart, *Atlanta*  
Robert S Tan, *Houston*  
Ping Tang, *Rochester*  
Ihab M Usta, *New York*  
Jian-Jun Wei, *Chicago*  
Xiu-Quan Zhang, *Salt Lake City*

Chengquan Zhao, *Pittsburgh*  
Yulian Zhao, *Baltimore*  
Wenxin Zheng, *Tucson*



**Venezuela**

María E Aponte-Rueda, *Caracas*



## Contents

Quarterly Volume 5 Number 2 May 10, 2016

### REVIEW

- 140 Care of survivors of gynecologic cancers  
*Walker AJ, Benrubi ID, Ward KK*
- 150 Cancer stem cells and early stage basal-like breast cancer  
*Lo PK, Wolfson B, Zhou Q*
- 162 Risks and guidelines for the consumption of alcohol during pregnancy  
*Kesmodel US*

### MINIREVIEWS

- 175 Laparoscopic surgery in pregnancy  
*George PE, Shwaartz C, Divino CM*
- 182 Urinary incontinence following obstetric fistula repair  
*Goh JTW, Krause H*

### ORIGINAL ARTICLE

#### Observational Study

- 187 Gynecologic oncologists involvement on ovarian cancer standard of care receipt and survival  
*Rim SH, Hirsch S, Thomas CC, Brewster WR, Cooney D, Thompson TD, Stewart SL*

### SYSTEMATIC REVIEWS

- 197 Single incision slings: Are they ready for real life?  
*Tutolo M, De Ridder D, Van der Aa F*

## Contents

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*  
Volume 5 Number 2 May 10, 2016

### ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*, Yves Jacquemyn, MD, PhD, Professor, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Antwerp University Hospital UZA, 2650 Edegem, Belgium

### AIM AND SCOPE

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology* (*World J Obstet Gynecol*, *WJOG*, online ISSN 2218-6220, DOI: 10.5317) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

*WJOG* covers topics concerning pregnancy complications, obstetric surgical procedures, diagnostic imaging, endoscopy, reproductive endocrinology, tumors, pelvic diseases, evidence-based medicine, epidemiology and nursing.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJOG*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

### INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology* is currently no indexing/abstracting.

### FLYLEAF

I-III Editorial Board

### EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Responsible Assistant Editor: *Xiang Li*  
Responsible Electronic Editor: *Xiao-Kang Jiao*  
Proofing Editor-in-Chief: *Lian-Sheng Ma*

Responsible Science Editor: *Jin-Xin Kong*  
Proofing Editorial Office Director: *Xiu-Xia Song*

#### NAME OF JOURNAL

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*

#### ISSN

ISSN 2218-6220 (online)

#### LAUNCH DATE

June 10, 2012

#### FREQUENCY

Quarterly

#### EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

**Bo Jacobsson, MD, PhD, Professor**, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Sahlgrenska University Hospital/Ostra, SE-416 85 Gothenburg, Sweden

#### EDITORIAL OFFICE

Jin-Li Wang, Director  
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director  
*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*

Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,  
No. 62 Dongshuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,  
Beijing 100025, China

Telephone: +86-10-85381891

Fax: +86-10-85381893

E-mail: [editorialoffice@wjnet.com](mailto:editorialoffice@wjnet.com)

Help Desk: <http://www.wjnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjnet.com>

#### PUBLISHER

Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

8226 Regency Drive,

Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA

Telephone: +1-925-223-8242

Fax: +1-925-223-8243

E-mail: [bpgoffice@wjnet.com](mailto:bpgoffice@wjnet.com)

Help Desk: <http://www.wjnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjnet.com>

#### PUBLICATION DATE

May 10, 2016

#### COPYRIGHT

© 2016 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. Articles published by this Open-Access journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited, the use is non commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license.

#### SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in journals owned by the Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG) represent the views and opinions of their authors, and not the views, opinions or policies of the BPG, except where otherwise explicitly indicated.

#### INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS

Full instructions are available online at [http://www.wjnet.com/bpg/g\\_info\\_20160116143427.htm](http://www.wjnet.com/bpg/g_info_20160116143427.htm)

#### ONLINE SUBMISSION

<http://www.wjnet.com/esps/>



## Care of survivors of gynecologic cancers

Alexandra J Walker, Isidore D Benrubi, Kristy K Ward

Alexandra J Walker, Isidore D Benrubi, Kristy K Ward, Division of Gynecologic Oncology, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, University of Florida College of Medicine-Jacksonville, Jacksonville, FL 32209, United States

**Author contributions:** All authors contributed in conception, writing, and editing of this work.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** All authors report no conflict of interest.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Kristy K Ward, MD, Division of Gynecologic Oncology, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, University of Florida College of Medicine-Jacksonville, 653-1 W 8<sup>th</sup> Street, Jacksonville, FL 32209, United States. [kristy.kay.ward@gmail.com](mailto:kristy.kay.ward@gmail.com)  
**Telephone:** +1-904-2443112  
**Fax:** +1-904-2443658

Received: June 29, 2015

Peer-review started: July 3, 2015

First decision: September 30, 2015

Revised: January 29, 2016

Accepted: February 23, 2016

Article in press: February 24, 2016

Published online: May 10, 2016

### Abstract

The number of cancer survivors is increasing and most healthcare providers will manage patients who have completed therapy for malignancy at some point.

The care of survivors of gynecologic malignancies may seem daunting in a busy general gynecology practice. This paper intends to review the literature and suggest management of these women for the general gynecologist.

**Key words:** Survivorship; Gynecologic cancer; Cancer surveillance; Female reproductive malignancy; Cancer survivor

© **The Author(s) 2016.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** As the number of cancer survivors increases, the gynecologist will increasingly care for women with a history of cancers of the reproductive tract. This paper will review survivorship care of gynecologic cancer survivors in the benign gynecologist's office.

Walker AJ, Benrubi ID, Ward KK. Care of survivors of gynecologic cancers. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(2): 140-149 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i2/140.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i2.140>

### INTRODUCTION

Advances in cancer diagnosis and treatment have led to a steady increase in the number of cancer survivors, a population with unique physical, psychosocial and economic needs. In recent decades, coordinated efforts have focused on understanding this population and on enhancing the length and quality of life of survivors. In 1996 the National Cancer Institute created the Office of Cancer Survivorship, and in recent decades increasing research has investigated diverse aspects of survivorship<sup>[1-3]</sup>.

An individual is considered a survivor from the time of cancer diagnosis for the remainder of his or her life.

The survivorship experience can be divided into phases including an acute treatment phase, an intermediate survivor phase, and a long-term survivor phase. Caregivers are also included as survivors, as their lives may be affected significantly by others' cancer diagnoses. General survivorship care encompasses surveillance of the primary malignancy, managing complications of the cancer or its treatment, risk reduction and screening for second malignancies, and assessment of overall quality of life and psychosocial well-being<sup>[1,3]</sup>.

The number of gynecologic cancer survivors has grown substantially in recent decades, most notably amongst those diagnosed with early stage disease. In the United States there are currently an estimated 625000 survivors of endometrial cancer, 244000 survivors of cervical cancer, and nearly 200000 survivors of ovarian cancer, in total accounting for about 15% of all female cancer survivors<sup>[1]</sup>. As the number of cancer survivors increases, the general gynecologist can expect to care for women with a history of female genital cancers. Herein we will review literature relevant to gynecologic cancer survivors and offer practical guidance to the non-oncologist caring for these patients. After all, gynecologic cancers combined are the fourth most common cancer type amongst survivors after breast, prostate and colorectal cancers, and the second most common amongst women.

## EFFECTS OF GYNECOLOGICAL CANCER AND TREATMENT

### *Psychosocial issues*

Attempting to understand and address the psychosocial challenges faced by cancer survivors is an established and important aspect of survivorship care and research<sup>[3]</sup>. Proceeding with life after cancer can be a complicated, life-altering process. The psychological evolution that occurs during this process can result potentially in both positive and negative outcomes amongst survivors<sup>[4]</sup>.

Struggles commonly described by cancer survivors include fear, uncertainty, anxiety, depression, insomnia, relationship challenges, employment discrimination, financial concerns, and loss of insurance<sup>[5-10]</sup>. Furthermore, due to disease and treatment specifics, gynecologic cancer survivors may frequently encounter issues with body image, sexuality, and fertility<sup>[11,12]</sup>. Compared to other populations of cancer survivors, relatively few studies have specifically investigated the long-term psychosocial outcomes and needs of gynecologic cancer survivors. Caution must be emphasized when generalizing amongst survivors as each population faces unique challenges and has specific supportive care needs.

It has been recognized that medical variables, while important, seem to play a lesser role than psychological adjustment in predicting long-term psychological

health amongst survivors<sup>[8,13]</sup>. Studies have suggested that survivors with better social support systems experience less anxiety and depression<sup>[14,15]</sup>, and that socioeconomic status may strongly contribute to overall wellbeing<sup>[16]</sup>. A recent longitudinal study investigating long-term survivors of gynecologic cancers revealed overall normal levels of quality of life and relationship adjustment, however increased levels of anxiety and post-traumatic stress disorder amongst survivors<sup>[8]</sup>. Overall, more research is needed in this area.

In general, cancer survivors as a whole have fortunately shown positive responses to psychosocial interventions<sup>[7]</sup>. Unfortunately, many survivors do not receive psychosocial care<sup>[17]</sup>, representing missed opportunities. Thus, we recommend routine psychological screening and emphasize that screening should continue throughout a survivor's life, as a longer survivorship period does not necessarily correlate with decreased psychosocial concerns<sup>[8]</sup>. There are multiple brief psychosocial distress scales available for rapid in-office screening<sup>[18]</sup>. When psychological issues are identified, we recommend either treating or promptly referring for treatment.

Other interventions that have been associated with psychosocial well-being include healthy lifestyle interventions and management of menopausal symptoms. We recommend encouraging healthy lifestyle choices including healthy eating, regular exercise, and good sleep. Regular physical activity may positively affect survivors' psychosocial wellbeing and quality of life<sup>[19,20]</sup>. Menopausal symptoms, especially in premenopausal patients, have been associated with distress, depression, and sexual dysfunction<sup>[21]</sup>. While most gynecologic cancer survivors can be treated with hormone replacement therapy<sup>[22]</sup>, consult with the patient's oncologist if there is concern about tumor hormonal response. The American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists (ACOG) also recommends several non-hormonal options for management of menopausal symptoms that may be of benefit to these women<sup>[23]</sup>.

In addition, it is important to address survivors' supportive care needs, as increased unmet needs correlate with increased distress and decreased quality of life<sup>[8]</sup>. Referral to a well-run local survivor support group may be helpful, and can often be located through local chapters of the American Cancer Society<sup>[24]</sup>. Relationship counseling may be beneficial, especially amongst younger survivors<sup>[9]</sup>. Finally, sexual dysfunction and infertility, to be discussed subsequently, may profoundly affect survivors' psychological health and social wellbeing<sup>[11,21]</sup>.

### *Sexual health*

Amongst cancer survivors in general, sexual dysfunction has been broadly identified as a common and often untreated problem<sup>[25]</sup>. Women treated for gynecologic malignancies are at risk for sexual dysfunction due to the nature, location, and treatment of their disease.

After all, patients with gynecological cancer often undergo pelvic surgery and/or pelvic radiation, which may have considerable effects on sexual function<sup>[26]</sup>. Research has indicated that sexual concerns amongst gynecologic cancer survivors may include physical, psychological, and social dysfunctions<sup>[6,11,12]</sup>. A recent abstract presented at the 2015 American Society of Clinical Oncologists found that young, premenopausal women, those who underwent chemotherapy, and those in committed relationships may be at greater risk for sexual dysfunction, and among those with sexual dysfunction, a greater decline in sexual activity was seen after cancer treatment<sup>[27]</sup>.

Pelvic radiation therapy may contribute significantly to many of the physical effects described, including skin fibrosis, shortening and narrowing of the vagina, disruption in ovarian function and subsequent vaginal dryness, dyspareunia, and loss of interest in sexual activity<sup>[26,28-30]</sup>. Other concerns identified amongst gynecologic cancer survivors include altered body image, decreased libido, sexual performance anxiety, and perceived changes in partner interest<sup>[31-34]</sup>.

When considering treatment options for cancer-related sexual dysfunction it is important to recognize that normal sexual functioning can vary markedly, and that sexual function may improve as time from treatment increases<sup>[25,35]</sup>. Therapies addressing sexual dysfunction may focus on physical or psychosocial components. Studies evaluating various interventions are few and have shown mixed results<sup>[36,37]</sup>.

We recommend screening all gynecologic cancer survivors for sexual dysfunction and offering therapeutic suggestions to interested patients. Optimal evaluation and treatment often requires a multidisciplinary team. Physical concerns are often related to loss of ovarian function and anatomical changes resulting from treatment. Although conclusive evidence does not exist regarding the efficacy of vaginal dilator use<sup>[37]</sup>, use of a graduated series of dilators with lubricant may improve vaginal compliance, dyspareunia, and sexual function. Vaginal dryness may be improved with use of a vaginal moisturizer or a local estrogen product<sup>[38]</sup>. We also recommend screening for underlying psychological disorders. In addition, relationship counseling or consultation with a sexual therapist may benefit some patients.

### **Fertility implications**

While the majority of women diagnosed with gynecologic cancer are post-menopausal, a significant number are of reproductive age. Clinicians must be aware of the reproductive consequences of treatments, which can profoundly affect a woman's reproductive potential and overall wellbeing. Studies have shown that women with absent or impaired fertility resulting from gynecologic cancer treatment may experience depression, grief and stress resulting from infertility<sup>[11,19]</sup>.

Gynecologic cancers are treated with some com-

bination of surgery, radiation, and chemotherapy, any of which may negatively affect fertility. While surgery may remove part or all of a woman's reproductive organs, radiation and chemotherapy can significantly hinder ovarian function and subsequent ability to conceive. Pelvic irradiation and alkylating chemotherapeutic agents pose the greatest threats to ovarian function, but other chemotherapeutics may contribute. In addition, pelvic irradiation affects the uterus and may hinder pregnancy implantation and appropriate growth<sup>[39,40]</sup>.

As fertility has emerged as such a significant quality of life issue amongst cancer survivors, fertility preservation in patients undergoing gynecologic cancer treatment is an emerging topic. Reproductive aged women with fertility desires and early stage endometrial, cervical, and ovarian cancers are increasingly being offered fertility-conserving treatment options<sup>[41-43]</sup>. The complicated medical, ethical, and legal details of such are beyond the scope of this article, however this trend will undoubtedly affect future gynecologic cancer survivors. Gynecologic cancer survivors with fertility concerns should be promptly evaluated by reproductive specialists in conjunction with their oncologists.

### **Premature loss of ovarian function**

As discussed previously, premenopausal women may lose ovarian function as a result of gynecologic cancer treatment. While menopausal symptoms may be quite disruptive to a woman psychologically, sexually, and socially<sup>[21]</sup>, early loss of ovarian function may also have significant long-term effects on cardiovascular function, bone health, neurological status, and overall wellbeing<sup>[44-47]</sup>. We recommend encouragement of healthy lifestyle habits, following with a primary care provider, and consideration of hormone replacement therapy when appropriate. Furthermore, it is important to regularly screen affected women for bone loss and encourage healthy eating, calcium supplementation, and regular weight-bearing exercise. Providers may refer to ACOG's published recommendations for management of osteoporosis<sup>[48]</sup>.

### **Lymphedema**

Lower-extremity lymphedema is a late effect experienced by some gynecologic cancer survivors, especially those treated with surgery or radiation involving the pelvic or inguinal lymph nodes<sup>[49]</sup>. Onset may occur immediately after therapy or be delayed many years<sup>[50]</sup>. Patients with lymphedema may complain of pain, heaviness, fullness, a tight sensation, or decreased flexibility in an affected limb. Simple activities of daily living may be affected, and ambulation may be difficult<sup>[51]</sup>. Physical exam findings may include non-pitting edema<sup>[52]</sup>, and magnetic resonance imaging techniques are increasingly being used to diagnose early lymphedema<sup>[53]</sup>.

Risk factors for developing lower extremity lymphedema include the extent of surgery or radiation to lymph nodes, removal of the circumflex iliac lymph nodes,

cellulitis, and delayed wound healing<sup>[52,53]</sup>. Lymphedema may be instigated by small traumas including cuts, bites, injections, and sunburns. It is important for patients with lymphedema to maintain good skin hygiene and to engage in simple, regular range of motion exercises<sup>[51]</sup>. Therapies which may help survivors suffering from lymphedema include: Lymphedema hosiery, manual massage, compression bandages, or consultation with a lymphedema therapist. Severe cases may require hospitalization and intravenous antibiotics<sup>[49,51-53]</sup>. Lymphedema therapists may be located on the Lymphology Association of North America's website, <http://www.clt-lana.org>.

### **Cognitive dysfunction**

Furthermore, cancer patients may suffer from cognitive dysfunction, which may persist long after completion of treatment. The individual patient, type of cancer, and variety of treatment all combine to influence a survivor's cognitive state. Factors that may contribute to cognitive dysfunction include: Indirect effects of the cancer itself, brain metastases, chemotherapy, radiation therapy, medication effects, preexisting conditions and psychiatric issues<sup>[54]</sup>. Research exploring cognitive-related cancer dysfunction in survivors of gynecologic cancers is scant, as most literature in this area has focused on general or breast cancer survivors. However, cognitive decline has been identified amongst gynecologic cancer survivors and must be considered in survivor care plans<sup>[55,56]</sup>.

Interestingly, the cognitive deficits commonly described by survivors tend to differ from those of neurodegenerative diseases. Cancer patients and survivors often describe problems with organization, attention, memory, multitasking, and efficiency, often causing problems with occupational or social responsibilities<sup>[57,58]</sup>. Standard tests such as the Mini Mental Status Exam are often not sensitive enough to detect the subtle cognitive deficits experienced by survivors, and perceived cognitive decline may be considered reason to explore potential intervention<sup>[56]</sup>.

When assessing cancer survivors with perceived cognitive dysfunction it is important to address and treat fatigue, assess psychological health, assess for anemia, and encourage healthy lifestyle habits. Potential interventions include cognitive behavior therapy, coping strategies such as assisted technology or memory aids, compensatory strategy training, stress management, and energy management<sup>[56,59,60]</sup>. It is also important to remember that a new cognitive deficit in a cancer survivor could be an indication of recurrence and requires prompt evaluation.

## **SURVIVORSHIP ISSUES BY GYNECOLOGIC CANCER TYPE**

### **Endometrial cancer**

Endometrial cancer is both the most common and the

most curable type of gynecologic cancer<sup>[61]</sup>. Fortunately, among the nearly 55000 women expected to be diagnosed with endometrial cancer in 2015, most will be diagnosed with early-stage disease and given an excellent prognosis. Approximately 67% of women have localized disease at diagnosis, with estimated 5-year survival at 95%. Overall 5-year survival for endometrial cancer patients is approximately 82%, the highest amongst gynecologic cancers<sup>[62]</sup>. Thus it is important to understand and address the unique needs of this population.

When caring for endometrial cancer survivors, providers must address adverse treatment effects and screen for disease recurrence and second primary cancers. Equally important is addressing cardiovascular health and lifestyle factors. Overall morbidity amongst endometrial cancer survivors is high, despite favorable cancer prognoses. This has been attributed to the strong association of endometrial cancer with obesity and its related co-morbidities including hypertension, diabetes, metabolic syndrome, and pulmonary disease<sup>[63,64]</sup>. Women with endometrial cancer are more likely to die from cardiovascular disease than from cancer<sup>[65]</sup>, and obesity has been associated with increased morbidity and decreased quality of life in survivors<sup>[66,67]</sup>. Recent studies evaluating lifestyle programs that target endometrial cancer survivors have shown that various interventions may be able to increase physical activity levels, improve dietary habits, and influence weight loss in these patients<sup>[68-73]</sup>. Further study is needed in this area.

While the majority of women diagnosed with endometrial cancer are postmenopausal, an estimated 25% are premenopausal. Since 1988 the standard treatment for endometrial cancer has been hysterectomy and bilateral salpingoophorectomy, making loss of ovarian function amongst premenopausal women treated for endometrial cancer an important issue<sup>[61,74]</sup>. These women experience abrupt onset menopausal symptoms, which may exacerbate psychological difficulties and sexual dysfunction.

Traditionally, estrogen replacement therapy in survivors of endometrial cancer has been avoided since most endometrial cancers are estrogen dependent. Review of limited evidence suggests that estrogen replacement may be a reasonable option in premenopausal patients with a history of early-stage disease, and may be considered with appropriate risk-benefit counseling and oncology consultation<sup>[75,76]</sup>. Of note, some premenopausal women with endometrial cancer are choosing fertility preserving or ovarian preserving therapies<sup>[77,78]</sup>. The details of such treatments are beyond the scope of this review, however may influence the future composition of this population.

Furthermore, survivors of endometrial cancer are at increased risk for multiple subsequent cancers<sup>[64,79,80]</sup>. Breast and colon cancers are the most commonly identified second primary cancers in endometrial cancer



survivors and require regular screening<sup>[80]</sup>. Patients with endometrial cancer may have a genetic predisposition for development of other cancers, such as in Lynch syndrome, and should be offered genetic screening when personal or family history indicates<sup>[80,81]</sup>.

When caring for endometrial cancer survivors we recommend: Yearly pelvic exams, imaging as clinically indicated, regular screening for second primary cancers, and genetic testing when indicated. We also recommend routine assessment of psychosocial wellbeing, sexual health, and adverse treatment-related effects, accompanied by treatment or referral as indicated. Furthermore, we recommend medical optimization of cardiovascular health and increased emphasis on healthy lifestyle choices. At minimum, obese endometrial cancer survivors should receive physician counseling regarding weight loss, physical activity, and healthy eating. Ideally these patients should be referred to weight loss and lifestyle intervention programs available within their medical communities. Finally, in order to provide optimal care to endometrial cancer survivors we recommend that these women follow with a gynecologist or gynecologic-oncologist as well as a primary care specialist familiar with the needs of this population.

### Ovarian cancer

Ovarian cancer is the second most common gynecologic cancer in the United States, with an estimated 21000 diagnoses expected in 2015. Significant survival differences exist between women diagnosed with early stage disease and those diagnosed with advanced disease. Unfortunately, 60% have distant spread at diagnosis and 5-year survival at 28%. However women diagnosed with localized or regional spread have better prognoses with 5-year survival at 92% and 73%, respectively<sup>[82,83]</sup>.

Importantly, notable survival differences exist between women diagnosed with epithelial ovarian cancer and those diagnosed with ovarian germ cell tumors. While the former are generally diagnosed at an advanced stage with limited survival potential, many women diagnosed with germ cell tumors face favorable prognoses. In these women, who are often diagnosed at a young age and make up a small proportion of overall ovarian cancer diagnoses, survival is common and treatment may frequently induce concerns related to fertility, premature loss of ovarian function, and disease recurrence<sup>[83-85]</sup>.

Ovarian cancer is generally treated with surgery and/or chemotherapy, and survivors may additionally experience neuropathy, cognitive decline, psychosocial difficulties, and sexual dysfunction<sup>[55,86-88]</sup>. Fear of recurrence is of particular concern in this population and may contribute to significant anxiety and decreased quality of life. Studies have shown that psychosocial wellbeing can have the greatest influence on overall quality of life amongst ovarian cancer survivors<sup>[89]</sup>. Adequately powered longitudinal studies are needed

to further qualify, quantify, and assess the specific survivorship needs of this population.

When providing care to survivors of ovarian cancer, we recommend: Routine exams at least yearly and imaging as clinically indicated. Evaluation of tumor markers should be directed by the patient's oncologist. We recommend screening for neuropathy and cognitive difficulties, psychological and sexual dysfunction, and referral for treatment when indicated. Similar to endometrial cancer survivors, survivors of ovarian cancer benefit from a healthy diet, maintaining supportive relationships, regular physical activity and maintaining a healthy weight. Survivors may carry *BRCA1*, *BRCA2*, or *HNPCC* mutations, and should be screened for such based on personal and family histories<sup>[90]</sup>.

### Cervical cancer

Cervical cancer is the third most common gynecologic cancer in the United States. Its incidence has decreased markedly in recent decades with the introduction of widespread screening and treatment of pre-invasive disease. The recent introduction of the HPV vaccine will hopefully further decrease cervical cancer incidence in coming decades<sup>[91]</sup>.

Despite improved screening, an estimated 13000 women are expected to be diagnosed with this malignancy in 2015. Nearly half of these women will be diagnosed with local disease with 5-year survival at 90%. Overall, 5-year survival amongst cervical cancer patients is estimated at 68%<sup>[92]</sup>. Cervical cancer affects younger women when compared with other gynecologic cancers, with mean age at time of diagnosis approximately 50 years, resulting in longer post-treatment life expectancies. In addition, women of lower socioeconomic status and women of minority or immigrant groups are more likely to develop invasive cervical cancer<sup>[93,94]</sup>.

Women diagnosed with very early stage disease are often treated exclusively with surgery. More advanced disease is generally treated with radiation and chemotherapy. Survivors may suffer from psychosocial difficulties, sexual dysfunction, long-term treatment side effects, and second primary malignancies. Studies have suggested that survivors who received treatment with radiation therapy are at increased risk of suffering from long-term physical effects and sexual dysfunction when compared to those treated with radical surgery alone<sup>[93,95,96]</sup>.

Premenopausal women treated for cervical cancer may suffer from premature ovarian failure as a result of treatment. Estrogen replacement therapy is generally considered to be appropriate in this population and may be considered<sup>[22,97]</sup>. Women who have not completed childbearing at the time of diagnosis may suffer from psychological and social difficulties resulting from treatment-induced infertility. Fortunately, fertility preservation is increasingly being offered to women with

very early stage invasive disease<sup>[98-100]</sup>, and ovarian-preserving efforts including pre-treatment ovarian transposition have been investigated with promising results<sup>[101,102]</sup>.

Furthermore, women with a history of cervical cancer are at increased risk of developing subsequent cancers of the vulva, vagina, and rectum as well as tobacco-related malignancies including lung, esophageal, stomach, urogenital, pancreatic, and leukemia in those with a tobacco use history<sup>[103-105]</sup>. Thus, it is important to screen for potential second malignancies and to routinely address tobacco use.

When providing care to cervical cancer survivors we recommend: Yearly pelvic exams with pap screening, imaging as clinically indicated, and routine screening for second primary cancers. Furthermore, we encourage healthy lifestyle choices and regular tobacco prevention and cessation efforts, including referral to cessation programs for motivated patients. It is important to recognize that many of these patients may suffer from long-term psychological issues or have severe physical effects from cancer treatment. We also recommend educating these survivors on the importance of encouraging their family and community members to undergo routine cervical screening.

### Vulvar cancer

Vulvar cancer is the fourth most common gynecologic cancer, with approximately 5000 women expected to be diagnosed in 2015<sup>[106]</sup>. Vulvar cancer diagnoses occur most frequently in women between the ages of 65-75, however vulvar cancer has increased in younger populations, likely due to increasing HPV prevalence<sup>[107]</sup>. As with cervical cancer, the introduction of the HPV vaccine will hopefully decrease vulvar cancer incidence in the coming decades<sup>[92]</sup>. Women with vulvar cancer are generally treated with pelvic surgery and/or radiation therapy<sup>[108]</sup>.

Overall the literature assessing survivorship issues specific to vulvar cancer is limited. Patients treated with extensive surgery or radiation therapy seem to be at risk for decreased quality of life, including sexual dysfunction and psychosocial difficulties<sup>[108-110]</sup>. These patients may suffer from skin changes including changes in skin texture and color, thickening, contractures, fibrosis, decreased clitoral sensation, and painful intercourse. Patients treated with extensive lymph node surgery or radiation therapy often suffer from chronic lymphedema<sup>[111]</sup>.

As vulvar cancer has increased among younger women who often present with less advanced disease, a trend toward less radical surgery has emerged. Wide local excision has been associated with higher quality of life amongst survivors when compared to radical vulvectomy<sup>[109]</sup>, and sophisticated sentinel node mapping techniques are decreasing the need for radical lymph node surgery and the associated risk of lymphedema<sup>[112]</sup>. Overall, more research is needed

to define and best meet the evolving needs of vulvar cancer survivors.

When treating these patients we recommend: Routine pelvic exams and screening for disease recurrence, as well as routine guideline-recommended screening for other cancers. In tobacco users we recommend an emphasis on cessation. Finally, we recommend approaching these patients with awareness that mental health or sexual counseling may be indicated, especially in patients with a history of extensive pelvic surgery or radiation therapy.

## CONCLUSION

The number of gynecologic cancer survivors is expected to continue to increase in coming decades. While further research is warranted to better understand and meet the needs of this population, there are many things that the general gynecologists can do to manage the survivorship care of these women. Attention to the unique psychosocial symptoms, treatment related sequella, cancer type specific issues, and management of general health maintenance and other health issues would improve the health and quality of life of gynecologic cancer survivors.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **American Cancer Society.** Cancer Treatment and Survivorship Facts & Figures 2014-2015. Atlanta: American Cancer Society; 2014. Available from: URL: <http://www.cancer.org/research/cancerfactsstatistics/survivor-facts-figures>
- 2 **National Institute of Cancer, Office of Cancer Survivorship.** Definitions, Statistics, and Graphs. [accessed 2015 Jun 1]. Available from: URL: <http://cancercontrol.cancer.gov/ocs/statistics/statistics.html>
- 3 **National Research Council.** From Cancer Patient to Cancer Survivor: Lost in Transition. Washington, DC: The National Academies Press, 2005. Available from: URL: [http://iom.nationalacademies.org/Reports/2005/From-Cancer-Patient-to-Cancer-Survivor-Lost-in-Transition.aspx?utm\\_source=Twitter&utm\\_medium=Tweet&utm\\_campaign=Hootsuite](http://iom.nationalacademies.org/Reports/2005/From-Cancer-Patient-to-Cancer-Survivor-Lost-in-Transition.aspx?utm_source=Twitter&utm_medium=Tweet&utm_campaign=Hootsuite)
- 4 **Thornton AA, Perez MA.** Posttraumatic growth in prostate cancer survivors and their partners. *Psychooncology* 2006; **15**: 285-296 [PMID: 16035136]
- 5 **Wenzel LB, Donnelly JP, Fowler JM, Habbal R, Taylor TH, Aziz N, Cella D.** Resilience, reflection, and residual stress in ovarian cancer survivorship: a gynecologic oncology group study. *Psychooncology* 2002; **11**: 142-153 [PMID: 11921330]
- 6 **Roland KB, Rodriguez JL, Patterson JR, Trivers KF.** A literature review of the social and psychological needs of ovarian cancer survivors. *Psychooncology* 2013; **22**: 2408-2418 [PMID: 23760742 DOI: 10.1002/pon.3322]
- 7 **Meyer TJ, Mark MM.** Effects of psychosocial interventions with adult cancer patients: a meta-analysis of randomized experiments. *Health Psychol* 1995; **14**: 101-108 [PMID: 7789344]
- 8 **Hodgkinson K, Butow P, Fuchs A, Hunt GE, Stenlake A, Hobbs KM, Brand A, Wain G.** Long-term survival from gynecologic cancer: psychosocial outcomes, supportive care needs and positive outcomes. *Gynecol Oncol* 2007; **104**: 381-389 [PMID: 17027072]
- 9 **Kirchhoff AC, Yi J, Wright J, Warner EL, Smith KR.** Marriage and divorce among young adult cancer survivors. *J Cancer Surviv* 2012; **6**: 441-450 [PMID: 22956304 DOI: 10.1007/s11764-012-0238-6]
- 10 **Bodurka DC, Sun CC, Frumovitz MM.** Quality of life in cervix

- cancer survivors--what matters the most in the long-term? *Gynecol Oncol* 2005; **97**: 307-309 [PMID: 15863122]
- 11 **Carter J**, Raviv L, Applegarth L, Ford JS, Josephs L, Grill E, Sklar C, Sonoda Y, Baser RE, Barakat RR. A cross-sectional study of the psychosexual impact of cancer-related infertility in women: third-party reproductive assistance. *J Cancer Surviv* 2010; **4**: 236-246 [PMID: 20373042 DOI: 10.1007/s11764-010-0121-2]
  - 12 **Abbott-Anderson K**, Kwekkeboom KL. A systematic review of sexual concerns reported by gynecological cancer survivors. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **124**: 477-489 [PMID: 22134375 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.11.030]
  - 13 **Carver CS**, Smith RG, Petronis VM, Antoni MH. Quality of life among long-term survivors of breast cancer: Different types of antecedents predict different classes of outcomes. *Psychooncology* 2006; **15**: 749-758 [PMID: 16304622]
  - 14 **Kimmel M**, Fairbairn M, Giuntoli R, Jernigan A, Belozar A, Payne J, Swartz K, Díaz-Montes TP. The importance of social support for women with elevated anxiety undergoing care for gynecologic malignancies. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2014; **24**: 1700-1708 [PMID: 25340295 DOI: 10.1097/IGC.0000000000000285]
  - 15 **Carpenter KM**, Fowler JM, Maxwell GL, Andersen BL. Direct and buffering effects of social support among gynecologic cancer survivors. *Ann Behav Med* 2010; **39**: 79-90 [PMID: 20151235 DOI: 10.1007/s12160-010-9160-1]
  - 16 **Greenwald HP**, McCorkle R, Baumgartner K, Gotay C, Neale AV. Quality of life and disparities among long-term cervical cancer survivors. *J Cancer Surviv* 2014; **8**: 419-426 [PMID: 24706363 DOI: 10.1007/s11764-014-0352-8]
  - 17 **Forsythe LP**, Kent EE, Weaver KE, Buchanan N, Hawkins NA, Rodriguez JL, Ryerson AB, Rowland JH. Receipt of psychosocial care among cancer survivors in the United States. *J Clin Oncol* 2013; **31**: 1961-1969 [PMID: 23610114 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2012.46.2101]
  - 18 **National Cancer Institute**. Adjustment to Cancer: Anxiety and Distress-for health professionals (PDQ®). [accessed 2015 Jun 28]. Available from: URL: [http://www.cancer.gov/about-cancer/coping/feelings/anxiety-distress-hp-pdq#link/stoc\\_h2\\_3](http://www.cancer.gov/about-cancer/coping/feelings/anxiety-distress-hp-pdq#link/stoc_h2_3)
  - 19 **Stevenson C**, Faught W, Steed H, Tonkin K, Ladha AB, Vallance JK, Capstick V, Schepansky A, Courneya KS. Associations between physical activity and quality of life in ovarian cancer survivors. *Gynecol Oncol* 2007; **106**: 244-250 [PMID: 17493671]
  - 20 **Crawford JJ**, Vallance JK, Holt NL, Courneya KS. Associations between exercise and posttraumatic growth in gynecologic cancer survivors. *Support Care Cancer* 2015; **23**: 705-714 [PMID: 25172310 DOI: 10.1007/s00520-014-2410-1]
  - 21 **Carter J**, Chi DS, Brown CL, Abu-Rustum NR, Sonoda Y, Aghajanian C, Levine DA, Baser RE, Raviv L, Barakat RR. Cancer-related infertility in survivorship. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2010; **20**: 2-8 [PMID: 20130497 DOI: 10.1111/IGC.0b013e3181bf7d3f]
  - 22 **Biliatis I**, Thomakos N, Rodolakis A, Akrivos N, Zacharakis D, Antsaklis A. Safety of hormone replacement therapy in gynaecological cancer survivors. *J Obstet Gynaecol* 2012; **32**: 321-325 [PMID: 22519472 DOI: 10.3109/01443615.2012.668579]
  - 23 **American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists**. ACOG Practice Bulletin No. 141: management of menopausal symptoms. *Obstet Gynecol* 2014; **123**: 202-216 [PMID: 24463691 DOI: 10.1097/01.AOG.0000441353.20693.78]
  - 24 **Sanson-Fisher R**, Girgis A, Boyes A, Bonevski B, Burton L, Cook P. The unmet supportive care needs of patients with cancer. Supportive Care Review Group. *Cancer* 2000; **88**: 226-237 [PMID: 10618627]
  - 25 **Sadovsky R**, Basson R, Krychman M, Morales AM, Schover L, Wang R, Incrocci L. Cancer and sexual problems. *J Sex Med* 2010; **7**: 349-373 [PMID: 20092444 DOI: 10.1111/j.1743-6109.2009.01620.x]
  - 26 **Donovan KA**, Taliaferro LA, Alvarez EM, Jacobsen PB, Roetzheim RG, Wenham RM. Sexual health in women treated for cervical cancer: characteristics and correlates. *Gynecol Oncol* 2007; **104**: 428-434 [PMID: 17005248]
  - 27 **Guntupalli S**, Flink D, Sheeder J. Sexual and marital dysfunction in women with gynecologic cancer: A multi-institutional, cross-sectional trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2015; **33**: (suppl; abstr 9592)
  - 28 **Aerts L**, Enzlin P, Verhaeghe J, Vergote I, Amant F. Sexual and psychological functioning in women after pelvic surgery for gynaecological cancer. *Eur J Gynaecol Oncol* 2009; **30**: 652-656 [PMID: 20099497]
  - 29 **Bergmark K**, Avall-Lundqvist E, Dickman PW, Henningsohn L, Steineck G. Vaginal changes and sexuality in women with a history of cervical cancer. *N Engl J Med* 1999; **340**: 1383-1389 [PMID: 10228188]
  - 30 **Amsterdam A**, Krychman ML. Sexual dysfunction in patients with gynecologic neoplasms: a retrospective pilot study. *J Sex Med* 2006; **3**: 646-649 [PMID: 16776780]
  - 31 **Carmack Taylor CL**, Basen-Engquist K, Shinn EH, Bodurka DC. Predictors of sexual functioning in ovarian cancer patients. *J Clin Oncol* 2004; **22**: 881-889 [PMID: 14990644]
  - 32 **Corney RH**, Crowther ME, Everett H, Howells A, Shepherd JH. Psychosexual dysfunction in women with gynaecological cancer following radical pelvic surgery. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol* 1993; **100**: 73-78 [PMID: 8427843]
  - 33 **Juraskova I**, Butow P, Robertson R, Sharpe L, McLeod C, Hacker N. Post-treatment sexual adjustment following cervical and endometrial cancer: a qualitative insight. *Psychooncology* 2003; **12**: 267-279 [PMID: 12673810]
  - 34 **Lindau ST**, Gavrilova N, Anderson D. Sexual morbidity in very long term survivors of vaginal and cervical cancer: a comparison to national norms. *Gynecol Oncol* 2007; **106**: 413-418 [PMID: 17582473]
  - 35 **Vaz AF**, Pinto-Neto AM, Conde DM, Costa-Paiva L, Morais SS, Pedro AO, Esteves SB. Quality of life and menopausal and sexual symptoms in gynecologic cancer survivors: a cohort study. *Menopause* 2011; **18**: 662-669 [PMID: 21471827 DOI: 10.1097/gme.0b013e3181ffde7f]
  - 36 **Broto LA**, Heiman JR, Goff B, Greer B, Lentz GM, Swisher E, Tamimi H, Van Blaricom A. A psychoeducational intervention for sexual dysfunction in women with gynecologic cancer. *Arch Sex Behav* 2008; **37**: 317-329 [PMID: 17680353]
  - 37 **Miles T**, Johnson N. Vaginal dilator therapy for women receiving pelvic radiotherapy. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2014; **9**: CD007291 [PMID: 25198150 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD007291.pub3]
  - 38 **Carter J**, Goldfrank D, Schover LR. Simple strategies for vaginal health promotion in cancer survivors. *J Sex Med* 2011; **8**: 549-559 [PMID: 20722792 DOI: 10.1111/j.1743-6109.2010.01988.x]
  - 39 **Stroud JS**, Mutch D, Rader J, Powell M, Thaker PH, Grigsby PW. Effects of cancer treatment on ovarian function. *Fertil Steril* 2009; **92**: 417-427 [PMID: 18774559 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2008.07.1714]
  - 40 **Noyes N**, Knopman JM, Long K, Coletta JM, Abu-Rustum NR. Fertility considerations in the management of gynecologic malignancies. *Gynecol Oncol* 2011; **120**: 326-333 [PMID: 20943258 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2010.09.012]
  - 41 **Ditto A**, Martinelli F, Bogani G, Fischetti M, Di Donato V, Lorusso D, Raspagliesi F. Fertility-sparing surgery in early-stage cervical cancer patients: oncologic and reproductive outcomes. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2015; **25**: 493-497 [PMID: 25628110 DOI: 10.1097/IGC.0000000000000371]
  - 42 **Ditto A**, Martinelli F, Lorusso D, Haeusler E, Carcangiu M, Raspagliesi F. Fertility sparing surgery in early stage epithelial ovarian cancer. *J Gynecol Oncol* 2014; **25**: 320-327 [PMID: 25142621 DOI: 10.3802/jgo.2014.25.4.320]
  - 43 **Koskas M**, Uzan J, Luton D, Rouzier R, Daraï E. Prognostic factors of oncologic and reproductive outcomes in fertility-sparing management of endometrial atypical hyperplasia and adenocarcinoma: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Fertil Steril* 2014; **101**: 785-794 [PMID: 24388202 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2013.11.028]
  - 44 **Stavraka C**, Maclaran K, Gabra H, Agarwal R, Ghaem-Maghami S, Taylor A, Dhillon WS, Panay N, Blagden SP. A study to evaluate the cause of bone demineralization in gynecological cancer survivors.



- Oncologist* 2013; **18**: 423-429 [PMID: 23363808 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2012-0416]
- 45 **Shuster LT**, Rhodes DJ, Gostout BS, Grossardt BR, Rocca WA. Premature menopause or early menopause: long-term health consequences. *Maturitas* 2010; **65**: 161-166 [PMID: 19733988 DOI: 10.1016/j.maturitas.2009.08.003]
  - 46 **Atsma F**, Bartelink ML, Grobbee DE, van der Schouw YT. Postmenopausal status and early menopause as independent risk factors for cardiovascular disease: a meta-analysis. *Menopause* 2006; **13**: 265-279 [PMID: 16645540]
  - 47 **de Kleijn MJ**, van der Schouw YT, Verbeek AL, Peeters PH, Banga JD, van der Graaf Y. Endogenous estrogen exposure and cardiovascular mortality risk in postmenopausal women. *Am J Epidemiol* 2002; **155**: 339-345 [PMID: 11836198]
  - 48 **American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists**. ACOG Practice Bulletin N. 129. Osteoporosis. *Obstet Gynecol* 2012; **120**: 718-734 [PMID: 22914492 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e31826dc446]
  - 49 **Beesley V**, Janda M, Eakin E, Obermair A, Battistutta D. Lymphedema after gynecological cancer treatment: prevalence, correlates, and supportive care needs. *Cancer* 2007; **109**: 2607-2614 [PMID: 17474128]
  - 50 **Hareyama H**, Hada K, Goto K, Watanabe S, Hakoyama M, Oku K, Hayakashi Y, Hirayama E, Okuyama K. Prevalence, classification, and risk factors for postoperative lower extremity lymphedema in women with gynecologic malignancies: a retrospective study. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2015; **25**: 751-757 [PMID: 25723779]
  - 51 **International Society of Lymphology**. The diagnosis and treatment of peripheral lymphedema: 2013 Consensus Document of the International Society of Lymphology. *Lymphology* 2013; **46**: 1-11 [PMID: 23930436]
  - 52 **Brennan MJ**, Miller LT. Overview of treatment options and review of the current role and use of compression garments, intermittent pumps, and exercise in the management of lymphedema. *Cancer* 1998; **83**: 2821-2827 [PMID: 9874405]
  - 53 **Abu-Rustum NR**, Barakat RR. Observations on the role of circumflex iliac node resection and the etiology of lower extremity lymphedema following pelvic lymphadenectomy for gynecologic malignancy. *Gynecol Oncol* 2007; **106**: 4-5 [PMID: 17477957]
  - 54 **Andreotti C**, Root JC, Ahles TA, McEwen BS, Compas BE. Cancer, coping, and cognition: a model for the role of stress reactivity in cancer-related cognitive decline. *Psychooncology* 2015; **24**: 617-623 [PMID: 25286084 DOI: 10.1002/pon.3683]
  - 55 **Correa DD**, Zhou Q, Thaler HT, Maziarz M, Hurley K, Hensley ML. Cognitive functions in long-term survivors of ovarian cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2010; **119**: 366-369 [PMID: 20630576 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2010.06.023]
  - 56 **Sleight A**. Coping with cancer-related cognitive dysfunction: a scoping review of the literature. *Disabil Rehabil* 2016; **38**: 400-408 [PMID: 25885669]
  - 57 **Falletti MG**, Sanfilippo A, Maruff P, Weih L, Phillips KA. The nature and severity of cognitive impairment associated with adjuvant chemotherapy in women with breast cancer: a meta-analysis of the current literature. *Brain Cogn* 2005; **59**: 60-70 [PMID: 15975700]
  - 58 **Boykoff N**, Moieni M, Subramanian SK. Confronting chemobrain: an in-depth look at survivors' reports of impact on work, social networks, and health care response. *J Cancer Surviv* 2009; **3**: 223-232 [PMID: 19760150 DOI: 10.1007/s11764-009-0098-x]
  - 59 **Ferguson RJ**, McDonald BC, Rocque MA, Furstenberg CT, Horrigan S, Ahles TA, Saykin AJ. Development of CBT for chemotherapy-related cognitive change: results of a waitlist control trial. *Psychooncology* 2012; **21**: 176-186 [PMID: 22271538 DOI: 10.1002/pon.1878]
  - 60 **Goedendorp MM**, Knoop H, Gielissen MF, Verhagen CA, Bleijenberg G. The effects of cognitive behavioral therapy for postcancer fatigue on perceived cognitive disabilities and neuropsychological test performance. *J Pain Symptom Manage* 2014; **47**: 35-44 [PMID: 23707383 DOI: 10.1016/j.jpainsymman.2013.02.014]
  - 61 **Practice Bulletin No. 149**: Endometrial cancer. *Obstet Gynecol* 2015; **125**: 1006-1026 [PMID: 25798986 DOI: 10.1097/01.AOG.0000462977.61229.de]
  - 62 NIH Surveillance Research Program. SEER Stat Fact Sheets - Cancer of the Endometrium. [accessed 2015 May 31]. Available from: URL: <http://seer.cancer.gov/statfacts/html/corp.html>
  - 63 **von Gruenigen VE**, Tian C, Frasure H, Waggoner S, Keys H, Barakat RR. Treatment effects, disease recurrence, and survival in obese women with early endometrial carcinoma: a Gynecologic Oncology Group study. *Cancer* 2006; **107**: 2786-2791 [PMID: 17096437]
  - 64 **Bjorge T**, Stocks T, Lukanova A, Tretli S, Selmer R, Manjer J, Rapp K, Ulmer H, Almquist M, Concin H, Hallmans G, Jonsson H, Stattin P, Engeland A. Metabolic syndrome and endometrial carcinoma. *Am J Epidemiol* 2010; **171**: 892-902 [PMID: 20219764 DOI: 10.1093/aje/kwq006]
  - 65 **Ward KK**, Shah NR, Saenz CC, McHale MT, Alvarez EA, Plaxe SC. Cardiovascular disease is the leading cause of death among endometrial cancer patients. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **126**: 176-179 [PMID: 22507532 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2012.04.013]
  - 66 **Courneya KS**, Karvinen KH, Campbell KL, Pearcey RG, Dundas G, Capstick V, Tonkin KS. Associations among exercise, body weight, and quality of life in a population-based sample of endometrial cancer survivors. *Gynecol Oncol* 2005; **97**: 422-430 [PMID: 15863140]
  - 67 **Smits A**, Lopes A, Das N, Bekkers R, Galaal K. The impact of BMI on quality of life in obese endometrial cancer survivors: does size matter? *Gynecol Oncol* 2014; **132**: 137-141 [PMID: 24262880 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2013.11.018]
  - 68 **Basen-Engquist K**, Carmack C, Brown J, Jhingran A, Baum G, Song J, Scruggs S, Swartz MC, Cox MG, Lu KH. Response to an exercise intervention after endometrial cancer: differences between obese and non-obese survivors. *Gynecol Oncol* 2014; **133**: 48-55 [PMID: 24680591 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2014.01.025]
  - 69 **von Gruenigen VE**, Courneya KS, Gibbons HE, Kavanagh MB, Waggoner SE, Lerner E. Feasibility and effectiveness of a lifestyle intervention program in obese endometrial cancer patients: a randomized trial. *Gynecol Oncol* 2008; **109**: 19-26 [PMID: 18243282 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2007.12.026]
  - 70 **von Gruenigen VE**, Gibbons HE, Kavanagh MB, Janata JW, Lerner E, Courneya KS. A randomized trial of a lifestyle intervention in obese endometrial cancer survivors: quality of life outcomes and mediators of behavior change. *Health Qual Life Outcomes* 2009; **7**: 17 [PMID: 19243603 DOI: 10.1186/1477-7525-7-17]
  - 71 **von Gruenigen VE**, Waggoner SE, Frasure HE, Kavanagh MB, Janata JW, Rose PG, Courneya KS, Lerner E. Lifestyle challenges in endometrial cancer survivorship. *Obstet Gynecol* 2011; **117**: 93-100 [PMID: 21173649 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e31820205b3]
  - 72 **von Gruenigen V**, Frasure H, Kavanagh MB, Janata J, Waggoner S, Rose P, Lerner E, Courneya KS. Survivors of uterine cancer empowered by exercise and healthy diet (SUCCEED): a randomized controlled trial. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **125**: 699-704 [PMID: 22465522 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2012.03.042]
  - 73 **McCarroll ML**, Armbruster S, Frasure HE, Gothard MD, Gil KM, Kavanagh MB, Waggoner S, von Gruenigen VE. Self-efficacy, quality of life, and weight loss in overweight/obese endometrial cancer survivors (SUCCEED): a randomized controlled trial. *Gynecol Oncol* 2014; **132**: 397-402 [PMID: 24369301 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2013.12.023]
  - 74 **Sorosky JI**. Endometrial cancer. *Obstet Gynecol* 2008; **111**: 436-447 [PMID: 18238985 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e318162f690]
  - 75 **Chapman JA**, DiSaia PJ, Osann K, Roth PD, Gillotte DL, Berman ML. Estrogen replacement in surgical stage I and II endometrial cancer survivors. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1996; **175**: 1195-1200 [PMID: 8942487]
  - 76 **Barakat RR**, Bundy BN, Spirtos NM, Bell J, Mannel RS. Randomized double-blind trial of estrogen replacement therapy versus placebo in stage I or II endometrial cancer: a Gynecologic Oncology Group Study. *J Clin Oncol* 2006; **24**: 587-592 [PMID: 16446331]
  - 77 **Erkanli S**, Ayhan A. Fertility-sparing therapy in young women with



- endometrial cancer: 2010 update. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2010; **20**: 1170-1187 [PMID: 21495221]
- 78 **Sun C**, Chen G, Yang Z, Jiang J, Yang X, Li N, Zhou B, Zhu T, Wei J, Weng D, Ma D, Wang C, Kong B. Safety of ovarian preservation in young patients with early-stage endometrial cancer: a retrospective study and meta-analysis. *Fertil Steril* 2013; **100**: 782-787 [PMID: 23830105 DOI: 10.1016/j.fertnstert.2013.05.032]
  - 79 **Hemminki K**, Aaltonen L, Li X. Subsequent primary malignancies after endometrial carcinoma and ovarian carcinoma. *Cancer* 2003; **97**: 2432-2439 [PMID: 12733142]
  - 80 **Re A**, Taylor TH, DiSaia PJ, Anton-Culver H. Risk for breast and colorectal cancers subsequent to cancer of the endometrium in a population-based case series. *Gynecol Oncol* 1997; **66**: 255-257 [PMID: 9264572]
  - 81 **Uccella S**, Cha SS, Melton LJ, Bergstralh EJ, Boardman LA, Keeney GL, Podratz KC, Ciano FF, Mariani A. Risk factors for developing multiple malignancies in patients with endometrial cancer. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2011; **21**: 896-901 [PMID: 21666488 DOI: 10.1097/IGC.0b013e318219711f]
  - 82 NIH Surveillance Research Program. SEER Stat Fact Sheets - Cancer of the Ovary. [accessed 2015 May 28]. Available from: URL: <http://seer.cancer.gov/statfacts/html/ovary.html>
  - 83 **Bhoola S**, Hoskins WJ. Diagnosis and management of epithelial ovarian cancer. *Obstet Gynecol* 2006; **107**: 1399-1410 [PMID: 16738170]
  - 84 Ovarian Germ Cell Tumors Treatment (PDQ®): Health Professional Version. PDQ Cancer Information Summaries [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Cancer Institute (US); 2002-2015 Jul 10 [PMID: 26389449]
  - 85 **Zalel Y**, Piura B, Elchalal U, Czernobilsky B, Antebi S, Dgani R. Diagnosis and management of malignant germ cell ovarian tumors in young females. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 1996; **55**: 1-10 [PMID: 8910077]
  - 86 **Gutiérrez-Gutiérrez G**, Sereno M, Miralles A, Casado-Sáenz E, Gutiérrez-Rivas E. Chemotherapy-induced peripheral neuropathy: clinical features, diagnosis, prevention and treatment strategies. *Clin Transl Oncol* 2010; **12**: 81-91 [PMID: 20156778 DOI: 10.1007/S12094-010-0474-z]
  - 87 **Stavraka C**, Ford A, Ghaem-Maghani S, Crook T, Agarwal R, Gabra H, Blagden S. A study of symptoms described by ovarian cancer survivors. *Gynecol Oncol* 2012; **125**: 59-64 [PMID: 22155797 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.12.421]
  - 88 **Ezendam NP**, Pijlman B, Bhugwandass C, Pruijt JF, Mols F, Vos MC, Pijnenborg JM, van de Poll-Franse LV. Chemotherapy-induced peripheral neuropathy and its impact on health-related quality of life among ovarian cancer survivors: results from the population-based PROFILES registry. *Gynecol Oncol* 2014; **135**: 510-517 [PMID: 25281491 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2014.09.016]
  - 89 **Teng FF**, Kalløger SE, Brotto L, McAlpine JN. Determinants of quality of life in ovarian cancer survivors: a pilot study. *J Obstet Gynaecol Can* 2014; **36**: 708-715 [PMID: 25222166]
  - 90 **Gangi A**, Cass I, Paik D, Barmparas G, Karlan B, Dang C, Li A, Walsh C, Rimel BJ, Amersi FF. Breast cancer following ovarian cancer in BRCA mutation carriers. *JAMA Surg* 2014; **149**: 1306-1313 [PMID: 25372568 DOI: 10.1001/jamasurg.2014.1081]
  - 91 Practice Bulletin No. 140: management of abnormal cervical cancer screening test results and cervical cancer precursors. *Obstet Gynecol* 2013; **122**: 1338-1367 [PMID: 24264713 DOI: 10.1097/01.AOG.0000438960.31355.9e]
  - 92 NIH Surveillance Research Program. SEER Stat Fact Sheets - Cancer of the Cervix Uteri. [accessed 2015 June 3]. Available from: URL: <http://seer.cancer.gov/statfacts/html/cervix.html>
  - 93 **Ye S**, Yang J, Cao D, Lang J, Shen K. A systematic review of quality of life and sexual function of patients with cervical cancer after treatment. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2014; **24**: 1146-1157 [PMID: 25033255 DOI: 10.1097/IGC.0000000000000207]
  - 94 **Akers AY**, Newmann SJ, Smith JS. Factors underlying disparities in cervical cancer incidence, screening, and treatment in the United States. *Curr Probl Cancer* 2007; **31**: 157-181 [PMID: 17543946]
  - 95 **Le Borgne G**, Mercier M, Woronoff AS, Guizard AV, Abeillard E, Caravati-Jouvencaux A, Klein D, Velten M, Joly F. Quality of life in long-term cervical cancer survivors: a population-based study. *Gynecol Oncol* 2013; **129**: 222-228 [PMID: 23280088 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2012.12.033]
  - 96 **Harding Y**, Ooyama T, Nakamoto T, Wakayama A, Kudaka W, Inamine M, Nagai Y, Ueda S, Aoki Y. Radiotherapy- or radical surgery-induced female sexual morbidity in stages IB and II cervical cancer. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2014; **24**: 800-805 [PMID: 24662133 DOI: 10.1097/IGC.0000000000000112]
  - 97 **Ploch E**. Hormonal replacement therapy in patients after cervical cancer treatment. *Gynecol Oncol* 1987; **26**: 169-177 [PMID: 2433195]
  - 98 **Abu-Rustum NR**, Neubauer N, Sonoda Y, Park KJ, Gemignani M, Alektiar KM, Tew W, Leitao MM, Chi DS, Barakat RR. Surgical and pathologic outcomes of fertility-sparing radical abdominal trachelectomy for FIGO stage IB1 cervical cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2008; **111**: 261-264 [PMID: 18708244 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2008.07.002]
  - 99 **Pareja R**, Rendón GJ, Sanz-Lomana CM, Monzón O, Ramirez PT. Surgical, oncological, and obstetrical outcomes after abdominal radical trachelectomy - a systematic literature review. *Gynecol Oncol* 2013; **131**: 77-82 [PMID: 23769758 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2013.06.010]
  - 100 **Ramirez PT**, Schmeler KM, Soliman PT, Frumovitz M. Fertility preservation in patients with early cervical cancer: radical trachelectomy. *Gynecol Oncol* 2008; **110**: S25-S28 [PMID: 18501409 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2008.03.025]
  - 101 **Shou H**, Chen Y, Chen Z, Zhu T, Ni J. Laparoscopic ovarian transposition in young women with cervical squamous cell carcinoma treated by primary pelvic irradiation. *Eur J Gynaecol Oncol* 2015; **36**: 25-29 [PMID: 25872330]
  - 102 **Al-Badawi IA**, Al-Aker M, AlSubhi J, Salem H, Abduljabbar A, Balaraj K, Munkarah A. Laparoscopic ovarian transposition before pelvic irradiation: a Saudi tertiary center experience. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2010; **20**: 1082-1086 [PMID: 20683422 DOI: 10.1111/IGC.0b013e3181e2ace5]
  - 103 **Balamurugan A**, Ahmed F, Saraiya M, Kosary C, Schwenn M, Cokkinides V, Flowers L, Pollack LA. Potential role of human papillomavirus in the development of subsequent primary in situ and invasive cancers among cervical cancer survivors. *Cancer* 2008; **113**: 2919-2925 [PMID: 18980275 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.23746]
  - 104 **Rodriguez AM**, Kuo YF, Goodwin JS. Risk of colorectal cancer among long-term cervical cancer survivors. *Med Oncol* 2014; **31**: 943 [PMID: 24696219 DOI: 10.1007/s12032-014-0943-2]
  - 105 **Underwood JM**, Rim SH, Fairley TL, Tai E, Stewart SL. Cervical cancer survivors at increased risk of subsequent tobacco-related malignancies, United States 1992-2008. *Cancer Causes Control* 2012; **23**: 1009-1016 [PMID: 22588679 DOI: 10.1007/s10552-012-9957-2]
  - 106 NIH Surveillance Research Program. SEER Stat Fact Sheets - Cancer of the Vulva. [accessed 2015 May 31]. Available from: URL: <http://seer.cancer.gov/statfacts/html/vulva.html>
  - 107 **Joura EA**, Lösch A, Haider-Angeler MG, Breitenacker G, Leodolter S. Trends in vulvar neoplasia. Increasing incidence of vulvar intraepithelial neoplasia and squamous cell carcinoma of the vulva in young women. *J Reprod Med* 2000; **45**: 613-615 [PMID: 10986677]
  - 108 **Aerts L**, Enzlin P, Vergote I, Verhaeghe J, Poppe W, Amant F. Sexual, psychological, and relational functioning in women after surgical treatment for vulvar malignancy: a literature review. *J Sex Med* 2012; **9**: 361-371 [PMID: 22082135 DOI: 10.1111/j.1743-6109.2011.02520.x]
  - 109 **Günther V**, Malchow B, Schubert M, Andresen L, Jochens A, Jonat W, Mundhenke C, Alkatout I. Impact of radical operative treatment on the quality of life in women with vulvar cancer—a retrospective study. *Eur J Surg Oncol* 2014; **40**: 875-882 [PMID: 24746935 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejso.2014.03.027]
  - 110 **Kunos C**, Simpkins F, Gibbons H, Tian C, Homesley H. Radiation therapy compared with pelvic node resection for node-positive vulvar

- cancer: a randomized controlled trial. *Obstet Gynecol* 2009; **114**: 537-546 [PMID: 19701032 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e3181b12f99]
- 111 **Berger J**, Scott E, Sukumvanich P, Smith A, Olawaiye A, Comerci J, Kelley JL, Beriwal S, Huang M. The effect of groin treatment modality and sequence on clinically significant chronic lymphedema in patients with vulvar carcinoma. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2015; **25**: 119-124 [PMID: 25415076 DOI: 10.1097/IGC.0000000000000311]
- 112 **McCann GA**, Cohn DE, Jewell EL, Havrilesky LJ. Lymphatic mapping and sentinel lymph node dissection compared to complete lymphadenectomy in the management of early-stage vulvar cancer: A cost-utility analysis. *Gynecol Oncol* 2015; **136**: 300-304 [PMID: 25478927 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2014.11.079]

**P- Reviewer:** Kwon JS

**S- Editor:** Ji FF **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Jiao XK



## Cancer stem cells and early stage basal-like breast cancer

Pang-Kuo Lo, Benjamin Wolfson, Qun Zhou

Pang-Kuo Lo, Benjamin Wolfson, Qun Zhou, Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD 21201, United States

**Author contributions:** Lo PK wrote the manuscript; Wolfson B reviewed and edited the manuscript; Zhou Q designed the aim of the review and reviewed the manuscript.

**Supported by** The National Cancer Institute (NCI) of National Institutes of Health (NIH) of the United States of America to Zhou Q, Nos. 5R01CA157779-03 and 5R01CA163820-04.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** Authors declare no conflict of interests for this article.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Qun Zhou, MD, PhD, Associate Professor, Department of Biochemistry and Molecular Biology, University of Maryland School of Medicine, 108 North Greene Street, Baltimore, MD 21201, United States. [qzhou@som.umaryland.edu](mailto:qzhou@som.umaryland.edu)  
Telephone: +1-410-7061615  
Fax: +1-410-7068297

Received: June 28, 2015

Peer-review started: July 11, 2015

First decision: September 17, 2015

Revised: January 13, 2016

Accepted: January 21, 2016

Article in press: January 22, 2016

Published online: May 10, 2016

intraductal proliferation of malignant breast epithelial cells. DCIS is a heterogeneous disease composed of multiple molecular subtypes including luminal, HER2 and basal-like types, which are characterized by immunohistochemical analyses and gene expression profiling. Following surgical and radiation therapies, patients with luminal-type, estrogen receptor-positive DCIS breast tumors can benefit from adjuvant endocrine-based treatment. However, there are no available targeted therapies for patients with basal-like DCIS (BL-DCIS) tumors due to their frequent lack of endocrine receptors and HER2 amplification, rendering them potentially susceptible to recurrence. Moreover, multiple lines of evidence suggest that DCIS is a non-obligate precursor of invasive breast carcinoma. This raises the possibility that targeting precursor BL-DCIS is a promising strategy to prevent BL-DCIS patients from the development of invasive basal-like breast cancer. An accumulating body of evidence demonstrates the existence of cancer stem-like cells (CSCs) in BL-DCIS, which potentially determine the features of BL-DCIS and their ability to progress into invasive cancer. This review encompasses the current knowledge in regard to the characteristics of BL-DCIS, identification of CSCs, and their biological properties in BL-DCIS. We summarize recently discovered relevant molecular signaling alterations that promote the generation of CSCs in BL-DCIS and the progression of BL-DCIS to invasive breast cancer, as well as the influence of the tissue microenvironment on CSCs and the invasive transition. Finally, we discuss the translational implications of these findings for the prognosis and prevention of BL-DCIS relapse and progression.

**Key words:** Ductal carcinoma *in situ*; Invasive ductal carcinoma; Basal-like ductal carcinoma *in situ*; Basal-like invasive ductal carcinoma; Cancer stem cells

© The Author(s) 2016. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

### Abstract

Ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS) is a category of early stage, non-invasive breast tumor defined by the

**Core tip:** Basal-like ductal carcinoma *in situ* (BL-DCIS) often lacks endocrine receptors and has a high rate of recurrence due to no available targeted therapies. BL-

DCIS is a precursor of invasive basal-like breast carcinoma, a malignant cancer prone to metastasis and drug-resistance. Therefore, targeting BL-DCIS to prevent transition into invasive cancer is of significant interest. The recent identification and characterization of cancer stem-like cells in BL-DCIS advance the understanding of BL-DCIS and their potential role in driving the progression of BL-DCIS to invasive basal-like breast cancer. These findings provide critical implications for the development of therapies that prevent the progression of BL-DCIS.

Lo PK, Wolfson B, Zhou Q. Cancer stem cells and early stage basal-like breast cancer. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(2): 150-161 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i2/150.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i2.150>

## INTRODUCTION

Breast cancer has been recognized as a complex, heterogeneous disease, encompassing multiple cell populations with different risk factors, histological features, clinical behaviors and responses to therapy<sup>[1-3]</sup>. While breast cancer diagnosis was initially based on tumor size, histological classification systems were later developed to categorize breast tumors into subgroups. Primary breast carcinomas are first classified as either *in situ* or invasive tumors. Ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS) of the breast is an early stage, non-invasive breast tumor commonly diagnosed by mammography screening. DCIS accounts for 15%-20% of all newly diagnosed breast cancer cases, and is characterized by the intraductal proliferation of malignant epithelial cells without invasion through the basement membrane into the surrounding tissue<sup>[4]</sup>. In contrast, invasive breast carcinoma is able to invade through the basement membrane into the surrounding stroma. Invasive breast carcinomas have been extensively studied and found to be composed of numerous heterogeneous histological subtypes<sup>[5]</sup>. Similar to invasive breast carcinoma, divergent histological types of DCIS lesions have been recognized, and various classification systems have been developed to characterize DCIS tumors<sup>[6]</sup>. Approximately 15%-30% of DCIS patients relapse within 10 years after surgical lumpectomy<sup>[7]</sup>, and it is of urgent clinical need to have an effective classification system to identify DCIS with a high-risk of tumor recurrence. Owing to subjective interpretation of lesion morphology by pathologists, inconsistency in DCIS classification cannot be avoided<sup>[8]</sup>. Histological classification of heterogeneous DCIS lesions is not sufficient to identify molecularly heterogeneous DCIS subgroups, and additional classification approaches are necessary for the pathological characterization of DCIS and identification of more effective therapeutic options.

Gene expression profiling has emerged as a useful system for breast cancer classification<sup>[9-11]</sup>, and has

been used to define five intrinsic molecular subtypes of invasive breast carcinoma: Luminal A, luminal B, HER2-enriched, normal- and basal-like<sup>[9,10]</sup>. Following this discovery, additional subgroups of breast cancer were identified, including the interferon-enriched<sup>[12]</sup>, molecular apocrine<sup>[13]</sup> and claudin-low subgroups<sup>[14]</sup>. Given that these subtypes possess different molecular alterations, they display distinct clinical outcomes and therapeutic responses. The basal-like subtype is highly aggressive and therefore of particular clinical relevance. Basal-like breast cancers are more likely to occur in younger, African American women, and are associated with breast cancer susceptibility (*BRCA*) gene mutations. They are characterized by high tumor grade, proliferation rate, frequency of recurrence, and the presence of *p53* mutations. Patients with basal-like breast cancers frequently have poor prognosis, and are difficult to treat due to the lack of effective targeted therapies<sup>[10,11,15]</sup>. Breast tumors categorized as basal-like display gene expression signatures similar to normal basal/myoepithelial breast cells (myofibroblast-like breast epithelial cells located between breast ductal epithelial cells and the basement membrane), including high-molecular weight basal cytokeratins (CK5/6, CK14 and CK17)<sup>[16]</sup>.

The majority of diagnosed basal-like breast cancer cases are triple-negative breast cancers (TNBC), which lack expression of hormone receptors [estrogen receptor (ER) and progesterone receptor (PR)] and overexpression/amplification of HER2<sup>[9,10,15]</sup>. Although there is significant overlap between basal-like breast cancers and TNBC, they are not identical. Approximately 70%-80% of basal-like breast cancers have been identified as triple-negative, basal-like breast cancer (TN-BLBC)<sup>[15,17,18]</sup>. The remaining non-triple-negative basal-like breast cancers share similar gene expression profiles with TN-BLBC, but might have gained additional genetic and/or epigenetic aberrations due to increased genomic instability<sup>[17,18]</sup>. Using gene expression profiling analysis, Lehmann *et al.*<sup>[19]</sup> identified six distinct molecular subtypes of TNBC: Two basal-like (BL1 and BL2), immunomodulatory (IM), mesenchymal (M), mesenchymal stem-like and luminal androgen receptor (LAR). Among these TNBC molecular subtypes, BL1, BL2, IM and M are predominantly basal-like<sup>[20]</sup>. This sub-classification of TNBC is clinically relevant due to the differential clinical outcome and chemotherapeutic response of each TNBC subtype<sup>[20,21]</sup>. Two lines of evidence indicate that distinct molecular subtypes of TNBC manifest differential responses to immunoeediting, the process by which tumor cells escape the anti-tumor effect of immunosurveillance<sup>[22,23]</sup>. Similar to Lehmann's sub-classification of TNBC, Burstein *et al.*<sup>[22]</sup> utilized RNA and DNA profiling analysis to define TNBC subtypes as: (1) LAR; (2) mesenchymal (MES); (3) basal-like immunosuppressed (BLIS); and (4) basal-like immune-activated (BLIA). BLIS tumors have the worst prognosis and BLIA tumors manifest the best<sup>[22]</sup>, in part due to the ability of the immune system to target them. Similarly,



Jézéquel *et al.*<sup>[23]</sup> sub-classified TNBC into three different subtypes *via* gene-expression profiles, including the C1 subtype (LAR, 22%), the C2 subtype (basal-like with a low immune response and high M2-like macrophages, 45%) and the C3 subtype (basal-enriched with a high immune response and low M2-like macrophages, 33%). They also found that basal-enriched C3 with a high immune response had a better prognosis than basal-like C2 with a low immune response<sup>[23]</sup>. While the molecular mechanisms leading to immune tolerance are not fully understood, two lines of study indicate that inactivation of tumor suppressor p53 and activation of CUL4A E3 ubiquitin ligase are involved in failure of tumor immunosurveillance<sup>[24,25]</sup>.

TN/BLBC are more sensitive to preoperative or neoadjuvant chemotherapy than luminal breast cancers. Current therapeutic options for TN/BLBC include cytotoxic (*e.g.*, combined treatment with anthracyclines or taxanes) and targeted (*e.g.*, PARP1 and EGFR inhibition) therapies<sup>[20,21,26]</sup>. Although cytotoxic therapeutics achieves good tumor regression rates in the neo-adjuvant setting, patients experience frequent recurrence in five years after treatment<sup>[26,27]</sup>. Targeted therapies have also encountered discrepancies in trial results and issues with resistance<sup>[26,27]</sup>. TN/BL drug resistance potentially involves several mechanisms including intrinsic therapy resistance by a minor cell population in tumors, therapy-induced senescence and polyploidy in tumor cells, acquired therapeutic resistance *via* upregulation of drug efflux transporters, and acquired resistance *via* genetic reversion<sup>[28]</sup>. It is well accepted that tumor-initiating cells [generally called cancer stem cells (CSCs), discussed in the following paragraph] have high intrinsic drug-resistance, and may lead to relapse<sup>[28]</sup>. In regard to cell-cycle-related mechanisms, Puig *et al.*<sup>[29]</sup> reported that cisplatin treatment induced senescent giant polyploid cells *via* DNA endoreduplication. These giant, multi-nucleated cells were able to generate small-sized, diploid cells that started to proliferate and were increasingly cisplatin-resistant<sup>[29]</sup>. These findings suggest that the multistep drug-resistant progression in which cells undergo DNA endoreduplication, polyploidization, depolyploidization and then generation of clonogenic escape cells, can account for tumor relapse after initial efficient chemotherapy<sup>[29]</sup>. Another common mechanism of drug resistance in cancer is the upregulation of ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporter family proteins, which increases the efflux of chemotherapeutic drugs<sup>[28]</sup>. Besides these mechanisms, genetic alterations to restore the function of DNA repair proteins (*e.g.*, BRCA1, BRCA2, FANCA, *etc.*) have been identified as a novel drug-resistant mechanism in DNA-repair-deficient cancers, which are initially sensitive to DNA-damaging agents (*e.g.*, cisplatin) and to PARP inhibitors<sup>[28]</sup>. In addition to these general resistance mechanisms, dysregulation of signal pathway regulators in basal-like breast cancers have recently been identified to be responsible for resistance to neoadjuvant chemotherapy

and PARP inhibitor treatment. For example, basal-like breast cancers have low expression of dual specificity protein phosphatase 4 (DUSP4), which negatively regulates the Ras-ERK pathway, due to hypermethylation of the DUSP4 promoter. This results in activation of the Ras-ERK pathway and resistance to neoadjuvant chemotherapy<sup>[30]</sup>. Furthermore, over-expression of p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase in basal-like breast cancers enabled cancer cells to be resistant to the treatment of PARP inhibitors<sup>[31]</sup>. These results show the promise of increased molecular and functional characterization of TNBC subtypes. While the development of therapeutics to effectively treat TNBC still faces tremendous challenges, molecular targeting of TNBC based on molecular subtypes is a promising therapeutic strategy.

A conceptual model has been proposed that describes the developmental process of breast cancer as the progression of atypical hyperplasia into carcinoma *in situ* and finally to invasive carcinoma<sup>[32]</sup>. To better understand the relationship between DCIS and invasive breast carcinoma in breast cancer progression and to molecularly classify DCIS lesions, immunohistochemical and gene expression profiling analyses were used to define DCIS subtypes. The molecular subtypes of invasive breast cancer are also present at the DCIS stage, although their frequencies are varied between these two distinct breast cancer stages<sup>[33-35]</sup>. Furthermore, genetic studies of DCIS and invasive breast carcinoma have demonstrated that they have remarkable similarity in their genetic profiles when matched by histological grade and hormone receptor status<sup>[3,36-38]</sup>. These findings strongly support the theory that DCIS is a non-obligate precursor of invasive breast cancer. The distinct tumor subtypes may be generated from different cells of origin, by distinct tumor progression pathways, or a combination of both events. The ability of DCIS to progress to invasive disease is a complex biological phenomenon and depends on multiple factors, including genetic/epigenetic aberrations, genomic instability and the stromal microenvironment<sup>[3,32]</sup>.

As poorly differentiated invasive ductal carcinomas (IDC), basal-like breast tumors presumably have a DCIS precursor with similar cytologic and immunophenotypic features. Several studies reported that the use of both gene expression profiling and immunohistochemical analysis of basal-specific protein markers identified DCIS tumors with molecular features of basal-like invasive breast cancer<sup>[33,39-43]</sup>. These basal-like DCIS (BL-DCIS) tumors are presumed to be precursors for basal-like IDC (BL-IDC)<sup>[39,44]</sup>. Identification of BL-DCIS sheds light on the possibility of preventing progression to malignant basal-like breast cancer through the therapeutic targeting of precursor DCIS lesions. This review summarizes the recent investigation of BL-DCIS characteristics and the potential precursor relationship between BL-DCIS and invasive basal-like breast carcinoma.

CSCs have been identified in many types of cancer

including breast cancer, and have significantly changed the strategy of cancer therapy. CSCs are a small tumor cell subpopulation that can be identified by several methods including fluorescence-activated cell sorting (FACS) analysis of stem/progenitor-cell-specific surface protein markers, aldehyde dehydrogenase (ALDH) activity assays, and FACS analysis of the "side population" indicated by Hoechst dye exclusion. CSCs have the unique ability to self-renew and to differentiate into heterogeneous tumor cell lineages *in vitro* and *in vivo*<sup>[45-48]</sup>. CSCs possess higher tumorigenic ability than non-CSCs, which can be measured by *in vivo* xenograft tumor formation assays involving the injection of enriched CSC fractions to immunodeficient mice<sup>[45-48]</sup>. Similar to normal stem cells, CSCs manifest stem-cell-specific gene expression signatures and can undergo symmetric as well as asymmetric cell division<sup>[45-48]</sup>. CSCs also exhibit high levels of drug resistance. Under the stress of chemotherapy they can become quiescent and resistant to drugs that target proliferating cells<sup>[49,50]</sup>. In addition, CSCs generally express high levels of multi-drug resistant ABC transporters and pump out anti-cancer drugs at high rates<sup>[51]</sup>. The stem-like characteristics of CSCs are due to dysregulation of stemness signaling pathways, such as the Notch, hedgehog, Wnt, TGF- $\beta$  and pluripotent transcription factor (e.g., SOX2, OCT4, KLF4, etc.) pathways<sup>[52,53]</sup>. Moreover, CSCs possess similar characteristics to cells that have undergone epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition (EMT), allowing CSCs to survive in circulation and contribute to the metastasis of invasive cancers<sup>[54,55]</sup>. Due to these traits, CSCs are believed to be necessary for tumor heterogeneity, relapse, metastasis, and drug resistance. Breast CSCs were first identified in primary breast carcinomas using the markers CD44<sup>+</sup>/CD24<sup>-</sup><sup>[56]</sup>. This minor tumor cell subset can self-renew to form tumorspheres in *in vitro* suspension culture conditions, and exhibit stem-cell gene expression patterns<sup>[56]</sup>. Isolated CD44<sup>+</sup>/CD24<sup>-</sup> cells have a higher capacity to initiate *in vivo* xenograft mammary tumors compared with other cell subsets and can differentiate into heterogeneous breast tumor cell lineages<sup>[56]</sup>. Furthermore, breast CSCs display a drug-resistant phenotype, and are able to better tolerate anti-cancer drug treatment than non-CSCs<sup>[57,58]</sup>. Enrichment of CSCs in breast cancer correlates with tumor aggressiveness, likely due to the characteristics described above. Among the molecularly-classified breast cancer subtypes, basal-like breast carcinomas tend to possess the highest proportion of CSCs compared with other subtypes, consistent with their heterogeneity and aggressiveness<sup>[59,60]</sup>. CSCs in basal-like breast cancer have emerged as a key target for cancer therapy.

These discoveries have prompted cancer researchers to investigate the existence of CSCs and their characteristics in BL-DCIS<sup>[61,62]</sup>. Studies employing *in vitro* cell line and *in vivo* xenograft tumor models have significantly propelled the understanding of CSC characteristics and their role in BL-DCIS. They also give

new insights into the aberrant molecular mechanisms involved in regulating CSC formation in BL-DCIS and the BL-DCIS-to-IDC transition. This article will review recent advances in these topics and their translational implications to the prognosis and prevention of BL-DCIS progression to invasive basal-like breast cancer.

## EXISTENCE AND FEATURES OF BASAL-LIKE-DCIS

Due to the lack of effective targeted therapies, invasive basal-like breast cancers have poor prognosis. This has prompted cancer researchers to investigate the existence of precursor DCIS lesions that can potentially develop into BL-IDC. If precursor DCIS lesions with the potential to develop into BL-IDC are identified, patients with these lesions can be treated earlier with more aggressive therapies to prevent tumor progression and recurrence. Precursor DCIS lesions are presumed to have cytologic and immunophenotypic features similar to BL-IDC. By characterizing protein markers such as ER, PR, HER2, basal cytokeratins (e.g., CK5/6, CK14, and CK17), EGFR, c-kit and p63, about 6%-8% of DCIS cases were identified to be TN/BLBC<sup>[39-41,43]</sup>. In addition to immunohistochemical surrogates, Hannemann *et al.*<sup>[33]</sup> performed microarray-based gene expression profiling to analyze and classify 40 *in situ* and 40 invasive breast cancer cases. Their two-dimensional hierarchical clustering analysis of microarray data showed that the luminal, HER2 and basal-like subtypes originally described in invasive breast cancer could also be identified in DCIS. A population-based cohort has shown that patients with BL-DCIS have a higher risk for local recurrence and development into invasive cancer compared with other molecular subtypes<sup>[63]</sup>, demonstrating the need for further molecular characterization. The BL-DCIS subtype is associated with unfavorable prognostic variables such as high-grade nuclei, mutant p53 overexpression and elevated Ki-67 index<sup>[42]</sup>. In addition, through RNA deep sequencing analysis, Abba *et al.*<sup>[64]</sup> subdivided high-grade DCIS into two subtypes, DCIS-C1 and DCIS-C2. The more aggressive DCIS-C1 (highly proliferative, basal-like, or ERBB2<sup>+</sup>) had a molecular signature characteristic of activated regulatory T (Treg) cells (CD4<sup>+</sup>/CD25<sup>+</sup>/FOXP3<sup>+</sup>) and CTLA4<sup>+</sup>/CD86<sup>+</sup> complexes, indicative of a tumor-associated immunosuppressive phenotype<sup>[64]</sup>. This is the first evidence identifying mechanisms of immune evasion in BL-DCIS. Recently BL-DCIS tumors have also been associated with cell cycle-related biomarkers<sup>[65,66]</sup>. Over 80% of BL-DCIS cases were p16-positive, whereas over 90% of DCIS cases with the luminal A phenotype were p16-negative<sup>[66]</sup>. In addition to p16 expression, co-expression signatures of p16<sup>+</sup>/Ki67<sup>+</sup>/COX2<sup>+</sup> and p16<sup>+</sup>/Ki67<sup>+</sup>/COX2<sup>-</sup> were also found to be associated with the basal phenotype in DCIS and IDC<sup>[66]</sup>. These cell-cycle related profiles could be exploited to guide more aggressive treatment

strategies in patients with high-grade DCIS. According to studies by Tamimi *et al.*<sup>[42]</sup>, the frequency (7.7%) of BL-DCIS in diagnosed DCIS cases is slightly lower than that (10.7%) of BL-IDC in diagnosed invasive breast cancer cases. One plausible explanation for the slightly higher frequency of basal-like expression in high-grade invasive *vs in situ* tumors is either that BL-DCIS lesions rapidly progress, leading to the lower identifiable frequency, or that the basal-like phenotype is acquired during invasive progression. Studies investigating the precursor potential of comedo-DCIS tumors (comedo-DCIS), a type of high-risk *in situ* breast lesions, identified a novel p63/CK5/Her2/neu-expressing cell subpopulation with ER-/PgR-/EGFR-<sup>[67]</sup>. Given that p63 alone and p63/Her2/neu co-expression are both associated with microinvasion and the recurrence of clinical comedo-DCIS, the p63/Her2/neu-expressing precursor intermediate is considered a cellular basis for the emergence of p63<sup>+</sup>/Her2/neu<sup>-</sup> or p63<sup>+</sup>/Her2/neu<sup>+</sup> basal-like breast cancer, and thus may serve as a biomarker for identifying the BL-DCIS subgroup<sup>[67]</sup>.

## CSCS AND BASAL-LIKE-DCIS

### Evidence of CSCs existing in DCIS

It has been proposed that CSCs are responsible for generating tumor heterogeneity and the malignant progression of cancer. To validate this hypothesis within breast cancer and investigate the mechanisms of the DCIS to IDC transition, researchers are seeking to identify the existence of CSCs in DCIS and characterize their cell properties. To study the heterogeneous tumorigenicity of cancer cells, Damonte *et al.*<sup>[68]</sup> generated mammary intraepithelial neoplasia (MIN) outgrowth lines. Derived from premalignant atypical lesions from PyV-mT transgenic mice, the MIN outgrowth lines are able to grow orthotopically in cleared mammary fat pads, and form a mammary tumor structure similar to human DCIS.

The 6 MIN lines generated demonstrated a varied ability to progress to invasive carcinoma with pulmonary metastatic potential *via* serial transplantation<sup>[68]</sup>, establishing the paradigm that pre-CSCs in DCIS are capable of self-renewal, multilineage differentiation, and serve as the origin of invasive cancer. Notably, their studies indicate that sequential genetic hits for malignant transformation are not required for this DCIS model to progress to invasive and metastatic mammary carcinoma, and the programmed potential for latency and metastasis might be predetermined in these pre-CSCs<sup>[68]</sup>. Moreover, Espina *et al.*<sup>[69]</sup> studied *ex vivo* organoid culture of fresh human DCIS lesions without enzymatic digestion or sorting, and found that DCIS contains malignant precursor cells that were able to form spheroids and a duct-like 3D structure in *ex vivo* organoid culture and to exhibit tumorigenicity in NOD/SCID mice<sup>[69]</sup>.

### Evidence for the presence of CSCs in BL-DCIS

The two lines of evidence mentioned above raised the possible existence of tumorigenic CSCs in BL-DCIS, which may determine the phenotypes of BL-DCIS and the capability of BL-DCIS to progress into invasive cancer. To confirm this, our research group characterized the BL-DCIS cell model MCF10DCIS.COM, which is derived from the non-cancerous breast epithelial cell line MCF10A. This BL-DCIS-mimic cell model has a unique bipotent progenitor ability, and is able to generate both myoepithelial and luminal-type cells *in vivo*, giving rise to BL-DCIS with high similarities to human DCIS lesions<sup>[70-76]</sup>. In addition to the formation of DCIS-like tumor structures *in vivo*, these tumor lesions are able to spontaneously progress to invasive breast cancer<sup>[74,76]</sup>. In our studies of MCF10DCIS.COM, we identified a CSC population with enriched ALDH1<sup>+</sup> and the molecular signature CD44<sup>+</sup>/CD49f<sup>+</sup>/CD24<sup>-</sup><sup>[62]</sup>. Compared with the non-stem-like cell subset, these stem-like cells possessed enhanced migration, invasion and self-renewal capacity, and accelerated xenograft tumor growth in nude mice<sup>[62]</sup>. Pandey *et al.*<sup>[61]</sup> have also identified CSCs in the MCF10DCIS.COM cell line using similar cell surface markers (CD44<sup>+</sup>/ESA<sup>+</sup>/CD24<sup>-</sup>). In line with our result, CSCs isolated using this profile showed significantly higher DCIS tumor-initiating ability compared with non-stem-like cells<sup>[61]</sup>. The existence of CSCs in BL-DCIS raises the possibility that this CSC population serves as a malignant precursor necessary for the progression of BL-DCIS to BL-IDC.

## DEREGULATED FACTORS INVOLVED IN THE GENERATION OF CSCS AND THE BL-DCIS-TO-BL-IDC TRANSITION

A challenging question in the breast cancer research field is how precursor DCIS lesions progress to invasive breast carcinomas. Attempts to address this critical question are hampered by the complexity of heterogeneous DCIS lesions. To overcome this barrier, the aforementioned MCF10DCIS.COM cell line has been extensively exploited as a unique model to study DCIS and explore molecular mechanisms involved in regulating the progression of DCIS to IDC. As MCF10DCIS.COM belongs to the BL-DCIS subtype, we review recent findings of deregulated factors implicated in the generation of basal CSCs in this cell model, and in enhancing malignancies as well as invasive progression of this BL-DCIS model *in vivo*. Further characterization of dysregulated signaling pathways involved in CSCs would advance insights into how BL-DCIS tumors progress to invasive cancer and propel the development of effective therapeutics to prevent this malignant progression.

### The role of miR-140

MicroRNAs (miRNAs) are short non-coding RNA

molecules with a length of approximately 22 nucleotides that bind to the 3'-untranslated region of messenger RNAs and regulate mRNA stability and/or translation. miRNAs have been extensively investigated in cancer and other diseases, and regulate a variety of physiological and pathological processes at the post-transcriptional level. Although numerous miRNAs have been found to be involved in regulating CSCs in breast cancer<sup>[77]</sup>, the miRNAs participating in basal CSC regulation and the tumorigenic development of BL-DCIS remain largely unknown. Through miRNA profiling of paired DCIS tumors, we identified downregulation of miR-140 as a hallmark of BL-DCIS lesions<sup>[78]</sup>. Our studies have shown that miR-140 is a tumor-suppressive miRNA which targets the stem-cell related factor SOX9 for degradation in normal breast epithelial cells<sup>[78]</sup>. The degree of miR-140 downregulation positively correlates with the increased expression of SOX9 and the grade of DCIS lesions, implicating the critical role of the miR-140/SOX9 axis in the progression of DCIS<sup>[78]</sup>. Our studies also revealed that miR-140 was downregulated in cancer stem-like CD44<sup>+</sup>/CD24<sup>-</sup> cells isolated from MCF10DCIS.COM cells compared with normal breast stem cells isolated from MCF10A cells<sup>[78]</sup>. Moreover, restoration of miR-140 expression in MCF10DCIS.COM cells suppressed CSC self-renewal, invasion and *in vivo* tumorigenicity<sup>[78]</sup>. This suggests that the miR-140/SOX9 regulatory circuit is pivotal for the self-renewal and invasive capacity of basal CSC and their tumor formation *in vivo*, and is a potential therapeutic target.

#### **The role of the nuclear receptor coactivator amplified in breast cancer 1**

Ory *et al.*<sup>[79]</sup> found that expression of nuclear receptor coactivator amplified in breast cancer 1 (AIB1) was aberrantly upregulated in DCIS lesions compared with normal breast.

AIB1 activates NOTCH, HER2 and HER3 signaling pathways in MCF10DCIS.COM cells, and is required for the malignant phenotype of MCF10DCIS.COM in 3D culture and *in vivo* tumor formation and progression<sup>[79]</sup>. Critically, AIB1 inhibition led to a significant reduction in the CD44<sup>+</sup>/CD24<sup>-</sup> CSC population and also resulted in decreased myoepithelial progenitor cells in DCIS lesions *in vitro* and *in vivo*<sup>[79]</sup>. These data indicate that activation of AIB1 is an aberrant mechanism that initiates and maintains DCIS *in vivo* by facilitating the development as well as maintenance of basal CSCs. It is likely that aberrantly activated AIB1 assists other deregulated factors to promote the transition of BL-DCIS to BL-IDC.

#### **The role of the p63-membrane-type 1-matrix metalloproteinase axis**

A critical step in the progression from DCIS to the invasive lesion is the crossing of the basement membrane and invasion into the stroma. This is achieved through degradation of extracellular matrix (ECM) proteins in the basement membrane by membrane-anchored matrix

metalloproteinases (MMPs), including membrane-type 1 (MT1)-MMP<sup>[80]</sup>. MT1-MMP has been shown to be involved in invasive tumor growth and metastasis in several experimental cancer models<sup>[81-84]</sup>. Lodillinsky *et al.*<sup>[85]</sup> analyzed expression of MT1-MMP in a large cohort of DCIS, IDC and microinvasive breast tumors, and found that MT1-MMP was significantly upregulated in the DCIS to IDC transition, and correlated with higher grade and hormone receptor-negative tumors. Functional analysis showed that silencing of MT1-MMP in MCF10DCIS.COM cells impaired the ability of this DCIS tumor model to progress into infiltrating lesions *in vivo*<sup>[85]</sup>. Additionally, Lodillinsky *et al.*<sup>[85]</sup> identified p63 as an upstream positive regulator that increases MT1-MMP expression in DCIS, and is required for activating the basement membrane-invasive program of DCIS. Their findings suggest that aberrant activation of the p63/MT1-MMP axis in DCIS may contribute to the progression of DCIS to high-grade basal-like breast cancers. Although their studies did not address the role of the p63/MT1-MMP axis in MCF10DCIS.COM CSCs, p63 is a well-known basal-associated molecular marker, and has been recently found to be elevated in CSCs of HER2-type breast cancer and essential for their self-renewal as well as tumorigenicity<sup>[86]</sup>. Therefore, their results imply that aberrant activation of the p63/MT1-MMP axis in basal CSCs is a potential mechanism to trigger the progression of BL-DCIS to BL-IDC.

#### **The role of Single-minded-2s**

Recent work has demonstrated that the basic helix-loop-helix/PER-ARNT-SIM (bHLH/PAS) transcription factor Single-minded-2s (SIM2s) is critical for normal mammary gland development and promoting tumor cell differentiation<sup>[87]</sup>. SIM2s is inhibited by C/EBP $\beta$  and NOTCH, important promoters of EMT and cell differentiation. Loss of SIM2s enhances EMT in the mouse mammary gland, normal breast and breast cancer cell lines. Moreover, SIM2s is frequently downregulated in human breast cancer. When SIM2s expression was restored in human breast cancer cell lines, their proliferation and invasion were suppressed. These results suggest that SIM2s is a tumor suppressor gene that is crucial for maintaining epithelial integrity through inhibiting the EMT program and promoting cell differentiation. To address the role of SIM2s in the transition of DCIS-to-IDC, Scribner *et al.*<sup>[87]</sup> analyzed SIM2s expression in MCF10DCIS.COM and found that it is downregulated in this DCIS cell model when compared with non-cancerous MCF10A cells. Moreover, their functional studies showed that reestablishment of SIM2s in MCF10DCIS.COM cells significantly impaired their growth and invasion both *in vitro* and *in vivo* by promoting tumor cell differentiation. This is characterized by increased expression of luminal markers, including  $\beta$ -casein, E-cadherin, keratin 18, and decreased expression of genes associated with stem cell maintenance and a basal/EMT phenotype, including smoothened, p63, Snail-2, keratin 14 and vimentin<sup>[87]</sup>.



In contrast, abrogation of SIM2s in MCF10DCIS.COM-derived xenograft tumors led to a more invasive phenotype and increased lung metastasis, correlating with the elevated expression of Hedgehog signaling and MMP<sup>[87]</sup>. From our and other studies indicating that basal CSCs are the origin of the tumorigenic and invasive characteristics of MCF10DCIS.COM cells<sup>[61,62,79]</sup>, it is likely that decreased expression of SIM2s promotes the development of basal CSCs in BL-DCIS and further reduction in its expression activates invasive features of CSCs to facilitate the invasive progression of BL-DCIS into invasive breast carcinoma.

### **The role of lipogenesis**

Cancer cells have altered metabolisms in comparison to normal cells<sup>[88]</sup>, and upregulation of lipogenic genes and increased lipogenesis are hallmarks of late-stage breast cancer<sup>[89]</sup>. Inhibition of key lipogenic enzymes results in suppression of tumorigenicity both *in vitro* and *in vivo* by blocking proliferation and inducing apoptosis<sup>[90-93]</sup>. Although the role of increased lipogenesis in late-stage breast cancer has been extensively studied, its role in early-stage breast cancer DCIS still remains elusive. Moreover, whether lipogenesis is engaged in regulating CSCs of DCIS is an interesting yet unexplored question. To address the role of lipogenesis in DCIS CSCs, Pandey *et al.*<sup>[61]</sup> used the cell surface marker profile (CD44<sup>+</sup>/ESA<sup>+</sup>/CD24<sup>-</sup>) to isolate CSCs from the MCF10DCIS.COM cell line for expression analysis of lipogenic genes. Their studies showed that expression levels of all lipogenic genes tested in the CSC population were significantly higher than the normal stem-like counterpart population isolated from non-cancerous MCF10A cells. To further investigate the role of sterol regulatory element-binding protein-1 (SREBP1), the master transcriptional activator of lipogenic genes, in CSCs, SREBP1 was ectopically overexpressed in MCF10A stem-like cells. Overexpression of SREBP1 caused enhanced lipogenesis, cell growth and mammosphere formation<sup>[61]</sup>. When upregulated in MCF10AT, a MCF10A-derived, premalignant cell line, SREBP1 promoted DCIS generation *in vivo* by increasing CSC survival<sup>[61]</sup>. These findings indicate that activation of lipogenesis is a prerequisite for basal CSC generation and DCIS formation, and is important for endowing increased cell survival capacity.

## **THE IMPACTS OF THE TISSUE MICROENVIRONMENT ON CSCS OF BL-DCIS**

DCIS lesions are heterogeneous tumors encapsulated by the myoepithelium and basement membrane. When they progress to IDC, tumor cells cross the myoepithelial layer and basement membrane and invade into the stroma, comprised of stromal fibroblasts/preadipocytes, mature adipocytes, immune and endothelial cells. Therefore, these various tissue cells and the ECM that

composes the tumor microenvironment can regulate CSC self-renewal and differentiation, DCIS formation, progression into invasive lesions, and metastasis<sup>[94-98]</sup>. Understanding the impact of the tumor microenvironment on basal CSCs and BL-DCIS could potentially enable the design of more effective diagnosis and intervention strategies to improve the survival of cancer patients. There are two lines of recent studies indicating the critical impacts of the tissue microenvironment on the tumorigenesis of BL-DCIS and their transition to BL-IDC, exosomal signaling and ECM dependent signaling.

### **Exosomal signaling from the tumor microenvironment**

Exosomal secretion is a newly identified mechanism of paracrine signaling through which cells secrete exosomes, microvesicles with a diameter usually less than 100 nm, which can contain cargo proteins, nucleic acids and nutrients<sup>[99]</sup>. Secreted exosomes can transduce their carried contents into surrounding cells *via* the cell internalization mechanism mediated by the heparan sulfate proteoglycan receptors<sup>[99]</sup>. The known roles of exosomes in tumorigenesis are to restructure the tumor tissue microenvironment, modulate tumor immune responses and directly regulate tumor cell behaviors *via* their delivery of proteins and genetic materials. miRNAs have been found to be one kind of nucleic acids carried by secreted exosomes<sup>[99,100]</sup>. Given that miRNAs are regulatory factors that can modulate protein expression, exosomal trafficking of miRNAs has been recognized to be a microenvironmental signal that can affect signaling networks at the post-transcriptional level<sup>[100]</sup>. From BL-DCIS studies, we found that the miRNA content in exosomes secreted from CSCs of DCIS was altered compared to exosomes from normal stem-like breast cells<sup>[62]</sup>. Notably, CSC-secreted exosomes carried less miR-140, an aforementioned tumor-suppressive miRNA, than those secreted from normal stem-like cells, suggesting that the tumorigenic process alters exosomal contents<sup>[62]</sup>.

In addition to the role of exosomal trafficking in signaling among DCIS tumor cells, we recently found that exosomes secreted from preadipocytes, the precursors of mature adipocytes, could impact the stemness and tumorigenic properties of CSCs in BL-DCIS<sup>[101]</sup>. Preadipocyte-derived exosomes enhanced *in vitro* cell migration as well as self-renewal of BL-DCIS cells and facilitated the xenograft tumor formation of transplanted BL-DCIS cells *in vivo*<sup>[101]</sup>. The enhanced effect of preadipocyte-secreted exosomes on the tumorigenicity of BL-DCIS might be attributable to a number of growth-promoting cytokines identified within these exosomes<sup>[101]</sup>. Taken together, these findings demonstrate that exosomal signaling plays an important role in the tumor microenvironment.

### **ECM-dependent regulatory signaling**

High tumor heterogeneity correlates with poor prognosis due to its association with malignancies, recurrence, metastasis and anti-cancer drug resistance<sup>[102]</sup>. In-

tratumor heterogeneity could result from an intrinsic stochasticity in gene expression and from genetic and/or heritable epigenetic differences among tumor cells<sup>[103]</sup>. By studying the effect of ECM on an immortalized basal-like breast epithelial cell line, Wang *et al.*<sup>[104]</sup> identified the ECM-dependent TGFBR3 (transforming growth factor  $\beta$  receptor 3)-JUND (jun D proto-oncogene)-KRT5 (keratin 5) regulatory circuit that generates heterogeneous gene expression among ECM-attached breast cells. This circuit is composed of two anticorrelated gene expression programs that negatively regulate each other. TGFBR3 signaling downregulates JUND mRNA levels, whereas JUND represses both TGFBR3 and JUND mRNA levels<sup>[104]</sup>. Perturbing this regulatory circuit in breast epithelial cells could lead to the formation of aberrant tissue lesions similar to high-grade DCIS<sup>[104]</sup>. Their studies also indicate that the TGFBR3-JUND circuit is the molecular mechanism responsible for the heterogeneous expression of KRT5 in some basal-like premalignant lesions<sup>[104]</sup>. These findings suggest that heterogeneous KRT5 expression patterns present in high-grade basal-like DCIS lesions are likely due to loss of tissue-level regulation of gene oscillatory networks rather than genetic selection. Disrupting the dependence of this regulatory circuit on ECM results in detachment of breast epithelial cells from the ECM, in turn leading to cell death<sup>[104]</sup>. However, some cells survive through activation of a juxtacrine tenascin C (TNC) deposition mechanism. TNC is a critical survival factor for detached cells that would otherwise be subjected to keratinization-induced or anoikis-dependent cell death, and participates in stabilizing the heterogeneous JUND-KRT5 expression<sup>[102,104]</sup>. These results are in line with the previous finding that metastasizing breast cancer cells express TNC to elicit and/or maintain their metastasis-initiating characteristics<sup>[105]</sup>. Particularly, it has been shown that TNC is able to increase the expression of stem-cell signaling proteins, suggesting its role in modulating the CSC population<sup>[105]</sup>. Their findings demonstrate that this ECM-dependent regulatory circuit program can maintain normal tissue architecture and function in addition to preventing cell outgrowth and migration when it is properly regulated. However, when dysregulated (e.g., aberrant ECM signaling), this system enables cells to evade keratinization and anoikis, and allows them to metastasize.

## THE IMPLICATIONS OF CSCS IN PROGNOSIS AND PREVENTION OF EARLY STAGE BASAL-LIKE BREAST CANCER

The identification of CSCs in BL-DCIS opens a window for cancer researchers to explore how BL-DCIS initiate and progress into invasive basal-like breast cancer. In addition to promoting our understanding of the role of basal CSCs in BL-DCIS, these research

advances have tremendous translational implications for future prognostic and therapeutic applications. The dysregulated molecular factors which result in basal CSC generation could potentially be exploited as prognostic biomarkers for BL-DCIS. This would help identify and grade the probability of diagnosed DCIS developing into BL-IDC, and determine whether DCIS patients should be treated more aggressively. If this prognostic system can be established, it will substantially benefit patients with DCIS and lower their chances of basal-like invasive breast cancer recurrence. The therapeutic agents that can target these deregulated factors could be potentially exploited for targeted therapy of DCIS. This chemopreventive strategy would save breast cancer patients' lives, especially since there are currently no effective therapies to cure basal-like invasive breast cancer. Promising therapeutic agents have already been identified that are effective in targeting CSCs in BL-DCIS. The dietary compound sulforaphane (SFN) can restore miR-140 expression and downregulate the expression of miR-140 targets SOX9 and ALDH1, inhibiting the self-renewal of basal CSCs and DCIS formation *in vivo*<sup>[62]</sup>. Besides SFN, our studies of the chemopreventive agent Shikonin (SK), a bioactive compound found in the herbal plant shikon, showed that exosomes secreted from SK-treated preadipocytes lost the ability to promote BL-DCIS tumorigenicity both *in vitro* and *in vivo*. This is a novel chemopreventive mechanism for BL-DCIS, targeting the tumor microenvironment in place of the tumor itself<sup>[101]</sup>. Furthermore, a study from Watabe's research group shows that resveratrol, a therapeutic agent capable of blocking the lipogenic gene expression in basal CSCs, is able to significantly suppress DCIS formation in animals<sup>[61]</sup>. These exciting findings provide a strong rationale to propel the development of chemopreventive therapeutics for DCIS patients after surgical and radiological treatment.

## CONCLUSION

Although the research efforts to combat invasive basal-like breast cancer have provided tremendous insights into this breast cancer subtype, we still have not identified effective therapeutic agents and strategies to cure this disease. Therefore, identifying and targeting the precursor of aggressive breast cancer is a promising direction to prevent the occurrence of this disease. BL-DCIS is an early stage breast cancer with a high risk of recurrence, and targeting it may prevent cancer recurrence and progression to invasive disease. As summarized and discussed in this review, numerous signaling pathways and factors have been identified as dysregulated in basal CSCs of BL-DCIS. Moreover, several chemopreventive agents have been tested to target these deregulated mechanisms. These studies suggest targeting CSCs in BL-DCIS as a potential strategy to inhibit the tumorigenicity of BL-DCIS and prevent the progression of BL-DCIS into BL-

IDC. However it is critical to test the proof-of-principle of these chemopreventive strategies in clinical trials. Developing reliable BL-DCIS biomarkers will allow clinicians to design effective targeted therapies that can prevent the recurrence and progression of early stage basal-like breast cancers.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **Sotiriou C**, Pusztai L. Gene-expression signatures in breast cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 790-800 [PMID: 19228622 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra0801289]
- 2 **Weigelt B**, Reis-Filho JS. Histological and molecular types of breast cancer: is there a unifying taxonomy? *Nat Rev Clin Oncol* 2009; **6**: 718-730 [PMID: 19942925 DOI: 10.1038/nrclinonc.2009.166]
- 3 **Lopez-Garcia MA**, Geyer FC, Lacroix-Triki M, Marchio C, Reis-Filho JS. Breast cancer precursors revisited: molecular features and progression pathways. *Histopathology* 2010; **57**: 171-192 [PMID: 20500230 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2559.2010.03568.x]
- 4 **Burstein HJ**, Polyak K, Wong JS, Lester SC, Kaelin CM. Ductal carcinoma in situ of the breast. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **350**: 1430-1441 [PMID: 15070793 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra031301]
- 5 **Viale G**. The current state of breast cancer classification. *Ann Oncol* 2012; **23** Suppl 10: x207-x210 [PMID: 22987963 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mds326]
- 6 **Pinder SE**, Ellis IO. The diagnosis and management of pre-invasive breast disease: ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS) and atypical ductal hyperplasia (ADH)--current definitions and classification. *Breast Cancer Res* 2003; **5**: 254-257 [PMID: 12927035 DOI: 10.1186/bcr623]
- 7 **Fowble B**, Hanlon AL, Fein DA, Hoffman JP, Sigurdson ER, Patchefsky A, Kessler H. Results of conservative surgery and radiation for mammographically detected ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS). *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 1997; **38**: 949-957 [PMID: 9276359 DOI: 10.1016/S0360-3016(97)00153-3]
- 8 **Sneige N**, Lagios MD, Schwarting R, Colburn W, Atkinson E, Weber D, Sahin A, Kemp B, Hoque A, Risin S, Sabichi A, Boone C, Dhingra K, Kelloff G, Lippman S. Interobserver reproducibility of the Lagios nuclear grading system for ductal carcinoma in situ. *Hum Pathol* 1999; **30**: 257-262 [PMID: 10088542 DOI: 10.1016/S0046-8177(99)90002-3]
- 9 **Perou CM**, Sorlie T, Eisen MB, van de Rijn M, Jeffrey SS, Rees CA, Pollack JR, Ross DT, Johnsen H, Akslen LA, Fluge O, Pergamenschikov A, Williams C, Zhu SX, Lønning PE, Børresen-Dale AL, Brown PO, Botstein D. Molecular portraits of human breast tumours. *Nature* 2000; **406**: 747-752 [PMID: 10963602 DOI: 10.1038/35021093]
- 10 **Sorlie T**, Perou CM, Tibshirani R, Aas T, Geisler S, Johnsen H, Hastie T, Eisen MB, van de Rijn M, Jeffrey SS, Thorsen T, Quist H, Matese JC, Brown PO, Botstein D, Lønning PE, Børresen-Dale AL. Gene expression patterns of breast carcinomas distinguish tumor subclasses with clinical implications. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2001; **98**: 10869-10874 [PMID: 11553815 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.191367098]
- 11 **Sorlie T**, Tibshirani R, Parker J, Hastie T, Marron JS, Nobel A, Deng S, Johnsen H, Pesich R, Geisler S, Demeter J, Perou CM, Lønning PE, Brown PO, Børresen-Dale AL, Botstein D. Repeated observation of breast tumor subtypes in independent gene expression data sets. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 8418-8423 [PMID: 12829800 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0932692100]
- 12 **Hu Z**, Fan C, Oh DS, Marron JS, He X, Qaqish BF, Livasy C, Carey LA, Reynolds E, Dressler L, Nobel A, Parker J, Ewend MG, Sawyer LR, Wu J, Liu Y, Nanda R, Tretiakova M, Ruiz Orrico A, Dreher D, Palazzo JP, Perreard L, Nelson E, Mone M, Hansen H, Mullins M, Quackenbush JF, Ellis MJ, Olopade OI, Bernard PS, Perou CM. The molecular portraits of breast tumors are conserved across microarray platforms. *BMC Genomics* 2006; **7**: 96 [PMID: 16643655 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2164-7-96]
- 13 **Farmer P**, Bonnefoi H, Becette V, Tubiana-Hulin M, Fumoleau P, Larsimont D, Macgrogan G, Bergh J, Cameron D, Goldstein D, Duss S, Nicolaz AL, Brisken C, Fiche M, Delorenzi M, Iggo R. Identification of molecular apocrine breast tumours by microarray analysis. *Oncogene* 2005; **24**: 4660-4671 [PMID: 15897907 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1208561]
- 14 **Herschkovitz JI**, Simin K, Weigman VJ, Mikaelian I, Usary J, Hu Z, Rasmussen KE, Jones LP, Assefnia S, Chandrasekharan S, Backlund MG, Yin Y, Khramtsov AI, Bastein R, Quackenbush J, Glazer RI, Brown PH, Green JE, Kopelovich L, Furth PA, Palazzo JP, Olopade OI, Bernard PS, Churchill GA, Van Dyke T, Perou CM. Identification of conserved gene expression features between murine mammary carcinoma models and human breast tumors. *Genome Biol* 2007; **8**: R76 [PMID: 17493263 DOI: 10.1186/gb-2007-8-5-r76]
- 15 **Badve S**, Dabbs DJ, Schnitt SJ, Baehner FL, Decker T, Eusebi V, Fox SB, Ichihara S, Jacquemier J, Lakhani SR, Palacios J, Rakha EA, Richardson AL, Schmitt FC, Tan PH, Tse GM, Weigelt B, Ellis IO, Reis-Filho JS. Basal-like and triple-negative breast cancers: a critical review with an emphasis on the implications for pathologists and oncologists. *Mod Pathol* 2011; **24**: 157-167 [PMID: 21076464 DOI: 10.1038/modpathol.2010.200]
- 16 **Gusterson BA**, Ross DT, Heath VJ, Stein T. Basal cytokeratins and their relationship to the cellular origin and functional classification of breast cancer. *Breast Cancer Res* 2005; **7**: 143-148 [PMID: 15987465 DOI: 10.1186/bcr1041]
- 17 **Bertucci F**, Finetti P, Cervera N, Esterni B, Hermitte F, Viens P, Birnbaum D. How basal are triple-negative breast cancers? *Int J Cancer* 2008; **123**: 236-240 [PMID: 18398844 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.23518]
- 18 **Rakha EA**, Elsheikh SE, Aleskandarany MA, Habashi HO, Green AR, Powe DG, El-Sayed ME, Benhasouna A, Brunet JS, Akslen LA, Evans AJ, Blamey R, Reis-Filho JS, Foulkes WD, Ellis IO. Triple-negative breast cancer: distinguishing between basal and nonbasal subtypes. *Clin Cancer Res* 2009; **15**: 2302-2310 [PMID: 19318481 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432]
- 19 **Lehmann BD**, Bauer JA, Chen X, Sanders ME, Chakravarthy AB, Shyr Y, Pietenpol JA. Identification of human triple-negative breast cancer subtypes and preclinical models for selection of targeted therapies. *J Clin Invest* 2011; **121**: 2750-2767 [PMID: 21633166 DOI: 10.1172/JCI45014]
- 20 **Lehmann BD**, Pietenpol JA. Identification and use of biomarkers in treatment strategies for triple-negative breast cancer subtypes. *J Pathol* 2014; **232**: 142-150 [PMID: 24114677 DOI: 10.1002/path.4280]
- 21 **Abramson VG**, Lehmann BD, Ballinger TJ, Pietenpol JA. Subtyping of triple-negative breast cancer: implications for therapy. *Cancer* 2015; **121**: 8-16 [PMID: 25043972 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.28914]
- 22 **Burstein MD**, Tsimelzon A, Poage GM, Covington KR, Contreras A, Fuqua SA, Savage MI, Osborne CK, Hilsenbeck SG, Chang JC, Mills GB, Lau CC, Brown PH. Comprehensive genomic analysis identifies novel subtypes and targets of triple-negative breast cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2015; **21**: 1688-1698 [PMID: 25208879 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-14-0432]
- 23 **Jézéquel P**, Loussouarn D, Guérin-Charbonnel C, Campion L, Vanier A, Gouraud W, Lasla H, Guette C, Valo I, Verrière V, Campone M. Gene-expression molecular subtyping of triple-negative breast cancer tumours: importance of immune response. *Breast Cancer Res* 2015; **17**: 43 [PMID: 25887482 DOI: 10.1186/s13058-015-0550-y]
- 24 **Quigley D**, Silwal-Pandit L, Dannenfelser R, Langerød A, Volla HK, Vaske C, Siegel JU, Troyanskaya O, Chin SF, Caldas C, Balmain A, Børresen-Dale AL, Kristensen V. Lymphocyte Invasion in IC10/Basal-Like Breast Tumors Is Associated with Wild-Type TP53. *Mol Cancer Res* 2015; **13**: 493-501 [PMID: 25351767 DOI: 10.1158/1541-7786.MCR-14-0387]
- 25 **Saucedo-Cuevas LP**, Ruppen I, Ximénez-Embún P, Domingo S, Gayarre J, Muñoz J, Silva JM, García MJ, Benítez J. CUL4A contributes to the biology of basal-like breast tumors through modulation of cell growth and antitumor immune response. *Oncotarget* 2014; **5**: 2330-2343 [PMID: 24870930 DOI: 10.18632/



- oncotarget.1915]
- 26 **Foulkes WD**, Smith IE, Reis-Filho JS. Triple-negative breast cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **363**: 1938-1948 [PMID: 21067385 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra1001389]
  - 27 **de Ruijter TC**, Veeck J, de Hoon JP, van Engeland M, Tjan-Heijnen VC. Characteristics of triple-negative breast cancer. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 2011; **137**: 183-192 [PMID: 21069385 DOI: 10.1007/s00432-010-0957-x]
  - 28 **Jaspers JE**, Rottenberg S, Jonkers J. Therapeutic options for triple-negative breast cancers with defective homologous recombination. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2009; **1796**: 266-280 [PMID: 19616605 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbcan.2009.07.001]
  - 29 **Puig PE**, Guilly MN, Bouchot A, Droin N, Cathelin D, Bouyer F, Favier L, Ghiringhelli F, Kroemer G, Solary E, Martin F, Chauffert B. Tumor cells can escape DNA-damaging cisplatin through DNA endoreduplication and reversible polyploidy. *Cell Biol Int* 2008; **32**: 1031-1043 [PMID: 18550395 DOI: 10.1016/j.cellbi.2008.04.021]
  - 30 **Balko JM**, Cook RS, Vaught DB, Kuba MG, Miller TW, Bhola NE, Sanders ME, Granja-Ingram NM, Smith JJ, Meszoely IM, Salter J, Dowsett M, Stemke-Hale K, González-Angulo AM, Mills GB, Pinto JA, Gómez HL, Arteaga CL. Profiling of residual breast cancers after neoadjuvant chemotherapy identifies DUSP4 deficiency as a mechanism of drug resistance. *Nat Med* 2012; **18**: 1052-1059 [PMID: 22683778 DOI: 10.1038/nm.2795]
  - 31 **Meng F**, Zhang H, Liu G, Kreike B, Chen W, Sethi S, Miller FR, Wu G. p38 $\gamma$  mitogen-activated protein kinase contributes to oncogenic properties maintenance and resistance to poly (ADP-ribose)-polymerase-1 inhibition in breast cancer. *Neoplasia* 2011; **13**: 472-482 [PMID: 21532888 DOI: 10.1593/neo.101748]
  - 32 **Bombonati A**, Sgroi DC. The molecular pathology of breast cancer progression. *J Pathol* 2011; **223**: 307-317 [PMID: 21125683 DOI: 10.1002/path.2808]
  - 33 **Hannemann J**, Velds A, Halfwerk JB, Kreike B, Peterse JL, van de Vijver MJ. Classification of ductal carcinoma in situ by gene expression profiling. *Breast Cancer Res* 2006; **8**: R61 [PMID: 17069663 DOI: 10.1186/bcr1613]
  - 34 **Allred DC**, Wu Y, Mao S, Nagtegaal ID, Lee S, Perou CM, Mohsin SK, O'Connell P, Tsimelzon A, Medina D. Ductal carcinoma in situ and the emergence of diversity during breast cancer evolution. *Clin Cancer Res* 2008; **14**: 370-378 [PMID: 18223211 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-07-1127]
  - 35 **Vincent-Salomon A**, Lucchesi C, Gruel N, Raynal V, Pierron G, Goudefroye R, Reyat F, Radvanyi F, Salmon R, Thierry JP, Sastre-Garau X, Sigal-Zafrani B, Fourquet A, Delattre O. Integrated genomic and transcriptomic analysis of ductal carcinoma in situ of the breast. *Clin Cancer Res* 2008; **14**: 1956-1965 [PMID: 18381933 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-07-1465]
  - 36 **O'Connell P**, Pekkel V, Fuqua SA, Osborne CK, Clark GM, Allred DC. Analysis of loss of heterozygosity in 399 premalignant breast lesions at 15 genetic loci. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1998; **90**: 697-703 [PMID: 9586667 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/90.9.697]
  - 37 **Buerger H**, Otterbach F, Simon R, Poremba C, Diallo R, Decker T, Riethdorf L, Brinkschmidt C, Dockhorn-Dworniczak B, Boecker W. Comparative genomic hybridization of ductal carcinoma in situ of the breast-evidence of multiple genetic pathways. *J Pathol* 1999; **187**: 396-402 [PMID: 10398097 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1096-9896(199903)187:4<396::AID-PATH286>3.0.CO;2-L]
  - 38 **Buerger H**, Otterbach F, Simon R, Schäfer KL, Poremba C, Diallo R, Brinkschmidt C, Dockhorn-Dworniczak B, Boecker W. Different genetic pathways in the evolution of invasive breast cancer are associated with distinct morphological subtypes. *J Pathol* 1999; **189**: 521-526 [PMID: 10629552 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1096-9896(199912)189:4<521::AID-PATH472>3.0.CO;2-B]
  - 39 **Bryan BB**, Schnitt SJ, Collins LC. Ductal carcinoma in situ with basal-like phenotype: a possible precursor to invasive basal-like breast cancer. *Mod Pathol* 2006; **19**: 617-621 [PMID: 16528377 DOI: 10.1038/modpathol.3800570]
  - 40 **Dabbs DJ**, Chivukula M, Carter G, Bhargava R. Basal phenotype of ductal carcinoma in situ: recognition and immunohistologic profile. *Mod Pathol* 2006; **19**: 1506-1511 [PMID: 16941011 DOI: 10.1038/modpathol.3800678]
  - 41 **Livasy CA**, Perou CM, Karaca G, Cowan DW, Maia D, Jackson S, Tse CK, Nyante S, Millikan RC. Identification of a basal-like subtype of breast ductal carcinoma in situ. *Hum Pathol* 2007; **38**: 197-204 [PMID: 17234468 DOI: 10.1016/j.humpath.2006.08.017]
  - 42 **Tamimi RM**, Baer HJ, Marotti J, Galan M, Galaburda L, Fu Y, Deitz AC, Connolly JL, Schnitt SJ, Colditz GA, Collins LC. Comparison of molecular phenotypes of ductal carcinoma in situ and invasive breast cancer. *Breast Cancer Res* 2008; **10**: R67 [PMID: 18681955 DOI: 10.1186/bcr2128]
  - 43 **Clark SE**, Warwick J, Carpenter R, Bowen RL, Duffy SW, Jones JL. Molecular subtyping of DCIS: heterogeneity of breast cancer reflected in pre-invasive disease. *Br J Cancer* 2011; **104**: 120-127 [PMID: 21139586 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6606021]
  - 44 **Thike AA**, Iqbal J, Cheok PY, Tse GM, Tan PH. Ductal carcinoma in situ associated with triple negative invasive breast cancer: evidence for a precursor-product relationship. *J Clin Pathol* 2013; **66**: 665-670 [PMID: 23539741 DOI: 10.1136/jclinpath-2012-201428]
  - 45 **Clarke MF**, Fuller M. Stem cells and cancer: two faces of eve. *Cell* 2006; **124**: 1111-1115 [PMID: 16564000 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2006.03.011]
  - 46 **Polyak K**, Hahn WC. Roots and stems: stem cells in cancer. *Nat Med* 2006; **12**: 296-300 [PMID: 16520777 DOI: 10.1038/nm1379]
  - 47 **Visvader JE**, Lindeman GJ. Cancer stem cells in solid tumours: accumulating evidence and unresolved questions. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2008; **8**: 755-768 [PMID: 18784658 DOI: 10.1038/nrc2499]
  - 48 **Rosen JM**, Jordan CT. The increasing complexity of the cancer stem cell paradigm. *Science* 2009; **324**: 1670-1673 [PMID: 19556499 DOI: 10.1126/science.1171837]
  - 49 **Singh A**, Settleman J. EMT, cancer stem cells and drug resistance: an emerging axis of evil in the war on cancer. *Oncogene* 2010; **29**: 4741-4751 [PMID: 20531305 DOI: 10.1038/ncr.2010.215]
  - 50 **Shetzer Y**, Solomon H, Koifman G, Molchadsky A, Horesh S, Rotter V. The paradigm of mutant p53-expressing cancer stem cells and drug resistance. *Carcinogenesis* 2014; **35**: 1196-1208 [PMID: 24658181 DOI: 10.1093/carcin/bgu073]
  - 51 **Dean M**. ABC transporters, drug resistance, and cancer stem cells. *J Mammary Gland Biol Neoplasia* 2009; **14**: 3-9 [PMID: 19224345 DOI: 10.1007/s10911-009-9109-9]
  - 52 **Reya T**, Morrison SJ, Clarke MF, Weissman IL. Stem cells, cancer, and cancer stem cells. *Nature* 2001; **414**: 105-111 [PMID: 11689955 DOI: 10.1038/35102167]
  - 53 **Friedmann-Morvinski D**, Verma IM. Dedifferentiation and reprogramming: origins of cancer stem cells. *EMBO Rep* 2014; **15**: 244-253 [PMID: 24531722 DOI: 10.1002/embr.201338254]
  - 54 **Mani SA**, Guo W, Liao MJ, Eaton EN, Ayyanan A, Zhou AY, Brooks M, Reinhard F, Zhang CC, Shipitsin M, Campbell LL, Polyak K, Briskin C, Yang J, Weinberg RA. The epithelial-mesenchymal transition generates cells with properties of stem cells. *Cell* 2008; **133**: 704-715 [PMID: 18485877 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2008.03.027]
  - 55 **Thierry JP**, Acloque H, Huang RY, Nieto MA. Epithelial-mesenchymal transitions in development and disease. *Cell* 2009; **139**: 871-890 [PMID: 19945376 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2009.11.007]
  - 56 **Al-Hajj M**, Wicha MS, Benito-Hernandez A, Morrison SJ, Clarke MF. Prospective identification of tumorigenic breast cancer cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 3983-3988 [PMID: 12629218 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0530291100]
  - 57 **Lacerda L**, Pusztai L, Woodward WA. The role of tumor initiating cells in drug resistance of breast cancer: Implications for future therapeutic approaches. *Drug Resist Updat* 2010; **13**: 99-108 [PMID: 20739212 DOI: 10.1016/j.drug.2010.08.001]
  - 58 **Mallini P**, Lennard T, Kirby J, Meeson A. Epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition: what is the impact on breast cancer stem cells and drug resistance. *Cancer Treat Rev* 2014; **40**: 341-348 [PMID: 24090504 DOI: 10.1016/j.ctrv.2013.09.008]
  - 59 **Honeth G**, Bendahl PO, Ringnér M, Saal LH, Gruvberger-Saal SK, Lövgren K, Grabau D, Fernö M, Borg A, Hegardt C. The CD44+/CD24- phenotype is enriched in basal-like breast tumors. *Breast Cancer Res* 2008; **10**: R53 [PMID: 18559090 DOI: 10.1186/bcr2108]



- 60 **Park SY**, Lee HE, Li H, Shipitsin M, Gelman R, Polyak K. Heterogeneity for stem cell-related markers according to tumor subtype and histologic stage in breast cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2010; **16**: 876-887 [PMID: 20103682 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-09-1532]
- 61 **Pandey PR**, Xing F, Sharma S, Watabe M, Pai SK, Iizumi-Gairani M, Fukuda K, Hirota S, Mo YY, Watabe K. Elevated lipogenesis in epithelial stem-like cell confers survival advantage in ductal carcinoma in situ of breast cancer. *Oncogene* 2013; **32**: 5111-5122 [PMID: 23208501 DOI: 10.1038/ncr.2012.519]
- 62 **Li Q**, Eades G, Yao Y, Zhang Y, Zhou Q. Characterization of a stem-like subpopulation in basal-like ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS) lesions. *J Biol Chem* 2014; **289**: 1303-1312 [PMID: 24297178 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M113.502278]
- 63 **Zhou W**, Jirstrom K, Johansson C, Amini RM, Blomqvist C, Agbaje O, Wärnberg F. Long-term survival of women with basal-like ductal carcinoma in situ of the breast: a population-based cohort study. *BMC Cancer* 2010; **10**: 653 [PMID: 21118480 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-10-653]
- 64 **Abba MC**, Gong T, Lu Y, Lee J, Zhong Y, Lacunza E, Butti M, Takata Y, Gaddis S, Shen J, Estecio MR, Sahin AA, Aldaz CM. A Molecular Portrait of High-Grade Ductal Carcinoma In Situ. *Cancer Res* 2015; **75**: 3980-3990 [PMID: 26249178 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-15-0506]
- 65 **Gauthier ML**, Berman HK, Miller C, Kozakeiwicz K, Chew K, Moore D, Rabban J, Chen YY, Kerlikowske K, Tlsty TD. Abrogated response to cellular stress identifies DCIS associated with subsequent tumor events and defines basal-like breast tumors. *Cancer Cell* 2007; **12**: 479-491 [PMID: 17996651 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2007.10.017]
- 66 **Perez AA**, Balabram D, Rocha RM, da Silva Souza A, Gobbi H. Co-Expression of p16, Ki67 and COX-2 Is Associated with Basal Phenotype in High-Grade Ductal Carcinoma In Situ of the Breast. *J Histochem Cytochem* 2015; **63**: 408-416 [PMID: 25711229 DOI: 10.1369/0022155415576540]
- 67 **Shekhar MP**, Kato I, Nangia-Makker P, Tait L. Comedo-DCIS is a precursor lesion for basal-like breast carcinoma: identification of a novel p63/Her2/neu expressing subgroup. *Oncotarget* 2013; **4**: 231-241 [PMID: 23548208]
- 68 **Damonte P**, Hodgson JG, Chen JQ, Young LJ, Cardiff RD, Borowsky AD. Mammary carcinoma behavior is programmed in the precancer stem cell. *Breast Cancer Res* 2008; **10**: R50 [PMID: 18522749 DOI: 10.1186/bcr2104]
- 69 **Espina V**, Mariani BD, Gallagher RI, Tran K, Banks S, Wiedemann J, Hurryk H, Mueller C, Adamo L, Deng J, Petricoin EF, Pastore L, Zaman S, Menezes G, Mize J, Johal J, Edmiston K, Liotta LA. Malignant precursor cells pre-exist in human breast DCIS and require autophagy for survival. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e10240 [PMID: 20421921 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0010240]
- 70 **Miller FR**, Santner SJ, Tait L, Dawson PJ. MCF10DCIS.com xenograft model of human comedo ductal carcinoma in situ. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2000; **92**: 1185-1186 [PMID: 10904098 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/92.14.1185A]
- 71 **Miller FR**. Xenograft models of premalignant breast disease. *J Mammary Gland Biol Neoplasia* 2000; **5**: 379-391 [PMID: 14973383 DOI: 10.1023/A:1009577811584]
- 72 **Santner SJ**, Dawson PJ, Tait L, Soule HD, Eliason J, Mohamed AN, Wolman SR, Heppner GH, Miller FR. Malignant MCF10CA1 cell lines derived from premalignant human breast epithelial MCF10AT cells. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2001; **65**: 101-110 [PMID: 11261825 DOI: 10.1023/A:1006461422273]
- 73 **Tait LR**, Pauley RJ, Santner SJ, Heppner GH, Heng HH, Rak JW, Miller FR. Dynamic stromal-epithelial interactions during progression of MCF10DCIS.com xenografts. *Int J Cancer* 2007; **120**: 2127-2134 [PMID: 17266026 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.22572]
- 74 **Hu M**, Yao J, Carroll DK, Weremowicz S, Chen H, Carrasco D, Richardson A, Violette S, Nikolskaya T, Nikolsky Y, Bauerlein EL, Hahn WC, Gelman RS, Allred C, Bissell MJ, Schnitt S, Polyak K. Regulation of in situ to invasive breast carcinoma transition. *Cancer Cell* 2008; **13**: 394-406 [PMID: 18455123 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2008.03.007]
- 75 **Shekhar MP**, Tait L, Pauley RJ, Wu GS, Santner SJ, Nangia-Makker P, Shekhar V, Nassar H, Visscher DW, Heppner GH, Miller FR. Comedo-ductal carcinoma in situ: A paradoxical role for programmed cell death. *Cancer Biol Ther* 2008; **7**: 1774-1782 [PMID: 18787417 DOI: 10.4161/cbt.7.11.6781]
- 76 **Behbod F**, Kittrell FS, LaMarca H, Edwards D, Kerbawy S, Heestand JC, Young E, Mukhopadhyay P, Yeh HW, Allred DC, Hu M, Polyak K, Rosen JM, Medina D. An intraductal human-in-mouse transplantation model mimics the subtypes of ductal carcinoma in situ. *Breast Cancer Res* 2009; **11**: R66 [PMID: 19735549 DOI: 10.1186/bcr2358]
- 77 **Liu S**, Clouthier SG, Wicha MS. Role of microRNAs in the regulation of breast cancer stem cells. *J Mammary Gland Biol Neoplasia* 2012; **17**: 15-21 [PMID: 22331423 DOI: 10.1007/s10911-012-9242-8]
- 78 **Li Q**, Yao Y, Eades G, Liu Z, Zhang Y, Zhou Q. Downregulation of miR-140 promotes cancer stem cell formation in basal-like early stage breast cancer. *Oncogene* 2014; **33**: 2589-2600 [PMID: 23752191 DOI: 10.1038/ncr.2013.226]
- 79 **Ory V**, Tassi E, Cavalli LR, Sharif GM, Saenz F, Baker T, Schmidt MO, Mueller SC, Furth PA, Wellstein A, Riegel AT. The nuclear coactivator amplified in breast cancer 1 maintains tumor-initiating cells during development of ductal carcinoma in situ. *Oncogene* 2014; **33**: 3033-3042 [PMID: 23851504 DOI: 10.1038/ncr.2013.263]
- 80 **Sato H**, Takino T, Okada Y, Cao J, Shinagawa A, Yamamoto E, Seiki M. A matrix metalloproteinase expressed on the surface of invasive tumour cells. *Nature* 1994; **370**: 61-65 [PMID: 8015608 DOI: 10.1038/370061a0]
- 81 **Tsunezuka Y**, Kinoh H, Takino T, Watanabe Y, Okada Y, Shinagawa A, Sato H, Seiki M. Expression of membrane-type matrix metalloproteinase 1 (MT1-MMP) in tumor cells enhances pulmonary metastasis in an experimental metastasis assay. *Cancer Res* 1996; **56**: 5678-5683 [PMID: 8971175]
- 82 **Hotary KB**, Allen ED, Brooks PC, Datta NS, Long MW, Weiss SJ. Membrane type I matrix metalloproteinase usurps tumor growth control imposed by the three-dimensional extracellular matrix. *Cell* 2003; **114**: 33-45 [PMID: 12859896 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(03)00513-0]
- 83 **Szabova L**, Chrysovergis K, Yamada SS, Holmbeck K. MT1-MMP is required for efficient tumor dissemination in experimental metastatic disease. *Oncogene* 2008; **27**: 3274-3281 [PMID: 18071307 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1210982]
- 84 **Perentes JY**, Kirkpatrick ND, Nagano S, Smith EY, Shaver CM, Sgroi D, Garkavtsev I, Munn LL, Jain RK, Boucher Y. Cancer cell-associated MT1-MMP promotes blood vessel invasion and distant metastasis in triple-negative mammary tumors. *Cancer Res* 2011; **71**: 4527-4538 [PMID: 21571860 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-10-4376]
- 85 **Lodillinsky C**, Infante E, Guichard A, Chaligné R, Fuhrmann L, Cyrta J, Irondelle M, Lagoutte E, Vacher S, Bonsang-Kitzis H, Glukhova M, Reyat F, Bièche I, Vincent-Salomon A, Chavrier P. p63/MT1-MMP axis is required for in situ to invasive transition in basal-like breast cancer. *Oncogene* 2016; **35**: 344-357 [PMID: 25893299 DOI: 10.1038/ncr.2015.87]
- 86 **Memmi EM**, Sanarico AG, Giacobbe A, Peschiaroli A, Frezza V, Cicalese A, Pisati F, Tosoni D, Zhou H, Tonon G, Antonov A, Melino G, Pelicci PG, Bernassola F. p63 Sustains self-renewal of mammary cancer stem cells through regulation of Sonic Hedgehog signaling. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2015; **112**: 3499-3504 [PMID: 25739959 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1500762112]
- 87 **Scribner KC**, Behbod F, Porter WW. Regulation of DCIS to invasive breast cancer progression by Single-minded-2s (SIM2s). *Oncogene* 2013; **32**: 2631-2639 [PMID: 22777354 DOI: 10.1038/ncr.2012.286]
- 88 **Zhang G**, Yang P, Guo P, Miele L, Sarkar FH, Wang Z, Zhou Q. Unraveling the mystery of cancer metabolism in the genesis of tumor-initiating cells and development of cancer. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2013; **1836**: 49-59 [PMID: 23523716 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbcan.2013.03.001]

- 89 **Swinnen JV**, Brusselmans K, Verhoeven G. Increased lipogenesis in cancer cells: new players, novel targets. *Curr Opin Clin Nutr Metab Care* 2006; **9**: 358-365 [PMID: 16778563 DOI: 10.1097/01.mco.0000232894.28674.30]
- 90 **Pizer ES**, Chrest FJ, DiGiuseppe JA, Han WF. Pharmacological inhibitors of mammalian fatty acid synthase suppress DNA replication and induce apoptosis in tumor cell lines. *Cancer Res* 1998; **58**: 4611-4615 [PMID: 9788612]
- 91 **Bandyopadhyay S**, Zhan R, Wang Y, Pai SK, Hirota S, Hosobe S, Takano Y, Saito K, Furuta E, Iizumi M, Mohinta S, Watabe M, Chalfant C, Watabe K. Mechanism of apoptosis induced by the inhibition of fatty acid synthase in breast cancer cells. *Cancer Res* 2006; **66**: 5934-5940 [PMID: 16740734 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-05-3197]
- 92 **Pandey PR**, Okuda H, Watabe M, Pai SK, Liu W, Kobayashi A, Xing F, Fukuda K, Hirota S, Sugai T, Wakabayashi G, Koeda K, Kashiwaba M, Suzuki K, Chiba T, Endo M, Fujioka T, Tanji S, Mo YY, Cao D, Wilber AC, Watabe K. Resveratrol suppresses growth of cancer stem-like cells by inhibiting fatty acid synthase. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2011; **130**: 387-398 [PMID: 21188630 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-010-1300-6]
- 93 **Liu W**, Furuta E, Shindo K, Watabe M, Xing F, Pandey PR, Okuda H, Pai SK, Murphy LL, Cao D, Mo YY, Kobayashi A, Iizumi M, Fukuda K, Xia B, Watabe K. Cacalol, a natural sesquiterpene, induces apoptosis in breast cancer cells by modulating Akt-SREBP-FAS signaling pathway. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2011; **128**: 57-68 [PMID: 20665104 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-010-1076-8]
- 94 **Schnitt SJ**. The transition from ductal carcinoma in situ to invasive breast cancer: the other side of the coin. *Breast Cancer Res* 2009; **11**: 101 [PMID: 19291276 DOI: 10.1186/bcr2228]
- 95 **Unsworth A**, Anderson R, Britt K. Stromal fibroblasts and the immune microenvironment: partners in mammary gland biology and pathology? *J Mammary Gland Biol Neoplasia* 2014; **19**: 169-182 [PMID: 24984900 DOI: 10.1007/s10911-014-9326-8]
- 96 **Place AE**, Jin Huh S, Polyak K. The microenvironment in breast cancer progression: biology and implications for treatment. *Breast Cancer Res* 2011; **13**: 227 [PMID: 22078026 DOI: 10.1186/bcr2912]
- 97 **Hu M**, Polyak K. Molecular characterisation of the tumour microenvironment in breast cancer. *Eur J Cancer* 2008; **44**: 2760-2765 [PMID: 19026532 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2008.09.038]
- 98 **Tysnes BB**, Bjerkvig R. Cancer initiation and progression: involvement of stem cells and the microenvironment. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2007; **1775**: 283-297 [PMID: 17374555 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbcan.2007.01.001]
- 99 **Brinton LT**, Sloane HS, Kester M, Kelly KA. Formation and role of exosomes in cancer. *Cell Mol Life Sci* 2015; **72**: 659-671 [PMID: 25336151 DOI: 10.1007/s00018-014-1764-3]
- 100 **Salido-Guadarrama I**, Romero-Cordoba S, Peralta-Zaragoza O, Hidalgo-Miranda A, Rodriguez-Dorantes M. MicroRNAs transported by exosomes in body fluids as mediators of intercellular communication in cancer. *Onco Targets Ther* 2014; **7**: 1327-1338 [PMID: 25092989 DOI: 10.2147/OTT.S61562]
- 101 **Gernapudi R**, Yao Y, Zhang Y, Wolfson B, Roy S, Duru N, Eades G, Yang P, Zhou Q. Targeting exosomes from preadipocytes inhibits preadipocyte to cancer stem cell signaling in early-stage breast cancer. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2015; **150**: 685-695 [PMID: 25783182 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-015-3326-2]
- 102 **Michor F**, Weaver VM. Understanding tissue context influences on intratumour heterogeneity. *Nat Cell Biol* 2014; **16**: 301-302 [PMID: 24691256 DOI: 10.1038/ncb2942]
- 103 **Yap TA**, Gerlinger M, Futreal PA, Pusztai L, Swanton C. Intratumor heterogeneity: seeing the wood for the trees. *Sci Transl Med* 2012; **4**: 127ps10 [PMID: 22461637 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3003854]
- 104 **Wang CC**, Bajikar SS, Jamal L, Atkins KA, Janes KA. A time- and matrix-dependent TGFB $\beta$ 3-JUND-KRT5 regulatory circuit in single breast epithelial cells and basal-like premalignancies. *Nat Cell Biol* 2014; **16**: 345-356 [PMID: 24658685 DOI: 10.1038/ncb2930]
- 105 **Oskarsson T**, Acharyya S, Zhang XH, Vanharanta S, Tavazoie SF, Morris PG, Downey RJ, Manova-Todorova K, Brogi E, Massagué J. Breast cancer cells produce tenascin C as a metastatic niche component to colonize the lungs. *Nat Med* 2011; **17**: 867-874 [PMID: 21706029 DOI: 10.1038/nm.2379]

**P- Reviewer:** Sonoda K, Yokoyama Y, Zhang XQ

**S- Editor:** Kong JX **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Jiao XK



## Risks and guidelines for the consumption of alcohol during pregnancy

Ulrik Schiøler Kesmodel

Ulrik Schiøler Kesmodel, Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Herlev University Hospital, 2730 Herlev, Denmark

Ulrik Schiøler Kesmodel, Institute for Clinical Medicine, University of Copenhagen, 2200 Copenhagen N, Denmark

**Author contributions:** Kesmodel US performed the literature search and wrote the paper.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** The author declares no conflict of interest for this article.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Ulrik Schiøler Kesmodel, Professor of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Department of Obstetrics and Gynaecology, Herlev University Hospital, Herlev Ringvej, 2730 Herlev, Denmark. [ulrik.schioeler.kesmodel@regionh.dk](mailto:ulrik.schioeler.kesmodel@regionh.dk)  
 Telephone: +45-3868-1612

Received: June 28, 2015

Peer-review started: July 5, 2015

First decision: September 17, 2015

Revised: November 13, 2015

Accepted: January 21, 2016

Article in press: January 22, 2016

Published online: May 10, 2016

### Abstract

Daily average intake of alcohol during pregnancy has consistently been associated with short term adverse outcomes such as miscarriage, preterm birth and intrauterine growth restriction, a large variety of malformations, as well as long term adverse outcomes

such as foetal alcohol syndrome, mental retardation and general impairment of cognitive functions including intelligence, attention, learning abilities as well as social and behavioural functions. Weekly average consumption and alcohol binge drinking (usually defined as  $\geq 5$  drinks on a single occasion) independently of high daily average intake has not been consistently associated with short and long term adverse outcomes. Health authorities in most countries recommend that pregnant women completely abstain from alcohol. Even so, many health professionals including doctors, midwives and nurses do not provide information to pregnant women in accordance with the official recommendations, although a large proportion of women of child bearing age and pregnant women drink alcohol, especially before recognition of pregnancy. The discrepancy between guidelines and the information practice of health personnel is likely to continue to exist because guidelines of abstinence are not clearly evidence-based and not in line with current focus on autonomy and informed choice for patients, and because guidelines do not consider the everyday clinical communication situation.

**Key words:** Alcohol; Binge drinking; Pregnancy; Adverse pregnancy outcomes; Neuropsychological development

© The Author(s) 2016. Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Daily average consumption of alcohol during pregnancy has been systematically associated with short and long-term adverse outcomes, while lower weekly average consumption and alcohol binge drinking independently of high daily average intake has not. Health authorities in most countries recommend that pregnant women abstain from alcohol. Even so, many health professionals do not provide information to pregnant women in accordance with the official recommendations. The discrepancy between guidelines and the information practice of health personnel is likely to continue, because guidelines of abstinence are not clearly evidence-based

and not in line with current focus on patient autonomy.

Kesmodel US. Risks and guidelines for the consumption of alcohol during pregnancy. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(2): 162-174 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i2/162.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i2.162>

## INTRODUCTION

It has been known for thousands of years that alcohol consumption may compromise human reproduction and harm the newborn baby. In his *Problems*<sup>[1]</sup>, Aristotle described how alcohol may reduce semen quality and male potency ["...semen of drunkards (is) generally not reproductive..."]. In his *History of Animals* he described how breast milk from wine-drinking women may cause convulsions in the weaning baby<sup>[2]</sup>. During the first half of the 18<sup>th</sup> century, during the English gin epidemic, the English College of Physicians asked Parliament to re-introduce control with the distillation process, because gin was "a cause of weak, feeble and distempered children"<sup>[3]</sup>.

Some one hundred years later a movement had been set in motion that called on women not to drink alcohol while pregnant or while breast-feeding, for as Aristotle had suggested, "alcoholic milk" might cause convulsions in the newborn<sup>[4]</sup>, and children nursed on abstinence on the other hand escaped many common childhood disorders<sup>[4]</sup>.

In 1848, a population based survey was carried out among 574 intellectually disabled people in Massachusetts, United States. Approximately half of the intellectually disabled people (then termed idiots) had parents who were "habitual drunkards"<sup>[5]</sup>.

In 1899, in England, Sullivan<sup>[6]</sup> described 120 chronic alcoholic women in Liverpool Prison or their relatives and their approximately 600 children. Approximately one in ten children was stillborn, and 56% of the children had died within two years after delivery, usually because of convulsions. The longer the mother had been drinking the greater the risk. But if the mother was abstinent during imprisonment, the child's chance of survival was increased<sup>[6]</sup>.

By the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, alcohol consumption during pregnancy had also been associated with miscarriage, malformations and preterm birth<sup>[3]</sup>.

During the American Prohibition of the 1920s and 1930s alcohol was less accessible, and following the Prohibition the potentially damaging effects of alcohol consumption during pregnancy was hardly an issue. In fact, in the late 1960s and 1970s, a number of case series (inherently lacking a reference group) - mainly from the New York Hospital - even suggested that infusion of alcohol could potentially prevent preterm birth in women with threatening preterm delivery<sup>[7]</sup>, although others had difficulties replicating these findings<sup>[8]</sup>. In

1975, a paper was published including several comparison groups, showing that the therapeutic effect of alcohol on preventing premature labour was no better than that obtained with placebo<sup>[9]</sup>.

In retrospect, it is interesting that while experiments were being carried out using alcohol infusions as a treatment among pregnant women and published in high profile journals<sup>[7]</sup>, the first modern description of the potentially harmful effects of high intake of alcohol during pregnancy was published in French and went almost unnoticed<sup>[10]</sup>. In fact, today's focus on the damaging foetal effects of high alcohol intake during pregnancy was started with the (re-) discovery of the Foetal Alcohol Syndrome (FAS) in 1973<sup>[11]</sup>.

The aim of this paper was to assess the potentially damaging effects of alcohol intake during pregnancy at all intake levels, the attitudes and knowledge among pregnant women and health personnel towards the issue, drinking patterns, and how official recommendations are handled in everyday clinical practice by health personnel.

## METHODOLOGY

A systematic literature search in PubMed was performed for each of the topics: Foetal/fetal damage, attitudes and knowledge, drinking patterns, and recommendations. Search terms may be obtained from the author. All identified records were screened for eligibility by article title. Abstracts were read if the study appeared to be relevant for inclusion. Full text of all cited papers were read. The computerized literature search was supplemented with a hand-search of the bibliography of all included papers. The study selection was done by the author.

### *A brief introduction to measurement of alcohol intake during pregnancy*

A single measure of overall consumption does not necessarily give a sufficient picture of the actual pattern of consumption: Patterns of alcohol consumption are often complex, and much too often alcohol consumption is categorised in an oversimplified manner. In clinical and scientific practice, the alcohol consumption pattern of an individual is usually described by three components: Frequency, quantity, and variability<sup>[12]</sup>, and a fourth component is now being assessed in more and more studies: Timing<sup>[13]</sup>. Most often a measure of the average number of standard drinks per day or per week at a more or less well-specified point in time during pregnancy is provided (measuring frequency and quantity, *i.e.*, the number of drinking episodes  $\times$  the number of standard drinks on each episode). Many attempts have been made to include a measure of variability into measures of quantity and frequency, creating a quantity-frequency-variability measure<sup>[12]</sup>. Variability is often measured as binge drinking, usually defined as intake of  $\geq 4$  or  $\geq 5$  drinks on a single occasion. Binge drinking is incorporated into many of



these measures and indices. Binge drinking, however, is now often used as a separate exposure and timing of such episodes may be of importance.

Other aspects of alcohol consumption such as context (setting, *i.e.*, private vs public, *etc.*), unit size and type of alcohol are scarcely reported. However, the potentially harmful effects of alcohol on the foetus are most likely caused by ethanol itself, and hence the type of alcohol is unlikely to be of any importance, as suggested in some studies<sup>[14]</sup>.

No reliable or valid biomarkers of alcohol intake during pregnancy have been found.

## THE DAMAGING EFFECTS OF ALCOHOL DURING PREGNANCY - WHAT IS THE CURRENT EVIDENCE?

### Average alcohol intake

FAS is a diagnostic entity with fairly well defined diagnostic criteria<sup>[15]</sup>, but even so diagnostic criteria differ somewhat and the diagnosis may be difficult<sup>[16]</sup>. Confirmed prenatal alcohol exposure is not required to make a diagnosis, but all three of the following findings are required, although some differences in diagnostic criteria are observed within each category<sup>[15,16]</sup>: (1) Documentation of at least 2<sup>[16]</sup> or all 3<sup>[15]</sup> of the following facial features (smooth philtrum, thin vermilion border, and small palpebral fissures); (2) Documentation of growth deficits (Confirmed, age, sex, gestational age, and race or ethnicity adjusted prenatal or postnatal height or weight, or both, at or below the 10<sup>th</sup> percentile, documented at any one point in time); (3) Documentation of CNS abnormality [ I : structural (small head circumference or brain abnormalities observable through imaging)<sup>[15,16]</sup>, II : neurological (not due to a postnatal insult or fever)<sup>[15]</sup>, or III : functional]<sup>[15]</sup>. Functional deficits may be either global cognitive or intellectual deficits representing multiple domains of deficit with performance below the 3<sup>rd</sup> percentile (2 standard deviations below the mean for standardized testing); or functional deficits below the 16<sup>th</sup> percentile (1 standard deviation below the mean for standardized testing) in at least three of the following domains: (1) cognitive or developmental deficits or discrepancies; (2) executive functioning deficits; (3) motor functioning delays; (4) problems with attention or hyperactivity; (5) social skills; and (6) other, such as sensory problems, pragmatic language problems, or memory deficits.

Apart from the diagnostic features mentioned above, FAS has been associated with a huge number of malformations, which are not specific for FAS, but still may be caused by the excessive, high average daily alcohol intake, *e.g.*, craniofacial such as microcephaly, ptosis, retrognathia, micrognathia/flat midface, maxillary hypoplasia, and short upturned nose; skeletal such as pectus excavatum, joint defects, radioulnar synostosis, hypoplastic fingernails and toenails; cardiac such as atrial- and ventricular septal defects; cleft

lip and/or palate; ocular defects including myopia, strabismus and microphthalmia; dental such as dental malocclusion, hypoplastic/misaligned teeth and faulty enamel; hypospadias, hypoplastic/dysplastic kidneys and inguinal hernia<sup>[16-19]</sup>.

FAS represents the severe end of the Foetal Alcohol Spectrum Disorders (FASD), a widely used term for a group of at least three types of conditions<sup>[16,20]</sup>: FAS, Alcohol-Related Neurodevelopmental Disorder (ARND), and Alcohol-Related Birth Defects (ARBD). Some have attempted to define ARBD (malformations) as a diagnostic entity including confirmed maternal alcohol exposure,  $\geq 2$  facial features as mentioned above, and a combination of structural defects/malformations<sup>[16]</sup>, although this is not universally acknowledged. FASD and ARND (*e.g.*, intellectual disabilities, learning and behaviour problems), are umbrella terms and are not at this point diagnostic entities<sup>[15,16]</sup>. Some also include partial FAS as an additional entity<sup>[16]</sup>.

FAS and all the characteristics associated with it is by definition caused by (high average daily) alcohol intake during pregnancy. To the extent that smaller amounts of alcohol are potentially harmful, the effects are likely to be the same but smaller.

**Anthropometric measures and growth:** A recent meta-analysis assessed the association of average alcohol consumption with low birth weight and being small for gestational age (SGA)<sup>[21]</sup>. The meta-analysis suggested a non-linear association<sup>[21]</sup>. The meta-analysis is interesting for several reasons: In an analysis of any alcohol use vs no alcohol use, including a total of 28 studies, alcohol users were at increased risk of having children with low birth weight (RR = 1.12, 95%CI: 1.04-1.20). Not surprisingly, studies with no confounder control (12 studies) showed a higher increased risk (RR = 1.27, 95%CI: 1.00-1.61), while studies adjusting for potential confounders (17 studies) showed an insignificantly increased risk of low birth weight (RR = 1.06, 95%CI: 0.99-1.13). The pooled odds ratio of SGA in all studies (11 studies) was 1.11 (95%CI: 0.95-1.30), and in studies that adjusted for confounders it was 0.99 (0.89-1.10).

However, looking at any alcohol intake, does not distinguish between low and high alcohol intake. In the study, meta-regression was carried out using linear as well as first-order and second-order fractional polynomial regression. For both low birth weight and SGA polynomial regression fitted the data better than linear regression. Intake of less than one drink a day on average showed no association with poor outcome, whereas intake of more than one drink per day on average was associated with a steadily increasing risk of low birth weight up to approximately 10-12 drinks per day (RR = 7.48, 95%CI: 4.46-12.55)<sup>[21]</sup>.

### Preterm birth

The same meta-analysis showed data on preterm

birth<sup>[21]</sup>. In an analysis of any alcohol use vs no alcohol use, including a total of 21 studies, alcohol users were not at increased risk of preterm birth (RR = 1.03, 95%CI: 0.91-1.16). Studies adjusting for potential confounders (11 studies) yielded an attenuated estimate (RR = 0.93, 95%CI: 0.86-1.01). Again, for preterm birth, polynomial regression fitted the data better than linear regression. Intake of less than 1½ drinks a day on average showed no association with preterm birth, whereas intake of more than 1½ drinks per day on average was associated with a steadily increasing risk of preterm birth with increasing alcohol intake. For women drinking three drinks per day on average, the risk of preterm birth was 23% more likely than in nondrinking mothers (RR = 1.23, 95%CI: 1.05-1.44)<sup>[21]</sup>.

In general, the relative risks, but not necessarily the differences between the two risk estimates, for very preterm birth (before 32 wk of gestation) are higher than the relative risks for moderate preterm birth (32-36 wk of gestation)<sup>[14]</sup>. Mode of delivery does not seem to affect the risk<sup>[22]</sup>.

#### **Foetal death - spontaneous abortion and stillbirth**

From a methodological point of view, spontaneous abortion is perhaps one of the most difficult pregnancy outcomes to assess, especially in the first trimester. To mention but a few: Variation in self-testing behaviour, *i.e.*, variations related to the different gestational ages at which different women choose to perform a pregnancy test - women testing themselves very early in pregnancy will appear to have higher abortion rates than women who do not<sup>[23]</sup>. Very early spontaneous abortions (*i.e.*, weeks 0-6) are usually not recognized, and hence these are not included in studies on spontaneous abortions. Most studies apply logistic regression analysis, and they will therefore tend to overestimate the risk of early spontaneous abortions because the odds ratio will overestimate the true risk ratio. This problem may be dealt with by applying survival analysis techniques with delayed entry or left truncation, so that women do not inappropriately contribute time at risk before recognition of pregnancy<sup>[23]</sup>. Survival analysis also allows pregnancies that end in induced abortion to contribute time at risk to the analyses, since such pregnancies are also at risk of spontaneous abortion until the day of the induced abortion<sup>[23]</sup>. Only few studies have previously addressed this problem by using Cox proportional hazard models with delayed entry<sup>[24-26]</sup>.

Increased risk of early spontaneous abortion has been reported in alcoholics<sup>[27,28]</sup>. At lower intake levels, some studies show no association<sup>[29-33]</sup>, while most studies seem to suggest an increased risk of first trimester spontaneous abortion with an intake of  $\geq 1$  drink/d on average<sup>[34-36]</sup>. Two studies with open ended high intake group of  $> 3$ <sup>[25]</sup> and  $\geq 5$ <sup>[24]</sup> drinks/wk on average, respectively, suggested an increased risk within this group, but because of the open ended categorization it is unclear at what level the actual effect

increases.

A recent (and much cited) study showed an increased risk of first trimester spontaneous abortion at intake levels of 2-3½ drinks/wk on average (Hazard ratio = 1.66, 95%CI: 1.43-1.92)<sup>[26]</sup>. As for second trimester spontaneous abortions, the majority of studies show no association, although two studies showed an increased risk at an intake of  $\geq 1$  drink/d on average<sup>[35,36]</sup>. Again, a recent study showed an increased risk of very early second trimester spontaneous abortion (weeks 13-16) at intake levels of 2-3½ drinks/wk on average (Hazard ratio = 1.57, 95%CI: 1.30-1.90)<sup>[26]</sup>.

Interestingly, the authors of the one study showing an association between average intake levels of 2-3½ drinks/wk on average and first and early second trimester abortions, found hardly any association between alcohol binge drinking and spontaneous abortion, as mentioned below<sup>[37]</sup>. It seems biologically implausible that in the same population 2-3 drinks/wk on average should increase the risk, while intake of  $\geq 5$  drinks on a single occasion does not.

The definition of stillbirth differs between studies, with gestational age usually varying between  $\geq 22$  wk or  $\geq 28$  wk of gestation. In most studies, the rate of stillbirth has ranged between 3 and 6 per thousand<sup>[26,38]</sup>. While children of alcoholics are probably at increased risk of stillbirth<sup>[28]</sup>, in the majority of studies no association or even a slightly increased risk among abstainers compared with women with low intake has been described<sup>[26,38]</sup>. One study with an open-ended high intake group of  $\geq 5$  drinks/wk on average has suggested an increased risk within this group<sup>[39]</sup>.

#### **Malformations**

As mentioned above, FAS has been associated with a large number of malformations in different parts of the body. Similar malformations have been described in children of alcoholics without other signs of FAS. At lower intake levels, intake of  $\geq 3$  drinks/d on average has been associated with craniofacial and genitourinary malformations<sup>[40,41]</sup>, and intake of  $\geq 1$ -2 drinks/d on average has been associated with musculoskeletal malformations and malformations of the sex organs and inguinal hernias<sup>[40,42]</sup>. A single study has shown increased risk of cryptorchidism among boys of women reporting intake of  $\geq 5$  drinks/wk on average, with increasing risk up to  $\geq 9$  drinks/wk on average<sup>[43]</sup>. Unfortunately, no estimate was reported separately for the 5-8 drinks/wk group, making it unclear where the actual effect started. One study, using different assessments of alcohol consumption, suggested a possible threshold for the risk of malformations. Although different measures yielded different thresholds, the lowest level at which an effect was observed was 0.5 ounces/d on average corresponding to approximately 1 drink/d on average<sup>[44]</sup>.

While timing of alcohol consumption is likely to be an important issue when assessing the risk of malfor-

mations, few studies have studied this aspect.

### Neuropsychological development

Daily average intake of alcohol during pregnancy may affect intelligence<sup>[45,46]</sup>. IQ may be reduced by up to 25 IQ points in children of alcoholics compared to children of women with no or very limited intake, whereas intake of 2-4 drinks/d on average may reduce IQ by 5-7 IQ-points<sup>[47,48]</sup>.

Executive functions<sup>[49,50]</sup> and attention deficits in children are among the most commonly reported effects of daily drinking during pregnancy<sup>[51-53]</sup>. It has been suggested that the attention deficit potentially caused by high prenatal alcohol exposure may constitute a specific subtype of Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder<sup>[54]</sup>. Cerebral structural changes after prenatal alcohol exposure have been observed in several areas considered to be involved in attention processes<sup>[55]</sup>.

Daily average prenatal alcohol exposure has also been associated with deficits in, e.g., speed of information processing<sup>[56]</sup>, memory<sup>[52]</sup>, learning<sup>[57]</sup>, spelling, and behaviour<sup>[57]</sup>. Children of alcoholics have also been reported to have more psychiatric and psychopathological symptoms<sup>[58]</sup>.

Based on > 30 studies a recent systematic review showed that among studies reporting maternal intake of more than four drinks per day on average, only one study showed no effect on motor function, while among all studies reporting intake levels of less than 10 drinks/wk on average, only one study showed deficits<sup>[59]</sup> in gross and fine motor function. Intake of 1-7 drinks/wk on average was not associated with such deficits<sup>[59]</sup>.

In a recent meta-analysis, the association between average alcohol intake of 0 - ≤ 6 drinks per week on average and neuropsychological development was assessed as follows: (1) > 0 - ≤ 3 drinks per week and visual and motor function, cognition, behaviour, language and verbal function; (2) 3- ≤ 6 drinks per week and visual and motor function, attention, cognition, behaviour, language and verbal function; and (3) > 0 - ≤ 6 drinks per week and visual and motor function, cognition and behaviour was evaluated<sup>[60]</sup>. Overall, no significant associations were observed between any of the exposure categories and the included neuropsychological outcomes (*i.e.*, visual and motor function, attention, cognition, behaviour, development, and language skills). When restricting analyses to studies of high quality (as determined by Newcastle-Ottawa-assessment-scale score), two significant results appeared, one showing a negative and one showing a positive effect: Three studies with approximately 11900 children aged 9 mo to 5 years yielded a statistically significant detrimental association between intake of 3 - ≤ 6 drinks per week on average and child behaviour ( $P = 0.01$ )<sup>[60]</sup>, while 7 studies with approximately 26100 children, yielded a small, statistically significant, beneficial association between intake of > 0 - ≤ 6 drinks per week on average and child cognition ( $P =$

0.03). It should be noted that cognition was measured by different IQ-tests in three studies (WPSSI-R, WISC, Raven), the Bayley Scales, Mental Development Index, in three studies, and the Bracken School Readiness Assessment in one study<sup>[60]</sup>.

It is possible, however, that the effect of alcohol on child IQ may be modified by genetic predisposition<sup>[61]</sup>, but very little evidence on this issue has been published. A recent study on behaviour not included in the meta-analysis showed no effect of average weekly intake of alcohol on behaviour in 5-year-old children<sup>[62]</sup>.

In conclusion, average daily intake of alcohol during pregnancy has been associated with intrauterine growth restriction, preterm birth, foetal death throughout pregnancy, malformations, poor neurocognitive development and may cause deficits in psychomotor function, attention, memory, executive function, intelligence, behaviour and learning. However, less than average daily average consumption has not been systematically associated with any of these outcomes. With respect to early spontaneous abortion, however, the many methodological problems inherent in such studies should warrant caution in the interpretation of the results. Overall, the results suggest that if any, the potential effect of average weekly alcohol consumption is likely to be small.

## BINGE DRINKING INDEPENDENTLY OF HIGH DAILY AVERAGE INTAKE

Pregnancy and birth outcomes: The risk of foetal death in clinically recognized pregnancies has been assessed in one study<sup>[37]</sup>. Binge drinking, including number of binge episodes and timing of binge drinking, was not associated with overall risk of foetal death or risk of miscarriage in the first or early second trimester (until pregnancy week 21)<sup>[37]</sup>. Women reporting ≥ 3 binge episodes had an increased risk of stillbirth (week 22 or later, OR = 1.56, 95%CI: 1.01-2.40), but timing of binge drinking was not associated with stillbirth<sup>[37]</sup>.

Few studies have assessed the association between alcohol binge drinking and anthropometric measures: In studies adjusting for potential confounders, no significant or clinically relevant associations were described between binge drinking and weight, length or head circumference at birth<sup>[63-67]</sup>. Only two studies reported an adjusted difference in birth weight, respectively -41 g 95%CI: -92; 10<sup>[65]</sup> and -41 g 95%CI: -108; 27 for ≥ 2 binge episodes<sup>[67]</sup>. The remaining studies either did not show the adjusted results<sup>[63,66]</sup>, or showed no measures of association, but simply stated that no differences were observed<sup>[64]</sup>. Number of binge episodes was not associated with anthropometric measures<sup>[67]</sup>, while timing of binge drinking has not been reported.

Few studies, mainly of poor quality, have assessed birth defects including features of FAS<sup>[68]</sup>. One study reported that newborn children of binge drinkers had slightly shorter palpebral fissures, but no association

was reported with other facial features<sup>[69]</sup>. Two subsequent studies not included in the above systematic review<sup>[68]</sup> showed no association between binge drinking and cryptorchidism<sup>[43]</sup> or between number or timing of binge episodes and congenital heart defects, in particular atrial and ventricular septal defects<sup>[70]</sup>.

A systematic review of the effects of alcohol binge drinking suggested that prenatal binge drinking might be associated with impaired neurodevelopment<sup>[68]</sup>. Based on five studies with different definitions of binge drinking, another systematic review concluded that the issue of whether prenatal alcohol binge drinking was potentially associated with motor dysfunction in children was unsettled<sup>[59]</sup>.

These issues were updated in a recent meta-analysis including nine outcomes (visual and motor function, attention, memory, executive function, cognition, behaviour, language and verbal, academic reading performance, and academic math performance)<sup>[60]</sup>: When including all eligible studies irrespective of quality, a significant detrimental association between binge drinking and child cognition was observed (Cohen's  $d$  -0.13; 95%CI: -0.21, -0.05). The analysis included 8 studies on children aged 6 mo to 14 years. However, the results of this meta-analysis were no longer significant when limited to data from studies of high quality<sup>[60]</sup>. Analyses of motor function (6 studies), executive function (3 studies), attention (3 studies) and behaviour (5 studies) showed no significant or clinically relevant associations<sup>[60]</sup>.

In conclusion, prenatal alcohol binge drinking independently of high, average daily intake does not seem to be systematically associated with short or long term adverse outcomes to a clinically relevant degree. However, timing of binge drinking is not well studied.

## RECOMMENDATIONS

Official recommendations and guidelines from health authorities are meant to guide clinical practice and health behaviour among patients and the population at large. Many guidelines and recommendations are based on scientific evidence, but evidence evolves and changes over time, and the interpretation of the evidence may vary depending on the cultural setting. For example, the Gin Epidemic in England was following by a petition to Parliament to more strict control with the distillation process, while the Prohibition in the United States was followed by direct denial that alcohol during pregnancy might be harmful<sup>[3]</sup>.

## OFFICIAL RECOMMENDATIONS

In the 1990s, health authorities and health professionals in most countries recommended that pregnant women should abstain from alcohol during pregnancy<sup>[17,71-73]</sup>. However, in some countries, recommendations on alcohol during pregnancy have changed considerably over the past two decades.

In Australia, for example, the 1992 guidelines

suggested that pregnant women should abstain from alcohol<sup>[73]</sup>. However, the 2001 guideline modified this view to suggest that while pregnant women should consider not drinking at all and should never become intoxicated, "if they choose to drink, over a week, should have less than seven standard drinks, and, on any one day, no more than two standard drinks"<sup>[74]</sup>. Two years before, in 1999, a comparable recommendation was issued by the Danish Health and Medicines Authority (previously Danish National Board of Health): "Avoid alcohol in pregnancy if possible; if you drink, drink no more than one drink per day; do not drink every day"<sup>[75]</sup>. In the United Kingdom, the recommendation from the Department of Health suggested that intake of up to 1-2 United Kingdom units once or twice a week may be acceptable.

In 2007, the Danish Health and Medicines Authority again changed its recommendation to: "If you are pregnant: Avoid alcohol. If you are trying to conceive: Avoid alcohol, to be on the safe side"<sup>[76]</sup>. Around the same time, a draft guideline was made available in Australia, leading to the 2009 guideline: "not drinking is the safest option"<sup>[77]</sup>. Only in the United Kingdom, the Department of Health and National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence and RCOG still condone low levels of alcohol intake (as of November 2015): "Women who are pregnant or trying to conceive should avoid alcohol altogether". However, if they do choose to drink, to minimize the risk to the baby, we recommend they should not drink more than 1-2 units once or twice a week and should not get drunk"<sup>[78,79]</sup>.

## ACTUAL RECOMMENDATIONS FROM HEALTH PROFESSIONALS

While health authorities in most countries recommend abstinence from alcohol during pregnancy, little is known about the actual information practice of health professionals.

### Doctors

In 2002-2003, in Australia, a postal survey among health professionals showed that only 57%-67% of general practitioners and obstetricians routinely asked pregnant women about alcohol use<sup>[80]</sup>. The complex recommendation (consider not drinking/do not become intoxicated/have < 7 drinks over a week/on any one day have no more than 2 standard drinks) was provided in its entirety by only 5% of obstetricians and 17% of GPs<sup>[80]</sup>.

A Danish study among GPs in 2000 and 2009 showed that in 2000, when a complex recommendation was used, only 5% spontaneously mentioned all three statements that made up the recommendation (avoid alcohol in pregnancy/if you drink, drink no more than one drink per day/do not drink every day) and 26% explicitly said they did not know the recommendation. In 2009, when the recommendation had been



**Table 1 Potential advantages and disadvantages of recommending abstinence vs a more condoning approach**

	<b>Abstinence</b>	<b>Condoning approach</b>
Advantages	Simple message No alcohol = no alcohol induced adverse effects Safest choice considering potential uncertainties related to interpretation of the scientific evidence	Little evidence that a low intake is harmful
Disadvantages	Little evidence that a low intake is harmful May cause guilt in women who have been drinking a few drinks, especially in early pregnancy What are health professionals going to tell women who have been drinking a few drinks, especially in early pregnancy? Disagreements between health authorities and health professionals may lead to confusion and worry among pregnant women	Complex message To regard recommendations as guidance rather than an absolute limit may increase alcohol consumption among pregnant women May be regarded as guidance rather than an absolute limit Alcoholics may have difficulties stopping after intake of only small amounts

changed into complete abstinence, 87% knew the new recommendation. Even so, only 53% recommended abstinence to pregnant women in 2009<sup>[81]</sup>.

The fact that many doctors do not provide information to pregnant women in accordance with the official recommendations seems to be in accordance with the attitudes of many doctors. American gynaecologists have been shown not to consider a mean intake of 4-5 drinks/wk to be harmful<sup>[82]</sup>, and only 51% of Danish GPs believed that pregnant women should completely abstain from alcohol<sup>[81]</sup>.

### **Midwives and community nurses**

Danish midwives have reported attitudes and information practice comparable with GPs: Thus, in 2009, only 46% recommended abstinence, even though more than 90% knew the official recommendation of abstinence, and only 48% believed that pregnant women should completely abstain from alcohol<sup>[83]</sup>. Among Australian community nurses caring for pregnant women 41% reported routinely asking about alcohol use<sup>[80]</sup>.

## **ARGUMENTS FOR AND AGAINST DIFFERENT RECOMMENDATIONS**

Some of the advantages and disadvantages of recommending abstinence vs a more condoning approach are listed in Table 1.

A general recommendation about alcohol intake during pregnancy may be based on two different arguments, both based on the existing literature<sup>[75]</sup>: (1) essentially, intake of small amounts of alcohol has not been consistently associated with adverse effects; (2) It has not been proved that intake of small amounts of alcohol in pregnancy is not harmful, hence pregnant women should abstain from alcohol - or as it is often phrased: No safe level of alcohol consumption has been established.

A recommendation of abstinence is based on the latter argument. However, most scientific studies are based on the (statistical) hypothesis that intake of small amounts of alcohol are not harmful to the foetus. But

a hypothesis of no harm can never be proved, as it is impossible to prove that something does not exist.

## **ALCOHOL DRINKING AMONG PREGNANT WOMEN**

### **Drinking patterns**

Alcohol consumption among women of child bearing age is often high. This is concerning since many pregnancies are unplanned<sup>[84]</sup>. In the United Kingdom, approximately 85% of women of child bearing age drink alcohol<sup>[85]</sup>, and in Denmark, Norway and Sweden as many as 89%-95% of pregnant women admit to drinking alcohol before pregnancy<sup>[86-88]</sup>. In the United Kingdom, the average consumption of women aged 16-44 years was approximately 10-11 drinks/wk in 2011<sup>[89]</sup>, virtually unchanged since 2007<sup>[85]</sup>. In the United States, binge drinking prevalence (28.2%) and intensity (9.3 drinks per occasion) has been reported to be highest among persons aged 18-24 years<sup>[90]</sup> and this is in line with a general observation that, e.g., college students in many countries report particularly high intake<sup>[91]</sup>. In Sub-Saharan Africa ten countries are among the 22 countries worldwide with the highest increase in per capita alcohol consumption in the recent years<sup>[92]</sup>. While the proportion of female abstainers is generally high in this region, the proportion of binge drinkers is high<sup>[92]</sup>.

Even so, most people who binge drink are not alcoholics or alcohol dependent<sup>[93]</sup>.

Among pregnant women, reported consumption is considerably lower, but with huge variation from one country to another. In Denmark and Norway, 85%-90% of pregnant women have been reported to reduce alcohol consumption after recognition of pregnancy<sup>[86,87]</sup>.

In a Danish study, approximately 70% of pregnant women admitted to drinking alcohol during the second trimester, i.e., after recognition of pregnancy<sup>[86]</sup>. Even so, the actual consumption level was low with an average of 1 drink/wk, and 92% of the women reported a maximum intake of 3 drinks/wk<sup>[86]</sup>, comparable to a report from Sweden<sup>[88]</sup>. Approximately 1% admitted to drinking  $\geq 7$  drinks/wk<sup>[86]</sup>. In Norway, only 23%

report alcohol consumption after pregnancy week 12<sup>[87]</sup>, comparable to new Danish data on current levels of alcohol intake, and in the United States, 15% reported any alcohol consumption, including 3.5% who admitted to either intake of  $\geq 7$  drinks/wk or binge drinking<sup>[94]</sup>.

Interestingly, while 25% in Denmark reported intake of 2 or more drinks on a single occasion in the 2<sup>nd</sup> trimester in the late 1990s<sup>[86]</sup> none did so in Sweden<sup>[88]</sup>.

Interestingly, new up-to-date information on prevalence of alcohol consumption is difficult to find.

In Denmark, approximately 50% of pregnant women admit to alcohol binge drinking during pregnancy<sup>[12,86]</sup>. The majority do so before recognition of pregnancy with a peak in week 3 after the last menstrual period around the time of ovulation, and hence around the time of conception for most women<sup>[12]</sup>. In Norway, 25% admit to binge drinking in weeks 0-6, *i.e.*, before recognition of pregnancy<sup>[87]</sup>. In the United States, only 3% have previously admitted to binge drinking during pregnancy<sup>[95]</sup>.

There may be several explanations for these differences. As opposed to studies investigating the association between an exposure (*e.g.*, alcohol consumption) and adverse outcomes<sup>[96]</sup>, analyses of prevalence of consumption are likely to be much more influenced by selection bias. For example, the above study showing that nearly 70% of pregnant women drink alcohol during pregnancy, and that 50% binge drink in early pregnancy, was based on a sample of 92% of eligible pregnant women<sup>[86]</sup>. A large, prospective cohort study from the same period showed that only 27% of pregnant women in Denmark reported binge drinking in early pregnancy<sup>[97]</sup>, but the participation rate was lower, approximately 30%<sup>[97,98]</sup>. While the former study used personal interviews the latter used telephone interviews, but the questions on binge drinking were essentially identical. Hence, the discrepancy in proportions of binge drinkers was most likely due to selection bias. Previous studies have suggested a North-South difference in drinking pattern in Europe, but especially among young (non-pregnant) people, this difference is diminishing<sup>[99]</sup>. Therefore, reported differences in consumption patterns should be interpreted with great caution.

## CHARACTERISTICS OF ALCOHOL DRINKERS DURING PREGNANCY

With a view to identifying alcohol drinkers during pregnancy, only few studies have attempted to assess risk factors associated with average alcohol intake and binge drinking during pregnancy<sup>[86,94,95,100]</sup>.

Even so, the pattern of risk factors is fairly consistent across different populations: Smoking and being single are consistent risk factors for high average alcohol intake, while employment and high income are less consistent findings<sup>[86,94]</sup>. Consistent risk factors for binge drinking are smoking and being single<sup>[86,95,100]</sup>. Nulliparity and employment/high income are less

consistent findings<sup>[86,95,100]</sup>. One study has assessed risk factors for binge drinking before and after recognition of pregnancy and found somewhat different patterns<sup>[100]</sup>: Age 25-29 years, nulliparity,  $\leq 12$  mo's time to achieve a pregnancy, late recognition of pregnancy at week 6 or later, being a lower grade professional compared to being unskilled or unemployed, smoking, being single and some average alcohol intake were risk factors in the period before recognition of pregnancy. Multiparity, overweight and obesity, unplanned pregnancy, early recognition of pregnancy, self-reported mental disorders, smoking, being single and some average alcohol intake were risk factors after recognition of pregnancy<sup>[100]</sup>.

Characteristics associated with alcohol-related admissions (based on ICD-10 codes) in pregnancy have been studied in Australia: Residence in a remote/very remote area, being Australian-born, having had a previous pregnancy, smoking in the current pregnancy, and presenting late to antenatal care<sup>[101]</sup>.

These findings would suggest that while many smokers and single women may not have a problem with alcohol, health professionals should perhaps be more aware of potential alcohol problems among these groups and actively ask them about alcohol consumption. To the extent that nulliparous women engage in binge drinking before recognition of pregnancy more often than multiparous women health authorities should focus their information on binge drinking to young women and women planning their first pregnancy.

## ATTITUDES AND COMPLIANCE WITH OFFICIAL RECOMMENDATIONS

While it is clear that many health professionals do not seem to recommend abstinence to pregnant women, few studies have assessed what pregnant women actually believe or do, and whether their attitudes and drinking habits are influenced by official recommendations and advice from health professionals.

In a Danish study, 76% of the women considered some alcohol intake during pregnancy to be acceptable, mostly on a weekly level<sup>[102]</sup>. Binge drinking, however, was considered to be harmful by 85%<sup>[102]</sup>. These attitudes were not associated with knowledge about the official recommendation or with discussions between the woman and her general practitioner or midwife about alcohol during pregnancy<sup>[102]</sup>. These results seem to be in line with data from Australia, showing that 72% of pregnant women did not comply with the recent 2009 recommendation of alcohol abstinence during pregnancy<sup>[103]</sup>.

A few studies have evaluated the potential change in alcohol consumption in relation to changes in guidelines, allowing some alcohol intake in pregnancy: Both in Australia<sup>[104]</sup> and in Denmark<sup>[97]</sup> no significant or clinically relevant changes in drinking habits were found among pregnant women after relaxation of the

guidelines for sensible drinking during pregnancy.

Most Danish women had received information on alcohol from the mass media or relatives, but most women believed that information about alcohol during pregnancy could best be communicated to them by health personnel<sup>[102]</sup>. Only 21% were aware of the official recommendation from the Danish Health and Medicines Authority<sup>[102]</sup>. One third had discussed alcohol with their general practitioner or midwife, but these women had mostly been advised that some alcohol intake was acceptable<sup>[102]</sup>.

## THE ROLE OF RANDOM ERROR AND BIAS

It is evident that an average daily intake of alcohol during pregnancy is potentially harmful and should be avoided. However, it is less clear if average weekly intake of alcohol may have adverse effects on foetal development and later child development, since the vast majority of studies show no association. If indeed low, average weekly amounts of alcohol during pregnancy are harmful, the effects are likely to be small. When planning and carrying out studies looking for potentially small differences, the methodological challenges are inherently greater, and assessment of the influence of random error and systematic bias becomes paramount, and this assessment may lead different researchers to different views.

The results of any epidemiological study can potentially be due to random error or bias. Considering the increasing number of studies on the association between prenatal alcohol consumption and adverse pregnancy outcomes, the role of chance becomes an ever more important factor to consider when assessing the evidence. In the case of multiple statistical tests, one or more significant findings - positive or negative - may be expected because of chance alone, even in the absence of a true effect. For example, multiple tests may be conducted and reported in a single paper<sup>[105]</sup>, or in a meta-analysis, for example the cited review on child neuropsychological development involving numerous studies<sup>[60]</sup>, where a few significant findings would be expected.

Many of the studies, particularly those with long-term follow-up of children, are hampered by potential selection bias because of low participation rates, or missing information on key variables including key confounders; and because participants and non-participants in some studies differed substantially with respect to a large number of important potential confounders<sup>[106]</sup>. One way of dealing with this problem is multiple imputation, which has been used in recent studies<sup>[13]</sup>.

Publication bias is a potential problem, and if so studies showing no association between alcohol intake and adverse outcomes are most likely to remain unpublished.

Information bias is a possibility in all studies of alcohol during pregnancy<sup>[107]</sup>. Generally, it is usually assumed that pregnant women probably tend to underestimate their alcohol intake, whereas overestimation - while not impossible - is unlikely. In prospective cohort studies, non-differential misclassification would be expected, because the outcome is unknown at the time of reporting alcohol consumption. Hence, with two exposure categories, as seen in some studies, results will most likely be biased towards the null, *i.e.*, no effect. Even so, with several exposure categories, non-differential misclassification due to underreporting could be expected to lead to bias away from the null value<sup>[107]</sup>.

Confounding from important confounders was not accounted for, especially in many studies from the 1980s and early 1990s. Residual confounding is therefore likely to be a problem in many studies, and may explain both findings of adverse as well as beneficial effects.

As suggested by the Newcastle-Ottawa-Assessment-Scores in the recent meta-analysis on child neuropsychological development<sup>[60]</sup>, few studies achieve very high scores, suggesting ample room for methodological improvement in future studies.

## DISCUSSION

### *Is it possible to reach a common consensus on everyday praxis?*

The main arguments for abstinence from alcohol during pregnancy is that no safe level of drinking has been established, and that alcohol induced adverse effects cannot occur in the absence of alcohol intake. While the latter argument is indisputable, the former may be challenged. As suggested above, there is no clear, systematic evidence that intake of a few alcohol containing drinks a week will harm the foetus to any measurable degree.

It is particularly interesting that medical ethics have moved in the direction of increased autonomy and informed choice for patients. The British Medical Association advises that "Doctors should respond honestly to direct questions from patients and, as far as possible, answer questions as fully as patients wish"<sup>[108]</sup>. It has been suggested that where the available evidence does not suggest a clear and unambiguous answer to the question "how much is safe to drink during pregnancy?", an honest response would be to communicate this uncertainty to the pregnant woman<sup>[109]</sup>.

While health authorities generally favour informed choice in many circumstances, based on impartial and neutral information, this principle does not seem to apply when it comes to alcohol in pregnancy. If it did, health personnel should convey to pregnant women the potential harmful but also the potential beneficial effects and the potential uncertainty related to individual vulnerability at low intake levels. No health authorities advocate this, probably based on the assumption that the risk of harming an otherwise healthy foetus (non-

maleficence) should be prioritized over the risk of failing to do good (beneficence)<sup>[109]</sup>. For example, in an editorial from 2011, a representative of The Danish Health and Medicines Authority wrote that “it seems that alcohol, especially in the first 3 mo of pregnancy, may increase the risk of miscarriage, low birth weight, preterm birth and delayed development in the uterus - even at low intake levels”<sup>[110]</sup>, referring to a study on the risk of preterm delivery<sup>[14]</sup>. This study showed a significantly increased risk of preterm delivery only for nulliparous women drinking  $\geq 7$  drinks/wk (OR = 2.91, 95%CI: 1.29-6.55), but a significantly reduced risk for all women drinking 2-3½ drinks/wk (OR = 0.80, 95%CI: 0.68-0.96)<sup>[14]</sup>.

At the same time it is evident from the few relevant studies that many health professionals do not believe that pregnant women must totally abstain from alcohol<sup>[80-83]</sup>. Also, pregnant women in Australia and Denmark did not seem to change their drinking habits, even when less restrictive recommendations were issued<sup>[97,104]</sup>. Hence, it seems that the mere existence of an official guideline or recommendation concerning alcohol in pregnancy has not been enough to standardize the information provided to pregnant women and to modify their behaviour in relation to alcohol.

In some cases, guidelines from health authorities are written by civil servants and epidemiologists with no or very limited clinical experience. In Denmark, the literature review and guideline from 1999 allowing a small, weekly intake, was written mainly by clinicians<sup>[75]</sup>. The 2007 recommendation of abstinence and the arguments supporting it was written solely by representatives of The Danish Health and Medicines Authority<sup>[76]</sup> and two epidemiologists<sup>[111]</sup>.

Perhaps this is the real issue: Guidelines issued by many health authorities do not take into account the everyday clinical communication, where pregnant women turn up admitting to some alcohol intake, often one drink per week or even less. Health personnel have to advise pregnant women in these situations, and telling the pregnant woman that a single drink may have harmed the foetus is not in line with current evidence. But if one drink is unlikely to harm the foetus, where is the limit? This question is asked every day, and if health authorities do not supply health personnel with an answer, each clinician will have to come up with a responsible answer in line with current evidence.

The Danish Health and Medicines Authority write that “General practitioners and midwives will meet pregnant women, who have a bad conscience, because they have been drinking alcohol, before recognition of pregnancy. These women should be met with a risk assessment based on the existing evidence that intake of one drink a day is associated with a small risk for the child”<sup>[76]</sup>. It is left to the health personnel to decide if the focus of the information should be “there is a (small) risk” or “the risk is negligible, so do not worry”.

Most likely the discrepancy between guidelines and recommendations from health authorities and the information practice of health personnel will continue to exist. Mainly because guidelines of total abstinence are not clearly evidence based and not in line with current focus on autonomy and informed choice for patients, and because guidelines may be written by non-clinicians, who do not consider and have no experience with the everyday communication between health personnel and pregnant women.

There is little evidence to support a guideline or recommendation of total abstinence, and considering the vast number of studies already published on the topic, it is perhaps surprising that so few studies suggest a risk at low intake levels. Guidelines recommending abstinence may seem an obvious choice because the message is simple. However, simplistic messages that are not clearly evidence-based do not necessarily answer the specific and detailed questions of pregnant women. Health personnel are faced with an increasing amount of information that they are expected to pass on to pregnant women, including messages about lifestyle, and the information must be given within the context of the individual woman. In the absence of clear evidence that abstinence from alcohol is the only right choice, many clinicians will probably continue to focus on other important aspects of pregnancy rather than insisting that a drink a week or less is potentially harmful.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **Aristotle**. Problemata III, 4. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press, 1961
- 2 **Aristotle**. Historia animalium IX, 588a6. Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press, 1991
- 3 **Warner RH**, Rosett HL. The effects of drinking on offspring: an historical survey of the American and British literature. *J Stud Alcohol* 1975; **36**: 1395-1420 [DOI: 10.15288/jsa.1975.36.1395]
- 4 **Baumont T**. Remarks made in opposition to the views of Dr. Clutterbuck on abstinence from spirituous liquors. *Lancet* 1842; **2**: 340-343 [DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(02)85270-9]
- 5 **J. E.** Reports on idiocy. *Am J Med Sci* 1849; **17**: 421-441
- 6 **Sullivan WC**. A note on the influence of maternal inebriety on the offspring. *J Ment Sci* 1899; **45**: 489-503 [DOI: 10.1192/bjp.45.190.489]
- 7 **Fuchs F**, Fuchs AR, Poblete VF, Risk A. Effect of alcohol on threatened premature labor. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1967; **99**: 627-637 [PMID: 6051158]
- 8 **Graff G**. Failure to prevent premature labor with ethanol. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1971; **110**: 878-880 [PMID: 5562007]
- 9 **Castrén O**, Gummerus M, Saarikoski S. Treatment of imminent premature labour. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand* 1975; **54**: 95-100 [PMID: 1094787 DOI: 10.3109/00016347509156739]
- 10 **Lemoine P**, Harousseau H, Borteyru J P, Menuet J-C. Les enfants de parents alcooliques: Anomalies observées a propos de 127 cas. *Ouest méd* 1968; **21**: 476-482
- 11 **Jones KL**, Smith DW. Recognition of the fetal alcohol syndrome in early infancy. *Lancet* 1973; **302**: 999-1001 [PMID: 4127281 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(73)91092-1]
- 12 **Kesmodel U**. Self-reported intake of alcohol: methods and approaches. In: Preedy VR, Watson RR (eds). Comprehensive handbook of alcohol related pathology. London: Elsevier, 2004: 1367-1382 [DOI: 10.1016/B978-012564370-2/50104-5]



- 13 **Kesmodel US**, Bertrand J, Støvring H, Skarphness B, Denny CH, Mortensen EL. The effect of different alcohol drinking patterns in early to mid pregnancy on the child's intelligence, attention, and executive function. *BJOG* 2012; **119**: 1180-1190 [PMID: 22712700 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.2012.03393.x]
- 14 **Albertsen K**, Andersen AM, Olsen J, Grønbaek M. Alcohol consumption during pregnancy and the risk of preterm delivery. *Am J Epidemiol* 2004; **159**: 155-161 [PMID: 14718217 DOI: 10.1093/aje/kwh034]
- 15 **Bertrand J**, Floyd RL, Weber MK, O'Connor M, Riley EP, Johnson KA, Cohen DE, National Task Force on FAS/FAE. Fetal alcohol syndrome: guideline for referral and diagnosis; Atlanta, GA, United States: Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, 2004
- 16 **Hoyme HE**, May PA, Kalberg WO, Kodituwakku P, Gossage JP, Trujillo PM, Buckley DG, Miller JH, Aragon AS, Khaole N, Viljoen DL, Jones KL, Robinson LK. A practical clinical approach to diagnosis of fetal alcohol spectrum disorders: clarification of the 1996 institute of medicine criteria. *Pediatrics* 2005; **115**: 39-47 [PMID: 15629980]
- 17 American Academy of Pediatrics Committee on Substance Abuse and Committee on Children with Disabilities: Fetal alcohol syndrome and fetal alcohol effects. *Pediatrics* 1993; **91**: 1004-1006 [PMID: 8507280]
- 18 **Church MW**, Eldis F, Blakley BW, Bawle EV. Hearing, language, speech, vestibular, and dentofacial disorders in fetal alcohol syndrome. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 1997; **21**: 227-237 [PMID: 9113257 DOI: 10.1111/j.1530-0277.1997.tb03796.x]
- 19 **Spohr HL**, Willms J, Steinhausen HC. Prenatal alcohol exposure and long-term developmental consequences. *Lancet* 1993; **341**: 907-910 [PMID: 7681518 DOI: 10.1016/0140-6736(93)91207-3]
- 20 **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention**. Fetal Alcohol Spectrum Disorders (FASDs). [accessed 2015 Nov 11]. Available from: URL: <http://www.cdc.gov/NCBDDD/fasf/facts.html>
- 21 **Patra J**, Bakker R, Irving H, Jaddoe VW, Malini S, Rehm J. Dose-response relationship between alcohol consumption before and during pregnancy and the risks of low birthweight, preterm birth and small for gestational age (SGA)-a systematic review and meta-analyses. *BJOG* 2011; **118**: 1411-1421 [PMID: 21729235 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.2011.03050.x]
- 22 **Kesmodel U**, Olsen SF, Secher NJ. Does alcohol increase the risk of preterm delivery? *Epidemiology* 2000; **11**: 512-518 [PMID: 10955402 DOI: 10.1097/00001648-200009000-00005]
- 23 **Weinberg CR**, Wilcox AJ. Reproductive Epidemiology. In Rothman KJ, Greenland Sed (eds): Modern Epidemiology. Lippincott-Raven, 1998: 585-608
- 24 **Kesmodel U**, Wisborg K, Olsen SF, Henriksen TB, Secher NJ. Moderate alcohol intake in pregnancy and the risk of spontaneous abortion. *Alcohol Alcohol* 2002; **37**: 87-92 [PMID: 11825863 DOI: 10.1093/alcalc/37.1.87]
- 25 **Windham GC**, Von Behren J, Fenster L, Schaefer C, Swan SH. Moderate maternal alcohol consumption and risk of spontaneous abortion. *Epidemiology* 1997; **8**: 509-514 [PMID: 9270952 DOI: 10.1097/00001648-199709000-00007]
- 26 **Andersen AM**, Andersen PK, Olsen J, Grønbaek M, Strandberg-Larsen K. Moderate alcohol intake during pregnancy and risk of fetal death. *Int J Epidemiol* 2012; **41**: 405-413 [PMID: 22253313 DOI: 10.1093/ije/dyr189]
- 27 **Sokol RJ**. Alcohol and spontaneous abortion. *Lancet* 1980; **2**: 1079 [PMID: 6107699 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(80)92296-5]
- 28 **Sokol RJ**, Miller SI, Reed G. Alcohol abuse during pregnancy: an epidemiologic study. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 1980; **4**: 135-145 [PMID: 6990816 DOI: 10.1111/j.1530-0277.1980.tb05628.x]
- 29 **Cavallo F**, Russo R, Zotti C, Camerlengo A, Ruggerini AM. Moderate alcohol consumption and spontaneous abortion. *Alcohol Alcohol* 1995; **30**: 195-201 [PMID: 7662038]
- 30 **Dlugosz L**, Belanger K, Hellenbrand K, Holford TR, Leaderer B, Bracken MB. Maternal caffeine consumption and spontaneous abortion: a prospective cohort study. *Epidemiology* 1996; **7**: 250-255 [PMID: 8728437 DOI: 10.1097/00001648-199605000-00006]
- 31 **Parazzini F**, Boccione L, La Vecchia C, Negri E, Fedele L. Maternal and paternal moderate daily alcohol consumption and unexplained miscarriages. *Br J Obstet Gynaecol* 1990; **97**: 618-622 [PMID: 2390506 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.1990.tb02550.x]
- 32 **Parazzini F**, Tozzi L, Chatenoud L, Restelli S, Luchini L, La Vecchia C. Alcohol and risk of spontaneous abortion. *Hum Reprod* 1994; **9**: 1950-1953 [PMID: 7844232]
- 33 **Zhang H**, Bracken MB. Tree-based, two-stage risk factor analysis for spontaneous abortion. *Am J Epidemiol* 1996; **144**: 989-996 [PMID: 8916510 DOI: 10.1093/oxfordjournals.aje.a008869]
- 34 **McDonald AD**, Armstrong BG, Sloan M. Cigarette, alcohol, and coffee consumption and prematurity. *Am J Public Health* 1992; **82**: 87-90 [PMID: 1536341 DOI: 10.2105/AJPH.82.1.87]
- 35 **Harlap S**, Shiono PH. Alcohol, smoking, and incidence of spontaneous abortions in the first and second trimester. *Lancet* 1980; **2**: 173-176 [PMID: 6105340 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(80)90061-6]
- 36 **Windham GC**, Fenster L, Swan SH. Moderate maternal and paternal alcohol consumption and the risk of spontaneous abortion. *Epidemiology* 1992; **3**: 364-370 [PMID: 1637900 DOI: 10.1097/00001648-199207000-00012]
- 37 **Strandberg-Larsen K**, Nielsen NR, Grønbaek M, Andersen PK, Olsen J, Andersen AM. Binge drinking in pregnancy and risk of fetal death. *Obstet Gynecol* 2008; **111**: 602-609 [PMID: 18310362 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e3181661431]
- 38 **Henderson J**, Gray R, Brocklehurst P. Systematic review of effects of low-moderate prenatal alcohol exposure on pregnancy outcome. *BJOG* 2007; **114**: 243-252 [PMID: 17233797 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.2006.01163.x]
- 39 **Kesmodel U**, Wisborg K, Olsen SF, Henriksen TB, Secher NJ. Moderate alcohol intake during pregnancy and the risk of stillbirth and death in the first year of life. *Am J Epidemiol* 2002; **155**: 305-312 [PMID: 11836194 DOI: 10.1093/aje/155.4.305]
- 40 **Mills JL**, Graubard BI. Is moderate drinking during pregnancy associated with an increased risk for malformations? *Pediatrics* 1987; **80**: 309-314 [PMID: 3627880]
- 41 **Rostand A**, Kaminski M, Lelong N, Dehaene P, Delestret I, Klein-Bertrand C, Querleu D, Crepin G. Alcohol use in pregnancy, craniofacial features, and fetal growth. *J Epidemiol Community Health* 1990; **44**: 302-306 [PMID: 2277252 DOI: 10.1136/jech.44.4.302]
- 42 **McDonald AD**, Armstrong BG, Sloan M. Cigarette, alcohol, and coffee consumption and congenital defects. *Am J Public Health* 1992; **82**: 91-93 [PMID: 1536342 DOI: 10.2105/AJPH.82.1.91]
- 43 **Damgaard IN**, Jensen TK, Petersen JH, Skakkebaek NE, Toppa J, Main KM. Cryptorchidism and maternal alcohol consumption during pregnancy. *Environ Health Perspect* 2007; **115**: 272-277 [PMID: 17384777 DOI: 10.1289/ehp.9608]
- 44 **Ernhart CB**, Sokol RJ, Ager JW, Morrow-Tlucak M, Martier S. Alcohol-related birth defects: assessing the risk. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 1989; **562**: 159-172 [PMID: 2742273 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.1989.tb01014.x]
- 45 **Mukherjee RA**, Hollins S, Turk J. Fetal alcohol spectrum disorder: an overview. *J R Soc Med* 2006; **99**: 298-302 [PMID: 16738372 DOI: 10.1258/jrsm.99.6.298]
- 46 **Mattson SN**, Riley EP, Gramling L, Delis DC, Jones KL. Heavy prenatal alcohol exposure with or without physical features of fetal alcohol syndrome leads to IQ deficits. *J Pediatr* 1997; **131**: 718-721 [PMID: 9403652 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-3476(97)70099-4]
- 47 **Streissguth AP**, Barr HM, Sampson PD, Darby BL, Martin DC. IQ at age 4 in relation to maternal alcohol use and smoking during pregnancy. *Dev Psychol* 1989; **25**: 3-11 [DOI: 10.1037/0012-1649.25.1.3]
- 48 **Streissguth AP**, Barr HM, Sampson PD. Moderate prenatal alcohol exposure: effects on child IQ and learning problems at age 7 1/2 years. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 1990; **14**: 662-669 [PMID: 2264594 DOI: 10.1111/j.1530-0277.1990.tb01224.x]
- 49 **Connor PD**, Sampson PD, Bookstein FL, Barr HM, Streissguth AP. Direct and indirect effects of prenatal alcohol damage on executive function. *Dev Neuropsychol* 2000; **18**: 331-354 [PMID: 11385829 DOI: 10.1207/S1532694204Connor]

- 50 **Noland JS**, Singer LT, Arendt RE, Minnes S, Short EJ, Bearer CF. Executive functioning in preschool-age children prenatally exposed to alcohol, cocaine, and marijuana. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 2003; **27**: 647-656 [PMID: 12711927 DOI: 10.1111/j.1530-0277.2003.tb04401.x]
- 51 **Streissguth AP**, Barr HM, Sampson PD, Parrish-Johnson JC, Kirchner GL, Martin DC. Attention, distraction and reaction time at age 7 years and prenatal alcohol exposure. *Neurobehav Toxicol Teratol* 1986; **8**: 717-725 [PMID: 3808187]
- 52 **Streissguth AP**, Sampson PD, Olson HC, Bookstein FL, Barr HM, Scott M, Feldman J, Mirsky AF. Maternal drinking during pregnancy: attention and short-term memory in 14-year-old offspring--a longitudinal prospective study. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 1994; **18**: 202-218 [PMID: 8198221 DOI: 10.1111/j.1530-0277.1994.tb00904.x]
- 53 **Coles CD**, Platzman KA, Lynch ME, Freides D. Auditory and visual sustained attention in adolescents prenatally exposed to alcohol. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 2002; **26**: 263-271 [PMID: 11964567 DOI: 10.1111/j.1530-0277.2002.tb02533.x]
- 54 **O'Connor MJ**, Paley B. Psychiatric conditions associated with prenatal alcohol exposure. *Dev Disabil Res Rev* 2009; **15**: 225-234 [PMID: 19731386 DOI: 10.1002/ddrr.74]
- 55 **Richardson GA**, Ryan C, Willford J, Day NL, Goldschmidt L. Prenatal alcohol and marijuana exposure: effects on neuropsychological outcomes at 10 years. *Neurotoxicol Teratol* 2002; **24**: 309-320 [PMID: 12009486 DOI: 10.1016/S0892-0362(02)00193-9]
- 56 **Burden MJ**, Jacobson SW, Jacobson JL. Relation of prenatal alcohol exposure to cognitive processing speed and efficiency in childhood. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 2005; **29**: 1473-1483 [PMID: 16131856 DOI: 10.1097/01.alc.0000175036.34076.a0]
- 57 **Shaywitz SE**, Cohen DJ, Shaywitz BA. Behavior and learning difficulties in children of normal intelligence born to alcoholic mothers. *J Pediatr* 1980; **96**: 978-982 [PMID: 7373484 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-3476(80)80621-4]
- 58 **Nordberg L**, Rydelius PA, Zetterström R. Children of alcoholic parents: health, growth, mental development and psychopathology until school age. Results from a prospective longitudinal study of children from the general population. *Acta Paediatr Suppl* 1993; **387**: 1-24 [PMID: 8461621 DOI: 10.1111/j.1651-2227.1993.tb12824.x]
- 59 **Bay B**, Kesmodel US. Prenatal alcohol exposure - a systematic review of the effects on child motor function. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand* 2011; **90**: 210-226 [PMID: 21306306 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0412.2010.01039.x]
- 60 **Flak AL**, Su S, Bertrand J, Denny CH, Kesmodel US, Cogswell ME. The association of mild, moderate, and binge prenatal alcohol exposure and child neuropsychological outcomes: a meta-analysis. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 2014; **38**: 214-226 [PMID: 23905882 DOI: 10.1111/acer.12214]
- 61 **Lewis SJ**, Zuccolo L, Davey Smith G, Macleod J, Rodriguez S, Draper ES, Barrow M, Alati R, Sayal K, Ring S, Golding J, Gray R. Fetal alcohol exposure and IQ at age 8: evidence from a population-based birth-cohort study. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e49407 [PMID: 23166662 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0049407]
- 62 **Skogerboe Å**, Kesmodel US, Denny CH, Kjaersgaard MI, Wimberley T, Landrø NI, Mortensen EL. The effects of low to moderate alcohol consumption and binge drinking in early pregnancy on behaviour in 5-year-old children: a prospective cohort study on 1628 children. *BJOG* 2013; **120**: 1042-1050 [PMID: 23837773 DOI: 10.1111/1471-0528.12208]
- 63 **O'Callaghan FV**, O'Callaghan M, Najman JM, Williams GM, Bor W. Maternal alcohol consumption during pregnancy and physical outcomes up to 5 years of age: a longitudinal study. *Early Hum Dev* 2003; **71**: 137-148 [PMID: 12663151 DOI: 10.1016/S0378-3782(03)00003-3]
- 64 **Olsen J**, Pereira Ada C, Olsen SF. Does maternal tobacco smoking modify the effect of alcohol on fetal growth? *Am J Public Health* 1991; **81**: 69-73 [PMID: 1983919 DOI: 10.2105/AJPH.81.1.69]
- 65 **Passaro KT**, Little RE, Savitz DA, Noss J. The effect of maternal drinking before conception and in early pregnancy on infant birthweight. The ALSPAC Study Team. Avon Longitudinal Study of Pregnancy and Childhood. *Epidemiology* 1996; **7**: 377-383 [PMID: 8793363 DOI: 10.1097/00001648-199607000-00007]
- 66 **Tolo KA**, Little RE. Occasional binges by moderate drinkers: implications for birth outcomes. *Epidemiology* 1993; **4**: 415-420 [PMID: 8399689]
- 67 **McCarthy FP**, O'Keeffe LM, Khashan AS, North RA, Poston L, McCowan LM, Baker PN, Dekker GA, Roberts CT, Walker JJ, Kenny LC. Association between maternal alcohol consumption in early pregnancy and pregnancy outcomes. *Obstet Gynecol* 2013; **122**: 830-837 [PMID: 24084541 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e3182a6b226]
- 68 **Henderson J**, Kesmodel U, Gray R. Systematic review of the fetal effects of prenatal binge-drinking. *J Epidemiol Community Health* 2007; **61**: 1069-1073 [PMID: 18000129 DOI: 10.1136/jech.2006.054213]
- 69 **Olsen J**, Tuntiseranee P. Is moderate alcohol intake in pregnancy associated with the craniofacial features related to the fetal alcohol syndrome? *Scand J Soc Med* 1995; **23**: 156-161 [PMID: 8602484 DOI: 10.1177/140349489502300304]
- 70 **Strandberg-Larsen K**, Skov-Ettrup LS, Grønbaek M, Andersen AM, Olsen J, Tolstrup J. Maternal alcohol drinking pattern during pregnancy and the risk for an offspring with an isolated congenital heart defect and in particular a ventricular septal defect or an atrial septal defect. *Birth Defects Res A Clin Mol Teratol* 2011; **91**: 616-622 [PMID: 21591246 DOI: 10.1002/bdra.20818]
- 71 **Danish Health and Medicines Authority**. [Pregnancy & alcohol] Graviditet & Alkohol (Leaflet). Copenhagen, Egmont Fonden and Sundhedsstyrelsen, 1997
- 72 **Joint statement**. Prevention of fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS) and fetal alcohol effects (FAE) in Canada; Ottawa, Health Canada, 1996
- 73 **National Health and Medical Research Council**. Is there a safe level of daily consumption of alcohol for men and women; Canberra: Commonwealth of Australia, 1992
- 74 **National Health and Medical Research Council**. Australian alcohol guidelines: health risks and benefits; Canberra: Commonwealth of Australia, 2001
- 75 **Danish Health and Medicines Authority**. [Pregnancy and alcohol] Graviditet og alkohol. [Prevention and health promotion] Forebyggelse og sundhedsfremme (Report). Copenhagen, Danish National Board of Health, 1999
- 76 **Danish National Board of Health**. Alcohol and pregnancy, 2007. [accessed 2015 Nov 11]. Available from: URL: [http://www.sst.dk/publ/Publ2007/CFF/Alkohol\\_graviditet/Alk\\_grav.pdf](http://www.sst.dk/publ/Publ2007/CFF/Alkohol_graviditet/Alk_grav.pdf)
- 77 **National Health and Medical Research Council**. Australian guidelines to reduce health risks from drinking alcohol; Canberra: Commonwealth of Australia, 2009
- 78 **RCOG**. Alcohol consumption and the outcome of pregnancy; RCOG Statement no. 5, 2013. [accessed 2015 Nov 11]. Available from: URL: [http://www.alcoholpolicy.net/files/RCOG\\_Alcohol\\_pregnancy\\_March\\_06.pdf](http://www.alcoholpolicy.net/files/RCOG_Alcohol_pregnancy_March_06.pdf)
- 79 **National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence**. Antenatal care - routine care for the healthy pregnant woman, 2008. [accessed 2015 Nov 11]. Available from: URL: <http://www.nice.org.uk/nicemedia/pdf/CG062NICEguideline>
- 80 **Payne J**, Elliott E, D'Antoine H, O'Leary C, Mahony A, Haan E, Bower C. Health professionals' knowledge, practice and opinions about fetal alcohol syndrome and alcohol consumption in pregnancy. *Aust N Z J Public Health* 2005; **29**: 558-564 [PMID: 16366068 DOI: 10.1111/j.1467-842X.2005.tb00251.x]
- 81 **Kesmodel US**, Kesmodel PS, Iversen LL. Lack of consensus between general practitioners and official guidelines on alcohol abstinence during pregnancy. *Dan Med Bull* 2011; **58**: A4327 [PMID: 21975156]
- 82 **Diekmann ST**, Floyd RL, Découflé P, Schulkin J, Ebrahim SH, Sokol RJ. A survey of obstetrician-gynecologists on their patients' alcohol use during pregnancy. *Obstet Gynecol* 2000; **95**: 756-763 [PMID: 10775743 DOI: 10.1016/S0029-7844(99)00616-X]
- 83 **Kesmodel US**, Kesmodel PS. Alcohol in pregnancy: attitudes, knowledge, and information practice among midwives in Denmark 2000 to 2009. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 2011; **35**: 2226-2230 [PMID: 21975156]

- 21689120 DOI: 10.1111/j.1530-0277.2011.01572.x]
- 84 **Finer LB**, Zolna MR. Unintended pregnancy in the United States: incidence and disparities, 2006. *Contraception* 2011; **84**: 478-485 [PMID: 22018121 DOI: 10.1016/j.contraception.2011.07.013]
- 85 **The NHS Information Centre LS**. Statistics on alcohol: England, 2009. Available from: URL: <http://catalogue.ic.nhs.uk/publications/public-health/alcohol/alco-eng-2009/alco-eng-2009-rep.pdf>
- 86 **Kesmodel U**, Kesmodel PS, Larsen A, Secher NJ. Use of alcohol and illicit drugs among pregnant Danish women, 1998. *Scand J Public Health* 2003; **31**: 5-11 [PMID: 12623518 DOI: 10.1080/14034940210134202]
- 87 **Alvik A**, Heyerdahl S, Haldorsen T, Lindemann R. Alcohol use before and during pregnancy: a population-based study. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand* 2006; **85**: 1292-1298 [PMID: 17091405 DOI: 10.1080/00016340600589958]
- 88 **Göransson M**, Magnusson A, Bergman H, Rydberg U, Heilig M. Fetus at risk: prevalence of alcohol consumption during pregnancy estimated with a simple screening method in Swedish antenatal clinics. *Addiction* 2003; **98**: 1513-1520 [PMID: 14616177 DOI: 10.1046/j.1360-0443.2003.00498.x]
- 89 **Lifestyle Statistics HaSCIC**. Statistics on alcohol: England, 2013. Available from: URL: <http://catalogue.ic.nhs.uk/publications/public-health/alcohol/alco-eng-2013/alco-eng-2013-rep.pdf>
- 90 **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention**. Vital signs: binge drinking prevalence, frequency, and intensity among adults - United States, 2010. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep* 2012; **61**: 14-19 [PMID: 22237031]
- 91 **Lorant V**, Nicaise P, Soto VE, d'Hoore W. Alcohol drinking among college students: college responsibility for personal troubles. *BMC Public Health* 2013; **13**: 615 [PMID: 23805939 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2458-13-615]
- 92 **Acuda W**, Othieno CJ, Obondo A, Crome IB. The epidemiology of addiction in Sub-Saharan Africa: a synthesis of reports, reviews, and original articles. *Am J Addict* 2011; **20**: 87-99 [PMID: 21314750 DOI: 10.1111/j.1521-0391.2010.00111.x]
- 93 **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention**. Facts sheets - alcohol use and health, 2013. [accessed 2015 Nov 11]. Available from: URL: <http://www.cdc.gov/alcohol/fact-sheets/alcohol-use.htm>
- 94 **Ebrahim SH**, Luman ET, Floyd RL, Murphy CC, Bennett EM, Boyle CA. Alcohol consumption by pregnant women in the United States during 1988-1995. *Obstet Gynecol* 1998; **92**: 187-192 [PMID: 9699749 DOI: 10.1016/S0029-7844(98)00205-1]
- 95 **Ebrahim SH**, Diekmann ST, Floyd RL, Decoufle P. Comparison of binge drinking among pregnant and nonpregnant women, United States, 1991-1995. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1999; **180**: 1-7 [PMID: 9914568 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9378(99)70139-0]
- 96 **Osler M**, Kriebaum M, Christensen U, Holstein B, Nybo Andersen AM. Rapid report on methodology: does loss to follow-up in a cohort study bias associations between early life factors and lifestyle-related health outcomes? *Ann Epidemiol* 2008; **18**: 422-424 [PMID: 18329893 DOI: 10.1016/j.annepidem.2007.12.008]
- 97 **Andersen AM**, Olsen J, Grønbaek MN. [Did the changed guidelines on alcohol and pregnancy by the National Board of Health and Welfare change alcohol consumption of pregnant women?]. *Ugeskr Laeger* 2001; **163**: 1561-1565 [PMID: 11268810]
- 98 **Olsen J**, Melbye M, Olsen SF, Sørensen TI, Aaby P, Andersen AM, Taxhøf D, Hansen KD, Juhl M, Schow TB, Sørensen HT, Andresen J, Mortensen EL, Olesen AW, Søndergaard C. The Danish National Birth Cohort--its background, structure and aim. *Scand J Public Health* 2001; **29**: 300-307 [PMID: 11775787 DOI: 10.1177/14034948010290040201]
- 99 **Anderson P**, Baumberg B. Alcohol in Europe - a public health perspective. A report for the European Commission; London, Institute of Alcohol Studies, 2006
- 100 **Strandberg-Larsen K**, Rod Nielsen N, Nybo Andersen AM, Olsen J, Grønbaek M. Characteristics of women who binge drink before and after they become aware of their pregnancy. *Eur J Epidemiol* 2008; **23**: 565-572 [PMID: 18553140 DOI: 10.1007/s10654-008-9265-z]
- 101 **Burns L**, Black E, Powers JR, Loxton D, Elliott E, Shakeshaft A, Dunlop A. Geographic and maternal characteristics associated with alcohol use in pregnancy. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 2011; **35**: 1230-1237 [PMID: 21463334 DOI: 10.1111/j.1530-0277.2011.01457.x]
- 102 **Kesmodel U**, Schiøler Kesmodel P. Drinking during pregnancy: attitudes and knowledge among pregnant Danish women, 1998. *Alcohol Clin Exp Res* 2002; **26**: 1553-1560 [PMID: 12394289 DOI: 10.1111/j.1530-0277.2002.tb02455.x]
- 103 **Anderson AE**, Hure AJ, Powers JR, Kay-Lambkin FJ, Loxton DJ. Determinants of pregnant women's compliance with alcohol guidelines: a prospective cohort study. *BMC Public Health* 2012; **12**: 777 [PMID: 22971176 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2458-12-777]
- 104 **Powers JR**, Loxton DJ, Burns LA, Shakeshaft A, Elliott EJ, Dunlop AJ. Assessing pregnant women's compliance with different alcohol guidelines: an 11-year prospective study. *Med J Aust* 2010; **192**: 690-693 [PMID: 20565346]
- 105 **O'Callaghan FV**, O'Callaghan M, Najman JM, Williams GM, Bor W. Prenatal alcohol exposure and attention, learning and intellectual ability at 14 years: a prospective longitudinal study. *Early Hum Dev* 2007; **83**: 115-123 [PMID: 16842939 DOI: 10.1016/j.earlhumdev.2006.05.011]
- 106 **Sayal K**, Draper ES, Fraser R, Barrow M, Davey Smith G, Gray R. Light drinking in pregnancy and mid-childhood mental health and learning outcomes. *Arch Dis Child* 2013; **98**: 107-111 [PMID: 23322857 DOI: 10.1136/archdischild-2012-302436]
- 107 **Verkerk PH**. The impact of alcohol misclassification on the relationship between alcohol and pregnancy outcome. *Int J Epidemiol* 1992; **21** Suppl 1: S33-S37 [PMID: 1399217 DOI: 10.1093/ije/21.Supplement\_1.S33]
- 108 **British Medical Association**. Consent tool kit. [accessed 2015 Nov 11]. Available from: URL: <http://bma.org.uk/practical-support-at-work/ethics/consent-tool-kit>
- 109 **Gavaghan C**. "You can't handle the truth"; medical paternalism and prenatal alcohol use. *J Med Ethics* 2009; **35**: 300-303 [PMID: 19407034 DOI: 10.1136/jme.2008.028662]
- 110 **Smith E**. A drink may harm the baby in mother's womb. En lille en kan skade barnet i mors mave (editorial). *Ugeskr Laeger* 2011; **46**: 2939
- 111 **Strandberg-Larsen K**, Grønbaek M. [Memorandum concerning alcohol and pregnancy] Notat vedrørende alkohol og graviditet, 2006. [accessed 2015 Nov 11]. Available from: URL: [http://www.sst.dk/publ/Publ2007/CFE/Alkohol\\_graviditet/Notat\\_alk\\_grav.pdf](http://www.sst.dk/publ/Publ2007/CFE/Alkohol_graviditet/Notat_alk_grav.pdf)

**P- Reviewer:** Cosmi E, Rasmussen S, Yokoyama Y  
**S- Editor:** Kong JX **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Jiao XK





## Laparoscopic surgery in pregnancy

Philip E George, Chaya Shwaartz, Celia M Divino

Philip E George, Chaya Shwaartz, Celia M Divino, Division of General Surgery, Department of Surgery, Icahn School of Medicine, the Mount Sinai Medical Center, New York, NY 10029, United States

**Author contributions:** All authors equally contributed to this paper with conception and design of the study, literature review and analysis, drafting and critical revision and editing, and final approval of the final version.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** No potential conflicts of interest. No financial support.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Celia Divino, MD, Chief, Division of General Surgery, Department of Surgery, Icahn School of Medicine, the Mount Sinai Medical Center, 1 Gustave L. Levy Place, Box 1041, New York, NY 10029, United States. [celia.divino@mssm.edu](mailto:celia.divino@mssm.edu)  
Telephone: +1-212-2415499  
Fax: +1-212-4100111

Received: December 4, 2015  
Peer-review started: December 5, 2015  
First decision: January 14, 2016  
Revised: March 29, 2016  
Accepted: April 14, 2016  
Article in press: April 18, 2016  
Published online: May 10, 2016

### Abstract

Each year, roughly 2% of pregnant women will undergo non-obstetrical abdominal surgery. Appendicitis, symptomatic cholelithiasis and adnexal masses are some of

the common diagnoses encountered. Pregnancy poses challenges in the diagnosis and surgical management of these conditions for several reasons. Since the 1990's, laparoscopic surgery has gained popularity and in the past few years has become the standard of care for pregnant women with surgical pathologies. The advantages of laparoscopic surgery include shorter hospital stay, lower rates of wound infection, and decreased time to bowel function. This brief review discusses key points in laparoscopic surgery during pregnancy and highlights studies comparing laparoscopic and open approaches in common surgical conditions during pregnancy.

**Key words:** Pregnancy; Laparoscopy; Surgery

© **The Author(s) 2016.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Laparoscopic surgery is increasingly common in pregnancy. The indications for surgery are similar to non-pregnant patients in the same age population. The benefits of laparoscopic surgery include decreased length of staying, lower rates of wound infection and ventral hernia apply to pregnant patients as well. This brief review highlights studies comparing laparoscopic surgery to open approach in common clinical scenarios.

George PE, Shwaartz C, Divino CM. Laparoscopic surgery in pregnancy. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(2): 175-181  
Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i2/175.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i2.175>

### INTRODUCTION

Roughly two percent of pregnant women require non-obstetric surgical procedures each year<sup>[1]</sup>. The common indications for surgery are similar to an age-matched, non-pregnant population and include appendicitis, symptomatic cholelithiasis, breast masses and trauma. However, changes in maternal-fetal physiology and



maternal organ placement can obscure the diagnosis and make treatment in these patients challenging since even common physiologic changes in pregnancy can present as an acute. The physical examination of a pregnant female change with the gestational age and the usual workup of a surgical abdomen using laboratory tests and imaging is also of limited value considering the physical and chemical changes that take place during pregnancy<sup>[2]</sup>. Furthermore, for many years, laparoscopic surgery was considered hazardous and was contraindicated during pregnancy. With the increasing use and development in surgical and laparoscopic techniques, the advantages of laparoscopy were evident in pregnant patients. In order to understand the concerns and risks of laparoscopic surgery in pregnancy and avoid them, one should be familiar with the difference in physiology and anatomy in a pregnant patient. This review article will evaluate the benefits and use of laparoscopic surgery in pregnancy in comparison to contemporary approaches.

## RESEARCH

A systematic literature search was conducted in the PubMed, Cochrane, MEDLINE with the following individual and combined key words: Pregnancy, surgery, laparoscopy, minimally invasive surgery, appendectomy, cholecystectomy, adnexal disease, randomized, meta-analysis. References cited in the articles retrieved were also searched in order to identify other potential sources of information. The results were limited to human studies available in English.

## DIFFERENCES IN ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY

There are numerous anatomic and physiologic changes in pregnant woman that affect the clinical presentation and the decisions made when planning surgery and anesthesia.

### Cardiovascular

Circulating volume in the pregnant patient can increase by up to 40% and cardiac output can increase by as much as 45%<sup>[3,4]</sup>. These changes occur gradually over the course of the pregnancy to a peak at around 32 wk gestational age. Overall systemic vascular resistance is decreased to accommodate the increased load of circulating volume. While the circulating volume is increased, only a percentage is erythrocyte volume and mass, creating a physiologic anemia of pregnancy. The minute ventilation in pregnant women is 50% higher than that in non-pregnant women. This change results in a marked decrease in arterial carbon dioxide concentration, and a resulting mild respiratory alkalosis. There is also increase in heart rate and oxygen consumption

due to increased demands by the fetus and placenta.

### Gastrointestinal

There is a decrease in gastrointestinal motility caused by mechanical changes in the abdomen from an enlarging uterus as well as from smooth muscle relaxation caused by the increased production of progesterone. The uterine fundus at the end of the first trimester is at the level of the pubic symphysis, but by the end of the second trimester it is at the level of the umbilicus. Furthermore, the decrease in lower esophageal sphincter competence caused by mechanical shifting from the gravid uterus combined with increased intra-abdominal pressure leading to an increase in reflux and dyspepsia<sup>[5]</sup>. These changes have led to a recommendation of rapid induction anesthesia in pregnant women undergoing surgery.

### Hepatobiliary

Hepatic and biliary changes include elevated liver enzymes as well as a relative decrease in concentration of plasma proteins from dilution<sup>[4,5]</sup>. This leads to higher free levels of protein bound drugs, which adds another level of consideration to anesthetic techniques. Throughout pregnancy, there is an increase in gallbladder volume and delayed emptying, which lead to a higher incidence of gallstones<sup>[6]</sup>. Portal pressures are higher due to increased abdominal pressure, which lead to an increased incidence of both gastric and esophageal varices as well as symptomatic hemorrhoids.

### Renal/hematologic

In the kidney, there is an increase in the glomerular filtration rate by 50% with a concurrent decrease in plasma values of creatinine, urea, and uric acid. There are changes in the coagulation factors during pregnancy<sup>[3]</sup>. These changes include an increase in fibrinogen, factor VII, and factor XII, and a decrease in antithrombin III. All of these changes result in an increased risk of venous thromboembolism.

Even knowing the physiological changes occurring in pregnancy, distinguishing between abdominal pain caused from normal pregnancy and abdominal pain caused by a pathophysiologic cause is challenging. Abdominal pain, nausea and vomiting are common in pregnancy. Tachycardia, mild hypotension and low grade fever are also common. Changes in the position and orientation of the abdominal organs from the enlarging uterus can change the physical examination expected in some abdominal pathologies. Take for instance that the average pregnant patient with radiographically diagnosed appendicitis presents with rigidity in only 55% of cases and rebound tenderness in only 60%<sup>[2]</sup>. The progressive rise in the leukocyte count throughout pregnancy and the imaging limitations can often delay diagnosis. To illustrate the harm that a confusing diagnostic picture can play, delaying surgery up to 24

h in patients with suspected appendicitis can increase perforation rate by 14%–43%<sup>[7,8]</sup>.

## LAPAROSCOPIC SURGERY IN PREGNANCY

In 1989, Mazze *et al.*<sup>[9]</sup> published data from three Swedish healthcare registries between the years 1973 to 1981 and investigated adverse outcomes of non-obstetrical operations during pregnancy. Five thousand, four hundred and five operative cases were evaluated, 16.1% of which were diagnostic laparoscopies. They reported no increase in stillbirths or congenital anomalies in the pregnant patient who underwent surgery. However, there was an increase in low birth weight infants, premature delivery, and infants who died within 168 h from delivery compared with women who did not require surgery. There was, however, no difference in adverse outcomes between the laparoscopy and open surgery groups. Diagnostic laparoscopies were normally done to diagnose ectopic pregnancies before converting patients to laparotomies, but by the mid 1970's, many adnexal surgeries were being fully done laparoscopically.

For many years, pregnancy was considered a relative contraindication for laparoscopic surgery. The lack of information and experience with laparoscopy in these patients raised concerns about the effect of CO<sub>2</sub> pneumoperitoneum used on venous return, cardiac output, uterine perfusion and fetal acid base status. Furthermore, there was a concern about the risk of injury to the uterus with laparoscopy. Starting in the late 1990's, more and more laparoscopy was being performed for diagnosis and management of abdominal pain in the pregnant patient. In 1997, Reedy *et al.*<sup>[10]</sup> retrospectively reviewed 413 laparoscopic procedures performed during pregnancy in the first report to specifically address the safety and complications of laparoscopy in pregnancy. They concluded that there is no difference in maternal or fetal complication rate between patients that had laparoscopic surgery and patients that had open surgery. In 2008, Jackson *et al.*<sup>[11]</sup> comprehensively reviewed the literature which supported the safety and efficacy of laparoscopy in cholecystectomy, appendectomy, solid organ resection and oophorectomy in the gravid patient. The authors made their recommendations based on existing data, or consensus of expert opinion when little or no data were available. This and other publications have led to the adoption of laparoscopic surgery as a safe technique during pregnancy when used selectively and carefully.

Similar to the non-pregnant patient, decreased pain is one of the main benefits of laparoscopic surgery. The need for less narcotic pain control in laparoscopic surgery may decrease fetal depression. Other advantages include lower rates of wound infection and incisional hernia, decreased manipulation of the uterus, diminished postoperative maternal hypoventilation, decreased risk of thromboembolic events, faster recovery

with early return to normal function and decreased risk of ileus<sup>[10,12,13]</sup>. Laparoscopy may have special advantage during pregnancy since abdominal organs may shift, and their exact location may be difficult to predict. The appendix for instance, may significantly shift from the right lower quadrant owing to the gravid uterus. Laparotomy for appendiceal disease may require large incision during pregnancy to localize the appendix. Diagnostic laparoscopy is safe and effective when used in selected patients and can be an alternative to radiologic imaging<sup>[10,11,14,15]</sup>. It avoids fetal radiation, provides direct visualization of the pathology, and allows rapid surgical treatment of the problem at the time of diagnosis. On the other hand, the potential hazards of laparoscopy include uterine injury during trocar placement, decreased uterine blood flow, preterm labor due to increased intra-abdominal pressure, and decreased visualization with the enlarged uterus.

Historically, it was believed that laparoscopic surgery should not take place in the first trimester of pregnancy since the fetus is still undergoing organogenesis, but it has been shown that laparoscopy can be performed safely during any trimester with minimal morbidity to the fetus and the mother. There have been no studies showing long term negative cognitive or motor defects in child after mother undergoes laparoscopic surgery. Postponing necessary operations may increase the rates of complications<sup>[10,13,15,16]</sup>. It has also been suggested that laparoscopic surgery should not be attempted after 28 wk of pregnancy due to the size of the uterus, but several studies showed that laparoscopic cholecystectomy and appendectomy have been successfully performed late in the third trimester<sup>[15,17]</sup>.

Laparoscopic surgery can be safely performed with the help of several modifications of surgical technique. When the pregnant patient is placed in a supine position, the gravid uterus places pressure on the inferior vena cava resulting in decreased venous return to the heart, decreased cardiac output with concomitant maternal hypotension, and decreased placental perfusion. Hence, the patient should be positioned in the left lateral decubitus whenever possible to minimize compression of the vena cava<sup>[3,18]</sup>.

The open technique for abdominal access can reduce the risk for uterine and other abdominal organ injury. However, using a Veress needle for insufflation or optical trocar can be done safely if the site of initial abdominal access is adjusted according to fundal height and the abdominal wall is elevated<sup>[15,17,19]</sup>.

Adjustments in trocar placement must be made to avoid uterine injury and improve visualization. An angled laparoscope may help in better viewing of areas around the uterus.

Pneumoperitoneum remains a concern amongst surgeons because of its effect on uterine blood flow and pulmonary function. It is recommended that intraabdominal insufflation pressures be maintained at less than 12 mmHg to avoid worsening pulmonary physiology in the pregnant women<sup>[3]</sup>. However, insufflation less

than 12 mmHg may not provide adequate visualization of the intra-abdominal cavity. Furthermore, pressures of 15 mmHg have been used during laparoscopy in pregnant patients without increasing adverse outcomes to the patient or her fetus<sup>[20]</sup>. Because CO<sub>2</sub> exchange occurs with intraperitoneal insufflation there has been concern for deleterious effects to the fetus from CO<sub>2</sub> absorption. However, despite the large experience with the use of laparoscopy pregnancy, there are no data showing detrimental effects to human fetuses from CO<sub>2</sub> pneumoperitoneum. Additionally, pneumoperitoneum promotes lower extremity venous stasis already present in pregnant woman, and along with the hypercoagulable state that is induced by pregnancy and associated hormones, there is an ever further increased risk of Deep Vein Thrombosis. Therefore, pneumatic compression devices are used whenever possible and DVT prophylaxis should be considered when indicated<sup>[21]</sup>.

Fetal respiratory acidosis with subsequent fetal hypertension and tachycardia has been observed in gravid animal models, but the effect was lessened by maintaining maternal respiratory alkalosis<sup>[22]</sup>. Fetal acidosis with insufflation has not been documented in the human fetus, but concerns over potential detrimental effects of acidosis have led to the recommendation of intra-operative maternal CO<sub>2</sub> monitoring. That can be done either by maternal blood gas or end-tidal carbon dioxide monitoring<sup>[23]</sup>.

A preoperative obstetrics consultation should be obtained for all pregnant women who will be undergoing surgical therapy, but should not delay definitive surgical treatment as that may increase the risk of morbidity to the mother and fetus. It is recommended to perform preoperative and postoperative monitoring of the fetal heart rate when possible<sup>[17]</sup>. It is generally recommended that post-operative patients should undergo cesarean sections for delivery of child so as not to disrupt any surgically placed materials such as sutures or staples<sup>[9]</sup>. The role of the obstetrician post-operatively is to monitor the fetus in a strict setting until both the mother and fetus are stable with sufficient pain control, care of wounds, and fetal monitoring.

## COMMON SURGICAL PROCEDURES IN SURGERY

### Appendectomy

Acute appendicitis is the most common non-obstetric indication for surgical intervention in pregnant women occurring as often as 1 in 500 pregnancies per year and most commonly presents in the 2<sup>nd</sup> trimester<sup>[5,6,24]</sup>. Accurate and timely diagnosis of appendicitis in the gravid patient may minimize the risk of fetal loss and optimize outcomes. Rupture of the appendix during pregnancy increases the risk for perinatal morbidity and mortality. Therefore, it is crucial to make an early diagnosis and proceed with timely surgical intervention.

Presentation of appendicitis in pregnancy is similar

to the nonpregnant population with a few caveats. Most common complaints are anorexia, emesis, nausea, fever, and pain, which depending on the gestational age of the fetus can be right lower quadrant, right upper quadrant or flank, as the pain migrates further superior as the appendix gets displaced upwards secondary to the growing uterus. Also since there is an increased separation of the peritoneum from the abdominal organs, peritoneal signs such as rebound tenderness and involuntary guarding are less likely to be present.

Multiple retrospective studies consistently showed it is safe to use the laparoscopic approach with very low rates of preterm delivery and, in most series, no reports of fetal demise<sup>[16]</sup>. In 2010, a large hospital-based series evaluated laparoscopic vs open approach for pregnant patients with presumed acute appendicitis in which the authors concluded that laparoscopy is a safe, feasible, and efficacious approach for pregnant women<sup>[25]</sup>. A meta-analysis by Walsh *et al*<sup>[26]</sup> published in 2008 using 27 studies, looked at 637 women undergoing laparoscopic appendectomy and 4193 women undergoing appendectomy by open approach. There was an increased risk of fetal loss using laparoscopy, with fetal loss rate of 5.6% (35/624) in the laparoscopic group and 3.1% (128/4193) in the open group, which was statistically significant ( $P = 0.001$ ). Preterm delivery was however increased in the open group with a risk of 8.1% (346/4193) vs 2.1% (13/624) in the laparoscopic group, also statistically significant. A population-based study published in 2007 by McGory *et al*<sup>[27]</sup> retrospectively reviewed all cases of women undergoing appendectomy between the years 1995 and 2002. Four hundred and four pregnant patients underwent laparoscopy and 2679 underwent laparotomy for suspected appendicitis. Once again, there was significantly higher rate of fetal loss (7%, 31/454) with laparoscopy compared with laparotomy (3%, 88/2679) (OR = 2.31). Preterm birth was 1% (1/454) in the laparoscopic group vs 8% (216/2679) in the laparotomy group. Another meta-analysis published in 2012 by Wilasrusmee *et al*<sup>[28]</sup> evaluated eleven studies comparing laparoscopic and open appendectomy in pregnancy from January 1990 to July 2011. A total of 3415 women (599 in laparoscopic and 2816 in open group) were included in the analysis. After weighted and pooled analysis fetal loss was significantly worse in those who underwent laparoscopy compared with open appendectomy (pooled RR = 1.91). No significant difference was found for wound infection, birth weight, preterm labor, length of hospital stay, duration of operation or Apgar score. Preterm birth is a very morbid condition which if extreme (23-27 wk GA) can lead to high rates of infant mortality, autism and low educational attainment (Table 1).

## CHOLECYSTECTOMY

Presentation of acute cholecystitis, similar to appendiceal

**Table 1 Comparing laparoscopy and open appendectomy fetal loss and preterm birth rates**

Ref.	Fetal loss rate laparoscopic	Preterm delivery rate laparoscopic	Fetal loss rate open	Preterm delivery rate open
Sadot <i>et al</i> <sup>[25]</sup>	2.0% (1/41)	29% (12/41)	0.0% (0/16)	19% (3/16)
Walsh <i>et al</i> <sup>[26]</sup>	6.0% (35/624)	2.1% (13/624)	3.1% (128/4193)	8.1% (346/4193)
Mcgory <i>et al</i> <sup>[27]</sup>	7.0% (31/454)	< 1.0% (1/454)	3.0% (88/2679)	8.0% (216/2679)

disease, is similar to the nonpregnant population. Unlike the nonpregnant population however, most gallstones are found incidentally without symptoms during routine imaging for obstetric health maintenance. There are no confounding differences in location of pain or symptoms between the two populations, but there are many alternative diagnoses in patients with right upper quadrant pain and pregnancy, so a thorough differential of diagnoses must be done.

Up to 10% of women have been shown to have gallstones on routine imaging during pregnancy<sup>[29-31]</sup>. However, the incidence of symptomatic cholelithiasis during pregnancy is similar to the incidence in age-related non-pregnant woman. Early surgical management of gravid patients with symptomatic gallstones is supported by data showing that 92% of patients managed non-operatively have recurrent symptoms after presenting in the first trimester, 64% of patients who present in the second trimester, and 44% of patients who present in the third trimester<sup>[32]</sup>. The incidence of gallstone pancreatitis is 13% in any pregnant patient diagnosed with gallstones at any point during their pregnancy. Studies comparing conservative to operative management for biliary disease, find that up to 50% of patients conservatively managed will have recurrent symptoms vs roughly 10% in the surgically treated group. Considering that up to 60% of cases of gallstone pancreatitis in the pregnant patient lead to fetal demise it is generally agreed that surgery should be performed. A delay in surgical management by way of conservative therapy results in increased rates of hospitalizations, spontaneous abortions, preterm labor, and preterm delivery compared to those undergoing cholecystectomy.

The advantages of laparoscopic surgery were mentioned before and apply here as well. There have been no reports of fetal demise for laparoscopic cholecystectomy performed during the first and second trimesters and decreased rates of spontaneous abortion and preterm labor have been reported in laparoscopic cholecystectomy when compared to laparotomy. Laparoscopy is generally agreed to be technically easier during the first and second trimester owing to the fact that there is less of a distorting effect from the uterus on the rest of the viscera and that anatomy is still maintained in regular position without the effect of the gravid uterus.

If an intra-operative or endoscopic cholangiogram is done it is recommended to shield the lower abdomen with lead<sup>[15]</sup>.

## ADNEXAL DISEASE

During the course of pregnancy, the incidence of adnexal masses is 1%-2%<sup>[33]</sup>. Most of the masses discovered during pregnancy are functional cysts and resolve spontaneously by the end of the pregnancy. These patients can be observed as long as they are asymptomatic, the mass is smaller than 6 cm, there are no concerning ultrasound findings, and tumor markers are within acceptable ranges (CA-125 normally elevated slightly during pregnancy). However, 5%-20% of masses do not resolve or are symptomatic and require operative intervention<sup>[33,34]</sup>. The use of laparoscopy for removal of any of these lesions has the same outcome in all trimesters of pregnancy<sup>[35]</sup>. A retrospective review of 88 pregnant women undergoing surgical intervention for adnexal pathology demonstrated equivalent maternal and fetal outcomes in adnexal masses managed laparoscopically compared to laparotomy and concluded that laparoscopy is safe for gynecologic surgery and should be considered if technically feasible<sup>[36]</sup>.

## DISCUSSION

It is not uncommon that a pregnant woman requires a surgical procedure. The etiologies and indications for surgery still usually just the ones common for the patient's age group and are unrelated to pregnancy. The clinical presentation and physical examination of these patients may be atypical and the evaluation of the patient can be challenging. Changes in the anatomy and physiology of the pregnant woman and the care for the fetus need to be considered when deciding whether or not to perform surgery on these patients. In the past, laparoscopic surgery was considered hazardous and was contraindicated for a number of reasons. The significant developments in laparoscopic techniques encouraged surgeons to seek advancements in the surgical treatment of the pregnant woman. The advantages of laparoscopic surgery in the pregnant patient are similar to non-pregnant, with the additional advantage of rapid localization of abdominal organs that may shift during pregnancy, and the ability to manage conditions through smaller incisions and less organ manipulation. Current literature comparing laparoscopy and open techniques for surgical management of common diseases lacks randomized trials, but consistent outcomes seen in the available studies show that minimally invasive surgery in the pregnant woman is feasible and safe in any trimester and should not be postponed when indicated.



Patient selection and surgeon experience are important for successful laparoscopic surgery and a consultation with an obstetrician is recommended when available. It is also important to look long term after the fetus has been delivered but there are few studies looking at outcomes after surgery. A study looking at 29 patients undergoing laparoscopic appendectomy show that there was no motor, sensory or social deficits in the child by age 3<sup>[37]</sup>. As laparoscopy is further adopted, even longer follow up is possible to examine the effects of laparoscopic surgery on the fetus' development.

## CONCLUSION

Laparoscopy is emerging as the standard approach for pregnant patients requiring surgery. While it is essential to have a thorough discussion with the patient regarding the risks and benefits of surgical intervention, the current literature suggests that laparoscopy for pregnant patients is a safe and favorable technique when performed by an experienced surgeon.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **Firstenberg MS**, Malangoni MA. Gastrointestinal surgery during pregnancy. *Gastroenterol Clin North Am* 1998; **27**: 73-88 [PMID: 9546085 DOI: 10.1016/S0889-8553(05)70348-4]
- 2 **Fallon WF**, Newman JS, Fallon GL, Malangoni MA. The surgical management of intra-abdominal inflammatory conditions during pregnancy. *Surg Clin North Am* 1995; **75**: 15-31 [PMID: 7855715]
- 3 **Chesnutt AN**. Physiology of normal pregnancy. *Crit Care Clin* 2004; **20**: 609-615 [PMID: 15388191 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccc.2004.06.001]
- 4 **RM Anesthesia in Obstetrics**. Miller's Anesthesia, 8ed. 2014: 2328-2337
- 5 **Kort B**, Katz VL, Watson WJ. The effect of nonobstetric operation during pregnancy. *Surg Gynecol Obstet* 1993; **177**: 371-376 [PMID: 8211581]
- 6 **Gilo NB**, Amini D, Landy HJ. Appendicitis and cholecystitis in pregnancy. *Clin Obstet Gynecol* 2009; **52**: 586-596 [PMID: 20393411 DOI: 10.1097/GRF.0b013e3181c11d10]
- 7 **Cunningham FG**, McCubbin JH. Appendicitis complicating pregnancy. *Obstet Gynecol* 1975; **45**: 415-420 [PMID: 1121371]
- 8 **Ueberrueck T**, Koch A, Meyer L, Hinkel M, Gasteringer I. Ninety-four appendectomies for suspected acute appendicitis during pregnancy. *World J Surg* 2004; **28**: 508-511 [PMID: 15085399 DOI: 10.1007/s00268-004-7157-2]
- 9 **Mazze RI**, Källén B. Reproductive outcome after anesthesia and operation during pregnancy: a registry study of 5405 cases. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1989; **161**: 1178-1185 [PMID: 2589435 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9378(89)90659-5]
- 10 **Reedy MB**, Källén B, Kuehl TJ. Laparoscopy during pregnancy: a study of five fetal outcome parameters with use of the Swedish Health Registry. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1997; **177**: 673-679 [PMID: 9322641 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9378(97)70163-7]
- 11 **Jackson H**, Granger S, Price R, Rollins M, Earle D, Richardson W, Fanelli R. Diagnosis and laparoscopic treatment of surgical diseases during pregnancy: an evidence-based review. *Surg Endosc* 2008; **22**: 1917-1927 [PMID: 18553201 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-008-9989-6]
- 12 **Curet MJ**, Allen D, Josloff RK, Pitcher DE, Curet LB, Miscall BG, Zucker KA. Laparoscopy during pregnancy. *Arch Surg* 1996; **131**: 546-550; discussion 550-551 [PMID: 8624203 DOI: 10.1001/archsurg.1996.01430170092017]
- 13 **Oelsner G**, Stockheim D, Soriano D, Goldenberg M, Seidman DS, Cohen SB, Admon D, Novikov I, Maschiach S, Carp HJ, Anderman S, Ben-Ami M, Ben-Arie A, Hagay Z, Bustan M, Shalev E, Carp H, Gerner O, Golan A, Holzinger M, Beyth Y, Horowitz A, Hamani Y, Keis M, Lavie O, Luxman D, Oelsner G, Stockheim D, Rojansky N, Taichner G, Yafe C, Zohar S, Bilanca B. Pregnancy outcome after laparoscopy or laparotomy in pregnancy. *J Am Assoc Gynecol Laparosc* 2003; **10**: 200-204 [PMID: 12732772 DOI: 10.1016/S1074-3804(05)60299-X]
- 14 **Gurbuz AT**, Peetz ME. The acute abdomen in the pregnant patient. Is there a role for laparoscopy? *Surg Endosc* 1997; **11**: 98-102 [PMID: 9069135 DOI: 10.1007/s004649900306]
- 15 **Pearl J**, Price R, Richardson W, Fanelli R. Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment, and use of laparoscopy for surgical problems during pregnancy. *Surg Endosc* 2011; **25**: 3479-3492 [PMID: 21938570 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-011-1927-3]
- 16 **Affleck DG**, Handrahan DL, Egger MJ, Price RR. The laparoscopic management of appendicitis and cholelithiasis during pregnancy. *Am J Surg* 1999; **178**: 523-529 [PMID: 10670865 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9610(99)00244-5]
- 17 **Rollins MD**, Chan KJ, Price RR. Laparoscopy for appendicitis and cholelithiasis during pregnancy: a new standard of care. *Surg Endosc* 2004; **18**: 237-241 [PMID: 14691706 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-003-8811-8]
- 18 **Clark SL**, Cotton DB, Pivarnik JM, Lee W, Hankins GD, Benedetti TJ, Phelan JP. Position change and central hemodynamic profile during normal third-trimester pregnancy and post-partum. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1991; **164**: 883-887 [PMID: 2003555 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9378(11)90534-1]
- 19 **Lemaire BM**, van Erp WF. Laparoscopic surgery during pregnancy. *Surg Endosc* 1997; **11**: 15-18 [PMID: 8994981 DOI: 10.1007/s004649900286]
- 20 **Andreoli M**, Servakov M, Meyers P, Mann WJ. Laparoscopic surgery during pregnancy. *J Am Assoc Gynecol Laparosc* 1999; **6**: 229-233 [PMID: 10226140 DOI: 10.1016/S1074-3804(99)80110-8]
- 21 **Melnick DM**, Wahl WL, Dalton VK. Management of general surgical problems in the pregnant patient. *Am J Surg* 2004; **187**: 170-180 [PMID: 14769301 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjsurg.2003.11.023]
- 22 **Hunter JG**, Swanson L, Thornburg K. Carbon dioxide pneumoperitoneum induces fetal acidosis in a pregnant ewe model. *Surg Endosc* 1995; **9**: 272-277; discussion 277-279 [PMID: 7597597]
- 23 **Bhavani-Shankar K**, Steinbrook RA, Brooks DC, Datta S. Arterial to end-tidal carbon dioxide pressure difference during laparoscopic surgery in pregnancy. *Anesthesiology* 2000; **93**: 370-373 [PMID: 10910483 DOI: 10.1097/0000542-200008000-00014]
- 24 **Guttman R**, Goldman RD, Koren G. Appendicitis during pregnancy. *Can Fam Physician* 2004; **50**: 355-357 [PMID: 15318670]
- 25 **Sadot E**, Telem DA, Arora M, Butala P, Nguyen SQ, Divino CM. Laparoscopy: a safe approach to appendicitis during pregnancy. *Surg Endosc* 2010; **24**: 383-389 [PMID: 19551438 DOI: 10.1007/s00464-009-0571-7]
- 26 **Walsh CA**, Tang T, Walsh SR. Laparoscopic versus open appendectomy in pregnancy: a systematic review. *Int J Surg* 2008; **6**: 339-344 [PMID: 18342590 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijsu.2008.01.006]
- 27 **McGory ML**, Zingmond DS, Tillou A, Hiatt JR, Ko CY, Cryer HM. Negative appendectomy in pregnant women is associated with a substantial risk of fetal loss. *J Am Coll Surg* 2007; **205**: 534-540 [PMID: 17903726 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2007.05.025]
- 28 **Wilasrusmee C**, Sukrat B, McEvoy M, Attia J, Thakkestian A. Systematic review and meta-analysis of safety of laparoscopic versus open appendectomy for suspected appendicitis in pregnancy. *Br J Surg* 2012; **99**: 1470-1478 [PMID: 23001791 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.8889]
- 29 **Machado NO**, Grant CS. Laparoscopic appendectomy in all trimesters of pregnancy. *JSLs* 2009; **13**: 384-390 [PMID: 19793481]
- 30 **Davis A**, Katz VL, Cox R. Gallbladder disease in pregnancy. *J Reprod Med* 1995; **40**: 759-762 [PMID: 8592309]
- 31 **Dixon NP**, Faddis DM, Silberman H. Aggressive management of cholecystitis during pregnancy. *Am J Surg* 1987; **154**: 292-294 [PMID: 3631407 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9610(89)90613-2]
- 32 **Swisher SG**, Schmit PJ, Hunt KK, Hiyama DT, Bennion RS, Swisher EM, Thompson JE. Biliary disease during pregnancy. *Am J*

- Surg* 1994; **168**: 576-579; discussion 580-581 [PMID: 7977999]
- 33 **Bozzo M**, Buscaglia M, Ferrazzi E. The management of persistent adnexal masses in pregnancy. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1997; **177**: 981-982 [PMID: 9369862 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9378(97)70315-6]
  - 34 **Grimes WH**, Bartholomew RA, Colvin ED, Fish JS, Lester WM. Ovarian cyst complicating pregnancy. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1954; **68**: 594-605 [PMID: 13180567]
  - 35 **Parker WH**, Levine RL, Howard FM, Sansone B, Berek JS. A multicenter study of laparoscopic management of selected cystic adnexal masses in postmenopausal women. *J Am Coll Surg* 1994; **179**: 733-737 [PMID: 7952486]
  - 36 **Soriano D**, Yefet Y, Seidman DS, Goldenberg M, Mashlach S, Oelsner G. Laparoscopy versus laparotomy in the management of adnexal masses during pregnancy. *Fertil Steril* 1999; **71**: 955-960 [PMID: 10231065 DOI: 10.1016/S0015-0282(99)00064-3]
  - 37 **Choi JJ**, Mustafa R, Lynn ET, Divino CM. Appendectomy during pregnancy: follow-up of progeny. *J Am Coll Surg* 2011; **213**: 627-632 [PMID: 21856183 DOI: 10.1016/j.jamcollsurg.2011.07.016]

**P- Reviewer:** Shimi SM, Sonoda K,  
Tsikouras PPT, Zafrakas M, Zhang XQ  
**S- Editor:** Qiu S **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Jiao XK



## Urinary incontinence following obstetric fistula repair

Judith TW Goh, Hannah Krause

Judith TW Goh, Hannah Krause, Greenslopes Private Hospital, Greenslopes QLD 4120, Australia

Judith TW Goh, Griffith University, Gold Coast QLD 4215, Australia

**Author contributions:** All the authors contributed to this manuscript.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** No financial disclosures or conflict of interest.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Judith TW Goh, AO FRANZCOG, PhD CU, Greenslopes Private Hospital, Newdegate St, Greenslopes, Queensland, Suite 209, Ramsay Specialist Centre, QLD 4120, Australia. [jtwgoh@hotmail.com](mailto:jtwgoh@hotmail.com)  
Telephone: +61-7-38379909  
Fax: +61-7-38476433

Received: June 28, 2015

Peer-review started: July 5, 2015

First decision: September 17, 2015

Revised: January 26, 2016

Accepted: February 14, 2016

Article in press: February 16, 2016

Published online: May 10, 2016

### Abstract

Prolonged and/or obstructed labour is the most common cause of genital tract fistula world-wide, in particular, sub-Saharan Africa and parts of Asia where emergency obstetric services are unavailable or suboptimal to afford timely delivery of the baby. This results in pressure

necrosis by the fetal presenting part at the level of the obstruction in the maternal pelvis. Other reasons for obstetric fistula include trauma from vaginal deliveries (spontaneous or instrumental) and iatrogenic from cesarean section/hysterectomy. The majority of women develop the fistula during their first labour and most babies are stillborn. Women with a fistula suffer from leakage of urine and/or faeces from the vagina and surgery is the treatment for an established fistula. Long-term complications of fistulas include recurrent fistula, urinary incontinence, reproductive dysfunction, sexual dysfunction, mental health dysfunction, social isolation and orthopaedic complications such as footdrop. Ongoing urinary symptoms are not uncommon after successful fistula closure. There are various reasons for residual urinary incontinence following obstetric fistula repair including urinary stress incontinence, overactive bladder, mixed urinary incontinence and voiding dysfunction. Urinary incontinence after fistula repair requires careful evaluation prior to further surgery, as in some diagnoses, continence surgery is unlikely to treat and may worsen the condition. Initial results from educational and physiotherapy programs demonstrated a positive impact on post-fistula incontinence.

**Key words:** Urinary incontinence; Obstetric fistula

© **The Author(s) 2016.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** About one quarter of women suffer from residual urinary incontinence after surgical closure of genito-urinary fistula. Women with ongoing urinary incontinence usually complain of continuous urinary leakage and recurrent fistula requires exclusion. Women with fistulas involving the urethra are more likely to have ongoing urinary symptoms. Causes of ongoing urinary incontinence after fistula closure include urodynamic stress incontinence, detrusor overactivity (DO) and voiding dysfunction. Synthetic slings have a high rate of complications in these cases. Suboptimal success from surgery may be due to undiagnosed or untreated DO and marked reduction in urethral function.

Goh JTW, Krause H. Urinary incontinence following obstetric fistula repair. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(2): 182-186  
Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i2/182.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i2.182>

## INTRODUCTION

Obstetric fistula is the most common cause of female genito-urinary fistula world-wide. Prolonged or obstructed labour results in pressure necrosis of the genital tract and surrounding tissues and this creates abnormal communications between the vagina and lower urinary tract and/or vagina and rectum/anus. Uncontrolled leakage of urine and/or faeces from the vagina ensues.

Iatrogenic injuries at time of cesarean section/hysterectomy may also result in fistulas, including uretero-vaginal fistulas. Other causes include vaginal injury from spontaneous or instrumental vaginal deliveries.

The management of an established fistula is surgical. However, in spite of anatomical closure of the genito-urinary fistula, ongoing urinary incontinence may persist. Other complications of obstetric fistula include vaginal stenosis, sexual dysfunction, anal incontinence, infertility, ameorrhoea, chronic pain, calculi (vaginal/renal tract), social isolation and mental health dysfunction.

The aim of this paper is to review post-fistula urinary incontinence, its risk factors, possible causes and treatment.

## OBSTETRIC FISTULA - DEMOGRAPHICS

Obstetric fistula from pressure necrosis occurs as a result of the lack of effective emergency obstetric services. It is a common condition in low-income countries, in particular sub-Saharan Africa. The true rate of obstetric fistula is unknown. Women, especially in remote areas, may have limited access to health care due to the lack of infrastructure and poverty or may not have permission from their family/husband to seek assistance<sup>[1]</sup>. Under-reporting may also occur because women are too embarrassed and socially isolated by their condition, do not realize that treatment is available or do not know where to go for treatment<sup>[2,3]</sup>. In 2011, the Ugandan Bureau of Statistics Demographic and Health Survey demonstrated that 2% of Ugandan women complained of symptoms of genital tract fistula<sup>[3]</sup>. Other reported risks of obstetric fistula include early age of marriage/childbearing and poor nutritional status.

The average length of labour for the woman with an obstetric fistula is 3-4 d and the majority developed the fistula during the first delivery<sup>[4,5]</sup>. During the delivery that was associated with the development of the fistula, over 90% of babies delivered were stillborn<sup>[4]</sup>. It is often difficult to ascertain the true age of the women. Many do not know their date of birth and age due to illiteracy and the tendency to relate time to significant events in

their lives rather than the calendar.

## COMPLICATIONS FOLLOWING OBSTETRIC FISTULA

Anatomical closure of the genital tract fistula should no longer be considered a "cure" as many other functional, social and mental health issues require consideration. McConnachie *et al.*<sup>[6]</sup> in 1958 suggested that cure should only be considered when there is complete urinary continence. Complications of obstetric fistula include ongoing incontinence (urinary/faecal), mental health dysfunction, sexual dysfunction, reproductive dysfunction, social isolation and orthopaedic considerations (such as footdrop).

Over 95% of women with obstetric fistula screened positive for mental health dysfunction in a validated mental health screening test<sup>[7]</sup>. Factors such as the constant leakage of urine and/or faeces with limited access to continence pads or water together with the delivery of a stillborn baby and social isolation contribute to mental health dysfunction. Following fistula repair, if the woman is continent, the results from mental health screening improved significantly and returned to general population rates<sup>[8]</sup>.

It is not uncommon for women with obstetric fistulas to suffer from vaginal stenosis due to loss of tissue from pressure necrosis and scarring<sup>[9]</sup>. This will in turn affect sexual and reproductive function and may further contribute to the woman's social isolation and affect her re-integration into the community after fistula surgery. The prolonged obstructed labour may also increase the risk of significant blood loss and intrauterine infections, further complicating reproductive function by intrauterine/pelvic adhesions and/or pituitary dysfunction.

## URINARY INCONTINENCE FOLLOWING SUCCESSFUL CLOSURE OF OBSTETRIC GENITO-URINARY FISTULA

In a prospective follow-up of over 900 women with obstetric fistulas, ongoing urinary incontinence occurred in 23.9% of women after successful fistula closure<sup>[4]</sup>. Fistulas associated with significant scarring and the circumferential fistulas were less likely to achieve anatomical closure. A circumferential fistula usually involves the urethra and at times the bladder neck. It is thought to be due to a highly significant obstructed labour as the whole circumference of the urethra is lost to pressure necrosis. Commonly, a genito-urinary fistula involves the anterior vaginal wall and posterior aspect of the urethra/bladder. In the circumferential fistula, however, the anterior vaginal wall, posterior aspect of the urethra plus the anterior portion of the urethra is lost. In other words, the urethra is completely transected, with the distal portion of the urethra



**Table 1 Summary of Classification according to Goh<sup>10</sup> with the 3 parameters**

Type: distance from fixed reference point (external urinary meatus)
Type 1 – distal edge of fistula > 3.5 cm from external urinary meatus
Type 2 – distal edge 2.5-3.5 cm
Type 3 – distal edge 1.5-2.5 cm
Type 4 – distal edge < 1.5 cm
Size: Largest diameter in centimetres
Size a < 1.5 cm
Size b 1.5-3 cm
Size c > 3 cm
Special considerations
Special considerations i – none or mild fibrosis and/or vaginal length > 6 cm, normal capacity
Special considerations ii – moderate or severe fibrosis and/or marked reduction in vaginal length and/or capacity
Special circumstances iii – e.g., post-irradiation, ureteric involvement, circumferential fistula, previous repair

completely separated from the proximal part.

Several classification systems have been proposed for genital tract fistulas. A comparison of 2 classification systems demonstrated the Goh system<sup>[10]</sup> had a significantly better ability to predict fistula closure<sup>[11]</sup>. Using the Goh system in a prospective follow up of over 900 women, it was demonstrated that those with the Type 1 fistula (Table 1) were most likely to be continent and those with the Type 4 fistula were least likely to be continent after successful fistula closure. Those with significant vaginal scarring, the circumferential fistula and larger fistulas were also less likely to be continent<sup>[4]</sup>. There is no association between length of time with obstetric fistula prior to closure and risk of urinary incontinence<sup>[12]</sup>.

There is a paucity of data on urodynamic studies in women following obstetric fistula closure<sup>[5,13]</sup>. In 2002, Murray *et al*<sup>[13]</sup> published the first known paper on urodynamic studies following obstetric fistula in a low-income country. Thirty women with persisting urinary incontinence underwent urodynamic studies with subtracted cystometry. This demonstrated 57% with pure urodynamic stress incontinence (USI), 37% with mixed incontinence and 7% with detrusor overactivity (DO). Thirteen percent of women had voiding dysfunction and on physical examination, 85% had a fixed bladder neck. Continence surgery on a subset of the women with severe stress incontinence demonstrated significant retropubic adhesions with a "drain-pipe" urethra<sup>[14]</sup>.

In 2013, Goh *et al*<sup>[5]</sup> published urodynamic studies on a series of 149 women with residual urinary incontinence after closure of obstetric genito-urinary fistula. Most of the women (77%) complained of continuous urinary incontinence. A fistula was excluded on examination and dye test. Fifteen percent complained of stress urinary incontinence only, 4% complained of overactive bladder only, 3% complained of mixed incontinence and 1% complained of incomplete bladder emptying. Urodynamic testing demonstrated that 49% of these women had USI only, 3% had DO only, 43%

had mixed incontinence and 5% had neither USI nor DO. Seven percent of women had post-void residual urine volumes of 150 mL or more. Uroflowmetry was unable to be performed as the women could not use the commode but preferred to squat on the floor to void. One third (50 women) required digital para-urethral compression to fill the bladder. In other words, 1 in 3 women leaked per urethra in the early stages of filling cystometry without detrusor pressure rise or provocation. Forty-two of these 50 women (84%) complained of continuous urinary incontinence. Another interesting finding was that urethral closure pressures often did not reflect the severity of urinary incontinence. The authors postulated that the pressures may be generated by scarring of a functionless urethra.

## MANAGEMENT OF POST-FISTULA URINARY INCONTINENCE

Unfortunately, many women with post-fistula urinary incontinence have been treated with surgery only, with little consideration given to non-surgical options or diagnoses that are not treated surgically. In other words, the women may be subjected to surgeries that are unlikely to treat and may worsen their urinary symptoms.

As with the management of female urinary incontinence around the world, conservative approaches must be considered. Castille *et al*<sup>[15]</sup> demonstrated a positive impact on post-obstetric fistula incontinence with pre- and post-surgery pelvic floor rehabilitation and educational programs.

DO and voiding dysfunction may also be neglected or misdiagnosed<sup>[5]</sup>. The management of the overactive bladder is primarily with pelvic floor rehabilitation including bladder training/behavior modification and pharmacological agents such as anticholinergic medication. Continence surgery is unlikely to treat and may worsen these conditions.

Goh *et al*<sup>[16]</sup> described the use of urethral plugs for post-fistula urinary incontinence. This has been a useful adjunct in the management of post-fistula urinary incontinence. Women are taught how to use and self-manage the plugs.

Ideally, a multidisciplinary team is required to optimize the management of women with residual urinary incontinence following obstetric genito-urinary fistula repair. Unfortunately, continence nurses and pelvic floor physiotherapists are not readily available even in established fistula units. Pharmacological agents to assist women with overactive bladder symptoms are also limited or unavailable in many instances.

Numerous operations have been described to treat women with residual urinary incontinence following obstetric fistula. Women with Goh Type 4 fistulas (involving the urethra) have been shown to be least likely to be continent<sup>[4]</sup>. Unfortunately, surgeries to treat urinary incontinence following these fistulas have

frustrated fistula surgeons for many years. Mahfouz<sup>[17]</sup> and Moir<sup>[18]</sup> were in agreement that when the fistula involves the whole urethra, functional outcomes were extremely poor. Hamlin *et al*<sup>[19]</sup> employed the gracilis muscle to reinforce the urethra in an attempt to achieve continence.

McConnachie<sup>[6]</sup> first described using bulbocavernosus and levator ani cross-strut muscular slings to treat post-fistula urinary incontinence. This was re-popularised by Browning<sup>[20]</sup> in more recent times.

Carey *et al*<sup>[14]</sup> described the use of rectus fascia pubovaginal sling with retropubic urethrolisis and omental graft to treat women with proven USI. Follow up of a small group of women demonstrated continence in 67% at 14-mo. These women were found to have a fixed bladder neck and open "drain-pipe" urethras and hence the rationale for retropubic urethralysis and omental graft to reduce the risk of retropubic re-adherence of the urethra.

In a larger group of women treated with slings for residual stress incontinence after obstetric fistula, it was concluded that synthetic slings have a 20% risk of erosion and are not indicated in this group of women and the overall risk of iatrogenic fistula is high at 17%<sup>[21]</sup>.

Krause *et al*<sup>[22]</sup> described the use of periurethral polyacrylamide hydrogel for a small group of women with post-fistula stress urinary incontinence. The immediate post-operative results were promising but longer term follow-up is required. It is often difficult to obtain follow up due to a number of reasons including the cost of returning for follow-up and in many places in Africa, violence against women is common and hence follow-up is challenging for fear of personal safety.

Various techniques for urinary diversion have also been described in the literature to treat women with ongoing urinary incontinence. These women however, require ongoing long-term follow up due to the risk of long-term complications such as infections, metabolic abnormalities, ureteral strictures, and stones<sup>[23]</sup>. Therefore, there is much debate about the practicalities and safety aspects of urinary diversion in the low resource setting.

## CONCLUSION

Residual urinary incontinence continues to be a major health issue following the repair of obstetric genitourinary fistula. There are various reasons other than USI for ongoing urinary incontinence such as DO and voiding difficulty, where continence surgery is unlikely to treat and may worsen the problem. Fistula surgeons should be aware of these other conditions and should carefully select women for further surgery in the treatment of ongoing urinary incontinence.

## REFERENCES

1 Scherf C, Morison L, Fiander A, Ekpo G, Walraven G. Epi-

- demiology of pelvic organ prolapse in rural Gambia, West Africa. *BJOG* 2002; **109**: 431-436 [PMID: 12013164 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.2002.01109.x]
- 2 Krause HG, Natukunda H, Singasi I, Hicks SS, Goh JT. Treatment-seeking behaviour and social status of women with pelvic organ prolapse, 4th-degree obstetric tears, and obstetric fistula in western Uganda. *Int Urogynecol J* 2014; **25**: 1555-1559 [PMID: 24928503 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-014-2442-6]
- 3 Uganda bureau of statistics. Demographic and Health Survey 2011 (UGA\_2011\_DHS\_v01\_M). Available from: URL: <https://dhsprogram.com/pubs/pdf/FR264/FR264.pdf>
- 4 Goh JT, Browning A, Berhan B, Chang A. Predicting the risk of failure of closure of obstetric fistula and residual urinary incontinence using a classification system. *Int Urogynecol J Pelvic Floor Dysfunct* 2008; **19**: 1659-1662 [PMID: 18690403 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-007-0505-7]
- 5 Goh JT, Krause H, Tessema AB, Abraha G. Urinary symptoms and urodynamics following obstetric genitourinary fistula repair. *Int Urogynecol J* 2013; **24**: 947-951 [PMID: 23096530 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-012-1948-z]
- 6 McConnachie ELF. Fistulae of the urinary tract in the female; a proposed classification. *S Afr Med J* 1958; **32**: 524-527 [PMID: 13556125]
- 7 Goh JT, Sloane KM, Krause HG, Browning A, Akhter S. Mental health screening in women with genital tract fistulae. *BJOG* 2005; **112**: 1328-1330 [PMID: 16101616 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.2005.00712.x]
- 8 Browning A, Fentahun W, Goh JT. The impact of surgical treatment on the mental health of women with obstetric fistula. *BJOG* 2007; **114**: 1439-1441 [PMID: 17903234 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.2007.01419.x]
- 9 Gutman RE, Dodson JL, Mostwin JL. Complications of treatment of obstetric fistula in the developing world: gynatresia, urinary incontinence, and urinary diversion. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 2007; **99** Suppl 1: S57-S64 [PMID: 17803995 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijgo.2007.06.027]
- 10 Goh JT. A new classification for female genital tract fistula. *Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol* 2004; **44**: 502-504 [PMID: 15598284 DOI: 10.1111/j.1479-828x.2004.00315.x]
- 11 Capes T, Stanford EJ, Romanzi L, Foma Y, Moshier E. Comparison of two classification systems for vesicovaginal fistula. *Int Urogynecol J* 2012; **23**: 1679-1685 [PMID: 22273816 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-012-1671-9]
- 12 Browning A. Risk factors for developing residual urinary incontinence after obstetric fistula repair. *BJOG* 2006; **113**: 482-485 [PMID: 16489933 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.2006.00875.x]
- 13 Murray C, Goh JT, Fynes M, Carey MP. Urinary and faecal incontinence following delayed primary repair of obstetric genital fistula. *BJOG* 2002; **109**: 828-832 [PMID: 12135221 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.2002.00124.x]
- 14 Carey MP, Goh JT, Fynes MM, Murray CJ. Stress urinary incontinence after delayed primary closure of genitourinary fistula: a technique for surgical management. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2002; **186**: 948-953 [PMID: 12015520 DOI: 10.1067/mob.2002.122247]
- 15 Castille YJ, Avocetien C, Zaongo D, Colas JM, Peabody JO, Rochat CH. One-year follow-up of women who participated in a physiotherapy and health education program before and after obstetric fistula surgery. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 2015; **128**: 264-266 [PMID: 25497882 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijgo.2014.09.028]
- 16 Goh JT, Browning A. Use of urethral plugs for urinary incontinence following fistula repair. *Aust N Z J Obstet Gynaecol* 2005; **45**: 237-238 [PMID: 15904451 DOI: 10.1111/j.1479-828X.2005.00395.x]
- 17 Mahfouz N. Urinary fistulae in women. *J Obstet Gynaecol Br Emp* 1957; **64**: 23-34 [PMID: 13406632 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.1957.tb02595.x]
- 18 Moir JC. Vesico-vaginal Fistula, 2nd Ed, London, Bailliere, Tindall and Cassell, 1967 [DOI: 10.1002/bjs.1800541235]
- 19 Hamlin RH, Nicholson EC. Reconstruction of urethra totally destroyed in labour. *Br Med J* 1969; **2**: 147-150 [PMID: 5813551 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.2.5650.147]

- 20 **Browning A.** Prevention of residual urinary incontinence following successful repair of obstetric vesico-vaginal fistula using a fibromuscular sling. *BJOG* 2004; **111**: 357-361 [PMID: 15008773 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-0528.2004.00080.x]
- 21 **Ascher-Walsh CJ,** Capes TL, Lo Y, Idrissa A, Wilkinson J, Echols K, Crawford B, Genadry R. Sling procedures after repair of obstetric vesicovaginal fistula in Niamey, Niger. *Int Urogynecol J* 2010; **21**: 1385-1390 [PMID: 20556597 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-010-1202-5]
- 22 **Krause HG,** Lussy JP, Goh JT. Use of periurethral injections of polyacrylamide hydrogel for treating post-vesicovaginal fistula closure urinary stress incontinence. *J Obstet Gynaecol Res* 2014; **40**: 521-525 [PMID: 24118674 DOI: 10.1111/jog.12176]
- 23 **Arrowsmith SD.** Urinary diversion in the vesico-vaginal fistula patient: general considerations regarding feasibility, safety, and follow-up. *Int J Gynaecol Obstet* 2007; **99** Suppl 1: S65-S68 [PMID: 17878056 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijgo.2007.06.028]

**P- Reviewer:** Cosmi E, Partsinevelos G

**S- Editor:** Kong JX **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Jiao XK



## Observational Study

# Gynecologic oncologists involvement on ovarian cancer standard of care receipt and survival

Sun Hee Rim, Shawn Hirsch, Cheryll C Thomas, Wendy R Brewster, Darryl Cooney, Trevor D Thompson, Sherri L Stewart

Sun Hee Rim, Cheryll C Thomas, Trevor D Thompson, Sherri L Stewart, Division of Cancer Prevention and Control, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA 30341, United States

Shawn Hirsch, Darryl Cooney, SciMetrika LLC, Durham, NC 27713, United States

Wendy R Brewster, University of North Carolina at Chapel Hill, Chapel Hill, NC 27517, United States

**Author contributions:** Rim SH, Thomas CC and Stewart SL conceived of the study; Rim SH, Hirsch S, Thomas CC, Brewster WR, Cooney D, Thompson TD and Stewart SL wrote the paper and made substantial contributions to the conception, design, data analysis and interpretation of the data; Rim SH, Hirsch S, Thomas CC, Brewster WR and Stewart SL drafted and/or critically reviewed the manuscript for important intellectual content; all authors read and approved the final manuscript.

**Supported by** The United States Federal Government, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, Atlanta, GA, United States.

**Institutional review board statement:** The study was reviewed and approved by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention Institutional Review Board through an expedited review process in accordance with standard procedures.

**Informed consent statement:** The Institutional Review Board determined that informed consent was not needed, since the analytic dataset used contained only de-identified patient information and there was no patient contact in this study.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** The authors declare that they have no competing interests.

**Data sharing statement:** No additional data are available.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license,

which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Sun Hee Rim, Epidemiologist, Division of Cancer Prevention and Control, National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, CDC 4770 Buford Hwy NE MS F-76, Atlanta, GA 30341, United States. [srim@cdc.gov](mailto:srim@cdc.gov)  
Telephone: +1-770-4880261  
Fax: +1-770-4884286

**Received:** December 4, 2015

**Peer-review started:** December 4, 2015

**First decision:** December 28, 2015

**Revised:** February 26, 2016

**Accepted:** March 14, 2016

**Article in press:** March 16, 2016

**Published online:** May 10, 2016

## Abstract

**AIM:** To examine the influence of gynecologic oncologists (GO) in the United States on surgical/chemotherapeutic standard of care (SOC), and how this translates into improved survival among women with ovarian cancer (OC).

**METHODS:** Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Result (SEER)-Medicare data were used to identify 11688 OC patients (1992-2006). Only Medicare recipients with an initial surgical procedure code ( $n = 6714$ ) were included. Physician specialty was identified by linking SEER-Medicare to the American Medical Association Masterfile. SOC was defined by a panel of GOs. Multivariate logistic regression was used to determine predictors of receiving surgical/chemotherapeutic SOC



and proportional hazards modeling to estimate the effect of SOC treatment and physician specialty on survival.

**RESULTS:** About 34% received surgery from a GO and 25% received the overall SOC. One-third of women had a GO involved sometime during their care. Women receiving surgery from a GO *vs* non-GO had 2.35 times the odds of receiving the surgical SOC and 1.25 times the odds of receiving chemotherapeutic SOC ( $P < 0.01$ ). Risk of mortality was greater among women not receiving surgical SOC compared to those who did [hazard ratio = 1.22 (95%CI: 1.12-1.33),  $P < 0.01$ ], and also was higher among women seen by non-GOs *vs* GOs (for surgical treatment) after adjusting for covariates. Median survival time was 14 mo longer for women receiving combined SOC.

**CONCLUSION:** A survival advantage associated with receiving surgical SOC and overall treatment by a GO is supported. Persistent survival differences, particularly among those not receiving the SOC, require further investigation.

**Key words:** Ovarian neoplasms; Gynecologic oncologist; Guidelines-based care; Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Result Medicare

© **The Author(s) 2016.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** A significant survival advantage is associated with receiving surgical standard of care (SOC), yet still some women had lower odds of receiving surgical SOC.

Rim SH, Hirsch S, Thomas CC, Brewster WR, Cooney D, Thompson TD, Stewart SL. Gynecologic oncologists involvement on ovarian cancer standard of care receipt and survival. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(2): 187-196 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i2/187.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i2.187>

## INTRODUCTION

Women in the United States with advanced stage epithelial ovarian cancer (OC) have an overall 5-year survival rate of about 30%<sup>[1]</sup>. As with many cancers, survival is closely linked with the stage of diagnosis, such that women with localized (stage I) disease have a relative 5-year survival rate of 92%; the prognosis however declines with late stage disease and metastases<sup>[2]</sup>. Without an adequate early detection strategy, ensuring that women receive appropriate, standard of care (SOC) treatment is a very important intervention that has demonstrated reduction in OC mortality<sup>[3]</sup>.

National Comprehensive Cancer Control Network (NCCN) current treatment recommendations for women with epithelial OC include an evaluation prior to initiating

chemotherapy along with accurate surgical staging and primary debulking surgery/cytoreduction performed by a gynecologic oncologist (GO)<sup>[3]</sup>. In most but not all cases, at least six cycles of platinum and taxane-based chemotherapy administration is recommended for advanced epithelial OCs<sup>[3]</sup>. Appropriate care not only constitutes the receipt of SOC treatment, but also quality care from an experienced GO, who is trained to both perform the surgery and administer chemotherapy<sup>[3,4]</sup>. The evidence supporting better guideline-adherent care and outcomes among patients seen by a GO has been previously examined<sup>[5-8]</sup>, and prior studies suggest only 30%-40% of women with OC are treated by a GO<sup>[5,9-11]</sup>. While NCCN cancer center patients tend to receive guideline-adherent care<sup>[12]</sup>, there is potential in exploring whether differences in SOC treatment are affected across patient-level demographic and clinical subgroups.

To date, few studies have jointly considered surgical and chemotherapeutic SOC indicators in examining survival in OC patients<sup>[13-17]</sup>. In this study, we examine predictors of both SOC receipt (surgical and chemotherapeutic) and adherence to these treatments among women treated by GOs compared to non-GOs. We further quantified the survival advantage of SOC treatment receipt among OC patients.

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

### Data source and study population

The study included all women in the Surveillance, Epidemiology, End Results (SEER)-Medicare database<sup>[18]</sup> diagnosed with OC from January 1, 1992 to December 31, 2006 ( $n = 38972$ ). We excluded women who did not have a primary epithelial OC diagnosis ( $n = 6175$ ); were Medicare age-ineligible (age < 66) at date of diagnosis ( $n = 11716$ ); had an invalid month of diagnosis ( $n = 166$ ); had diagnoses based on autopsy or death certificate only ( $n = 543$ ); had a non-epithelial ovarian malignancy ( $n = 3198$ ); and were not continuously enrolled in both Medicare Part A and B or were enrolled in an Health Maintenance Organization plan during the course of treatment ( $n = 5486$ ). A total of 11688 OC patients met the inclusion criteria for the study.

### Definition of variables

Patient-level covariates included age, race, stage at diagnosis, marital status, year of diagnosis, geographic region of SEER registry, and cancer histology. The Charlson-Klabunde comorbidity index score was determined using Medicare claims data for 12 mo prior to and 4 mo after cancer diagnosis date, per prior studies<sup>[19,20]</sup>.

We examined all procedure codes in the Medicare claims data falling within a treatment window (defined as two months prior to and one year after the diagnosis date) to determine if a patient received surgical or chemotherapeutic SOC. Since only month and year of

diagnosis are reported in the SEER database, the 15<sup>th</sup> day of the month was assigned as the day of diagnosis for each patient.

### SOC definitions

Per recommendation from an experienced group of GOs, consulted specifically for this project (W. Brewster, R.E. Bristow and D.K. Singh), the International Federation of Gynecologists and Obstetricians (FIGO) stage of disease categories were grouped as: I A/ I B, I C/ II , III A/III B and III C/IV based on similarities in current surgical and chemotherapeutic treatment regimens. FIGO stage III NOS and stage IV were grouped into stage III C/IV group, given that a high proportion of all stage III cases were stage III C.

Among the women who met the inclusion criteria ( $n = 11688$ ), we examined receipt of SOC among women receiving any initial surgical care. Thus, we further excluded women who received treatment outside of the treatment window ( $n = 28$ ), those who had no procedure codes of interest for any surgical care ( $n = 2464$ ), and women who received neoadjuvant chemotherapy ( $n = 2482$ ) (given the difficulty of cancer staging for women who are eligible for neoadjuvant chemotherapy) to examine differences in guideline-adherent treatment and survival. We also excluded all OC patients diagnosed with stage I NOS or who were unstaged at diagnosis since minimum SOC parameters are not well defined for these groups.

The GO group defined minimum surgical SOC as lymph node dissection, omentectomy and oophorectomy for all patients with FIGO stage I A/IB, I C/ II or III A/III B at diagnosis, but omentectomy and oophorectomy only for women with stage III C/IV at diagnosis. Minimum chemotherapy SOC definition depended on: (1) stage of disease at diagnosis; (2) number of chemotherapy cycles received; and (3) type of chemotherapy agent received. For analysis, chemotherapy SOC was defined as an individual receiving the defined number of cycles (three cycles of chemotherapy for stage I C/ II and six cycles for stage III/IV), with at least one multi-agent cycle (defined as one platinum based and one non-platinum based agent) using either intravenous or intraperitoneal modes of administration. One cycle of chemotherapy was equal to three weeks of treatment, given that chemotherapy is usually administered every 3-4 wk<sup>[3,21]</sup>. Patients were documented as receiving overall SOC if they received both surgical and adjuvant chemotherapeutic SOC.

The GO group recommended surgical and chemotherapy procedure codes for use in determining SOC for each FIGO stage category. Procedure codes included both International Classification of Diseases, Ninth revision, clinical modification codes and American Medical Association (AMA) Current Procedural Terminology codes.

### Surgeon specialty definition

Self-reported, physician specialty information from

the SEER-Medicare claims file was linked with and verified against the AMA Physician Masterfile using the unique provider identification number (UPIN) for physicians performing (or those in attendance) of an OC procedure of interest. If the operating physician UPIN was not available, but the attending physician UPIN was available, AMA specialty was assigned to the attending physician. If the UPIN for an operating and attending physician was unavailable, the self-reported physician specialty variable found in the Medicare data set was used to define specialty. When a patient received treatment from multiple physicians, care was attributed to the most specialized physician (most to least specialized: GO, gynecologist, general surgeon, and other physician). For analytic purposes, physician specialty was grouped as GO and non-GO.

### Statistical analysis

We examined predictors associated with receipt of surgical and chemotherapeutic SOC. A forward selection logistic regression model was used to examine each question. Comparisons of the distribution of OC patients receiving the SOC by physician specialty was examined using the Pearson  $\chi^2$  test.

Cox proportional hazard methods were used to determine differences in survival time from date of OC diagnosis to date of death. The proportional hazards assumption was examined by testing interactions between time and each covariate in the model. The final models (Model 1 and 2) exclude women ( $n = 1003$ ) who died within 4.5 mo after diagnosis (*i.e.*, women who did not live long enough to receive chemotherapy SOC). Due to a common category in the chemotherapy variables (chemotherapy SOC and chemotherapy physician specialty), we examined two different models. The first model (Model 1) examined surgery physician specialty and receipt of both SOC measurements, while the second model (Model 2) examined both surgery and chemotherapy physician specialty and receipt of surgery SOC, adjusting for patient-level and clinical factors. All final models were adjusted for covariates that had a statistically significant association from the bivariate analysis or were of importance in the literature. All analyses were performed using SAS version 9.3 (SAS Institute Inc., Cary, NC, United States).

## RESULTS

Among the 11688 OC patients, 57.4% ( $n = 6714$ ) received an initial surgical procedure code of interest. Table 1 shows the patient and tumor characteristics by the type of physician performing the initial surgery. The mean age of patients was mid to late-70s; most women were white, married or widowed, had no comorbidities, had FIGO stage III C/IV disease, and serous histology. More women received an initial surgical procedure from OB/GYNs ( $n = 3088$ ) than GOs ( $n = 2254$ ), general surgeons ( $n = 914$ ), or other non-GO/unknown specialties ( $n = 419$ ).

**Table 1** Characteristics of ovarian cancer patients who received any initial surgical procedure by physician specialty (*n* = 6714)

Characteristic	Surgeon specialty <sup>1</sup>			
	GO	OBGYN	Non-GO General surgeon	Other <sup>2</sup>
No. of patients	2254	3088	914	419
Mean age at diagnosis (stddev)	74.6 (5.9)	74.8 (6.1)	77.0 (6.8)	75.5 (6.2)
Race <i>n</i> (%)				
White	1995 (88.5)	2844 (92.1)	827 (90.5)	379 (90.5)
African American	121 (5.4)	104 (3.4)	49 (5.4)	26 (6.2)
Hispanic	35 (1.6)	31 (1.0)	<sup>3</sup>	<sup>3</sup>
Asian	53 (2.4)	66 (2.1)	<sup>3</sup>	<sup>3</sup>
Other <sup>4</sup>	47 (2.1)	37 (1.2)	<sup>3</sup>	<sup>3</sup>
Marital status				
Married	1052 (46.7)	1424 (46.1)	327 (35.8)	170 (40.6)
Single	159 (7.1)	221 (7.2)	53 (5.8)	31 (7.4)
Divorced	148 (6.6)	166 (5.4)	58 (6.3)	29 (6.9)
Widowed	799 (35.4)	1168 (37.8)	458 (50.1)	176 (42.0)
Separated/unknown	96 (4.2)	109 (3.5)	<sup>3</sup>	<sup>3</sup>
Charlson-Klabunde comorbidity score				
0	1521 (67.5)	2133 (69.1)	605 (66.2)	266 (63.5)
1	498 (22.1)	644 (20.9)	188 (20.6)	93 (22.2)
2	175 (7.8)	189 (6.1)	78 (8.5)	38 (9.1)
3	45 (2.0)	80 (2.6)	29 (3.2)	<sup>3</sup>
4 or more	<sup>3</sup>	42 (1.4)	<sup>3</sup>	<sup>3</sup>
FIGO treatment stage				
I A/ I B	200 (8.9)	383 (12.4)	66 (7.2)	43 (10.3)
I C/ II	276 (12.2)	516 (16.7)	90 (9.8)	40 (9.5)
III A/ III B	119 (5.3)	179 (5.8)	59 (6.5)	<sup>3</sup>
III C/ IV	1580 (70.1)	1898 (61.5)	660 (72.2)	308 (73.5)
Unstaged/NOS	79 (3.5)	112 (3.7)	39 (4.2)	<sup>3</sup>
Histology				
Serous	1460 (64.8)	1897 (61.4)	554 (60.6)	254 (60.6)
Endometrioid	238 (10.6)	381 (12.3)	73 (8.0)	46 (11.0)
Mucinous	129 (5.7)	235 (7.6)	79 (8.6)	25 (6.0)
Clear cell	84 (3.7)	127 (4.1)	<sup>3</sup>	<sup>3</sup>
Adenocarcinoma	275 (12.2)	344 (11.1)	175 (19.1)	66 (15.8)
Other <sup>5</sup>	68 (3.1)	104 (3.3)	20 (2.2)	<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup>Surgeon specialty was categorized according to the most specialized care received during the course of the treatment window; <sup>2</sup>39 women received a surgery procedure code during the treatment window (defined as a period of two months prior and one year after a patient's diagnosis date in which procedures were performed) but surgeon specialty could not be identified; <sup>3</sup>Denotes cell size suppression of less than 20; <sup>4</sup>Other race includes designation of "Other" or Native American; <sup>5</sup>Other histology includes Transitional. GO: Gynecologic oncologists; FIGO: International Federation of Gynecologists and Obstetricians; NOS: Not otherwise specified.

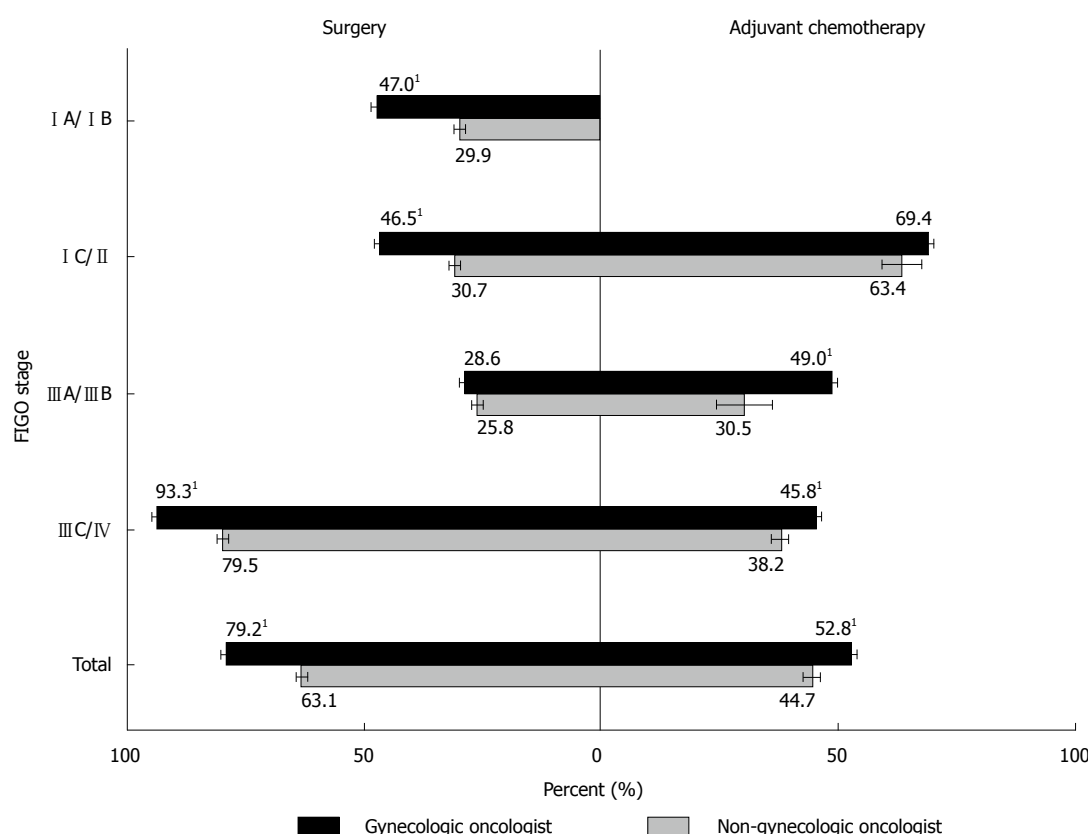
Among women treated by a GO, 79.2% received the surgical SOC and 52.8% received the chemotherapy SOC (Figure 1). Regardless of stage at diagnosis, women more frequently received surgical and chemotherapeutic SOC from a GO than from a non-GO.

Table 2 reports the factors associated with receipt of surgical SOC after adjusting for other covariates. Surgery performed by a GO was strongly associated with receiving surgical SOC [odds ratio (OR) for GO = 2.35; 95%CI: 2.03-2.71]. Other factors associated with greater odds of surgical SOC receipt included: More advanced stage of disease, white vs African-American race, younger age at diagnosis, serous vs adenocarcinoma not otherwise specified histologic type, being married vs not married, and diagnosis during the later years of the study period.

Table 2 also reports factors associated with receipt of the minimum chemotherapy SOC after adjusting for other covariates. Women who obtained chemotherapy from a GO had a higher odds of receiving chemotherapeutic SOC (OR = 1.25, 95%CI: 1.07-1.47).

Other statistically significant factors for higher odds of chemotherapeutic SOC included: Less advanced stage of disease, younger age at diagnosis, histologic type (serous compared with endometrioid/mucinous/clear cell), being married compared with unmarried, living in the SEER Midwest region (compared to the SEER Northeast), and diagnosis during more recent years.

Table 3 shows the Cox regression model of time to death among the sample of OC patients who received a primary surgery procedure who did not die within 4.5 mo after diagnosis. In Table 3 (Model 1), women who did not receive surgery SOC had increased mortality compared to women who did [hazard ratio 1.22 (95%CI: 1.12-1.33)]. Similarly, women who did not receive any chemotherapy SOC had a higher risk of earlier death compared to women who received the full contingent of chemotherapy [hazard ratio 1.29 (95%CI: 1.14-1.46)]. Increasing age, late stage disease, higher number of comorbidities, and



**Figure 1** Surgical standard of care ( $n = 4434$ ) and adjuvant chemotherapy standard of care ( $n = 2595$ ) receipt by physician specialty and International Federation of Gynecologists and Obstetricians stage. (1) Surgery SOC treatment was based on ovarian cancer patients receiving surgery prior to chemotherapy ( $n = 6714$ ); (2) Stages 1, not otherwise specified and Unknown/unstaged were removed from analysis; (3) Surgeon specialty and chemotherapy specialty was categorized according to the most specialized care received during the course of the treatment window; (4) Women who received surgery SOC by a surgeon specialty who could not be identified are not shown ( $n = 17$ ); (5) There were 177 women who received a chemotherapy procedure code of interest but for whom physician specialty could not be identified and 1238 women who did not receive a chemotherapy procedure code of interest. <sup>1</sup>Denote that the estimate is statistically significantly higher for GO compared to Non-GO. SOC: Standard of care; GO: Gynecologic oncologist.

mucinous histology compared to serous histology were all associated with increased death (Table 3, Model 1). Similar patterns were observed in Table 3, Model 2 after controlling for chemotherapy physician specialty (as opposed to chemotherapy SOC). For Model 2, women who received surgery from a GO had better survival. Although there was no significant difference in survival between chemotherapy treatment from a GO compared to non-GO, those not receiving any chemotherapy had a significantly shorter survival time (Table 3, Model 2). The median survival time for women who received the overall SOC was 52 mo compared to 38 mo for women that did not receive the overall surgical and chemotherapeutic SOC (Figure 2).

## DISCUSSION

Our findings show that among OC patients receiving initial surgical treatment, only 25% of women received the overall SOC as defined by our panel of GOs. Few women (approximately one-third of women receiving a surgical procedure) had a GO involved at any point during their care. Women who obtained surgery from a GO however, were more likely to receive the surgical

SOC and chemotherapeutic SOC than women who obtained treatment from a non-GO. The median survival time was 14 mo longer for women who received the overall SOC compared to women who did not receive overall SOC.

Our results are consistent with prior studies that suggest that appropriate surgical treatment in the United States is more frequently performed when a GO is the treating physician<sup>[5]</sup>. Data from a single state cancer registry study by Chan *et al.*<sup>[14]</sup> showed that women with OC under the care of GOs were more likely to receive appropriate staging and chemotherapy treatments, controlling for age, stage, and grade of disease. Also similar to previous studies, our results suggest that greater utilization of GOs in the care of OC patients would be beneficial<sup>[22]</sup>. Although the level of detail in our analysis is unable to discriminate the factors underlying the low utilization, it is likely that our results reflect a complex interaction of both preference and access-relevant effects, such as the influence of a patient's choice in receipt of GO care vs a shortage of available GOs in some areas.

While patient treatment preferences can independently and significantly affect chemotherapy receipt<sup>[23]</sup>,



**Table 2 Predictors of receipt of minimum surgical and chemotherapeutic standard of care<sup>1</sup>**

	Surgical standard of care <sup>2</sup>		Chemotherapeutic standard of care <sup>2</sup>	
	Odds ratio (95%CI)	P value	Odds ratio (95%CI)	P value
Physician specialty <sup>3</sup>				
Gynecologic oncologist	2.35 (2.03-2.71)	< 0.01	1.25 (1.07-1.47)	0.006
Non-gynecologic oncologist	1.00		1.00	
Age at diagnosis				
66-69	1.00		1.00	
70-74	0.80 (0.67-0.96)	0.017	0.93 (0.78-1.09)	0.393
75-79	0.83 (0.69-1.0)	0.053	0.79 (0.66-0.94)	0.008
80-84	0.58 (0.47-0.71)	< 0.01	0.61 (0.48-0.75)	< 0.001
≥ 85	0.40 (0.31-0.51)	< 0.01	0.31 (0.21-0.48)	< 0.001
Race <sup>4</sup>				
White	1.00			
African American	0.67 (0.50-0.91)	0.01	-	
Other	0.83 (0.62-1.10)	0.208	-	
Treatment stage <sup>5</sup>				
I A/ I B	0.08 (0.07-0.10)	< 0.01	NA	NA
I C/ II	0.08 (0.07-0.10)	< 0.01	3.46 (2.86-4.18)	< 0.001
III A/ III B	0.05 (0.04-0.07)	< 0.01	0.83 (0.64-1.09)	0.182
III C/IV	1.00		1.00	
Charlson-Klabunde comorbidity score				
0	1.00		1.00	
1	0.84 (0.72-0.98)	0.029	0.84 (0.71-0.99)	0.029
2	0.81 (0.63-1.02)	0.084	0.78 (0.60-1.03)	0.078
3	0.65 (0.44-0.97)	0.039	0.49 (0.31-0.80)	0.005
4 or more	1.09 (0.60-1.97)	0.771	0.63 (0.29-1.37)	0.247
Histology				
Serous	1.00		1.00	
Endometrioid	1.10 (0.90-1.35)	0.356	0.70 (0.56-0.89)	0.003
Mucinous	0.95 (0.74-1.35)	0.67	0.49 (0.34-0.70)	< 0.001
Clear cell	1.29 (0.93-1.78)	0.13	0.62 (0.41-0.93)	0.026
Transitional	0.70 (0.27-1.79)	0.454	0.76 (0.30-1.97)	0.572
Adenocarcinoma (NOS)	0.44 (0.37-0.54)	< 0.001	1.04 (0.86-1.27)	0.695
Other	1.05 (0.70-1.56)	0.813	0.74 (0.47-1.13)	0.168
Marital status				
Married	1.00		1.00	
Not married	0.83 (0.72-0.95)	0.007	0.75 (0.66-0.86)	< 0.001
Unknown	1.03 (0.69-1.52)	0.87	0.73 (0.48-1.09)	0.127
Year of diagnosis				
1993-1997	0.62 (0.52-0.73)	< 0.01	0.28 (0.23-0.33)	< 0.001
1998-2002	0.79 (0.68-0.92)	0.003	1.09 (0.94-1.26)	0.261
2003-2006	1.00		1.00	
SEER region <sup>4</sup>				
Northeast	-		1.00	
Midwest	-		0.76 (0.62-0.93)	0.009
South	-		1.09 (0.88-1.37)	0.424
West	-		0.93 (0.78-1.10)	0.391

<sup>1</sup>Minimum SOC treatment was based on patients receiving surgery prior to chemotherapy ( $n = 6714$ ); <sup>2</sup>Surgery SOC ( $n = 4434$ ) and chemotherapy SOC ( $n = 2595$ ); <sup>3</sup>Physician specialty was categorized according to the most specialized care received during the course of the treatment window; there were 39 and 177 cases where physician specialty could not be identified for surgery or chemotherapy procedures, respectively (results for this group not shown); <sup>4</sup>Race was not entered into the chemotherapy SOC model based on forward selection entry criteria ( $P \leq 0.10$ ); Region was not entered into the surgery SOC model based on forward selection entry criteria ( $P \leq 0.10$ ); <sup>5</sup>Stage I NOS, Stage IA/IB (for chemotherapy SOC) and unknown/unstaged were removed from the analysis since current guidelines recommend early stage patients not receive chemotherapy treatment. NOS: Not otherwise specified; SOC: Standard of care; SEER: Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Result; NA: Not applicable.

geographic access may also play an important role in (both chemotherapeutic or surgical) treatment receipt from a GO. For example, a previous analysis reported on the unequal distribution of GOs in the United States<sup>[24]</sup>. A recently published study suggested that OC mortality may be a function of distance to a practicing GO as counties located more than 50 miles from a gynecologic oncology practice had almost 60% increased likelihood of OC mortality than those

physically closer to a practice location<sup>[25]</sup>. While earlier research efforts have indicated that treatment of OC can be improved by early referral to a GO<sup>[5,10]</sup>, referral and consultation from GOs have generally been low, with only about 39% of family physicians and 51% of general internists self-reporting referrals to a GO<sup>[26]</sup>. Given that surgery is an important determinant of outcomes for OC patients, receiving surgery/treatment from surgeons with specialized training in pelvic surgery

**Table 3** Cox proportional hazard model of time-to-death among ovarian cancer patients

Predictor	Model 1 <sup>1</sup>		Model 2 <sup>1</sup>	
	Hazard ratio (95%CI)	P value	Hazard ratio (95%CI)	P value
Received surgery SOC <sup>2</sup>				
Yes	1.00		1.00	
No	1.22 (1.12-1.33)	< 0.01	1.21 (1.11-1.31)	< 0.01
Received chemotherapy SOC <sup>2</sup>				
Yes	1.00			
No, but received some chemotherapy	0.95 (0.89-1.02)	0.18		
Received no chemotherapy	1.29 (1.14-1.46)	< 0.01		
Age at diagnosis				
66-69	1.00		1.00	
70-74	1.07 (0.98-1.17)	0.13	1.05 (0.97-1.15)	0.24
75-79	1.23 (1.12-1.34)	< 0.01	1.21 (1.10-1.32)	< 0.01
80-84	1.52 (1.37-1.69)	< 0.01	1.48 (1.33-1.65)	< 0.01
≥ 85	1.96 (1.70-2.26)	< 0.01	1.92 (1.67-2.21)	< 0.01
Race				
White	1.00		1.00	
African American	1.11 (0.95-1.29)	0.18	1.13 (0.97-1.32)	0.12
Other	0.90 (0.78-1.05)	0.17	0.88 (0.75-1.02)	0.09
Year of diagnosis				
1993-1997	1.27 (1.17-1.38)	< 0.01	1.24 (1.14-1.35)	< 0.01
1998-2002	1.18 (1.09-1.27)	< 0.01	1.17 (1.08-1.27)	< 0.01
2003-2006	1.00		1.00	
Treatment stage				
I A/ I B	0.20 (0.18-0.23)	< 0.01	0.17 (0.15-0.20)	< 0.01
I C/ II	0.35 (0.32-0.40)	< 0.01	0.36 (0.32-0.40)	< 0.01
III A/ III B	0.61 (0.53-0.71)	< 0.01	0.62 (0.54-0.71)	< 0.01
III C/IV	1.00		1.00	
Charlson-Klabunde comorbidity score				
0	1.00		1.00	
1	1.28 (1.18-1.38)	< 0.01	1.26 (1.17-1.36)	< 0.01
2	1.38 (1.22-1.56)	< 0.01	1.37 (1.21-1.55)	< 0.01
3	1.64 (1.34-2.00)	< 0.01	1.64 (1.34-2.01)	< 0.01
≥ 4	2.33 (1.73-3.15)	< 0.01	2.27 (1.67-3.09)	< 0.01
Histology				
Serous	1.00		1.00	
Endometrioid	0.76 (0.68-0.85)	< 0.01	0.75 (0.68-0.84)	< 0.01
Mucinous	1.22 (1.06-1.41)	< 0.01	1.22 (1.06-1.41)	< 0.01
Clear cell	0.83 (0.69-1.00)	0.05	0.83 (0.69-1.00)	0.05
Transitional	0.79 (0.47-1.31)	0.36	0.79 (0.48-1.32)	0.37
Adenocarcinoma (NOS)	1.07 (0.98-1.18)	0.14	1.07 (0.97-1.17)	0.2
Other	1.02 (0.82-1.28)	0.85	1.02 (0.82-1.28)	0.85
Marital status				
Married	1.00		1.00	
Not Married	1.07 (1.00-1.14)	0.05	1.07 (1.00-1.14)	0.05
Unknown	1.00 (0.82-1.23)	0.97	0.99 (0.80-1.21)	0.89
Surgeon specialty <sup>3</sup>				
Non-GO	1.00		1.00	
GO	0.90 (0.84-0.96)	< 0.01	0.90 (0.84-0.97)	< 0.01
Chemotherapy specialty <sup>3</sup>				
Non-GO			1.00	
GO			0.98 (0.89-1.08)	0.68
Did not receive chemotherapy			1.33 (1.19-1.47)	< 0.01

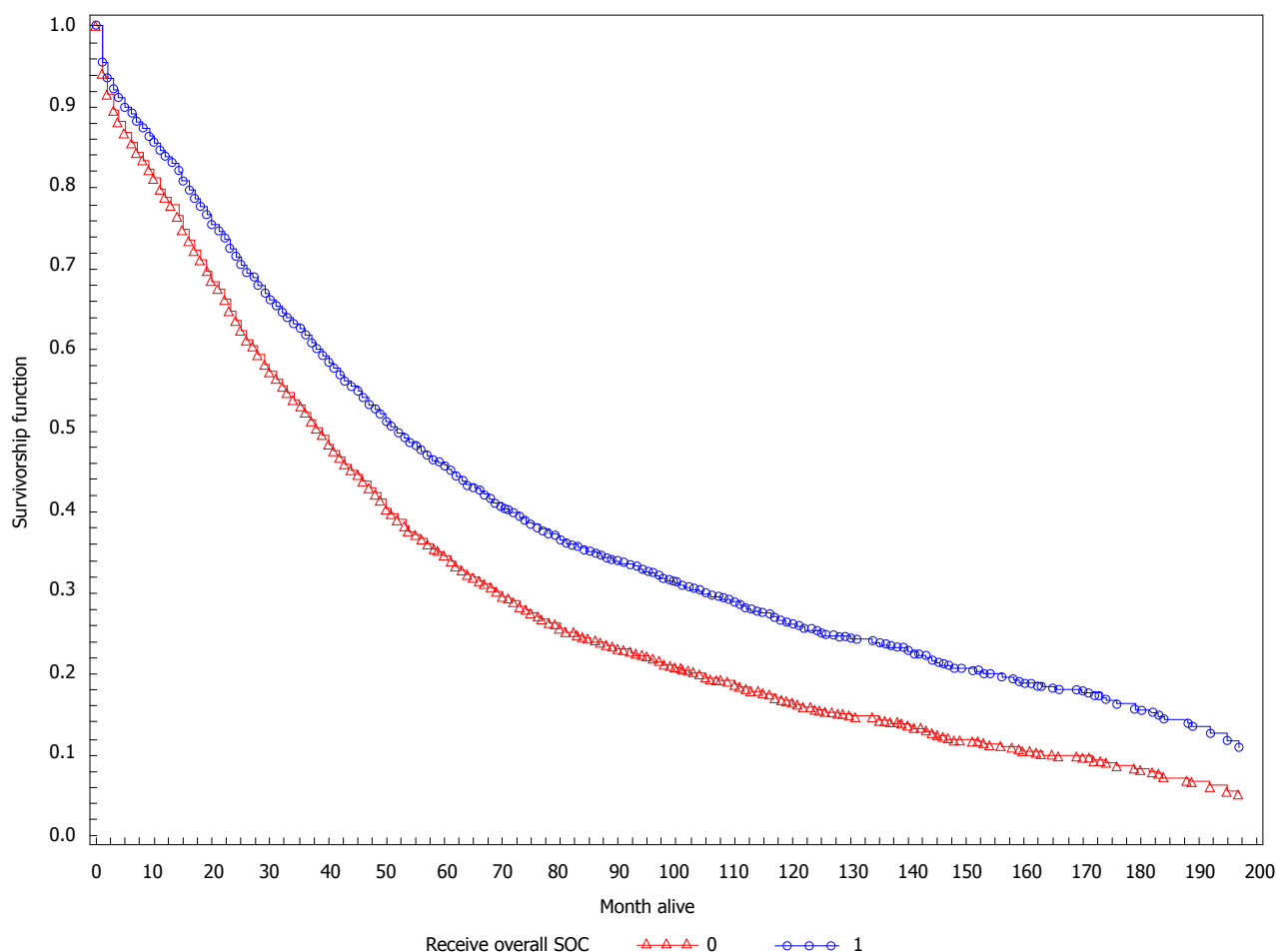
<sup>1</sup>Model 1 and Model 2: Includes OC patients who did not have an unknown FIGO stage at diagnosis, and survived at least 4.5 mo after diagnosis;

<sup>2</sup>Minimum SOC procedure codes for surgery; <sup>3</sup>Missing surgeon and physician specialty excluded from analysis; <sup>4</sup>Excluded from the model based inclusion criteria. Chemotherapy SOC and chemotherapy physician specialty cannot be included in the same model because the common level of “did not receive chemotherapy” would introduce a singularity and prevent model convergence. OC: Ovarian cancer; SOC: Standard of care; GO: Gynecologic oncologist; FIGO: International Federation of Gynecologists and Obstetricians; NOS: Not otherwise specified.

(i.e., GOs)<sup>[27]</sup>, who see a high volume of cases<sup>[10,28]</sup> at high volume facilities treating more than 20 OC cases per year<sup>[28,29]</sup>, might help improve outcomes.

It is important to note that there are still subgroups that require further research. Although African-American women were more likely than their white counterparts

to receive their initial surgical procedure from a GO (data not shown), they had lower odds of receiving the surgical SOC and there was no difference in survival after adjusting for physician specialty, surgical SOC, and other tumor and sociodemographic characteristics. The increased risk of death among African American women



**Figure 2 Ovarian cancer survivor curves<sup>1</sup> by receipt of overall standard of care<sup>2</sup> ( $n = 1678$ ).** <sup>1</sup>All covariates held at the reference level noted in Table 3; <sup>2</sup>0 = Did not receive overall standard of care; 1 = Did receive overall SOC. SOC: Standard of care.

noted in other studies, when controlling for receipt of chemotherapeutic SOC, suggests that there may be some important nuanced differences in the definitions of chemotherapeutic SOC<sup>[30,31]</sup>, chemotherapeutic agents, and/or interaction effects between age, comorbidity, stage, and race that have not been adequately explored. Bristow *et al.*<sup>[32]</sup> have previously suggested similar differences in survival between African-American and white OC patients and the complexity of examining race-based survival associations<sup>[33,34]</sup>.

The findings in this study should be considered in light of several limitations: (1) our analysis was focused on fee for service Medicare; women who received treatment under managed care were not included because the managed care cases did not include codes to identify specific treatment procedures; (2) neoadjuvant chemotherapy cases, which could have later received surgical SOC, were excluded; and (3) it is a challenge to operationalize NCCN recommendations into an analytic/computer program because the recommendations are relatively complex, and some information required for the NCCN decision algorithms is not available in claims data. However, our panel of experienced GOs developed a simpler, but accurate definition of the SOC so that recommendations could

be converted into analytic code. Similarly, since SOC definitions were varied for each stage at diagnosis, if claims data were not available for the full contingency of treatment procedures, it is possible that there was an underestimation of patients identified as receiving overall SOC in that subgroup. Fourth, given the limitations of Medicare data, inaccuracies or incomplete data in billing, drug, or procedure codes could have resulted in an underestimate or overestimate of the total number of surgeries and/or chemotherapy procedures performed, thus biasing the estimate. Previous studies have noted some concerns in the validation of chemotherapeutic agents within Medicare claims data<sup>[30,31]</sup>. Fifth, there is potential for misclassification of physician specialty, given the use of multiple data sources including operating physician, attending physician, and self-reported physician specialty<sup>[35]</sup>. Furthermore, in our analysis, receipt of treatment from a GO was designated as such if a GO had been seen at any point during the care. Lastly, since we assumed each cycle of treatment lasted three weeks, we calculated that it would take at least 4.5 mo for women diagnosed with stage IIIC or IV to complete the chemotherapy SOC as defined in our study. Thus, women who died within five months of the diagnosis date would not have had the opportunity

to receive chemotherapy SOC. Our definition of chemotherapy SOC may have been too rigorous and potentially introduce selection or survival bias.

Our study showed that GOs more often provided the surgical and chemotherapeutic SOC. The receipt of surgical standards was associated with better survival outcomes, even after adjusting for provider specialty. As such, these two NCCN-recommendations (*i.e.*, treatment from a GO and receipt of SOC) continue to be critical points of intervention for improving survival time and reducing deaths from OC. Although it is difficult to determine when adjuvant chemotherapy is warranted based on sound clinical judgement (*i.e.*, taking into consideration the patient's comorbidities, toxicities, age, *etc.*) or patient refusal, one area that has not been carefully examined is the potential that race/ethnicity-based differences in patient and caregiver preferences may have for OC care. Future research may further explore this and the interaction effects of race, age, comorbidities on survival.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The findings and conclusions in this report are those of the authors and do not necessarily represent the official position of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

## COMMENTS

### Background

Ovarian cancer (OC) is the deadliest gynecologic cancer among women. Standard treatment for OC consists of extensive surgery and chemotherapy. Gynecologic oncologists (GOs) more often adhere to standard treatment guidelines among OC patients, resulting in longer patient survival.

### Research frontiers

Low survival rates from OC may be related to lack of GO involvement in surgery or chemotherapy and/or lack of standard treatment receipt. Research measuring receipt of standard of care and its effect on survival can help reveal areas for intervention to improve OC mortality.

### Innovations and breakthroughs

These results among over 6000 OC patients aged 65 and older indicate that a low proportion received standard treatment. Not having seen a GO, African American race, and being older (80+) were associated with not receiving standard treatment. Women who received standard treatment survived over one year longer than those who did not receive standard treatment.

### Applications

Ensuring appropriate referral of OC patients to GOs for treatment will likely increase survival rates from OC. Education of primary care providers and/or health systems changes that promote referral would be beneficial to increase referral rates. Research is needed into patient factors and other potential reasons underlying lack of referral.

### Terminology

GOs are subspecialists trained to administer both surgical and chemotherapeutic treatment to OC patients.

### Peer-review

The authors investigated the influence of GO in the United States on surgical/

chemotherapeutic SOC, and how this translates into improved survival among women with OC. The authors claimed that a survival advantage is associated with receiving surgical SOC and overall treatment by a GO. This manuscript provides useful information to the medical students, clinicians, and researchers in this field.

## REFERENCES

- 1 United States Cancer Statistics: 1999-2008 Incidence and Mortality Web-based Report. Atlanta, GA: Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, and National Cancer Institute
- 2 Chan JK, Kapp DS, Shin JY, Osann K, Leiserowitz GS, Cress RD, O'Malley C. Factors associated with the suboptimal treatment of women less than 55 years of age with early-stage ovarian cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2008; **108**: 95-99 [PMID: 17949796 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2007.08.087]
- 3 National Comprehensive Cancer Network. NCCN Guidelines Version 3. 2014 Epithelial Ovarian Cancer/Fallopian Tube Cancer/Primary Peritoneal Cancer. 2014
- 4 Bristow RE, Zahurak ML, Diaz-Montes TP, Giuntoli RL, Armstrong DK. Impact of surgeon and hospital ovarian cancer surgical case volume on in-hospital mortality and related short-term outcomes. *Gynecol Oncol* 2009; **115**: 334-338 [PMID: 19766295 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2009.08.025]
- 5 Earle CC, Schrag D, Neville BA, Yabroff KR, Topor M, Fahey A, Trimble EL, Bodurka DC, Bristow RE, Carney M, Warren JL. Effect of surgeon specialty on processes of care and outcomes for ovarian cancer patients. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2006; **98**: 172-180 [PMID: 16449677 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/dji019]
- 6 Eisenkop SM, Spirtos NM, Montag TW, Nalick RH, Wang HJ. The impact of subspecialty training on the management of advanced ovarian cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 1992; **47**: 203-209 [PMID: 1468698 DOI: 10.1016/0090-8258(92)90107-T]
- 7 Kehoe S, Powell J, Wilson S, Woodman C. The influence of the operating surgeon's specialisation on patient survival in ovarian carcinoma. *Br J Cancer* 1994; **70**: 1014-1017 [PMID: 7947077]
- 8 Mayer AR, Chambers SK, Graves E, Holm C, Tseng PC, Nelson BE, Schwartz PE. Ovarian cancer staging: does it require a gynecologic oncologist? *Gynecol Oncol* 1992; **47**: 223-227 [PMID: 1468701]
- 9 Vernooij F, Heintz P, Witteveen E, van der Graaf Y. The outcomes of ovarian cancer treatment are better when provided by gynecologic oncologists and in specialized hospitals: a systematic review. *Gynecol Oncol* 2007; **105**: 801-812 [PMID: 17433422 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2007.02.030]
- 10 Mercado C, Zingmond D, Karlan BY, Sekaris E, Gross J, Maggard-Gibbons M, Tomlinson JS, Ko CY. Quality of care in advanced ovarian cancer: the importance of provider specialty. *Gynecol Oncol* 2010; **117**: 18-22 [PMID: 20106512 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2009.12.033]
- 11 Chan JK, Kapp DS, Shin JY, Husain A, Teng NN, Berek JS, Osann K, Leiserowitz GS, Cress RD, O'Malley C. Influence of the gynecologic oncologist on the survival of ovarian cancer patients. *Obstet Gynecol* 2007; **109**: 1342-1350 [PMID: 17540806 DOI: 10.1097/01.AOG.0000265207.27755.28]
- 12 Erickson BK, Martin JY, Shah MM, Straughn JM, Leath CA. Reasons for failure to deliver National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN)-adherent care in the treatment of epithelial ovarian cancer at an NCCN cancer center. *Gynecol Oncol* 2014; **133**: 142-146 [PMID: 24517876 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2014.02.006]
- 13 Bristow RE, Chang J, Ziogas A, Anton-Culver H. Adherence to treatment guidelines for ovarian cancer as a measure of quality care. *Obstet Gynecol* 2013; **121**: 1226-1234 [PMID: 23812456 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e3182922a17]
- 14 Chan J, Kapp D, Shin J, Husain A, Teng N, Berek J, Osann K, Leiserowitz G, Cress R, O'Malley C. Influence of the gynecologic oncologist on the survival of ovarian cancer patients. *Obstet Gynecol* 2007; **109**: 1342-1350 [PMID: 17540806 DOI: 10.1097/01.AOG.0000265207.27755.28]



- 15 **Engelen MJ**, Kos HE, Willemse PH, Aalders JG, de Vries EG, Schaapveld M, Otter R, van der Zee AG. Surgery by consultant gynecologic oncologists improves survival in patients with ovarian carcinoma. *Cancer* 2006; **106**: 589-598 [PMID: 16369985 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.21616]
- 16 **Goff BA**, Matthews BJ, Larson EH, Andrilla CH, Wynn M, Lishner DM, Baldwin LM. Predictors of comprehensive surgical treatment in patients with ovarian cancer. *Cancer* 2007; **109**: 2031-2042 [PMID: 17420977 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.22604]
- 17 **Howell E**, Egorova N, Hayes M, Wisnivesky J, Franco R, Bickell N. Racial disparities in the treatment of advanced epithelial ovarian cancer. *Obstet Gynecol* 2013; **122**: 1025-1032 [PMID: 24104782 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e3182a92011]
- 18 **National Cancer Institute**. About the SEER-Medicare Database Factsheet. Available from: URL: <http://seer.cancer.gov/about/factsheets/>
- 19 **National Cancer Institute**. SEER-Medicare: Calculation of Comorbidity Weights. [updated 2013 Oct]
- 20 **O'Malley CD**, Shema SJ, Cress RD, Bauer K, Kahn AR, Schymura MJ, Wike JM, Stewart SL. The implications of age and comorbidity on survival following epithelial ovarian cancer: summary and results from a Centers for Disease Control and Prevention study. *J Womens Health (Larchmt)* 2012; **21**: 887-894 [PMID: 22816528 DOI: 10.1089/jwh.2012.3781]
- 21 **Thrall MM**, Gray HJ, Symons RG, Weiss NS, Flum DR, Goff BA. Trends in treatment of advanced epithelial ovarian cancer in the Medicare population. *Gynecol Oncol* 2011; **122**: 100-106 [PMID: 21496889 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.03.022]
- 22 **Austin S**, Martin M, Kim Y, Funkhouser E, Partridge E, Pisu M. Disparities in use of gynecologic oncologists for women with ovarian cancer in the United States. *Health Serv Res* 2013; **48**: 1135-1153 [PMID: 23206237 DOI: 10.1111/1475-6773.12012]
- 23 **Mandelblatt J**, Faul L, Luta G, Makgoeng S, Isaacs C, Taylor K, Sheppard V, Tallarico M, Barry W, Cohen H. Patient and physician decision styles and breast cancer chemotherapy use in older women: Cancer and Leukemia Group B protocol 369901. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: 2609-2614 [PMID: 22614985 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.40.2909]
- 24 **Stewart SL**, Rim SH, Richards TB. Gynecologic oncologists and ovarian cancer treatment: avenues for improved survival. *J Womens Health (Larchmt)* 2011; **20**: 1257-1260 [PMID: 21819252 DOI: 10.1089/jwh.2011.3053]
- 25 **Stewart SL**, Cooney D, Hirsch S, Westervelt L, Richards TB, Rim SH, Thomas CC. Effect of gynecologic oncologist availability on ovarian cancer mortality. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2014; **3**: 71-77 [PMID: 26478860 DOI: 10.5317/wjog.v3.i2.71]
- 26 **Goff BA**, Miller JW, Matthews B, Trivers KF, Andrilla CH, Lishner DM, Baldwin LM. Involvement of gynecologic oncologists in the treatment of patients with a suspicious ovarian mass. *Obstet Gynecol* 2011; **118**: 854-862 [PMID: 21934449 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e31822dabc6]
- 27 **Roland PY**, Kelly FJ, Kulwicki CY, Blitzer P, Curcio M, Orr JW. The benefits of a gynecologic oncologist: a pattern of care study for endometrial cancer treatment. *Gynecol Oncol* 2004; **93**: 125-130 [PMID: 15047225 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2003.12.018]
- 28 **Bristow RE**, Chang J, Ziogas A, Randall LM, Anton-Culver H. High-volume ovarian cancer care: survival impact and disparities in access for advanced-stage disease. *Gynecol Oncol* 2014; **132**: 403-410 [PMID: 24361578 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2013.12.017]
- 29 **Wright JD**, Neugut AI, Lewin SN, Lu YS, Herzog TJ, Hershman DL. Trends in hospital volume and patterns of referral for women with gynecologic cancers. *Obstet Gynecol* 2013; **121**: 1217-1225 [PMID: 23812455 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e31828ec686]
- 30 **Du XL**, Key CR, Dickie L, Darling R, Geraci JM, Zhang D. External validation of medicare claims for breast cancer chemotherapy compared with medical chart reviews. *Med Care* 2006; **44**: 124-131 [PMID: 16434911]
- 31 **Lund JL**, Stürmer T, Harlan LC, Sanoff HK, Sandler RS, Brookhart MA, Warren JL. Identifying specific chemotherapeutic agents in Medicare data: a validation study. *Med Care* 2013; **51**: e27-e34 [PMID: 22080337 DOI: 10.1097/MLR.0b013e31823ab60f]
- 32 **Bristow RE**, Powell MA, Al-Hammadi N, Chen L, Miller JP, Roland PY, Mutch DG, Cliby WA. Disparities in ovarian cancer care quality and survival according to race and socioeconomic status. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2013; **105**: 823-832 [PMID: 23539755 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djt065]
- 33 **Bristow RE**, Zahurak ML, Ibeanu OA. Racial disparities in ovarian cancer surgical care: a population-based analysis. *Gynecol Oncol* 2011; **121**: 364-368 [PMID: 21288564 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2010.12.347]
- 34 **McGuire V**, Herrinton L, Whittemore AS. Race, epithelial ovarian cancer survival, and membership in a large health maintenance organization. *Epidemiology* 2002; **13**: 231-234 [PMID: 11880767]
- 35 **Pollack LA**, Adamache W, Ehemann CR, Ryerson AB, Richardson LC. Enhancement of identifying cancer specialists through the linkage of Medicare claims to additional sources of physician specialty. *Health Serv Res* 2009; **44**: 562-576 [PMID: 19207588 DOI: 10.1111/j.1475-6773.2008.00935.x]

**P- Reviewer:** Cosmi E, Sonoda K, Tan GC, Yokoyama Y  
**S- Editor:** Song XX **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Jiao XK



## Single incision slings: Are they ready for real life?

Manuela Tutolo, Dirk De Ridder, Frank Van der Aa

Manuela Tutolo, 2<sup>nd</sup> Urological Department, San Raffaele Hospital, University Vita-Salute, 20132 Milan, Italy

Manuela Tutolo, Dirk De Ridder, Frank Van der Aa, Department of Urology, University Hospitals Leuven, 3000 Leuven, Belgium

**Author contributions:** All authors equally contributed to this paper with conception and design of the study, literature review and analysis, drafting and critical revision and editing, and final approval of the final version.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** Dirk De Ridder has received fees for serving as a consultant and/or advisory board member for AMS; Frank Van der Aa has received fees for serving as a consultant and/or advisory board member for AMS.

**Data sharing statement:** Technical appendix, statistical code, and dataset available from the corresponding author at Dryad repository, who will provide a permanent, citable and open-access home for the dataset.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Correspondence to:** Manuela Tutolo, MD, Department of Urology, University Hospitals Leuven, Herestraat 49, 3000 Leuven, Belgium. [tutolo.manuela83@gmail.com](mailto:tutolo.manuela83@gmail.com)  
 Telephone: +32-16-346930  
 Fax: +32-16-346931

Received: September 3, 2015  
 Peer-review started: September 18, 2015  
 First decision: October 30, 2015  
 Revised: December 8, 2015  
 Accepted: January 21, 2016  
 Article in press: January 22, 2016  
 Published online: May 10, 2016

### Abstract

**AIM:** To review of the efficacy and safety outcomes of different single incision slings (SIS) systems, also in comparison with traditional slings.

**METHODS:** A literature search was conducted in PubMed/MEDLINE database. The research was restricted to randomized and/or prospective trials and retrospective studies, published after 2006, with at least 20 patients with non-neurogenic stress urinary incontinence (SUI). The studies had to assess efficacy and/or safety of the SIS with a minimum follow-up of 12 mo. All the paper assessing the performance of tension free vaginal tape secur were excluded from this review. The final selection included 19 papers fulfilling the aforementioned criteria. Two authors independently reviewed the selected papers.

**RESULTS:** Four different SIS systems were analysed: Ajust<sup>®</sup>, Ophira<sup>®</sup>, Altis<sup>®</sup> and MiniArc<sup>®</sup>. The average objective cure rate was 88%. Overall no statistically significant differences were found between SIS and traditional mid-urethral slings (MUS) in terms of objective cure (all  $P > 0.005$ ). Only one paper showed a statistically lower success rate in MiniArc<sup>®</sup> vs Advantage<sup>®</sup> slings (40% vs 90%) and higher rates of failure in the SIS group. Since there was a great variability in terms of tests performed, it was not possible to compare subjective cure between studies. The vast part of the studies showed no major complications after SIS surgery. We also observed very low reported pain rates in SIS patients. The RCTs on Ajust<sup>®</sup> and MiniArc<sup>®</sup>, showed better outcomes in terms of post-operative pain compared to MUS. None of the patients reported long-term pain complains.

**CONCLUSION:** SIS showed similar efficacy to that of traditional slings but lower short-term pain, complication and failure rates.

**Key words:** Female urological diseases; Urinary stress

incontinence; Pelvic floor disorders; Minimally invasive surgery; Mid-urethral slings

© **The Author(s) 2016.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** This review shows an average objective cure rate of 88% in minisling patients and underlines their comparable efficacy with traditional slings. Short term pain, complication and failure rates are lower in the minisling group.

Tutolo M, De Ridder D, Van der Aa F. Single incision slings: Are they ready for real life? *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(2): 197-209 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i2/197.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i2.197>

## INTRODUCTION

Stress urinary incontinence (SUI) is the involuntary leakage of urine associated with effort on exertion, sneezing or coughing. The estimated prevalence is roughly 30% in women aged > 40 years. The annual incidence increases with age (aged > 65 years, annual incidence rates approximately 9%)<sup>[1-3]</sup>. Several treatment options for SUI exist, including physical therapy, urethral bulking injections, and surgery.

Surgery traditionally consisted of Burch urethropexy or pubovaginal slings<sup>[3]</sup>. These procedures were found to give adequate results but were also associated with long recovery time and complications such as frequent post-operative voiding dysfunction<sup>[4]</sup>.

Mid urethral slings (MUS) were developed as a less invasive approach to the treatment of SUI. Since the introduction in 1996 of retropubic tension free vaginal tape (TVT), the use of synthetic MUS has grown to become the most common surgery performed for SUI in women.

These procedures have evolved and multiple types of MUS have been launched on the market, enabling treating physicians to offer different therapeutic options to patients with SUI. The single-incision slings (SIS) are one of the latest innovations for female SUI. They were introduced with the concept of using a shorter tape through a single vaginal incision providing a similar "suburethral hammock" to classical MUS<sup>[5]</sup>.

Their anchoring mechanism (to the obturator membrane or muscle) avoids the passage of trocars through the obturator foramen<sup>[6]</sup>. SIS represent a minimal invasive innovation for the surgical treatment of SUI. Some studies have already proven their efficacy on the short, medium and long term<sup>[5,7-9]</sup>.

The purpose of this study is to review the evidence for different SIS systems, to compare this relatively new system with traditional MUS and to give the reader

an overview on the principal SIS currently available, defining their efficacy and safety. Moreover we aim at giving the physician a tool to simplify the clinical decision-making on the base of the existing literature.

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

### Evidence acquisition

The literature search was conducted on PubMed in June 2015. The search strategy included the following terms: "SUI" AND "mid urethral slings", AND "SISs" AND "female".

Our research was restricted to randomized and/or prospective trials and retrospective studies with at least 20 patients with non-neurogenic SUI, published after 2006 in English. To be included in the review the studies had to assess efficacy and/or safety of the SIS and have a minimum follow-up of 12 mo. It is important to underline that all the paper assessing the performance of TVT secur were excluded from this review. The reason is the worldwide withdrawal of this sling from practice in March 2013.

Two independent researchers evaluated the articles with one researcher making the final decision.

### Evidence synthesis

Using the aforementioned research strategy, 102 studies were identified. After applying the eligibility criteria a total of 19 papers were included in the review. Of these, 8 reported efficacy and/or safety outcome on Ajüst® (C.R. Bard, Inc., Murray Hill, NJ, United States), 2 on Ophira® (Promedon, Cordoba, Argentina), 2 on Altis® (Coloplast), and 7 on MiniArc® (American Medical System, Inc., Minnesota, United States) (Figure 1). The statistical review of the study was performed by a biomedical statistician.

## RESULTS

### Ajüst® (Figure 2)

**Method of action/working mechanism:** The Ajüst® sling provides a strong insertion into the obturator muscle/membrane and allows immediate post insertion adjustment of the tape. A 1 cm incision is made and a bilateral tunnel is created as far as the posterior margin of the inferior pubic ramus. The trocar with the fixed anchor is then introduced and pivoted slowly in the obturator internus and membrane. The adjustable anchor is subsequently placed at the contralateral side and the tape tension is adjusted. A flexible "sylet" is used to lock the adjustable anchor<sup>[10]</sup>.

**Population:** A total of 8 studies assessing efficacy and/or safety of Ajüst® slings have been included in the review<sup>[11-18]</sup>. All patients included presented with SUI or MUI with predominant stress symptoms. In all the studies, patients with concomitant organ prolapse, predominant overactive bladder symptoms or patients

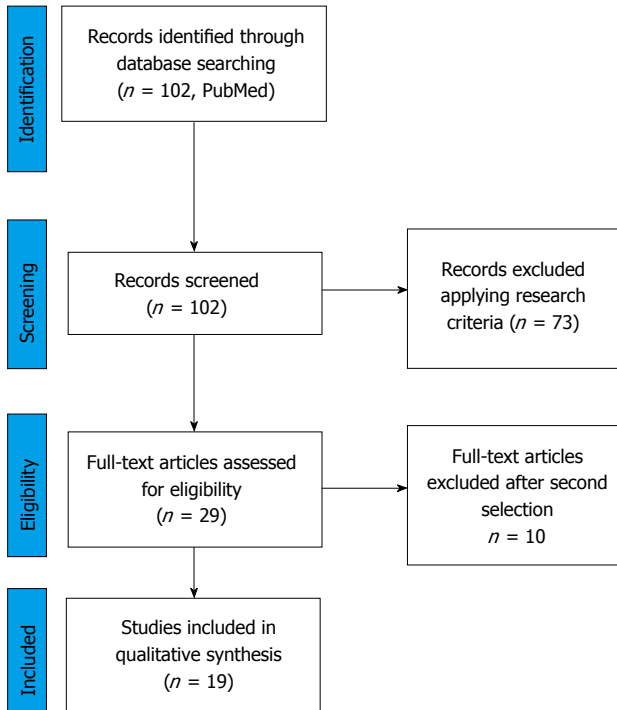


Figure 1 Prisma flow chart.

with a history of previous incontinence and/or anterior vaginal wall surgery were excluded. The majority of the studies included do not differentiate the severity of the incontinence. Overall severity information were available for a total of 374 patients who showed moderate to severe SUI<sup>[11,15,16]</sup>.

**Evidence efficacy (Table 1):** Ajust® sling efficacy was investigated in a total of 3 randomized controlled trials (RCT)<sup>[9,11,12]</sup>.

Two of them compared the efficacy of the adjustable sling system with the classic MUS TOT in a total of 293 patients. At 1-year follow-up, both studies demonstrated no difference between groups in terms of objective cure (assessed with cough stress test - CTS): 90.8% vs 88.6%<sup>[11]</sup> and 81.2% vs 82.3%<sup>[9]</sup> in Ajust® and TOT respectively, all  $P > 0.05$ . Subjective cure was also assessed. In the paper by Schweitzer *et al.*<sup>[11]</sup>, subjective cure was defined as a negative answer to the UDI-6 question: "do you still experience any leakage related to physical activities?". In the paper by Mostafa *et al.*<sup>[9]</sup>, it was assessed using the patient global impression of improvement (PGI-I) questionnaire. Using the aforementioned criteria, neither RCT showed any difference in subjective cure rate between the two groups. Failure was defined as any surgical retreatment for urinary incontinence. Schweitzer *et al.*<sup>[11]</sup> showed a failure rate of 2.2% and 2% in Ajust® and TOT slings at 1-year. Mostafa *et al.*<sup>[13]</sup> showed a 7.2% and 4.4% failure rate in Ajust® and TOT respectively. These differences between groups were not statistically significant in both papers<sup>[9,11]</sup>.

The third RCT is a comparison between three



Figure 2 Ajust sling.

SISs, namely TVT Secur®, MiniArc® and Ajust®<sup>[12]</sup>. As mentioned before, we did not include the results concerning TVT Secur. The other two arms (namely MiniArc® and Ajust®) did not show any difference in terms of subjective and objective cure rates at 6, 12, 18 and 24 mo follow-up. It is important to underline that both objective and subjective cure rates decreased significantly in each arm between 6 and 24 mo. At 24 mo, no difference was found between groups in total failure rates: 60% in the Ajust® group and 55% in MiniArc® group.

In the matched paired study performed by Grigoriadis *et al.*<sup>[14]</sup> on 171 patients diagnosed with urodynamic SUI, we observed similar results in terms of objective and subjective cure rates at 22 mo follow-up for both the Ajust® and TOT group. Failure rate varied between 8.1% and 10.6%<sup>[14]</sup>.

We also collected data of 4 prospective studies assessing the efficacy of Ajust® slings up to 1-year follow-up. The results were comparable with those of the RCTs: Objective cure varied from 82.4% to 83.7%. Patient reported cure varied from 80% to 83%<sup>[15-18]</sup>. However, it has to be underlined that each study used different objective and subjective parameters to assess continence after surgery. Failure of the procedure defined as persisting SUI or need of other types of incontinence surgery vary widely from 0.0% to 14%.

**Evidence safety (complications and pain) (Table 2):** No major complications were observed in all the studies analysed. In a cohort study, Cornu *et al.*<sup>[17]</sup> described a post-operative vaginal bleeding managed surgically 8 h after the initial surgery. Also a total of 2 mesh erosions (on 95 patients) requiring surgery were observed after a mean follow-up of 21 mo<sup>[17]</sup>.

In the RCT comparing Ajust® and MiniArc® the number of patients using analgesic tablets during the first 30 d from surgery ( $P = 0.349$ ) and the number of analgesic tablets used ( $P = 0.124$ ) were similar among both groups.

Complications occurred in 7 (17.5%) and 2 (5.0%), cases from the Ajust® and MiniArc® groups respectively. All post-operative complications were Dindo grade 1,



Table 1 Efficacy

Ref.	Design	Participants	Intervention (n)	Comparison	Follow-up	Cure assessment	Cure rate	Assessment of improvement or success	Improv. rate	Success rate	P
Schweitzer <i>et al</i> <sup>[11]</sup>	RCT	156	Ajust: 100 TOT: 56	TOT	12 mo	OC: CST SC: UDI-6	OC: 90.8% <i>vs</i> 88.6% SC: 77.2% <i>vs</i> 72.9%		-	-	OC: 0.76 SC: 0.57
Palomba <i>et al</i> <sup>[12]</sup>	RCT (Multi)	80	Ajust: 40 MiniArc: 40	MiniArc	24 mo	OC: CST SC: % dry? Or improved?	OC: 47% <i>vs</i> 55% SC: 52.5% <i>vs</i> 65%		-	-	<i>P</i> > 0.05 <i>P</i> > 0.05
Mostafa <i>et al</i> <sup>[13]</sup>	RCT (Multi)	137	Ajust: 69 TVT-O: 68	TOT	12 mo	OC: CST SC: PGI-I	OC: 81.2% <i>vs</i> 82.3% SC: 85.5% <i>vs</i> 84%				<i>P</i> = 1 <i>P</i> = 1
Grigoriadis <i>et al</i> <sup>[14]</sup>	Prosp matched controlled	171	Ajust: 85 TOT: 86	TOT	22.3 mo (mean)	OC: CTS SC: Patient impression	OC: 84% <i>vs</i> 86% SC: 81.2% <i>vs</i> 82.6%	-			
Natale <i>et al</i> <sup>[15]</sup>	Prosp. (Multi)	92	Ajust: 92	-	24 mo	OC: CST SC: PGI-I	OC: 83.7% SC: 81.5%		-	-	-
Naumann <i>et al</i> <sup>[16]</sup>	Prosp. (Multi)	51	Ajust	-	25.2 ± 2.24 mo (mean)	OC: CTS	82.4%	Ingelmann-Sundberg scale	3.9%	86.3%	-
Cornu <i>et al</i> <sup>[17]</sup>	Prosp.	95	Ajust		21 ± 6 mo (mean)	OC: Pad usage SC: Subjective reports of leakage	OC: 80% SC: 83%	-	-	80%	-
Abdel-fattah <i>et al</i> <sup>[18]</sup>	Prosp. (Multi)	90	Ajust	-	12 mo	-	-	PGI-I	86%	80%	-
Palma <i>et al</i> <sup>[19]</sup>	Prosp. (Multi)	124	Ophira		12 mo	OC: 1 h-PWT	OC: 85.3%	Leakage < 50%	6.30%		
Djehdian <i>et al</i> <sup>[20]</sup>	RCT	120	Ophira: 64 TOT: 56	TOT	12 mo	OC: CST/ 20 min pad test SC: Patient satisfaction	OC: 68.1% <i>vs</i> 81.9% (ITT) and 73% <i>vs</i> 89% (PP) SC: 81.1% <i>vs</i> 88.5% (ITT) and 87.5% <i>vs</i> 96.4% (PP)	-	-	-	<i>P</i> = 0.43 and 0.54 <i>P</i> = 0.11 and 0.10
Dias <i>et al</i> <sup>[21]</sup>	Prosp.	50	Altis	-	12 mo	CST ICIQ-SF = 0	OC: 90.2% SC: 84%	ICIQ-SF lower than pre-op or > 0	8%		
Kocjancic <i>et al</i> <sup>[22]</sup>	Prosp. (Multi)	101	Altis	-	12 mo	OC: PWT (< 50% pad weight compared to baseline) and CST SC: PGI-I	OC: 90% SC: 90.1% SC: 89.3%	-	-	-	-
Lee <i>et al</i> <sup>[25]</sup>	RCT	206	MiniArc: 103 Monarc: 103	Monarc	12 mo	CST (negative) SC: Negative reply to ICIQ 3 and 5 and UI-SF	OC: 94% <i>vs</i> 97% SC: 92% <i>vs</i> 94%	-	-	-	OC: 0.78 SC: 0.50
Schellart <i>et al</i> <sup>[26]</sup>	RCT	173	MiniArc: 86 Monarc: 87	Monarc	12 mo	OC: CST SC: PGI-I	OC: 89% <i>vs</i> 91% SC: 83% <i>vs</i> 86%				<i>P</i> = 0.65 <i>P</i> = 0.46
Basu <i>et al</i> <sup>[27]</sup>	RCT	71	MiniArc: 38 Advantage: 33	Advantage	36 mo			KHQ	48% <i>vs</i> 90%		All <i>P</i> < 0.05

Oliveira <i>et al.</i> <sup>[23,30]</sup>	Prosp.	71	MiniArc	-	12 mo	SC: No leakage and no protection	77%	Use of protection decreased > 50% and affirmative reply to the question: are you satisfied with the results?	11%	88%
Deole <i>et al.</i> <sup>[29]</sup>	Prosp.	59	MiniArc		12 mo	OC: CST SC: ICIQ-SF	OC: 66% SC: median score 6	-	-	-
Presthus <i>et al.</i> <sup>[24]</sup>	Prosp.	31	MiniArc		24 mo	PGL-I OC: CST and PWT	64% 93.5%			
Kennelly <i>et al.</i> <sup>[31]</sup>	Prosp. (Multi)	142	MiniArc		24 mo	OC: CST and PWT SC: UDI-6	90.3% 84.5% 80.1% 92.9%	-	-	-

RCT: Randomized controlled trial; TOT: Trans obturator tape; OC: Objective cure; SC: Subjective cure; PGL-I: Patient global impression of improvement; CST: Cough stress test; PWT: Pad weight test; ITT: Intention to treat; PP: Per protocol; ICIQ-SF: International Consultation on Incontinence Questionnaire - Short Form; UI-SF: Urinary incontinence-Short form; UDI-6: Urogenital Distress Inventory; Prosp.: Prospective; Multi: Multicentric.

and they were not significantly different among the groups ( $P = 0.897$ ).

Schweitzer *et al.*<sup>[11]</sup> showed a significantly lower pain score in the Ajust® group vs the TOT group during the first week. However no differences were found after day 6 between both groups ( $P = 0.75$ ).

**OAB symptoms:** In the RCT by Schweitzer only women with moderate to severe SUI were included. Seven out of 100 women in the Ajust® group and four out of 56 in the TOT group reported new onset of OAB. Both the RCT by Mostafa *et al.*<sup>[13]</sup> and Palomba *et al.*<sup>[12]</sup> included also patients with mixed urinary incontinence. In the first paper the authors showed a trend toward higher rates of *de novo* urgency and/or worsening of the pre existing urgency in the Ajust® group during the first 4 mo (although it was found not to be statistically significant) but this finding was not retained at 1-year. Moreover there was no significant difference between the two groups (6.5% vs 8.7% in TOT vs Ajust®,  $P = 0.74$ )<sup>[12]</sup>.

*De novo* or worsened urgency UI was noted in 5 patients, in the paper by Palma *et al.*<sup>[19]</sup>, occurring in 3/40 (7.5%) and 2/40 (5.0%) cases in the Ajust® and MiniArc® groups, respectively<sup>[16]</sup>.

In the study by Grigoriadis *et al.*<sup>[14]</sup>, there was a total of 10/85 (11.6%) vs 8/86 (9.4%) patients that complained of early post-operative symptoms of frequency and urgency in the TOT group vs Ajust® groups respectively ( $P < 0.05$ ). No DO was demonstrated on urodynamic investigation<sup>[14]</sup>.

In the prospective study by Mostafa *et al.*<sup>[13]</sup>, the authors assessed post-operative urgency in a group of pure SUI and mixed incontinence patients, using the urgency perception scale (UPS). Pre operative assessment of urgency showed 53/90 patients (59%)

to have urgency symptoms. Of them, 35/53 (66%) reported post-operative improvement of urgency (29 of them reported total cure). However, 18/53 (20%) patients reported no improvement or even worsening of the symptoms. No data on *de novo* urgency was described by the authors<sup>[18]</sup>.

Cornu *et al.*<sup>[17]</sup> also showed a decreasing trend in OAB symptoms after surgery compared to the pre-operative assessment (35% vs 25%). Of them 12/95 (12.6%) had *de novo* urgency and 12/95 (12.6%) reported persistent OAB symptoms<sup>[17]</sup>.

Natale *et al.*<sup>[15]</sup> reported a rate of post-operative urgency of 5.4% (5/92), 9.8% (9/92) of which *de novo* urgency. In the group of patient with pre-operative OAB symptoms ( $n = 36$ , 39.1%), 27 reported persistence of urgency and of them 18 had a good response to pharmacotherapy (30%)<sup>[15]</sup>.

Naumann *et al.*<sup>[16]</sup> reported on 6/51 patient (12%), having a preoperative patient perception of intensity of urgency scale higher than 1 (*i.e.*, at least moderate urgency). However, 3 of them (60%) reported improvement of urgency compared to their situation before surgery and 2 (40%), reported severe urgency (2/5: 4%)<sup>[16]</sup>.

### Ophira® (Figure 3)

**Method of action/working mechanism:** Ophira®, has blue loosening sutures inserted in the base of both fixation arms, giving the ability to correct tension during the procedure. The fixation system has multiple fixation points along its self-fixating arms.

The system includes a "Retractable Insertion Guide" to improve control and ease when inserting the sling and releasing it in the correct position. The connectors located at the ends enable the Retractable Insertion Guide to be inserted easily and safely.

Table 2 Safety

Ref.	Design	Participants	Intervention	Comparison	Timing	Assessment	Pain rate/ complications	P
Schweitzer <i>et al</i> <sup>[11]</sup>	RCT	156	Ajust: 100 TOT: 56	TOT	Immediate post-op and up to week 6	VAS	Median score week 1: Ajust: 0.2 TOT: 1.0 Median score week 2: Ajust: 0.0 TOT: 0.5	< 6 d: 0.01 > 6 d: > 0.05
Palomba <i>et al</i> <sup>[12]</sup>	RCT (Multi)	80	Ajust: 40 MiniArc: 40	MiniArc	24 mo follow-up	VAS	Pain score Ajust: 5.3 ± 3.8 Pain score MiniArc: 5.0 ± 3.5 Complications: Ajust: 17.5% MiniArc: 5% 1 mesh erosion in Ajust group (no surgical revision) 3.5% vs 5.8%	All P > 0.05
Grigoriadis <i>et al</i> <sup>[14]</sup>	Prosp. matched controlled	171	Ajust: 85 TOT: 86	TOT	Post-op and during follow-up	Patient's impression		-
Natale <i>et al</i> <sup>[15]</sup>	Prosp. (Multi)	92	Ajust n = 92	-	Post-op and during follow-up	Patient's impression	1 leg pain, 3 mesh extrusion (of which 1 mesh removal)	-
Naumann <i>et al</i> <sup>[16]</sup>	Prosp. (Multi)	51	Ajust	-	1 d after surgery and at during follow-up	VAS	1 patient day 1	-
Cornu <i>et al</i> <sup>[17]</sup>	Prosp.	95	Ajust	-	1-6 and 12 mo and yearly thereafter	Use of pain medication and surgeon's and patient's reports	1 vaginal bleeding managed surgically 8 h after surgery. At last follow- up 2 patients still complained of tight and vaginal pain respectively	-
Abdel-fattah <i>et al</i> <sup>[18]</sup>	Prosp. (Multi)	90	Ajust	-	Intra-op., after 30 min and 3 h post- surgery or at the time of discharge	10 point Likert scale	1 case had to be converted in standard MUS (kit fault). Median pain rate at the time of the discharge was 0 and didn't change during follow-up	-
Palma <i>et al</i> <sup>[19]</sup>	Prosp. (Multi)	124	Ophira	TOT	1-yr and 2 yr	Patient's impression	1 patient severe intraoperative pain sedation. 2 mesh resection: 1.6% 0% vs 1.7%	P > 0.05
Djehdian <i>et al</i> <sup>[20]</sup>	RCT	120	TOT: 56 Ophira: 64	-	Day 1 and after 4-6 wk	VAS		P = 0.04
Dias <i>et al</i> <sup>[21]</sup>	Prosp.	50	Altis	-	12 mo	Patient's report	1 mesh erosion treated surgically (2%)	
Kocjancic <i>et al</i> <sup>[22]</sup>	Prosp. (Multi)	101	Altis	-	During 12 mo follow-up	Patient's and surgeon's reports	Non-pelvic pain: 9 (8%) 3 serious adverse events (1 bleeding, 2 mesh extrusion requiring surgery)	
Lee <i>et al</i> <sup>[25]</sup>	RCT	206	MiniArc: 103  Monarc: 103	Monarc	24 h after surgery and 12 mo follow- up	Patient's and surgeon's reports	Women requiring analgesia: 0.5 vs 2 tablets) and groin pain 9.7% vs 33% 1 mesh erosion in the MiniArc group at 1 yr follow-up	P = 0.02  P < 0.01
Schellart <i>et al</i> <sup>[26]</sup>	RCT	173	MiniArc: 86 Monarc: 87	Monarc	3 d and 4 wk	VAS  Use of pain medications	2 vs 3 8% vs 3%	P = 0.90 P = 0.37

Basu <i>et al</i> <sup>[27]</sup>	RCT	71	MiniArc: 38 Advantage: 33	Advantage	During follow-up	Patient's response on late adverse events	No late adverse events	-
Oliveira <i>et al</i> <sup>[23,30]</sup>	Prosp.	71	MiniArc	-	First 24 h	VAS	1.0 ± 1.4 (one patient had pain for 6 mo)	-
Deole <i>et al</i> <sup>[29]</sup>	Prosp.	59	MiniArc	-	Intra and post-op	Surgeon's and patient's reports and Wong-Baker score	No major intraoperative complications Wong-Baker score: 2 ± 1.5	-
Presthus <i>et al</i> <sup>[24]</sup>	Prosp.	31	MiniArc	-	Intra and post-op	Surgeon's and patient reports and Wong Baker faces	No major intraoperative complications Pain rate 9.6%	-
Kennelly <i>et al</i> <sup>[31]</sup>	Prosp. (Multi)	142	MiniArc	-	At discharge and at 7 d post-op	Surgeon's and patient's reports and Wong-Baker score	No major complications Median pain score 0	-

RCT: Randomized controlled trial; TOT: Trans obturator tape; Prosp.: Prospective; Multi: Multicentric.

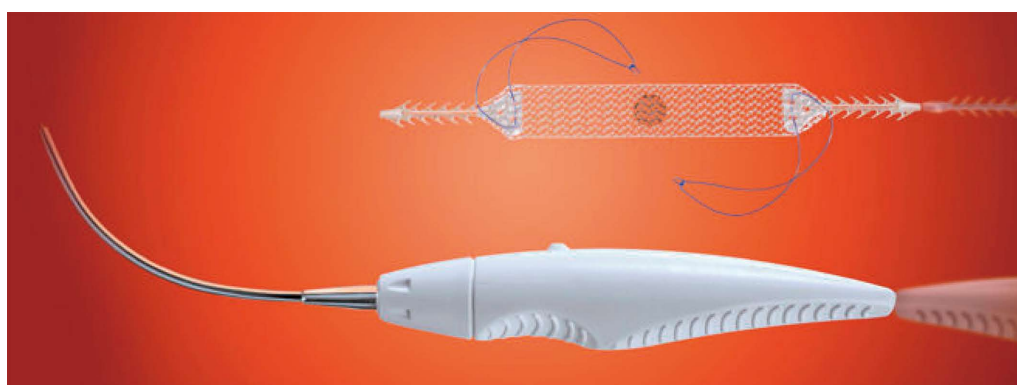


Figure 3 Ophira sling.

The delivery trocar is inserted in the small vaginal incision and guided by the surgeon toward the obturator internus. When half of the mesh is within the incision, the deployment button on the needle is pressed and the sling is kept in place by the self-anchoring fishbone columns.

**Population:** A total of two studies on Ophira® slings have been included in the review. One study is a prospective cohort study ( $n = 124$ ) that includes women older than 18 years with a urodynamically confirmed diagnosis of SUI in absence of neurological disease<sup>[19]</sup>. The second one is a RCT including also women ( $n = 120$ ) older than 18 years but with positive CST, urine leakage greater than 2 g (measured by a standardized pad test with 250 mL bladder volume) and urodynamic stress incontinence<sup>[20]</sup>.

**Evidence efficacy (Table 1):** In the prospective cohort study by Palma *et al*<sup>[19]</sup> 124 women were included in the study to assess efficacy, safety and predictors of failure of Ophira® slings. The authors compared also the results

at 1 and 2 years after surgery. Objective cure at 24 mo was 85.3% and improvement 6.3%. Overall 8.4% patient had failure and the only predictor of failure was previous incontinence surgery ( $P = 0.04$ )<sup>[19]</sup>.

In the randomized prospective trial by Djehdian *et al*<sup>[20]</sup> comparing Ophira® and TOT, the efficacy at 12 mo was analysed using a non-inferiority test. They demonstrated no differences in terms of objective and subjective cure rates between the two slings in both intention to treat and per protocol analyses (all  $P > 0.5$ ).

Overall failure rate was 19%. In the Ophira® group 5/64 patients (7.8%) did not achieve an objective and subjective cure, and were submitted to a second surgery. In TOT group, 1/56 (1.8%) of patients were submitted to a second surgery for failure. However no statistically significant differences have been found between groups<sup>[20]</sup>.

**Evidence safety (complications and pain) (Table 2):** No major complications were reported in both studies. In the prospective randomized paper there was no difference in terms of complications between the two





Figure 4 Altis sling.

groups. However the number of patients complaining of tight pain resulted to be significantly higher in the TOT group compared to the Ophira® group (7.1% vs 0% respectively;  $P = 0.04$ ). Two patients in the Ophira® group had the tape cut for voiding obstruction<sup>[20]</sup>.

**OAB symptoms:** In the prospective cohort study, *de novo* urgency was reported in 9/124 patients (7.3%)<sup>[19]</sup>. In the prospective randomized study comparing Ophira® slings with TOT, symptoms of urgency were determined by patient's self reported response to urogenital distress inventory short form 1 and 2. The authors reported a significant reduction of in urge symptoms in both surgeries; Ophira®: 35.9% vs 3.1% and TOT 15.7% vs 3.5% (all  $P < 0.01$ ) but no statistically significant difference was found between groups<sup>[20]</sup>.

#### Altis® (Figure 4)

**Method of action/working mechanism:** The Altis® SIS is a low elasticity sling. The dynamic adjustability of the sling allows for accurate tensioning and placement of the sling in relation to the urethra. Its low elasticity and adjustability allows tensioning, placement and positioning of the sling under the urethra without compression.

The introducers are curved in shape and come as a set for the inside-out approach. They are designed for holding the anchor on the tip until insertion into the obturator membrane complex.

A monofilament suture is attached to the sling body and extends over the sides of the sling. The suture is connected to a dynamic anchor, which allows tensioning of the sling after placement. Positioning of the sling should be without tension to the urethra as the Altis® sling has a low 7.5% elasticity.

The surgical procedure is similar to the others single incision approaches. Using the introducer, the static anchor is placed through the obturator membrane. The dynamic anchor is then placed on the other side to be sure not to have tension. The suture extending from the sling and through the dynamic anchor is designed for two-way adjustability (metti Erwin). In all the studies included, a CST was performed to adequately tension

the sling. The dynamic anchors holding force and suture design prevents sling movement during the tissue in-growth period. This also eliminates the need for a locking mechanism. Following the procedure, the excess suture is cut and discarded.

**Population:** In the prospective observational study by Dias *et al*<sup>[21]</sup>, a total of 50 women completed the 1-year follow-up and were included in the analysis. All women had SUI or MUI (mixed urinary incontinence) with predominant stress component, a positive cough test and a previous failure of conservative treatments<sup>[21]</sup>. The same inclusion criteria were used in the prospective multicentre study of Kocjancic *et al*<sup>[22]</sup> ( $n = 101$ ) where they demonstrated pre-operative incontinence also with urodynamic exam.

**Evidence efficacy (Table 1):** In the small observational prospective study by Dias *et al*<sup>[21]</sup> the patient's reported subjective cure is 84% at 12 mo with an additional 8% of reported improvement. The objective cure, assessed with a standard CST is 92%. Failure was defined as the indication for mesh removal or absence of cure or improvement. Overall failure rate was 8%<sup>[21]</sup>.

In the prospective study of Kocjancic *et al*<sup>[22]</sup> the overall objective cure tested with 24 PWT was 90% and CST was negative in 90.1% of patients. PGI-I was 89.3%. At 12 mo, 1 patient reported no changes compared to baseline and 2 patients reported the situation to be a little bit worse. Overall 2.9% of patients were not satisfied with the results<sup>[22]</sup>.

#### Evidence safety (complications and pain) (Table 2):

Dias *et al*<sup>[21]</sup> demonstrated no major complications in their observational study. The authors report none of the patients to require significant analgesics (only oral ibuprofen and/or acetaminophen in the first few days were used), however we have no clear data on pain because of the lack of validated scale in this study<sup>[21]</sup>.

Kocjancic *et al*<sup>[22]</sup> registered three serious adverse events: One included a pelvic hematoma after revision surgery for urinary obstruction, the second one was a mesh extrusion categorized as a serious adverse event because the patient withdrew the study before revision surgery. The third event was a mesh extrusion for which the sling was trimmed on two separate surgeries. No cases of persistent pelvic pain were reported<sup>[22]</sup>.

**OAB symptoms:** Just one of the included studies on Altis® sling analysed also the new onset of OAB symptoms. Dias *et al*<sup>[21]</sup> reported *de novo* urge incontinence rate to be 5.9% (3/50 patients).

#### MiniArc® (Figure 5)

**Method of action/working mechanism:** One of the most widely used and studied SIS is the MiniArc®. It has been used to treat female SUI since 2007, when the original MiniArc® Single-Incision Sling System was



Figure 5 Miniarc sling.

introduced.

As the others, this is a minimally invasive procedure using a small (1.5 cm) vaginal incision and a sharp dissection to the inferior pubic ramus in order to create the trajectory for the needle. The tip of the needle is keyed to the sling extremity so that the mesh lay on the convexity of the needle. The sling is advanced through the trajectories created with the scissors bilaterally and its self anchoring tip pushed along the posterior surface of the of the ischio-pubic ramus, taking care not to perforate the obturator membrane<sup>[23]</sup>.

**Population:** A total of 7 studies analysing efficacy and/or safety of MiniArc<sup>®</sup> slings were included in the review<sup>[23-29]</sup>. A total of 753 patients had a follow-up  $\geq$  12 mo. All studies included women with SUI or mixed incontinence with predominant complains of stress. Only in one study women with mixed incontinence were excluded and only women with documented pure SUI were included<sup>[23]</sup>. Women with a story of previous incontinence surgery, previous sling operation, concomitant pelvic prolapse  $\geq$  2, neurogenic bladder, or predominant urodynamic detrusor overactivity, were excluded from the analysis in the majority of the studies.

**Evidence efficacy (Table 1):** Our selection of papers on MiniArc<sup>®</sup><sup>[25-27]</sup> slings includes two randomized clinical trials comparing MiniArc<sup>®</sup> and Monarc slings and one comparing MiniArc<sup>®</sup> and Advantage sling. In the RCT by Lee *et al*<sup>[25]</sup> 103 patients in each group reached 1-year follow-up. There was no statistically significant difference in terms of subjective and objective cure rates between groups. Failure rate was 2.7% vs 1.8% in the MiniArc<sup>®</sup> group and in the Monarc group respectively;  $P = 0.68$ <sup>[25]</sup>.

In the RCT by Schellart *et al*<sup>[26]</sup>, comparing MiniArc<sup>®</sup> and Monarc women, subjective cure was similar between both groups. The objective cure rate, defined as negative CST during follow-up, was also not statistically different between groups. Overall a total of 4 failures requiring a second surgery for SUI were identified: 3 in the Monarc group and 1 in the MiniArc<sup>®</sup> group<sup>[26]</sup>.

Basu *et al*<sup>[27]</sup> in 2013 published the three-years

results from their randomized trial comparing Advantage<sup>™</sup> slings and MiniArc<sup>®</sup><sup>™</sup>. They reported a success rate of 48% for MiniArc<sup>®</sup><sup>™</sup> with a failure rate of 52% (combining subjective failures with the need for repeat continence surgery). Moreover the MiniArc<sup>®</sup> were associated with a higher rate of persistent SUI (34% vs 9%)<sup>[27]</sup>.

Overall 5 prospective studies on MiniArc<sup>®</sup> slings were included in the review<sup>[23,24,28,29]</sup>. Oliveira *et al*<sup>[23,30]</sup> reported 12 mo follow-up of patients with pure SUI. The intention to treat analysis showed a subjective cure rate of 80% and an improvement of 11%. The same group updated the analysis at 45 mo and showed 70 patients of the 77 responders to maintain the initial improvement/cure rate (91%).

All the other cases were reported as failures (7% in patients with 1-year follow-up)<sup>[23,30]</sup>.

Deole *et al*<sup>[29]</sup> showed lower rates of objective and subjective cure at 1-year compared to other studies (66% and 64% respectively). They did demonstrate a statistically significant difference in post-operative subjective cure rates (defined as mean ICIQ-SF scores) compared to pre-operative scores (mean 8.6%  $\pm$  6.6% vs 16%  $\pm$  3.7% respectively,  $P < 0.001$ ). Failure was reported in a total of 3/59 patients (5%) of which 1 was lost at follow-up but included in the analysis as failure. The other 2 patients reported persistent obstructive symptoms (requiring transection) and erosion of the mesh respectively<sup>[29]</sup>.

In the prospective cohort study by Presthus *et al*<sup>[24]</sup> the objective cure ranged between 90% and 93% at 24 mo. Moreover patients reported a statistically significant improvement in UDI-6 and II Q-7 compared to baseline. The percentage of patients with improvement in UDI-6 and IIQ-7 scores was 90.3% and 100% respectively. Failure rate was 9.6% (a total of 3 patients at 24 mo)<sup>[24]</sup>.

Kennelly *et al*<sup>[28,31]</sup> in 2012 reported objective and subjective cure to be 84.5% and 93% respectively. Moreover a significant improvement occurred in UDI-6 and II Q-7 compared to baseline. In their first paper of 2010, a total of 4 patients were reported to have surgical failures within the first year of follow-up. However no additional cases of surgical failure or adverse events have been reported from 12 to 24 mo<sup>[28,31]</sup>.

**Evidence safety (complications and pain) (Table 2):** No major complications were reported in all the studies assessing MiniArc<sup>®</sup> safety. Lee *et al*<sup>[25]</sup> reported a statistically significant higher rate medication use and groin pain in Monarc group (all  $P < 0.05$ ). Schellart *et al*<sup>[26]</sup> demonstrated a statistically significant difference pain score in the first 3 d after surgery in favour of MiniArc<sup>®</sup> patients.

No late side effects, pain or complications were registered by Basu *et al*<sup>[27]</sup>, at 3-year follow-up<sup>[25-27]</sup>.

Overall low pain scores were registered also in the prospective studies included in this review. Only one patient reported groin pain for more than 6 mo after

MiniArc® implant. Pain rates were generally very low either using VAS or patient reported impressions during the entire follow-up<sup>[23,24,28,29]</sup>.

**OAB symptoms:** In the RCT by Lee *et al*<sup>[25]</sup> there was no difference in terms of post-operative OAB symptoms between the two groups at 1-year follow-up (median ICIQ OAB scores: 3 vs 3 in MiniArc® and monarc respectively;  $P = 0.48$ ). However a difference was registered in terms of use of anticholinergic medications (5.5% vs 15.8% in MiniArc® and Monarc respectively;  $P = 0.034$ )<sup>[25]</sup>. On the other end Schellart *et al*<sup>[26]</sup> did not show any difference in terms of UDI-6 domain score for irritative symptoms between the two groups at 1-year follow-up.

Oliveira *et al*<sup>[30]</sup> showed a new onset of OAB symptoms in a total of 7 patients (6%). However the symptoms were classified as mild to moderate and solved spontaneously or were well controlled with anticholinergics. Deole *et al*<sup>[29]</sup> reported a 24% of *de novo* urgency symptoms of which 9% required anticholinergics at 3 mo follow-up. *De novo* urgency incontinence rate was reported to be 10% at 24 mo by Kennelly *et al*<sup>[31]</sup>. Presthus *et al*<sup>[24]</sup> reported only one patient to have *de novo* urge incontinence after surgery (3.2%) and of 10 patients witheline OAB symptoms, 90% reported no more symptoms at 24 mo.

## DISCUSSION

The European Association of Urology Guidelines, concerning the treatment of female SUI, report that MUS, inserted by either the transobturator or retropubic route, give equivalent patient-reported outcome at 12 mo<sup>[7]</sup>.

SIS represent the last modification to the MUS for SUI. They require very limited dissection and might further increase safety of sub-urethral slings. Many options have been proposed on the market but despite the increasing interest in SIS and their widespread use, there are still conflicting results on their effectiveness and safety.

Many recent reviews and meta-analysis on effectiveness and complications of SIS vs standard MUS have shown better outcomes for SIS in terms of operating time, better recovery and less intraoperative bleeding<sup>[5,13,32]</sup>. However there is still a lack of standardized characteristics for the ideal candidate for minislign surgery. There exist several different types of SIS systems with different characteristics that show different outcomes. The results of a particular SIS system cannot be transposed to another. In this review we report efficacy and safety of SIS and their effect on OAB symptoms, in patient with more than one year follow-up. We didn't focus our research on the advantages of SIS in terms of operating time or intraoperative bleeding already extensively assessed in previous reviews.

In our review we analysed different SIS systems,

namely: Ajust®, Ophira®, Altis® and MiniArc®. Given that 63% of the studies included in the review are prospective or retrospective studies (level of evidence 3) we have to conclude that the evidence for SIS remains quite weak<sup>[7]</sup>.

Nevertheless 2 randomized studies including 293 patients and comparing Ajust® sling with traditional TOT sling demonstrated high objective and subjective cure rates (ranging between 81% and 91% for objective cure and between 77% and 85% for subjective cure) and no difference between groups. Failure rate ranged between 2.2% and 7.2% but no difference was found between groups<sup>[9,11]</sup>.

A third randomized study including Ajust® and MiniArc® slings showed no differences between the two slings in objective and subjective cure on the short term (OC: 80% vs 82.5% and SC: 90% vs 92.5%). However, a statistically significant difference was found when comparing the results at 6 mo with the results at 24 mo (OC: 47% vs 55% and SC: 52.5% vs 65%) in Ajust® and MiniArc® respectively, with lower rates of objective and subjective cure compared to the short term follow-up and other studies<sup>[12]</sup>. This decline, in OC and SC rates, has not been demonstrated in other studies by several other groups. The reason for this inferior resulted in this particular study is not clear.

Data from prospective studies analysing the efficacy of Ajust® sling on a total of 328 patients showed an objective cure rate between 80% and 84% and a subjective cure between 81% and 83%. However there was a variability between studies in terms of failure rates (range 0.02% and 14%).

In the RCT study comparing Ophira® slings and TOT, no difference was found in objective and subjective cure either in intention to treat analysis and per protocol analysis<sup>[20]</sup>. Palma *et al*<sup>[19]</sup> in their prospective study on Ophira®, showed higher rates of objective cure with a 6.3% improvement at 2 years but also higher rates of failure compared to the RCT (8.4% vs 7.8% respectively).

We found no RCT assessing the efficacy of the Altis® sling. Two prospective cohort studies on 151 patients with 12-mo follow-up did show similar results in terms of objective cure compared to the other RCTs (90.2% and 90%)<sup>[15,21,22]</sup>.

One of the most widely used SIS is the MiniArc® sling. Our review includes a total of 3 RCT comparing MiniArc® to traditional MUS (namely Monarc and Advantage) including data on 450 women. The objective cure assessed with standard CST in the studies by Lee and Schellart was respectively 94% and 92% in MiniArc® slings and no difference was found between groups in both alayses. In this case, the MiniArc® sling was not inferior to monarc with respect to both objective and subjective cure. Failure was 1.8% and 0.5 % in Lee and Schellart paper respectively.

Basu *et al*<sup>[27]</sup> recently published the three years results of their RCT comparing MiniArc® to advantage sling. They reported a success rate of 48% in MiniArc®

slings and a failure rate of 52% (combining subjective failures with the need of repeat continence surgery). Moreover the MiniArc® slings were associated with a higher rate of persistent SUI.

Oliveira *et al.*<sup>[30]</sup> described a success rate for MiniArc® slings of 88%, analysing only patients completing the 1 year follow-up visits. Failure rate however was higher compared to the two RCT (7%). The other prospective studies included in the paper showed results in line with the aforementioned RCT: The objective cure varied between 77% and 93%. Failures rates ranged between 3% and 7%. It is to underline that Deole *et al.*<sup>[29]</sup> showed lower rates of cure compared to the other authors but a statistically significant difference compared to baseline.

We would like to underline that objective cure rates have been assessed using the standard cough stress test with 200 mL in the bladder in the majority of the studies, so it was possible to compare the different studies in terms of objective cure with an average objective cure rate of 88%.

It was not possible to compare subjective cure between studies since there was a great variability in terms of test performed (the majority of them were patient reported improvement or impression).

The vast part of the included studies did not show any major complication for minisliling surgery. However Cornu *et al.*<sup>[17]</sup> reported 1 post-operative vaginal bleeding requiring surgery and Kocjancic a serious pelvic hematoma and a mesh extrusion causing the abandoning of the study before second surgery and Dias showed 1 mesh erosion requiring surgery in the Altis® group. Two mesh erosions requiring surgery were registered also in the Ajust® group. In the Ophira® group two patients had the mesh cut for post-operative voiding obstruction.

Pain rate is another parameter difficult to compare because of the lack of standardized questionnaires or examinations. The majority of data obtained on pain were assessed by patient reports or VAS scale (also a subjective scale). However we can observe very low reported pain rates.

None of the patients reported persistent pelvic pain at long term follow-up. Both RCTs on Ajust® and MiniArc®, showed better outcomes in terms of immediate post-operative pain compared to traditional slings<sup>[25,26]</sup>.

Again due to variability in the used parameters, it was not possible to systematically assess the new onset of OAB or worsening of the pre-existing OAB symptoms in all patients. It is of notice that all studies except 1 included also women with pre-existing mixed symptoms.

Some studies showed a trend toward higher rates of *de novo* urgency or worsening of pre-existing symptoms in the first months after surgery. We can assess that an average rate of 10% of *de novo* OAB symptoms or worsening of the pre-existing incontinence were reported in the minisliling studies. On the other hand, Mostafa, Cornu and Djehdian showed a decrease in post-operative urgency in patients with baseline OAB

symptoms. Moreover Presthus *et al.*<sup>[24]</sup> demonstrated a 90% improvement in OAB symptoms after MiniArc® slings in patients with pre-operative urgency.

This review shows an average objective cure rate of 88% in minisliling patients and underlines their comparable efficacy with traditional slings. Short-term pain, complication and failure rates are lower in the minisliling group. In general we showed good results of minislings on the short and medium follow-up compared to traditional MUS. However this result supports the need of long-term follow-up, prospective, randomized trials, with adequate numbers and validated questionnaires to identify the best candidate for this type of procedure.

## COMMENTS

### Background

Single incision slings (SIS) represent a minimal invasive treatment for stress urinary incontinence (SUI). Some SIS have proven their efficacy on the short, medium and long-term follow in comparative studies with traditional mid urethral slings (MUS). The final purpose of this study is to guide the physician into the correct management of incontinent patient in order to give them a correct counselling in terms of surgical treatment of SUI.

### Research frontiers

MUS were developed as a less invasive approach to the treatment of SUI. Nowadays the use of synthetic MUS is the most common surgery performed for SUI in women. The SIS are one of the latest innovations for female SUI. Their anchoring mechanism avoids the passage of trocars through the obturator foramen. Some studies have already proven their efficacy on the short, medium and long term.

### Innovations and breakthroughs

The purpose of this study is to review the evidence for different SIS systems and to compare them with traditional MUS. The authors give an overview on the principal SIS currently available, defining their efficacy and safety.

### Applications

This review can give the physician a tool to simplify the clinical decision-making on the base of the existing literature.

### Terminology

SUI: Stress urinary incontinence; MUS: Midurethral slings; SIS: Single incision slings; TOT: Trans obturator tape; TVT: Tension free vaginal tape; RCT: Randomized controlled trial; OC: Objective cure; SC: Subjective cure; OAB: Overactive bladder; UPS: Urgency perception scale; PGI-I: Patient Global Impression of Improvement; CST: Cough stress test; PWT: Pad weight test; ITT: Intention to treat; PP: Per protocol; ICIQ-SF: International Consultation on Incontinence Questionnaire - Short Form; UI-SF: Urinary incontinence-Short form; UDI-6: Urogenital Distress Inventory.

### Peer-review

This is a nice review.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **Imamura M**, Abrams P, Bain C, Buckley B, Cardozo L, Cody J, Cook J, Eustice S, Glazener C, Grant A, Hay-Smith J, Hislop J, Jenkinson D, Kilonzo M, Nabi G, N'Dow J, Pickard R, Tement L, Wallace S, Wardle J, Zhu S, Vale L. Systematic review and economic modelling of the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of non-surgical treatments for women with stress urinary incontinence. *Health Technol Assess* 2010; **14**: 1-188, iii-iv [PMID: 20738930 DOI: 10.3310/hta14400]



- 2 **Abrams P**, Andersson KE, Birdier L, Brubaker L, Cardozo L, Chapple C, Cottenden A, Davila W, de Ridder D, Dmochowski R, Drake M, Dubeau C, Fry C, Hanno P, Smith JH, Herschorn S, Hosker G, Kelleher C, Koelbl H, Houry S, Madoff R, Milsom I, Moore K, Newman D, Nitti V, Norton C, Nygaard I, Payne C, Smith A, Staskin D, Tekgul S, Thuroff J, Tubaro A, Vodusek D, Wein A, Wyndaele JJ. Fourth International Consultation on Incontinence Recommendations of the International Scientific Committee: Evaluation and treatment of urinary incontinence, pelvic organ prolapse, and fecal incontinence. *Neurourol Urodyn* 2010; **29**: 213-240 [PMID: 20025020 DOI: 10.1002/nau.20870]
- 3 **Schimpf MO**, Rahn DD, Wheeler TL, Patel M, White AB, Orejuela FJ, El-Nashar SA, Margulies RU, Gleason JL, Aschkenazi SO, Mamik MM, Ward RM, Balk EM, Sung VW. Sling surgery for stress urinary incontinence in women: a systematic review and metaanalysis. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2014; **211**: 71.e1-71.e27 [PMID: 24487005 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2014.01.030]
- 4 **Leach GE**, Dmochowski RR, Appell RA, Blaivas JG, Hadley HR, Luber KM, Mostwin JL, O'Donnell PD, Roehrborn CG. Female Stress Urinary Incontinence Clinical Guidelines Panel summary report on surgical management of female stress urinary incontinence. The American Urological Association. *J Urol* 1997; **158**: 875-880 [PMID: 9258103 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-5347(01)64346-5]
- 5 **Abdel-Fattah M**, Ford JA, Lim CP, Madhuvrata P. Single-incision mini-slings versus standard midurethral slings in surgical management of female stress urinary incontinence: a meta-analysis of effectiveness and complications. *Eur Urol* 2011; **60**: 468-480 [PMID: 21621321 DOI: 10.1016/j.eururo.2011.05.003]
- 6 **Cox A**, Herschorn S, Lee L. Surgical management of female SUI: is there a gold standard? *Nat Rev Urol* 2013; **10**: 78-89 [PMID: 23318365 DOI: 10.1038/nrur.2012.243]
- 7 **Lucas MG**, Bosch RJ, Burkhard FC, Cruz F, Madden TB, Nambiar AK, Neisius A, de Ridder DJ, Tubaro A, Turner WH, Pickard RS. EAU guidelines on surgical treatment of urinary incontinence. *Eur Urol* 2012; **62**: 1118-1129 [PMID: 23040204 DOI: 10.1016/j.eururo.2012.08.047]
- 8 **Oliveira R**, Silva C, Dinis P, Cruz F. Suburethral single incision slings in the treatment of female stress urinary incontinence: what is the evidence for using them in 2010? *Arch Esp Urol* 2011; **64**: 339-346 [PMID: 21610278]
- 9 **Mostafa A**, Agur W, Abdel-All M, Guerrero K, Lim C, Allam M, Yousef M, N'Dow J, Abdel-fattah M. A multicentre prospective randomised study of single-incision mini-sling (Ajust®) versus tension-free vaginal tape-obturator (TVT-O™) in the management of female stress urinary incontinence: pain profile and short-term outcomes. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 2012; **165**: 115-121 [PMID: 22917936 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejogrb.2012.06.022]
- 10 **Abdel-fattah M**, Mostafa A, Young D, Ramsay I. Evaluation of transobturator tension-free vaginal tapes in the management of women with mixed urinary incontinence: one-year outcomes. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2011; **205**: 150.e1-150.e6 [PMID: 21640964 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2011.03.018]
- 11 **Schweitzer KJ**, Milani AL, van Eijndhoven HW, Gietelink DA, Hallensleben E, Cromheecke GJ, van der Vaart CH. Postoperative pain after adjustable single-incision or transobturator sling for incontinence: a randomized controlled trial. *Obstet Gynecol* 2015; **125**: 27-34 [PMID: 25560100 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0000000000000604]
- 12 **Palomba S**, Falbo A, Oppedisano R, Torella M, Materazzo C, Maiorana A, Tolino A, Mastrantonio P, La Sala GB, Alio L, Colacurci N, Zullo F. A randomized controlled trial comparing three single-incision minislings for stress urinary incontinence. *Int Urogynecol J* 2014; **25**: 1333-1341 [PMID: 24737301 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-014-2383-0]
- 13 **Mostafa A**, Agur W, Abdel-All M, Guerrero K, Lim C, Allam M, Yousef M, N'Dow J, Abdel-Fattah M. Multicenter prospective randomized study of single-incision mini-sling vs tension-free vaginal tape-obturator in management of female stress urinary incontinence: a minimum of 1-year follow-up. *Urology* 2013; **82**: 552-559 [PMID: 23845666 DOI: 10.1016/j.urology.2013.02.080]
- 14 **Grigoriadis C**, Bakas P, Derpapas A, Creatsa M, Liapis A. Tension-free vaginal tape obturator versus Ajust adjustable single incision sling procedure in women with urodynamic stress urinary incontinence. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 2013; **170**: 563-566 [PMID: 23972452 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejogrb.2013.07.041]
- 15 **Natale F**, Dati S, La Penna C, Rombola P, Cappello S, Piccione E. Single incision sling (Ajust™) for the treatment of female stress urinary incontinence: 2-year follow-up. *Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol* 2014; **182**: 48-52 [PMID: 25233444 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejogrb.2014.08.011]
- 16 **Naumann G**, Hagemeyer T, Zachmann S, Al-Ani A, Albrich S, Skala C, Laterza R, Linaberry M, Koelbl H. Long-term outcomes of the Ajust Adjustable Single-Incision Sling for the treatment of stress urinary incontinence. *Int Urogynecol J* 2013; **24**: 231-239 [PMID: 22707009 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-012-1843-7]
- 17 **Cornu JN**, Peyrat L, Skurnik A, Ciofu C, Lucente VR, Haab F. Ajust single incision transobturator sling procedure for stress urinary incontinence: results after 1-year follow-up. *Int Urogynecol J* 2012; **23**: 1265-1270 [PMID: 22584919 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-012-1740-0]
- 18 **Abdel-Fattah M**, Agur W, Abdel-All M, Guerrero K, Allam M, Mackintosh A, Mostafa A, Yousef M. Prospective multi-centre study of adjustable single-incision mini-sling (Ajust®) in the management of stress urinary incontinence in women: 1-year follow-up study. *BJU Int* 2012; **109**: 880-886 [PMID: 21883844 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-410X.2011.10471.x]
- 19 **Palma P**, Ricetto C, Bronzatto E, Castro R, Altuna S. What is the best indication for single-incision Ophira Mini Sling? Insights from a 2-year follow-up international multicentric study. *Int Urogynecol J* 2014; **25**: 637-643 [PMID: 24170223 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-013-2242-4]
- 20 **Djehdian LM**, Araujo MP, Takano CC, Del-Roy CA, Sartori MG, Girão MJ, Castro RA. Transobturator sling compared with single-incision mini-sling for the treatment of stress urinary incontinence: a randomized controlled trial. *Obstet Gynecol* 2014; **123**: 553-561 [PMID: 24499750 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0000000000000148]
- 21 **Dias J**, Xambre L, Costa L, Costa P, Ferraz L. Short-term outcomes of Altis single-incision sling procedure for stress urinary incontinence: a prospective single-center study. *Int Urogynecol J* 2014; **25**: 1089-1095 [PMID: 24599178 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-014-2355-4]
- 22 **Kocjancic E**, Tu LM, Erickson T, Gheiler E, Van Drie D. The safety and efficacy of a new adjustable single incision sling for female stress urinary incontinence. *J Urol* 2014; **192**: 1477-1482 [PMID: 24907444 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2014.05.101]
- 23 **Oliveira R**, Botelho F, Silva P, Resende A, Silva C, Dinis P, Cruz F. Single-incision sling system as primary treatment of female stress urinary incontinence: prospective 12 months data from a single institution. *BJU Int* 2011; **108**: 1616-1621 [PMID: 21457429 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-410X.2011.10158.x]
- 24 **Presthus JB**, Van Drie D, Graham C. MiniArc single-incision sling in the office setting. *J Minim Invasive Gynecol* 2012; **19**: 331-338 [PMID: 22381958 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmig.2011.12.023]
- 25 **Lee JK**, Rosamilia A, Dwyer PL, Lim YN, Muller R. Randomized trial of a single incision versus an outside-in transobturator midurethral sling in women with stress urinary incontinence: 12 month results. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2015; **213**: 35.e1-35.e9 [PMID: 25637849 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2015.01.040]
- 26 **Schellart RP**, Oude Rengerink K, Van der Aa F, Lucot JP, Kimpe B, de Ridder DJ, Dijkgraaf MG, Roovers JP. A randomized comparison of a single-incision midurethral sling and a transobturator midurethral sling in women with stress urinary incontinence: results of 12-mo follow-up. *Eur Urol* 2014; **66**: 1179-1185 [PMID: 25168619 DOI: 10.1016/j.eururo.2014.07.027]
- 27 **Basu M**, Duckett J. Three-year results from a randomised trial of a retropubic mid-urethral sling versus the Miniarc single incision sling for stress urinary incontinence. *Int Urogynecol J* 2013; **24**: 2059-2064 [PMID: 23712578 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-013-2125-8]
- 28 **Kennelly MJ**, Moore R, Nguyen JN, Lukban J, Siegel S. Miniarc single-incision sling for treatment of stress urinary incontinence: 2-year clinical outcomes. *Int Urogynecol J* 2012; **23**: 1285-1291

- [PMID: 22527540 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-012-1734-y]
- 29 **Deole N**, Kaufmann A, Arunkalaivanan A. Evaluation of safety and efficacy of single-incision mid-urethral short tape procedure (MiniArc™ tape) for stress urinary incontinence under local anaesthesia. *Int Urogynecol J* 2011; **22**: 335-339 [PMID: 20938645 DOI: 10.1007/s00192-010-1284-0]
  - 30 **Oliveira R**, Resende A, Silva C, Dinis P, Cruz F. Mini-arc for the treatment of female stress urinary incontinence: long-term prospective evaluation by patient reported outcomes. *ISRN Urol* 2014; **2014**: 659383 [PMID: 24579053 DOI: 10.1155/2014/659383]
  - 31 **Kennelly MJ**, Moore R, Nguyen JN, Lukban JC, Siegel S. Prospective evaluation of a single incision sling for stress urinary incontinence. *J Urol* 2010; **184**: 604-609 [PMID: 20639024 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2010.04.003]
  - 32 **Mostafa A**, Lim CP, Hopper L, Madhuvrata P, Abdel-Fattah M. Single-incision mini-slings versus standard midurethral slings in surgical management of female stress urinary incontinence: an updated systematic review and meta-analysis of effectiveness and complications. *Eur Urol* 2014; **65**: 402-427 [PMID: 24055431 DOI: 10.1016/j.eururo.2013.08.032]

**P- Reviewer:** Nowicki S, Soria F

**S- Editor:** Ji FF **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Jiao XK





Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**

8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA

Telephone: +1-925-223-8242

Fax: +1-925-223-8243

E-mail: [bpgoffice@wjgnet.com](mailto:bpgoffice@wjgnet.com)

Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjgnet.com>





# World Journal of *Obstetrics and Gynecology*

*World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016 August 10; 5(3): 210-217





## Editorial Board

2012-2016

The *World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology* Editorial Board consists of 172 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in obstetrics and gynecology. They are from 39 countries, including Australia (6), Austria (2), Belgium (6), Brazil (4), Canada (2), China (8), Egypt (3), Finland (2), France (2), Germany (1), Greece (10), Hungary (1), India (3), Iran (3), Israel (6), Italy (13), Japan (6), Jordan (2), Lithuania (1), Malawi (1), Malaysia (1), Mexico (1), Netherlands (3), Nigeria (1), Norway (2), Poland (1), Portugal (1), Qatar (1), Saudi Arabia (3), Serbia (1), Slovenia (1), South Korea (3), Spain (3), Sweden (2), Thailand (3), Turkey (8), United Kingdom (9), United States (45), Venezuela (1).

### EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

Bo Jacobsson, *Gothenburg*

### GUEST EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS

Wing P Chan, *Taipei*  
Chie-Pein Chen, *Taipei*  
Shi-Yann Cheng, *Yunlin*  
Song-Nan Chow, *Taipei*  
Peng-Hui Wang, *Taipei*

### MEMBERS OF THE EDITORIAL BOARD



#### Australia

Ashwini L Chand, *Melbourne*  
Steven D Fleming, *Brisbane*  
Ankit Jain, *Coffs Harbour*  
Marjan Khajehei, *Westmead*  
Gavin P Sacks, *Sydney*  
Jing Sun, *Brisbane*



#### Austria

Susanne Huber, *Vienna*  
Edgar Petru, *Graz*



#### Belgium

Marc FD Baay, *Antwerp*  
Christophe Blockeel, *Brussel*  
Patricio E Donoso, *Brussels*

Yves Jacquemyn, *Edegem*  
Ekaterine Tskitishvili, *Liege*  
Jan B Vermorken, *Edegem*



#### Brazil

Cicero de Andrade Urban, *Curitiba*  
Carlos KB Ferrari, *Barra do Garças*  
Wellington P Martins, *Ribeirao Preto*  
Maria I Rosa, *Criciuma*



#### Canada

Emmanuel Bujold, *Quebec*  
Paul J Hoskins, *Vancouver*



#### China

Cherng-Jye Jeng, *Nanjing*  
Jian-Xin Li, *Nanjing*  
Dan Xie, *Guangzhou*



#### Egypt

Hesham E Abdel-Hady, *Mansoura*  
Ahmed S El Hefnawy, *Mansoura*  
Ahmed Nasr, *Assiut*



#### Finland

Johan O Fellman, *Helsinki*  
Kari J Syrjanen, *Turku*



#### France

Cherif Y Akladios, *Strasbourg*  
Souhail Alouini, *Orleans*



#### Germany

Safaa H Al-Hasani, *Luebeck*



#### Greece

Byro Asimakopoulos, *Alexandroupolis*  
Anastasios Athanasopoulos, *Patras*  
Panagiotis Christopoulos, *Athens*  
Ioannis E Messinis, *Larisa*  
Athanasios G Papatsoris, *Athens*  
Georgios Partsinevelos, *Athens*  
Kitty Pavlakis, *Athens*  
Konstantinos A Toulis, *Salonika*  
Panagiotis PT Tsikouras, *Alexandroupolis*  
Menelaos Zafrafas, *Thessaloniki*



#### Hungary

Jozsef G Joo, *Budapest*



#### India

Chinmoy K Bose, *Kolkata*  
Pralhad Kushtagi, *Mangalore*  
Niraj N Mahajan, *Mumbai*

**Iran**

Hossein Fallahzadeh, *Yazd*  
 Abbas A Ghaderi, *Shiraz*  
 Ramesh Omranipour, *Tehran*

**Israel**

Zeev Blumenfeld, *Haifa*  
 Sorina Grisaru-Granovsky, *Jerusalem*  
 Alexander Ioscovich, *Jerusalem*  
 Marwan Odeh, *Nahariya*  
 Eyal Sheiner, *Beer Sheva*  
 Johnny S Younis, *Tiberias*

**Italy**

Sandrine ML Chamayou, *Sant'Agata Li Battiati*  
 Federico Coccolini, *Bergamo*  
 Erich Cosmi, *Padua*  
 Vassilios Fanos, *Cagliari*  
 Roberta Granese, *Messina*  
 Anna M Marconi, *Milano*  
 Filippo Murina, *Milan*  
 Felice Petraglia, *Siena*  
 Giuseppe Rizzo, *Rome*  
 Emilio Sacco, *Roma*  
 Giulio A Santoro, *Treviso*  
 Andrea Tinelli, *Lecce*  
 Emanuela Turillazzi, *Foggia*

**Japan**

Madoka Furuhashi, *Nagoya*  
 Takeshi Maruo, *Kobe*  
 Kaei Nasu, *Oita*  
 Yuzuru Niibe, *Kanagawa*  
 Kenzo Sonoda, *Fukuoka*  
 Yoshihito Yokoyama, *Aomori*

**Jordan**

Moamar Al-Jefout, *Karak*  
 Zouhair O Amarin, *Irbid*

**Lithuania**

Linas Rovas, *Klaipeda*

**Malawi**

Fanuel Lampiao, *Blantyre*

**Malaysia**

Geok Chin Tan, *Kuala Lumpur*

**Mexico**

Alfonso Dueñas-González, *Tlalpan*

**Moldova**

Fanuel Lampiao, *Blantyre*

**Netherlands**

Marieke J Claas, *Utrecht*  
 Wendy Koster, *Utrecht*  
 Arnold-Jan Kruse, *Maastricht*

**Nigeria**

Chibuike O Chigbu, *Enugu*

**Norway**

Andrej M Grjibovski, *Oslo*  
 Svein Rasmussen, *Bergen*

**Poland**

Andrzej Winciewicz, *Kielce*

**Portugal**

Renato MN Jorge, *Porto*

**Qatar**

Sajjad ur Rahman, *Doha*

**Saudi Arabia**

Ismail Al-Badawi, *Riyadh*  
 Mamdoh Eskandar, *Abha*  
 Hans-Juergen Schulten, *Jeddah*

**Serbia**

Miroslava G Dugalic, *Belgrade*

**Slovenia**

Spela Smrkolj, *Ljubljana*

**South Korea**

Kwang-Hyun Baek, *Seongnam*  
 Min Hyung Jung, *Seoul*  
 Sue Kyung Park, *Seoul*

**Spain**

Santiago Palacios, *Madrid*  
 Faustino R Perez-Lopez, *Zaragoza*  
 Antonio Pinero, *Murcia*

**Sweden**

Eva M Wiberg-Itzel, *Stockholm*

**Thailand**

Pisake NA Lumbiganon, *Khon Kaen*  
 Vorapong Phupong, *Bangkok*  
 Viroj Wiwanitkit, *Bangkok*

**Turkey**

Metin Akbulut, *Denizli*  
 Cem Baykal, *Istanbul*  
 Husnu Celik, *Elazig*  
 Cem Dane, *Istanbul*  
 Polat Dursun, *Ankara*  
 Erdin Ilter, *Istanbul*  
 Mehmet Kefeli, *Kurupelit*  
 Kamile Kukulu, *Antalya*

**United Kingdom**

Suha Deen, *Nottingham*  
 Stergios K Doumouchtsis, *London*  
 Mona A El-Bahrawy, *London*  
 Alaa A El-Ghobashy, *Leeds*  
 Ayman A Ewies, *Birmingham*  
 Myra S Hunter, *London*  
 Paul D Losty, *Liverpool*  
 Tim M Reynolds, *Burton-on-Trent*  
 Ariel Zosmer, *London*

**United States**

Muktar H Aliyu, *Nashville*  
 Priya R Bhosale, *Houston*  
 Donald P Braun, *Zion*  
 Chunxia Cao, *Gainesville*  
 Waldemar A Carlo, *Birmingham*  
 Linda R Chambliss, *Phoenix*  
 Teresa P Diaz-Montes, *Baltimore*  
 Steven M Donn, *Ann Arbor*  
 Omar F Duenas, *New York*  
 Marilyn B Escobedo, *Oklahoma City*  
 Robert Freedman, *Detroit*  
 Elizabeth S Ginsburg, *Boston*  
 Sergio G Golombek, *Valhalla*  
 Michael P Goodman, *Davis*  
 Diane M Harper, *Louisville*  
 Matthew H Ho, *Los Angeles*  
 Patricia B Hoyer, *Tucson*  
 Mei-Hua Huang, *Los Angeles*  
 William W Hurd, *Cleveland*  
 Gabor B Huszar, *New Haven*  
 Amer K Karam, *Los Angeles*  
 Justin P Lavin, *Akron*  
 Linda E May, *Kansas City*  
 Zaher Merhi, *Brooklyn*  
 Nash S Moawad, *Gainesville*  
 Lisa E Moore, *Albuquerque*

Robert D Moore, *Atlanta*  
David G Mutch, *St Louis*  
Nihar R Nayak, *Palo Alto*  
Anita L Nelson, *Manhattan Beach*  
Farr R Nezhat, *New York*  
Robert W Powers, *Pittsburgh*  
Andersen Robyn , *Seattle*  
Werner Schaefer, *Pittsburgh*

Gerald P Schatten, *Pittsburgh*  
Hen Y Sela, *New York*  
Sherri L Stewart, *Atlanta*  
Robert S Tan, *Houston*  
Ping Tang, *Rochester*  
Ihab M Usta, *New York*  
Jian-Jun Wei, *Chicago*  
Xiu-Quan Zhang, *Salt Lake City*

Chengquan Zhao, *Pittsburgh*  
Yulian Zhao, *Baltimore*  
Wenxin Zheng, *Tucson*



**Venezuela**

María E Aponte-Rueda, *Caracas*



**ORIGINAL ARTICLE**

**Retrospective Cohort Study**

- 210 Laparoscopic Burch urethropexy at time of mesh sling removal: A cohort study evaluating functional outcomes and quality of life

*Huber SA, Chinthakanan O, Hawkins S, Miklos JR, Moore RD*



## Contents

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*  
Volume 5 Number 3 August 10, 2016

### ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*, Xavier Thomas, MD, PhD, Research Fellow, Department of Hematology, Lyon-Sud University Hospital, 69495 Lyon, France

### AIM AND SCOPE

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology* (*World J Obstet Gynecol*, *WJOG*, online ISSN 2218-6220, DOI: 10.5317) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

*WJOG* covers topics concerning pregnancy complications, obstetric surgical procedures, diagnostic imaging, endoscopy, reproductive endocrinology, tumors, pelvic diseases, evidence-based medicine, epidemiology and nursing.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJOG*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

### INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology* is currently no indexing/abstracting.

### FLYLEAF

I-III Editorial Board

### EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Responsible Assistant Editor: *Xiang Li*  
Responsible Electronic Editor: *Huan-Liang Wu*  
Proofing Editor-in-Chief: *Lian-Sheng Ma*

Responsible Science Editor: *Jin-Xin Kong*  
Proofing Editorial Office Director: *Xiu-Xia Song*

#### NAME OF JOURNAL

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*

#### ISSN

ISSN 2218-6220 (online)

#### LAUNCH DATE

June 10, 2012

#### FREQUENCY

Quarterly

#### EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

**Bo Jacobsson, MD, PhD, Professor**, Department Obstetrics and Gynecology, Sahlgrenska University Hospital/Ostra, SE-416 85 Gothenburg, Sweden

#### EDITORIAL OFFICE

Jin-Li Wang, Director  
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director  
*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*

Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,  
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,  
Beijing 100025, China

Telephone: +86-10-85381891

Fax: +86-10-85381893

E-mail: [editorialoffice@wjnet.com](mailto:editorialoffice@wjnet.com)

Help Desk: <http://www.wjnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjnet.com>

#### PUBLISHER

Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

8226 Regency Drive,

Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA

Telephone: +1-925-223-8242

Fax: +1-925-223-8243

E-mail: [bpgoffice@wjnet.com](mailto:bpgoffice@wjnet.com)

Help Desk: <http://www.wjnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjnet.com>

#### PUBLICATION DATE

August 10, 2016

#### COPYRIGHT

© 2016 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. Articles published by this Open-Access journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited, the use is non commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license.

#### SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in journals owned by the Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG) represent the views and opinions of their authors, and not the views, opinions or policies of the BPG, except where otherwise explicitly indicated.

#### INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS

<http://www.wjnet.com/bpg/gerinfo/204>

#### ONLINE SUBMISSION

<http://www.wjnet.com/esps/>

Retrospective Cohort Study

# Laparoscopic Burch urethropexy at time of mesh sling removal: A cohort study evaluating functional outcomes and quality of life

Sarah A Huber, Orawee Chinthakanan, Soyini Hawkins, John R Miklos, Robert D Moore

Sarah A Huber, Soyini Hawkins, John R Miklos, Robert D Moore, International Urogynecology Associates, Alpharetta, GA 30005, United States

Orawee Chinthakanan, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Bumrungrad International Hospital, Wattana Bangkok 10110, Thailand

**Author contributions:** Huber SA, Miklos JR and Moore RD designed the study; Huber SA and Hawkins S performed the research; Huber SA and Chinthakanan O analyzed the data; Huber SA and Moore RD wrote the paper and revised the manuscript for final submission.

**Institutional review board statement:** The study was reviewed and approved by the Sterling Institutional Review Board.

**Informed consent statement:** All involved persons enrolled in the study provided verbal and written informed consent prior to inclusion in the study.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** The authors declare no conflicts-of-interest.

**Data sharing statement:** Technical appendix, original data, and statistical code are available from the corresponding author.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Manuscript source:** Invited manuscript

**Correspondence to:** Robert D Moore, DO, International Urogynecology Associates, 3400 Old Milton Parkway, Alpharetta, GA 30005, United States. [moorer33@hotmail.com](mailto:moorer33@hotmail.com)

Telephone: +1-770-4754499  
Fax: +1-678-2623671

Received: March 26, 2016  
Peer-review started: March 27, 2016  
First decision: April 15, 2016  
Revised: May 10, 2016  
Accepted: June 1, 2016  
Article in press: June 3, 2016  
Published online: August 10, 2016

## Abstract

**AIM:** To theorize that performing a laparoscopic Burch urethropexy at time of sling removal would significantly decrease subjective symptoms of stress urinary incontinence (SUI) and improve patient satisfaction.

**METHODS:** Women who underwent a combined sling removal and laparoscopic Burch procedure between 2009 and 2014 were matched *via* age and sling-type in a 1:2 ratio to women who only underwent a sling removal. Those who underwent surgery within 6 mo of data collection were excluded from the study, as were women who underwent multi-stage surgery. Preoperative assessment for both groups included a focused clinical exam with or without functional testing and questionnaires including urogenital distress inventory-6 (UDI-6) and incontinence impact questionnaire-7 (IIQ-7) per the standard clinical practice. All non-exempt women were sent a questionnaire that included UDI-6 and IIQ-7 in addition to standard follow-up questions. Research staff contacted participants *via* email, mail, and telephone using the same questionnaire template and script. Data was analyzed by using  $\chi^2$  test for categorical data, and Student's *t* test and Wilcoxon Rank Sum test for continuous data. The measure of effect was determined by logistic regression analysis.

**RESULTS:** A total of 48 women out of 146 selected patients were successfully recruited with  $n = 22$  in the Burch cohort and  $n = 26$  in the control cohort. The mean age was  $54.7 \pm 7.8$  years and mean body mass index was  $22.0 \pm 13.9$  kg/m<sup>2</sup>. The majority of patients were Caucasian (73.3%), postmenopausal (91.1%), non-smokers (57.9%), with a history of hysterectomy (81.4%). Six nineteen point six percent of women presented after at least 2 years from placement, which was significantly more common in the Burch cohort. Pain was the most common chief complaint (64.4%) in both groups at the time of initial presentation, and 78.9% of women reported concomitant urinary incontinence. There was no significant difference in pre-operative UDI-6 and IIQ-7 scores between the two cohorts. However, the change in UDI-6 score postoperatively was significantly improved in the Burch cohort with an average drop in score of 28.41 points compared to a decrease of 4.01 points in the control group ( $P = 0.02$ , 95%CI: 3.84 to 44.97). Although not statistically significant, the Burch cohort was 58% more likely to show an overall improvement in their score after surgery and 40% more likely to meet the minimal important difference of 11 points (RR = 1.58, 95%CI: 0.97 to 2.57; RR 1.40, 95%CI: 0.79 to 2.46). The difference in IIQ scores was nonsignificant. There was no significant difference in blood loss, complications, or postoperative pain or dyspareunia.

**CONCLUSION:** Performing a Burch urethropexy during sling removal does not increase complication rates and results in a significant change in validated symptom-related quality of life scores.

**Key words:** Mesh erosion; Burch urethropexy; Burch colposuspension; Anti-incontinence

© **The Author(s) 2016.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Performing a concomitant Burch urethropexy at the time of anti-incontinence mesh sling removal is safe and effective.

Huber SA, Chinthakanan O, Hawkins S, Miklos JR, Moore RD. Laparoscopic Burch urethropexy at time of mesh sling removal: A cohort study evaluating functional outcomes and quality of life. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(3): 210-217 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i3/210.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i3.210>

## INTRODUCTION

Female stress urinary incontinence (SUI) is a pervasive condition that affects over 50% women at some point in their lives. Prior to the introduction of synthetic mesh for artificial urethral support, surgical options for management were limited and typically had high failure rates, long operative times, and posed more risk for adverse outcomes. Of these non-synthetic modalities,

the Burch urethropexy, or Burch colposuspension, is one of the safest options with proven efficacy<sup>[1]</sup>. However, the advent of the mesh mid-urethral sling (MUS), including the tension-free vaginal tape, and transobturator tape, single-incision mini-sling, has transformed the management of SUI. This is due in large part to their ease of application, minimally invasive approach, and comparable outcomes to other more involved procedures such as Burch urethropexy<sup>[2]</sup>. However, the immediate popularity of the synthetic mesh for both anti-incontinence and prolapse led to rapid implementation shortly after arrival to the market without the availability of adequate long-term studies at the time, and eventually mesh-related complications began to acquire widespread media and public attention<sup>[3]</sup>. In 2008 and 2011, the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) issued warnings regarding the safety of vaginal mesh, indicated either for prolapse or to a lesser extent SUI, based on identifiable risks for mesh erosion, pain, infection and failure<sup>[4,5]</sup>. Per their independent literature review and investigation of reported incidents, they identified the main adverse outcomes with SUI slings to be pain followed by erosion through the vaginal wall at around 2% prevalence<sup>[4,6]</sup>. They also cited other deleterious complications such as dyspareunia, bladder injury, nerve injury, urethral or bladder erosions, *de novo* urgency, urethral obstruction with voiding dysfunction and unresolved SUI<sup>[6,7]</sup>.

Due to the increasing numbers of mesh tape slings placed through the years and possibly the public awareness brought on by the FDA notifications, the true prevalence of symptoms consistent with mesh-tape sling complications is now being appreciated<sup>[8]</sup>. Given the inherent failure rate of MUS is approximately 10%, specifically recurrence or worsening of SUI, many of these patients also have complaints of SUI in addition to their pain, dyspareunia, or erosion<sup>[6]</sup>. Furthermore, the presence of these complaints can also suggest misplacement or displacement of the slings which can impact their efficacy.

While conservative measures can be offered to alleviate the patient's symptoms, approximately 50% of women who present with symptomatic sling complaints will eventually require surgical management after failure of less invasive methods<sup>[6,9,10]</sup>. However, in most cases removing the sling leaves the patient with recurrent or worsening SUI<sup>[6,10]</sup>. Historically, treatment for SUI has not been addressed by most during the initial surgery for sling removal and has been delayed until after complete healing from the revision<sup>[11]</sup>. Although not specifically studied, this is based on the theory that inflammation, blood loss, or an anticipated delay in anatomical restitution following sling removal would either negatively affect the success of a concomitant anti-incontinence surgery or would cause urinary retention from over-correction. However, a delayed secondary surgery for anti-incontinence is not without its own risks, particularly complications surrounding adhesions and scarring from the prior surgeries that can obscure the retropubic space and distort the anatomy. This seems particularly

relevant in cases when a retropubic sling is removed, either open or laparoscopically, and the space is entered for removal of the sling<sup>[12,13]</sup>. To re-enter this space 6 mo later can be very difficult and carries high risks of complications.

In this study, we aim to assess whether performing a combined midurethral mesh sling revision/removal and laparoscopic Burch urethropexy improves postoperative urinary complaints and quality of life without impacting blood loss or complication risk. We theorize that a combined laparoscopic Burch urethropexy will show a significant positive difference in pre- and post-operative validated quality of life and symptomatology questionnaires compared to women who underwent a mesh revision/removal alone.

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

An internal surgical database review was performed within our two-provider practice isolating patients who underwent a sling removal or revision between 2009 and 2014. Within this group, patients who had a laparoscopic Burch urethropexy at the time of sling removal were placed within a cohort. They were age-matched in a 1:2 ratio to women within the control cohort who underwent a sling removal or revision only. Demographics as well as other relevant medical history were obtained. Preoperative UDI-6 and IIQ-7 scores were calculated when available. The urogenital distress inventory-6 (UDI-6) quantifies the type and severity of urinary incontinence symptoms while the incontinence impact questionnaire-7 (IIQ-7) focuses on the quality of life impact of incontinence. The operative and postoperative notes were reviewed to assess estimated blood loss or complications such as organ injury, hemorrhage, infection, erosion, or urinary retention. Signed informed consent was waived per institutional review board.

Women were excluded if their surgery had been within 6 mo of the study contact period or if they had a multiple stage surgery or repeat surgery. Post-operatively, they were seen in the office for post-operative visits and then contacted by office staff for routine follow-up in four stages *via* email, mail and telephone to complete repeat UDI-6 and IIQ-7 questionnaires as well as standard follow-up questions regarding specific symptoms, satisfaction, and subsequent treatments. For the phone interviews, the office staff followed a standardized script for routine follow-up if the patient could not come to the office for their follow-up appointments. Data was compiled using Excel 2013 (Microsoft, Redmond, WA, United States) and analysis was performed using SPSS v.22 (IBM, Armonk, NY, United States). Categorical data was analyzed using  $\chi^2$  analysis, and continuous data was analyzed with the Student's *t* test and Wilcoxon rank sum test. Relative risks were calculated for outcome comparison, and the measure of effect was calculated with logistic regression analysis. All statistical methodology and data analysis

was reviewed by an internal biostatistician.

Differences in pre- and post-operative questionnaire scores were calculated as well as an assessment of likelihood of meeting the minimal clinically important difference (MCID/MID) in scores. Minimal differences in scores must be utilized in analyzing scores to identify any clinically appreciable change in symptoms and validate our findings. According to Barber *et al.*<sup>[14,15]</sup>, the minimal important difference (MID) for the UDI-6 is 11 points and 16 points for the IIQ-7. The percentage of participants in each group with differences greater than the MCID cutoffs have been calculated with relative risks assessed.

At the time of preoperative counseling for sling removal, patients were presented with the following three options: Removal of the sling only without any anti-incontinence surgery, removal of sling with a delayed second stage anti-incontinence surgery at a later date, combined sling removal and Burch urethropexy. Ultimately, the patients selected their preferred option, and this was honored if deemed safe and feasible.

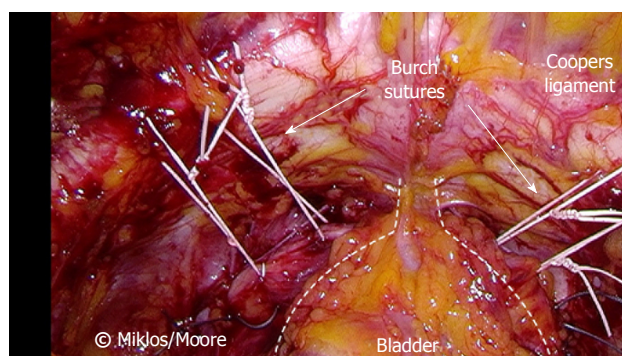
All women underwent sling removal *via* vaginal approach with additional laparoscopic removal as indicated. Following removal of the sling remnants, a laparoscopic Burch urethropexy and paravaginal repair was performed in the already dissected space of Retzius in selected patients. Two sutures of Ethibond were placed on each side of the bladder neck attaching to Cooper's ligament (Figures 1 and 2). Cystoscopy was performed at the end of each procedure to ensure correct placement and absence of bladder injury.

## RESULTS

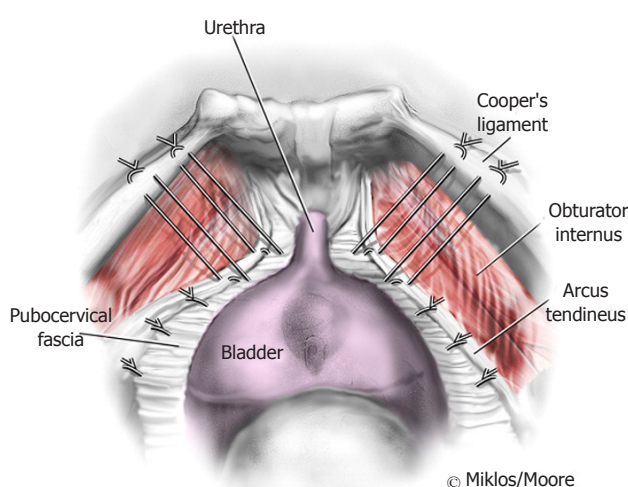
A total of 146 patients met the inclusion criteria of the study, and of those, 48 patients were recruited as postoperative questionnaire respondents with completed prior preoperative questionnaires. Twenty-two women underwent a combined mesh removal and Burch urethropexy, while 26 women were in the matched control cohort (Figure 3). One participant in the control group only completed a UDI-6 questionnaire preoperatively.

The mean age of participants was 54.7 years with no significant difference between the two groups. There was also no difference in BMI, number of vaginal deliveries, race, menopausal status, sexual activity, or smoking history. Ninety-four point seven percent of participants in the Burch group had a prior hysterectomy compared to control group prevalence of 70.8% ( $P = 0.045$ ). The other significant difference lies in the length of time since placement of sling until surgery. Eighty-five percent of women in the Burch group were at least 2 years out from sling placement which was significantly more compared to the control group at 57.7% ( $P = 0.046$ ). The average amount of time between surgery and postoperative questionnaire follow-up was significantly longer in the control group, with an average follow-up time of 37.8 mo compared to only 16.7 mo in





**Figure 1** Laparoscopic Burch urethropexy with paravaginal repair following sling removal. Permission to reprint from International Urogynecology Associates.



**Figure 2** Illustration of Burch urethropexy and paravaginal repair. Permission to reprint from International Urogynecology Associates.

the Burch group (95%CI: -27.4 to -14.7 mo with  $P$ -value  $< 0.000001$ ) (Table 1).

The most common complaint in the two groups was pain with the majority of sexually active women reporting dyspareunia (93.2%,  $P = 0.884$ ). The majority of both women reported subjective urinary incontinence independent of questionnaire scores, comprising 90.0% in Burch group and 66.7% in control group ( $P = 0.078$ ).

Regarding the surgical outcomes of the two procedures, although length of surgery was not recorded, estimated blood loss and complications rates were not significantly different (Table 2). There were two complications in the Burch urethropexy group, one urethrovaginal fistula and one cystotomy. The only complication in the control group was one retropubic hematoma.

Women were recruited for the study regardless of type of sling, including tension-free vaginal tape, transobturator tape, mini-sling, and women who have multiple slings. Although 50% of women in the Burch group had a transvaginal tape (TVT) sling and 50% of women in the control group had a TOT sling, there was no significant difference in distribution of sling type in

each group (Table 3). Forty-three point eight percent of participants had a symptomatic TOT that was removed with a combined laparoscopic Burch urethropexy.

Table 4 illustrates the pre and postoperative questionnaire results. In summary, there was no significant difference in the scores between the two groups for either questionnaire both pre and postoperatively. However, the change in UDI-6 score postoperatively was significantly better in the Burch cohort with an average drop in score of 28.41 points compared to a decrease of 4.01 points in the control group (Table 4,  $P = 0.02$ , 95%CI: 3.84 to 44.97). When analyzing the percentage of participants who met the MID, or minimally important difference of 11 points, 59% in the Burch group and 42% in the control group met the cutoff. Although not statistically significant, the Burch cohort was 58% more likely to show improvement in their score after surgery (Table 5, RR = 1.58,  $P = 0.07$ , 95%CI: 0.97 to 2.57) and 40% more likely to meet the MID (RR = 1.40,  $P = 0.25$ , 95%CI: 0.79 to 2.46).

With regards to the IIQ-7 scores, there was no significant difference in temporal change in score. The average change in score was 15.9 points in the Burch cohort and 6.5 in the control cohort ( $P = 0.440$ ) and a relative risk of overall score reduction of 1.14 ( $P = 0.65$ , 95%CI: 0.65 to 1.99). The relative risk for significant score improvement meeting the MID of 16 points is 1.14 ( $P = 0.75$ , 95%CI: 0.51 to 2.52).

## DISCUSSION

Although proven effective, and still considered a gold-standard for management of SUI, mesh-based anti-incontinence procedures are not without risks. For many women, the most worrisome of these risks are pain and erosion associated with the synthetic mesh. Oftentimes, this is a protracted process that will only manifest itself years later, leading to the notable increase in complaints years after having the procedure completed. Despite these concerns, mesh tape slings are still considered the standard of care, due to their seven to ten year cure rate of 80%-95%, ease of placement, and relatively low complication profile<sup>[2,16]</sup>. A patient who suffered from a failed mesh sling or one complicated by pain or erosion, however, may be much more hesitant to have more mesh placed to treat recurrent incontinence, and in the case of mesh-related pain, we would not recommend a second mesh sling<sup>[17]</sup>. To date, there has been little investigation into the other options available to women requesting mesh removal with persistent or recurrent SUI at the time of removal.

We surmise that for women who refuse additional synthetic mesh, the first-line option should be Burch urethropexy. Due to its long history in practice, the efficacy and risks of the Burch urethropexy have been well established. Additionally, the minimally invasive laparoscopic approach to urethropexy has only enhanced the outcomes and minimized the initial

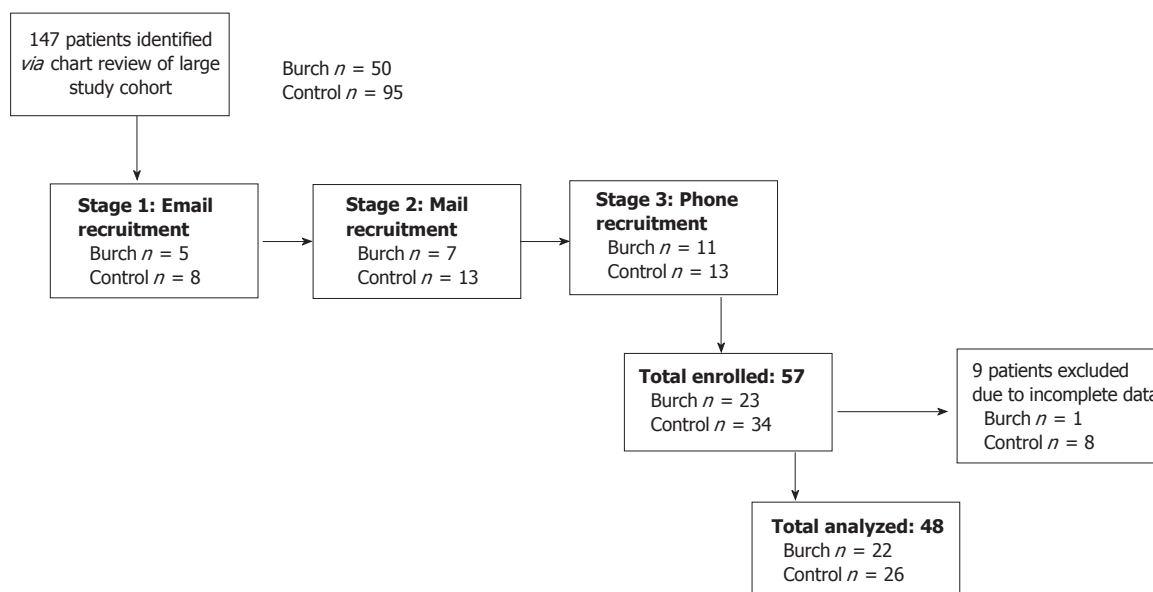


Figure 3 Patient recruitment.

Table 1 Patient demographics and preoperative characteristics

	Total ( $n = 48$ )	Burch ( $n = 22$ )	Control ( $n = 26$ )	$P$ value ( $t$ test, $\chi^2$ )
Age (yr, mean $\pm$ SD)	54.7 $\pm$ 7.8	55.5 $\pm$ 7.8	54.0 $\pm$ 7.8	0.534
BMI (kg/m <sup>2</sup> , mean $\pm$ SD)	22.0 $\pm$ 13.9	24.9 $\pm$ 7.2	20.3 $\pm$ 16.6	0.372
Vaginal deliveries (% one or more)	89.60%	90.90%	87.00%	0.629
Postmenopausal (%)	91.10%	95.00%	88.00%	0.412
Race	73.3% Caucasian	78.6% Caucasian	68.8% Caucasian	0.366
Smoking status (%)	57.90%	53.30%	60.90%	0.898
Hysterectomy (%)	81.40%	94.70%	70.80%	0.045
Years since insertion (% greater than 2 yr)	69.90%	85.00%	57.70%	0.046
Urinary incontinence (%)	78.90%	90.00%	66.70%	0.078
Sexually active (%)	45.80%	47.60%	50.00%	0.873
Dyspareunia (%)	93.20%	88.90%	96.20%	0.347

BMI: Body mass index.

Table 2 Perioperative data and complications

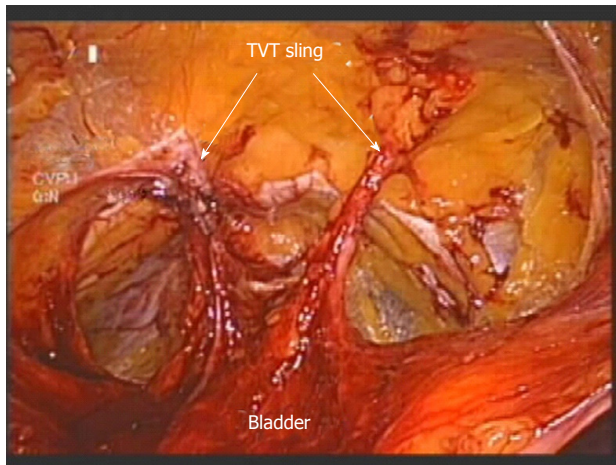
	Burch ( $n = 22$ )	Control ( $n = 26$ )	$P$ value ( $t$ test, $\chi^2$ )
EBL (mean mL $\pm$ SD)	69.29 $\pm$ 49.28	83.91 $\pm$ 165.38	0.699
EBL < 50 mL (%)	23.80%	47.8%	0.222
EBL 50-100 mL (%)	47.60%	34.8%	
EBL 100-300 mL (%)	28.60%	13.0%	
EBL > 300 mL (%)	0.00%	4.3%	
Complications	Urethrovaginal fistula $\times$ 1, cystotomy $\times$ 1	Retropubic hematoma $\times$ 1	

EBL: Estimated blood loss.

concerns of blood loss and surgical complications<sup>[18,19]</sup>. Overall, it has been found to have comparable efficacy to mesh tape slings and was the primary anti-incontinence procedure prior to the advent of mesh slings<sup>[2]</sup>. Ultimately, the numbers of Burch procedures completed in the United States was drastically reduced following the popularization of MUS secondary to the less invasive nature, the simplicity of the procedure and the equivalent cure rates shown for the mesh

tape slings. Currently, given the public awareness of mesh complications, the Burch procedure is having a resurgence of popularity as women are seeking alternatives to mesh-tape slings.

To date, no investigation has been performed to determine the best treatment of stress incontinence for women undergoing mesh tape sling removal for complications secondary to the mesh. This sub-type of incontinence patients creates a complicated clinical



**Figure 4** Transvaginal tape sling arms penetrating through the retropubic space. Permission to reprint from International Urogynecology Associates. TVT: Transvaginal tape.

**Table 3** Removed sling type (%;  $\chi^2$  with *P* value)

	Overall ( <i>n</i> = 48)	Burch ( <i>n</i> = 22)	Control ( <i>n</i> = 26)	$\chi^2$ ( <i>P</i> value)
TVT	37.50%	50.00%	26.90%	
TOT	43.80%	36.40%	50.00%	
Mini-sling	10.40%	9.10%	11.50%	
Multiple	8.30%	4.50%	11.50%	2.97 (0.40)

TVT: Transvaginal tape; TOT: Transobturator tape.

picture that will require a different approach compared to women without a sling or a sling that does not require removal. Traditionally, women undergo a two-stage surgery with sling removal followed by an anti-incontinence surgery typically 3 to 6 mo later under the assumption that the tissue needs to heal and the anatomy will reconstitute<sup>[11]</sup>. However, no clear data has dictated this practice, rather it is mainly based on theory and anecdote<sup>[6]</sup>. Ideally, these patients would rather be treated at the time of their removal of the bothersome sling without any delay in treated their incontinence and with only one operation, for example *via* combined mesh tape sling removal and Burch urethropexy.

In assessing the feasibility of performing a combined procedure, we failed to identify any significant difference blood loss or complications when performing a urethropexy immediately following sling removal. From a risk perspective, our data suggests urethropexy at the time of sling revision is of low additional surgical risk, irrespective of the type of sling removed. This is unlike our previous published experience with repeat laparoscopic Burch procedures following previous Burch or marshall-Marchetti-Krantz procedure (MMK). Although successful, we found those procedures to be extremely difficult, increasing risks of complication and blood loss secondary to the increased scar tissue found in the space<sup>[10,12,13]</sup>. Previous RP sling placement, does not seem to cause as much scar tissue in the space as

**Table 4** Urogenital distress inventory-6 and incontinence impact questionnaire-7 score comparisons (mean points  $\pm$  SD)

	UDI-6 preop	UDI-6 postop	IIQ-7 preop	IIQ-7 postop
Burch ( <i>n</i> = 22)	78.22 $\pm$ 20.45	49.81 $\pm$ 33.71	64.87 $\pm$ 31.68	48.92 $\pm$ 36.33
Control ( <i>n</i> = 26 UDI-6 <i>n</i> = 25 IIQ-7) <sup>1</sup>	67.95 $\pm$ 27.91	63.94 $\pm$ 28.67	64.11 $\pm$ 26.95	55.79 $\pm$ 34.68

<sup>1</sup>One participant in control cohort with incomplete preop IIQ-7, therefore used only for UDI-6 data. UDI-6: Urogenital distress inventory-6; IIQ-7: Incontinence impact questionnaire-7.

**Table 5** Comparison of urogenital distress inventory-6 change, including minimally important difference

	UDI-6 change (mean points $\pm$ SD)	2-sample <i>t</i> test, <i>P</i> value (95%CI)	Relative risk for reduction in score, <i>P</i> value (95%CI)	Relative risk to meet MID, <i>P</i> value (95%CI)
Burch ( <i>n</i> = 22)	28.41 $\pm$ 39.29	2.39 <i>P</i> value 0.02	1.58 <i>P</i> value 0.07	1.4 <i>P</i> value 0.25
Control ( <i>n</i> = 26)	4.01 $\pm$ 31.50	(3.84 to 44.97)	(0.97 to 2.57)	(0.79 to 2.46)

UDI-6: Urogenital distress inventory-6; MID: Minimal important difference.

we have found the dissection and removal relatively straightforward compared to having to enter the space following previous MMK or Burch.

The strengths of our study include the use of validated questionnaires in an attempt to quantify a subjective complaint of urinary incontinence. These were implemented as a standard in our practice in order to provide measurable outcomes to aid in surgical decision-making and for improved patient counseling. As has been proven in the past, the implementation of these questionnaires facilitates improved patient assessment and treatment choices<sup>[15]</sup>. Another strength lies in the multi-stage approach we standardly use to follow-up with our patients.

The limitations of this study lie in the small sample size, mainly due to exclusions based on incomplete preoperative data, as well as limited perioperative data and non-randomization of patient treatment. Although there was no significant difference in preoperative urinary incontinence complaints, a Burch urethropexy tended to be performed more frequently in women with this complaint in addition to mesh complication symptoms such as pain and erosion. Furthermore, although non-significant, more Burch urethropexies were performed on women who were undergoing removal or revision of a TVT sling. Due to the location of the TVT sling, a portion of the sling must be removed laparoscopically from the space of Retzius, the same area that requires dissection for a Burch urethropexy, unlike a TOT or mini-sling which does not require intra-abdominal resection (Figure 4).



It is also important to mention the significant differences in prior hysterectomy rates and time between sling insertion and removal. Patients who underwent the Burch procedure were significantly more likely to have a history of hysterectomy (94.7% vs 70.8%,  $P = 0.045$ ). More patients who had a Burch were greater than 2 years out from sling placement which be associated with higher rates of sling failure, resulting in more pressure to perform anti-incontinence surgery (85.0% vs 57.7%,  $P = 0.046$ ). Unfortunately, the difference in operative times, surgical cost, and postoperative recovery information such as analgesic usage is not included in this study, but would be of interest in further investigation.

In conclusion, a laparoscopic Burch urethropexy appears to be a safe option for immediate treatment of SUI in women who require sling removal. Further investigation *via* a larger scale randomized trial with additional focus on perioperative information should be considered to better evaluate outcomes. Our findings should encourage physicians to view treatment of stress incontinence in the setting of a mesh tape sling complication as a symptom that can be managed immediately and effectively. Eliminating the assumed practice of delayed treatment can only bolster patient satisfaction and quality of life.

## COMMENTS

### COMMENTS

uncommon and often require revision or removal of the sling. Unfortunately, following removal, patients will typically have persistent or worsening stress incontinence (SUI). There is no clear, concise protocol for optimizing timing and method of treatment for SUI following mesh sling removal.

### Research frontiers

To date, no study has evaluated the outcome of performing a concomitant procedure at the time of removal to reduce urinary symptomatology. Future research should be undertaken to better assess the options for women with stress urinary incontinence and symptomatic mesh slings. Specifically, comparative evaluations of outcomes following delayed anti-incontinence surgery vs concomitant surgery could provide insight into surgical decision-making.

### Innovations and breakthroughs

The authors' work is the first designed study assessing the feasibility and comparative outcomes of a combined mesh sling removal and laparoscopic Burch urethropexy. Previously, medical knowledge of options for patients with SUI and a symptomatic mesh sling were based solely on theory and isolated case reports without any focused research.

### Applications

The authors' goal with the research is to start a dialogue regarding optimizing patient care following symptomatic sling removal. The findings of this study encourage the application of a concomitant surgical approach, showing that it does not increase surgical risk and has a proven effect on postoperative incontinence-related quality of life.

### Peer-review

The manuscript conducted a retrospect cohort study to evaluate an immediate laparoscopic Burch urethropexy at the time of mesh sling removal.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **Colombo M**, Scalabrino S, Maggioni A, Milani R. Burch colposuspension versus modified Marshall-Marchetti-Krantz urethropexy for primary genuine stress urinary incontinence: a prospective, randomized clinical trial. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1994; **171**: 1573-1579 [PMID: 7802070 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9378(94)90404-9]
- 2 **Ogah J**, Cody JD, Rogerson L. Minimally invasive synthetic suburethral sling operations for stress urinary incontinence in women. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2009; **(4)**: CD006375 [PMID: 19821363 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD006375.pub2]
- 3 **Anger JT**, Weinberg AE, Albo ME, Smith AL, Kim JH, Rodriguez LV, Saigal CS. Trends in surgical management of stress urinary incontinence among female Medicare beneficiaries. *Urology* 2009; **74**: 283-287 [PMID: 19501886 DOI: 10.1016/j.urology.2009.02.011]
- 4 **United States Food and Drug Administration**. Considerations about surgical mesh for SUI. 2013. [accessed 2016 Feb 26]. Available from: URL: <http://www.fda.gov/MedicalDevices/ProductsandMedicalProcedures/ImplantsandProsthetics/UroGyn-SurgicalMesh/ucm345219.htm>
- 5 **United States Food and Drug Administration**. FDA Public Health Notification: Serious complications associated with transvaginal placement of surgical mesh in repair of pelvic organ prolapse and stress urinary incontinence. 2008. [accessed 2015 Apr 15]. Available from: URL: <http://www.fda.gov/MedicalDevices/Safety/AlertsandNotices/PublicHealthNotifications/ucm061976.htm>
- 6 **Abbott S**, Unger CA, Evans JM, Jallad K, Mishra K, Karram MM, Iglesia CB, Rardin CR, Barber MD. Evaluation and management of complications from synthetic mesh after pelvic reconstructive surgery: a multicenter study. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2014; **210**: 163.e1-163.e8 [PMID: 24126300 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2013.10.012]
- 7 **Costantini E**, Lazzeri M, Porena M. Managing complications after mid urethral sling for stress urinary incontinence. *EAU-EBU Update Series* 2007; **5**: 232-240 [DOI: 10.1016/j.eeus.2007.07.004]
- 8 **Brubaker L**, Norton PA, Albo ME, Chai TC, Dandreo KJ, Lloyd KL, Lowder JL, Sirls LT, Lemack GE, Arisco AM, Xu Y, Kusek JW. Adverse events over two years after retropubic or transobturator midurethral sling surgery: findings from the Trial of Midurethral Slings (TOMUS) study. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2011; **205**: 498.e1-498.e6 [PMID: 21925636 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2011.07.011]
- 9 **Welk B**, Al-Hothi H, Winick-Ng J. Removal or Revision of Vaginal Mesh Used for the Treatment of Stress Urinary Incontinence. *JAMA Surg* 2015; **150**: 1167-1175 [PMID: 26352538 DOI: 10.1001/jamasurg.2015.2590]
- 10 **Comiter CV**. Surgery insight: management of failed sling surgery for female stress urinary incontinence. *Nat Clin Pract Urol* 2006; **3**: 666-674 [PMID: 17149383 DOI: 10.1038/ncpuro0657]
- 11 **Gebhart JB**, Tabuco EC. Management of transvaginal mesh exposure and pain following pelvic surgery. UpToDate, 2015. Available from: URL: <http://www.uptodate.com/contents/management-of-transvaginal-mesh-exposure-and-pain-following-pelvic-surgery>
- 12 **Sinha S**, Miklos JR, Moore RD. Laparoscopic TVT sling removal following prior transvaginal sling excision. *CRSLS* 2014; **0095**
- 13 **Pikaart DP**, Miklos JR, Moore RD. Laparoscopic removal of pubovaginal polypropylene tension-free tape slings. *JSLs* 2006; **10**: 220-225 [PMID: 16882424]
- 14 **Barber MD**, Spino C, Janz NK, Brubaker L, Nygaard I, Nager CW, Wheeler TL. The minimum important differences for the urinary scales of the Pelvic Floor Distress Inventory and Pelvic Floor Impact Questionnaire. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 2009; **200**: 580.e1-580.e7 [PMID: 19375574 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajog.2009.02.007]
- 15 **Barber MD**, Chen Z, Lukacz E, Markland A, Wai C, Brubaker L, Nygaard I, Weidner A, Janz NK, Spino C. Further validation of the short form versions of the Pelvic Floor Distress Inventory (PFDI) and Pelvic Floor Impact Questionnaire (PFIQ). *Neurourol Urodyn* 2011; **30**: 541-546 [PMID: 21344495 DOI: 10.1002/nau.20934]
- 16 **Reich A**, Kohorst F, Kreienberg R, Flock F. Long-term results of the tension-free vaginal tape procedure in an unselected group: a 7-year follow-up study. *Urology* 2011; **78**: 774-777 [PMID: 21820705]



DOI: 10.1016/j.urology.2011.06.009]

- 17 **Lee D**, Zimmern PE. Management of complications of mesh surgery. *Curr Opin Urol* 2015; **25**: 284-291 [PMID: 26049869 DOI: 10.1097/MOU.0000000000000187]
- 18 **Moore RD**, Speights SE, Miklos JR. Laparoscopic Burch colposuspension for recurrent stress urinary incontinence. *J Am*

*Assoc Gynecol Laparosc* 2001; **8**: 389-392 [PMID: 11509779 DOI: 10.1016/S1074-3804(05)60336-2]

- 19 **Moore RD**, Serels SR, Davila GW, Settle P. Minimally invasive treatment for female stress urinary incontinence (SUI): a review including TVT, TOT, and mini-sling. *Surg Technol Int* 2009; **18**: 157-173 [PMID: 19579203 DOI: 10.1586/17474108.3.2.257]

**P- Reviewer:** Tsikouras PPT, Zhang XQ **S- Editor:** Ji FF

**L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Wu HL





Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**

8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA

Telephone: +1-925-223-8242

Fax: +1-925-223-8243

E-mail: [bpgoffice@wjgnet.com](mailto:bpgoffice@wjgnet.com)

Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjgnet.com>



# World Journal of *Obstetrics and Gynecology*

*World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016 November 10; 5(4): 218-225



## Editorial Board

2012-2016

The *World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology* Editorial Board consists of 172 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in obstetrics and gynecology. They are from 39 countries, including Australia (6), Austria (2), Belgium (6), Brazil (4), Canada (2), China (8), Egypt (3), Finland (2), France (2), Germany (1), Greece (10), Hungary (1), India (3), Iran (3), Israel (6), Italy (13), Japan (6), Jordan (2), Lithuania (1), Malawi (1), Malaysia (1), Mexico (1), Netherlands (3), Nigeria (1), Norway (2), Poland (1), Portugal (1), Qatar (1), Saudi Arabia (3), Serbia (1), Slovenia (1), South Korea (3), Spain (3), Sweden (2), Thailand (3), Turkey (8), United Kingdom (9), United States (45), Venezuela (1).

### EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

Bo Jacobsson, *Gothenburg*

### GUEST EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS

Wing P Chan, *Taipei*  
Chie-Pein Chen, *Taipei*  
Shi-Yann Cheng, *Yunlin*  
Song-Nan Chow, *Taipei*  
Peng-Hui Wang, *Taipei*

### MEMBERS OF THE EDITORIAL BOARD



#### Australia

Ashwini L Chand, *Melbourne*  
Steven D Fleming, *Brisbane*  
Ankit Jain, *Coffs Harbour*  
Marjan Khajehei, *Westmead*  
Gavin P Sacks, *Sydney*  
Jing Sun, *Brisbane*



#### Austria

Susanne Huber, *Vienna*  
Edgar Petru, *Graz*



#### Belgium

Marc FD Baay, *Antwerp*  
Christophe Blockeel, *Brussel*  
Patricio E Donoso, *Brussels*

Yves Jacquemyn, *Edegem*  
Ekaterine Tskitishvili, *Liege*  
Jan B Vermorken, *Edegem*



#### Brazil

Cicero de Andrade Urban, *Curitiba*  
Carlos KB Ferrari, *Barra do Garças*  
Wellington P Martins, *Ribeirao Preto*  
Maria I Rosa, *Criciuma*



#### Canada

Emmanuel Bujold, *Quebec*  
Paul J Hoskins, *Vancouver*



#### China

Cherng-Jye Jeng, *Nanjing*  
Jian-Xin Li, *Nanjing*  
Dan Xie, *Guangzhou*



#### Egypt

Hesham E Abdel-Hady, *Mansoura*  
Ahmed S El Hefnawy, *Mansoura*  
Ahmed Nasr, *Assiut*



#### Finland

Johan O Fellman, *Helsinki*  
Kari J Syrjanen, *Turku*



#### France

Cherif Y Akladios, *Strasbourg*  
Souhail Alouini, *Orleans*



#### Germany

Safaa H Al-Hasani, *Luebeck*



#### Greece

Byro Asimakopoulos, *Alexandroupolis*  
Anastasios Athanasopoulos, *Patras*  
Panagiotis Christopoulos, *Athens*  
Ioannis E Messinis, *Larisa*  
Athanasios G Papatsoris, *Athens*  
Georgios Partsinevelos, *Athens*  
Kitty Pavlakis, *Athens*  
Konstantinos A Toulis, *Salonika*  
Panagiotis PT Tsikouras, *Alexandroupolis*  
Menelaos Zafrafas, *Thessaloniki*



#### Hungary

Jozsef G Joo, *Budapest*



#### India

Chinmoy K Bose, *Kolkata*  
Pralhad Kushtagi, *Mangalore*  
Niraj N Mahajan, *Mumbai*



**Iran**

Hossein Fallahzadeh, *Yazd*  
 Abbas A Ghaderi, *Shiraz*  
 Ramesh Omranipour, *Tehran*

**Israel**

Zeev Blumenfeld, *Haifa*  
 Sorina Grisaru-Granovsky, *Jerusalem*  
 Alexander Ioscovich, *Jerusalem*  
 Marwan Odeh, *Nahariya*  
 Eyal Sheiner, *Beer Sheva*  
 Johnny S Younis, *Tiberias*

**Italy**

Sandrine ML Chamayou, *Sant'Agata Li Battiati*  
 Federico Coccolini, *Bergamo*  
 Erich Cosmi, *Padua*  
 Vassilios Fanos, *Cagliari*  
 Roberta Granese, *Messina*  
 Anna M Marconi, *Milano*  
 Filippo Murina, *Milan*  
 Felice Petraglia, *Siena*  
 Giuseppe Rizzo, *Rome*  
 Emilio Sacco, *Roma*  
 Giulio A Santoro, *Treviso*  
 Andrea Tinelli, *Lecce*  
 Emanuela Turillazzi, *Foggia*

**Japan**

Madoka Furuhashi, *Nagoya*  
 Takeshi Maruo, *Kobe*  
 Kaei Nasu, *Oita*  
 Yuzuru Niibe, *Kanagawa*  
 Kenzo Sonoda, *Fukuoka*  
 Yoshihito Yokoyama, *Aomori*

**Jordan**

Moamar Al-Jefout, *Karak*  
 Zouhair O Amarin, *Irbid*

**Lithuania**

Linas Rovas, *Klaipeda*

**Malawi**

Fanuel Lampiao, *Blantyre*

**Malaysia**

Geok Chin Tan, *Kuala Lumpur*

**Mexico**

Alfonso Dueñas-González, *Tlalpan*

**Moldova**

Fanuel Lampiao, *Blantyre*

**Netherlands**

Marieke J Claas, *Utrecht*  
 Wendy Koster, *Utrecht*  
 Arnold-Jan Kruse, *Maastricht*

**Nigeria**

Chibuike O Chigbu, *Enugu*

**Norway**

Andrej M Grjibovski, *Oslo*  
 Svein Rasmussen, *Bergen*

**Poland**

Andrzej Winciewicz, *Kielce*

**Portugal**

Renato MN Jorge, *Porto*

**Qatar**

Sajjad ur Rahman, *Doha*

**Saudi Arabia**

Ismail Al-Badawi, *Riyadh*  
 Mamdoh Eskandar, *Abha*  
 Hans-Juergen Schulten, *Jeddah*

**Serbia**

Miroslava G Dugalic, *Belgrade*

**Slovenia**

Spela Smrkolj, *Ljubljana*

**South Korea**

Kwang-Hyun Baek, *Seongnam*  
 Min Hyung Jung, *Seoul*  
 Sue Kyung Park, *Seoul*

**Spain**

Santiago Palacios, *Madrid*  
 Faustino R Perez-Lopez, *Zaragoza*  
 Antonio Pinero, *Murcia*

**Sweden**

Eva M Wiberg-Itzel, *Stockholm*

**Thailand**

Pisake NA Lumbiganon, *Khon Kaen*  
 Vorapong Phupong, *Bangkok*  
 Viroj Wiwanitkit, *Bangkok*

**Turkey**

Metin Akbulut, *Denizli*  
 Cem Baykal, *Istanbul*  
 Husnu Celik, *Elazig*  
 Cem Dane, *Istanbul*  
 Polat Dursun, *Ankara*  
 Erdin Ilter, *Istanbul*  
 Mehmet Kefeli, *Kurupelit*  
 Kamile Kukulu, *Antalya*

**United Kingdom**

Suha Deen, *Nottingham*  
 Stergios K Doumouchtsis, *London*  
 Mona A El-Bahrawy, *London*  
 Alaa A El-Ghobashy, *Leeds*  
 Ayman A Ewies, *Birmingham*  
 Myra S Hunter, *London*  
 Paul D Losty, *Liverpool*  
 Tim M Reynolds, *Burton-on-Trent*  
 Ariel Zosmer, *London*

**United States**

Muktar H Aliyu, *Nashville*  
 Priya R Bhosale, *Houston*  
 Donald P Braun, *Zion*  
 Chunxia Cao, *Gainesville*  
 Waldemar A Carlo, *Birmingham*  
 Linda R Chambliss, *Phoenix*  
 Teresa P Diaz-Montes, *Baltimore*  
 Steven M Donn, *Ann Arbor*  
 Omar F Duenas, *New York*  
 Marilyn B Escobedo, *Oklahoma City*  
 Robert Freedman, *Detroit*  
 Elizabeth S Ginsburg, *Boston*  
 Sergio G Golombek, *Valhalla*  
 Michael P Goodman, *Davis*  
 Diane M Harper, *Louisville*  
 Matthew H Ho, *Los Angeles*  
 Patricia B Hoyer, *Tucson*  
 Mei-Hua Huang, *Los Angeles*  
 William W Hurd, *Cleveland*  
 Gabor B Huszar, *New Haven*  
 Amer K Karam, *Los Angeles*  
 Justin P Lavin, *Akron*  
 Linda E May, *Kansas City*  
 Zaher Merhi, *Brooklyn*  
 Nash S Moawad, *Gainesville*  
 Lisa E Moore, *Albuquerque*

Robert D Moore, *Atlanta*  
David G Mutch, *St Louis*  
Nihar R Nayak, *Palo Alto*  
Anita L Nelson, *Manhattan Beach*  
Farr R Nezhat, *New York*  
Robert W Powers, *Pittsburgh*  
Andersen Robyn , *Seattle*  
Werner Schaefer, *Pittsburgh*

Gerald P Schatten, *Pittsburgh*  
Hen Y Sela, *New York*  
Sherri L Stewart, *Atlanta*  
Robert S Tan, *Houston*  
Ping Tang, *Rochester*  
Ihab M Usta, *New York*  
Jian-Jun Wei, *Chicago*  
Xiu-Quan Zhang, *Salt Lake City*

Chengquan Zhao, *Pittsburgh*  
Yulian Zhao, *Baltimore*  
Wenxin Zheng, *Tucson*



**Venezuela**

María E Aponte-Rueda, *Caracas*



**MINIREVIEWS**

- 218** Screening and diagnosis of endometrial cancer in Lynch syndrome

*Cornou C, Bats AS, Ngo C, Rossi L, Capmas P, Laurent-Puig P, Bensaid C, Nos C, Lefrère-Belda MA, Lécuru F*

## Contents

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*  
Volume 5 Number 4 November 10, 2016

### ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*, Menelaos Zafarakas, MD, Associate Professor, Department of Obstetrics and Gynecology, Technological Educational Institute of Thessaloniki, 46511 Thessaloniki, Greece

### AIM AND SCOPE

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology* (*World J Obstet Gynecol*, *WJOG*, online ISSN 2218-6220, DOI: 10.5317) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

*WJOG* covers topics concerning pregnancy complications, obstetric surgical procedures, diagnostic imaging, endoscopy, reproductive endocrinology, tumors, pelvic diseases, evidence-based medicine, epidemiology and nursing.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJOG*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

### INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology* is now indexed in China National Knowledge Infrastructure (CNKI).

### FLYLEAF

I-III Editorial Board

### EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Responsible Assistant Editor: *Xiang Li*  
Responsible Electronic Editor: *Ya-Jing Lu*  
Proofing Editor-in-Chief: *Lian-Sheng Ma*

Responsible Science Editor: *Jin-Xin Kong*  
Proofing Editorial Office Director: *Xin-Xia Song*

#### NAME OF JOURNAL

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*

#### ISSN

ISSN 2218-6220 (online)

#### LAUNCH DATE

June 10, 2012

#### FREQUENCY

Quarterly

#### EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

**Bo Jacobsson, MD, PhD, Professor**, Department Obstetrics and Gynecology, Sahlgrenska University Hospital/Ostra, SE-416 85 Gothenburg, Sweden

#### EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS

All editorial board members resources online at <http://www.wjnet.com/2218-6220/editorialboard.htm>

#### EDITORIAL OFFICE

Xiu-Xia Song, Director

Fang-Fang Ji, Vice Director

*World Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*  
Baishideng Publishing Group Inc  
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA

Telephone: +1-925-2238242

Fax: +1-925-2238243

E-mail: [editorialoffice@wjnet.com](mailto:editorialoffice@wjnet.com)

Help Desk: <http://www.wjnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjnet.com>

#### PUBLISHER

Baishideng Publishing Group Inc

8226 Regency Drive,

Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA

Telephone: +1-925-2238242

Fax: +1-925-2238243

E-mail: [bpgoffice@wjnet.com](mailto:bpgoffice@wjnet.com)

Help Desk: <http://www.wjnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjnet.com>

#### PUBLICATION DATE

November 10, 2016

#### COPYRIGHT

© 2016 Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. Articles published by this Open-Access journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited, the use is non commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license.

#### SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in journals owned by the Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG) represent the views and opinions of their authors, and not the views, opinions or policies of the BPG, except where otherwise explicitly indicated.

#### INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS

<http://www.wjnet.com/bpg/getinfo/204>

#### ONLINE SUBMISSION

<http://www.wjnet.com/esps/>



## Screening and diagnosis of endometrial cancer in Lynch syndrome

Caroline Cornou, Anne Sophie Bats, Charlotte Ngo, Léa Rossi, Perrine Capmas, Pierre Laurent-Puig, Chérizade Bensaid, Claude Nos, Marie Aude Lefrère-Belda, Fabrice Lécuru

Caroline Cornou, Anne Sophie Bats, Charlotte Ngo, Léa Rossi, Perrine Capmas, Pierre Laurent-Puig, Chérizade Bensaid, Claude Nos, Marie Aude Lefrère-Belda, Fabrice Lécuru, Department of Gynecologic Oncology, European Hospital Georges Pompidou, University of Paris Descartes, 75015 Paris, France

**Author contributions:** All the authors contributed to the manuscript.

**Conflict-of-interest statement:** There is no conflict of interest associated with any of the senior author or other coauthors contributed their efforts in this manuscript.

**Open-Access:** This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/>

**Manuscript source:** Invited manuscript

**Correspondence to:** Caroline Cornou, MD, Department of Gynecologic Oncology, European Hospital Georges Pompidou, University of Paris Descartes, 20 rue Leblanc, 75015 Paris, France. [caroline.cornou@aphp.fr](mailto:caroline.cornou@aphp.fr)  
Telephone: +33-1-56092565  
Fax: +33-1-56092582

Received: June 9, 2016

Peer-review started: June 14, 2016

First decision: July 11, 2016

Revised: September 15, 2016

Accepted: October 25, 2016

Article in press: October 27, 2016

Published online: November 10, 2016

### Abstract

Lynch syndrome (LS) is an autosomal dominant inherited cancer predisposition syndrome caused by a mismatch of DNA repair (MMR system). Lifetime risk of developing endometrial and ovarian cancer in LS is higher than in the general population and gynecologic screening appears interesting. Screening is based on several tests: pelvic ultrasound, endometrial biopsy and hysteroscopy for endometrial cancer, pelvic ultrasound and CA125 for ovarian cancer. Those tests appear efficient for the diagnosis of gynecologic cancers in LS. Nevertheless, screening tests have not proved clinical benefit until now, and potential problems of compliance, risk of false negative cases, and interval cancer associated with screening do justify offering prophylactic surgery to patients. Women with LS should be informed of the potential benefits and risks of screening and the importance of evaluation in case of gynecologic symptoms or abnormal bleeding. Chemoprevention by progestin-containing oral contraceptives and the treatment of premalignant lesion are available options for reducing the risk of endometrial cancer in LS population.

**Key words:** Lynch syndrome; Endometrial cancer; Ovarian cancer; Gynecologic screening; Prophylactic hysterectomy

© **The Author(s) 2016.** Published by Baishideng Publishing Group Inc. All rights reserved.

**Core tip:** Lynch syndrome (LS) is an autosomal dominant inherited cancer predisposition syndrome caused by a mismatch of DNA repair, lifetime risk of developing endometrial and ovarian cancer in LS is higher than in the general population. Gynecologic screening appears interesting for the diagnosis of gynecological cancers in LS although screening tests have not proved clinical benefit until now. The aim of this review was to describe

the various forms of screening and the results in this population.

Cornou C, Bats AS, Ngo C, Rossi L, Capmas P, Laurent-Puig P, Bensaid C, Nos C, Lefrère-Belda MA, Lécure F. Screening and diagnosis of endometrial cancer in Lynch syndrome. *World J Obstet Gynecol* 2016; 5(4): 218-225 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/2218-6220/full/v5/i4/218.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.5317/wjog.v5.i4.218>

## INTRODUCTION

Lynch syndrome (LS) is an autosomal dominant inherited cancer predisposition syndrome. Initially described by Whartin in 1913, Lynch proposed the first diagnostic criteria in 1966 made on the basis of a family's cancer history<sup>[1]</sup>. That mutation increases woman lifetime risk of endometrial cancer, colorectal cancer and ovarian cancer. Furthermore, other tumours such as gastric, small bowel, urinary, and biliary tract have also been associated with LS<sup>[2-4]</sup>.

If the risk of colorectal cancer was initially estimated at 80% at the age of 80 years, and 60% for endometrial cancer<sup>[5]</sup>, recent data report a lower prevalence. The risk of colorectal cancer for women is estimated at just over 20% at the age of 80 years. The risk of endometrial cancer reported in the northern European population with identified hMLH1 or hMSH2 mutation remains close to 40%<sup>[6]</sup>. The ERISCAM study (Estimation des Risques de Cancer chez les porteurs de mutation des gènes MMR), which is a prospective multicentre French cohort on patients with MMR gene mutation<sup>[7]</sup>, found a cumulative risk of colorectal cancer at the age of 70 years of 31% for women, and 33% and 9% for endometrial cancer and ovarian cancer. For endometrial cancer, the cumulative risk at the age of 70 years was 54% in case of *MLH1* gene mutation, 21% in *MSH2* mutation, and 16% in *MSH6* mutation. At the age of 40 years, the estimated cumulative risk was 2%, regardless of the mutation. Regarding ovarian cancer, it was respectively 20%, 24% and 1% at the age of 70 years and 1% at the age of 40 years, all mutations combined. The median age of onset of endometrial cancer was 49 years and 44 years for ovarian cancer. Thus, women with LS are at high risk of developing endometrial cancer, also called "sentinel" cancer, because it reveals the hereditary predisposition in 50% of cases. Very few data are available on the natural history of endometrial cancer in LS. Clinical cases suggest that the onset of microsatellite instability precedes the loss of MMR protein expression<sup>[8,9]</sup>. A short phase of hyperplasia seems to precede cancer. This sequence seems to be observed not only for endometrial cancer, but also for LS-related ovarian cancer<sup>[8]</sup>. However, the transition hyperplasia-cancer is faster than in the general population. Complex and atypical hyperplasia

emerge as premalignant lesions in LS<sup>[10]</sup>.

Endometrial cancers are characterized by a higher proportion of advanced stage than in the general population (although the majority is stage I), more aggressive histologic types (clear cell carcinomas, papillary serous carcinoma and carcinosarcoma), and a location in the uterine isthmus<sup>[11]</sup>. When comparing tumours of patients with LS with those of sporadic cases before the age of 50 years, FIGO stage and grade, mitotic index, depth of invasion and lymphocytic infiltration are higher in case of genetic predisposition<sup>[12]</sup>.

LS was defined by Amsterdam criteria. Initially, only colorectal cancer were described: At least three relatives with colorectal cancer, one should be a first degree relative to the other two, at least two generations affected, at least one diagnosed before 50 and adenomatous polyposis should be excluded. Subsequently, these ones integrate other cancers of spectrum (Amsterdam criteria 2). There should be at least three relatives with an owned restrictive spectrum Lynch cancer: One should be a first-degree relative to the other two, at least two successive generations should be affected, at least one should be diagnosed before 50, familial adenomatous polyposis should be excluded, tumors should be verified by pathological examination<sup>[13]</sup>.

In female population with LS, endometrial cancer occurs at younger ages than in sporadic cases; moreover cumulative risk of endometrial cancer at the age of 70 is around 33%, higher than cumulative risk of colorectal cancer (31%)<sup>[7]</sup>, and appears frequently as sentinel cancer (first cancer to occur). Furthermore, endometrial cancer characteristics are different: An earlier age of cancer at onset, tumour morphology (dedifferentiate or undifferentiate endometrial carcinoma), and presence of synchronous ovarian cancer (clear cell carcinoma) seems more frequent in LS<sup>[11]</sup>.

Because of this high risk of endometrial cancer, it is necessary to offer patients with LS gynecologic screening.

Lifetime risk for ovarian cancer in LS ranges between 9% and 12%, compared with 1.3% in the general population. The rate at the age of 70 is 9%<sup>[3,4,6,14]</sup>. Moreover, Watson *et al*<sup>[4]</sup> showed that *MSH2* mutation had nearly twice the incidence rate compared to patients with *MLH1* mutation.

Risk subject identification is indeed fundamental to offer a genetic counselling, a screening and a gynaecological management suitable for the proband and the relatives. This screening is thus an important tool in cancer prevention.

## PATHOGENESIS OF LS

LS is an autosomal dominant inherited predisposition to cancer, caused by the mutation of a gene, involved in the DNA mismatch repair (MMR), leading to genome instability in tumour cells, particularly visible at microsatellite loci (MSI+ phenotype, for microsatellite

instability)<sup>[1]</sup>. Four MMR genes have been identified: *hMLH1*, *hMSH2*, *hMSH6* and *PMS2*<sup>[15-21]</sup>. Their respective proteins have the function to recognize DNA replication abnormalities, which occur during mitosis, and to perform excision and repair. MMR gene mutation makes the associated protein nonfunctional, *i.e.*, unable to correct matching errors. This is common in microsatellite loci, containing 2 to 5 base pairs repeat, particularly sensitive to matching errors. The newly synthesized DNA strand is abnormally long. The tumours are thus called “unstable” or MSI+. This results in a problem of compensation, causing inactivation of tumour suppressor genes and development of cancer, mainly colorectal and endometrial cancer.

There are, at a lower risk level, tumours of the ovary, urinary excretory tract, small intestine, stomach, hepatobiliary tract, skin and brain<sup>[2-4,22]</sup>.

## LS EPIDEMIOLOGY

Initially, two clinical syndromes were described. Hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer site specific (HNPCCSS), described as association of colorectal cancer in the same family; and cancer family syndrome (CFS). CFS associated colorectal cancer and another spectrum Lynch cancer, like endometrial<sup>[1]</sup>.

If the risk of colorectal cancer was initially estimated at 80% at the age of 80 years, and 60% for endometrial cancer<sup>[5]</sup>, recent data report a lower prevalence. The risk of colorectal cancer in women is estimated at just over 20% at the age of 80 years. The risk of endometrial cancer reported in the northern European population with identified *hMLH1* or *hMSH2* mutation remains close to 40%<sup>[6]</sup>. The ERISCAM study, which is a prospective multicentre French cohort on patients with MMR gene mutation<sup>[7]</sup>, found a cumulative risk of colorectal cancer at the age of 70 years of 31% for women, and 33% and 9% for endometrial cancer and ovarian cancer. For endometrial cancer, the cumulative risk at the age of 70 years was 54% in case of *hMLH1* gene mutation, 21% in *hMSH2* mutation, and 16% in *hMSH6* mutation. At the age of 40 years, the estimated cumulative risk was 2%, regardless of the mutation. Regarding ovarian cancer, it was respectively 20%, 24% and 1% at the age of 70 years and 1% at the age of 40 years, all mutations combined. The median age of onset of endometrial cancer was 49 years and 44 years for ovarian cancer.

## ENDOMETRIAL CANCER IN LS

Women with LS are at high risk of developing endometrial cancer, which is often also called “sentinel” cancer, because it reveals the hereditary predisposition in 50% of cases. Indeed, endometrial cancer occurs at younger age in LS. Very few data are available on the natural history of endometrial cancer in LS, especially molecular pathogenesis<sup>[8]</sup>.

Indeed, a short phase of hyperplasia seems to precede cancer and this transition is faster than in the

general population. This sequence seems also observed for LS-related ovarian cancer<sup>[8]</sup>. Complex and atypical hyperplasia emerge as premalignant lesions in LS<sup>[10]</sup>.

Endometrial cancers seem characterized by a higher proportion of advanced stage than in the general population, more aggressive histologic types (clear cell carcinomas, papillary serous carcinoma and carcinosarcoma), and a location in the uterine isthmus<sup>[11]</sup>. Moreover, endometrial carcinoma appears earlier and frequently as sentinel cancer but few data is available and this cancer may differ according to patients' age. Although the majority of endometrial carcinomas related to LS are type I cancers, the proportion of type II cancers seems to be higher than in the case of sporadic endometrial carcinoma. Before the age of 50 years, FIGO stage and grade, mitotic index, depth of invasion and lymphocytic infiltration in endometrial tumours are higher in case of genetic predisposition<sup>[12]</sup>. Conversely, women over 50 years present low-grade and stage tumour, which may be associated with ovarian tumour in 13% of cases. MSI+ endometrial cancers, combining high grade, presence of lympho-vascular emboli, deeper depth of invasion or higher stage, could have a worse prognosis<sup>[23]</sup>.

## OVARIAN CANCER IN LS

Bonadona *et al*<sup>[7]</sup> 2011 found a cumulative risk at the age of 70 years of 9% for ovarian cancer, mainly with *MLH1* and *MSH2* mutation. Synchronous ovarian and endometrial cancers are more often found in LS population<sup>[24,25]</sup>.

Compared to the general population, the rate of clear cell carcinoma and endometrioid adenocarcinoma is more frequent. A young age and an earlier stage could explain that these cancers have better prognosis than in general population<sup>[26]</sup>.

Ketabi *et al*<sup>[26]</sup> in 2011 showed that typical ovarian cancer associated with LS presents at a young age, at an early stage and are often non-serous tumours.

## DIAGNOSTIC OF LS IN CASE OF GYNAECOLOGICAL CANCERS

Clinical criteria for the detection of families with LS were first established in 1991. The so-called Amsterdam Criteria were originally designed to find families suitable for research projects aimed at identifying the genetic causes of hereditary colorectal cancers. In 1999, these were extended to extra-colonic cancers associated with LS. But they have a low sensitivity<sup>[13]</sup>. Therefore, in 1997, the less stringent Bethesda Guidelines were developed. These criteria consider medical and familial history of LS-associated tumors<sup>[27]</sup>. In 2004, these guidelines were revised in order to achieve higher specificity<sup>[28]</sup>. Few studies had described these criteria but had limited sample sizes and focused only on *hMLH1* and *hMSH2* mutations<sup>[29,30]</sup>.

In 2011, Kwon *et al*<sup>[31]</sup> estimated the costs and benefits of different testing criteria to identify LS in

women with endometrial cancer. They compared six criteria for LS and found that immunohistochemistry in patient having at least one first degree relative with Lynch associated cancer, whatever the age was, is a cost effective strategy for detecting LS. Indeed, with Amsterdam II criteria, the proportion of women with endometrial cancer and Amsterdam II criteria may be as low as 30% when patients with endometrial cancer and LS who have at least one first degree relative with Lynch associated cancer at any age may be as high as 80% to 100%. Consequently, a better identification of patients with LS creates a better surveillance of those.

Moreover, Vasen in 2013 found that investigation of all endometrial cancer in patients less than 70 years old by immunohistochemistry or MSI can improve identification<sup>[32]</sup>.

## GYNAECOLOGICAL SCREENING

The young age at onset, tumour characteristics and high risk of developing cancer of LS related-endometrial cancers seem to justify a gynaecological screening in this population. However, although colorectal screening has emerged in LS<sup>[33]</sup>, gynaecological screening in LS is not established. The benefit of gynaecological surveillance is unclear and there is no consensus in surveillance modality. Screening is based on the detection of premalignant lesions (complex or atypical hyperplasia), endometrial cancer and ovarian cancer.

There are several screening tests: pelvic ultrasound, endometrial biopsy and hysteroscopy for endometrial cancer; pelvic ultrasound and CA125 assay for ovarian cancer, but any of these tests has yet proved its effectiveness.

### Guidelines for gynaecological screening

Many studies have been raised about the modalities of gynaecological screening in LS. The French National Institute of Cancer (INCa) recommends screening of patient with LS starting at the age of 30 years. This includes pelvic ultrasound and endometrial biopsy, preferably by Pipelle de Cornier, at least every 2 years (INCA recommendations).

The other international agencies propose different screening protocols. In 2015, the European Society for Medical Oncology (ESMO), the European Society for Radiotherapy and Oncology (ESTRO) and European Society of Gynaecological Oncology (ESGO) proposed new guidelines<sup>[34]</sup>. They defined that patients with high risk of endometrial cancer should include women with genetic mutation of HNPCC, those showing a substantial likelihood of being mutated and those coming from families with suspected predisposition to colonic cancer but without genetic testing results. Although there is insufficient evidence for annual screening, gynaecological screening is recommended from the age of 35, due to the high risk of endometrial cancer. Screening is recommended with annual gynecological examination,

transvaginal ultrasound and endometrial biopsy with or without hysteroscopy until hysterectomy. Prophylactic surgery should be considered at the age of 40, and is an option for prevention of ovarian and endometrial cancer. Women with LS should be informed of the potential benefits and risks of screening, and also that the recommendations are based on expert opinion in the absence of scientific evidence until now.

The application of local progesterone using the LNG-IUD and the treatment of premalignant disease (Atypical Endometrial Hyperplasia, Endometrial Intraepithelial Neoplasia) are available options in patient at high risk of endometrial cancer<sup>[32,34]</sup>.

### Screening by pelvic ultrasound

The accuracy of ultrasonography was analyzed by three main studies.

Dove-Edwin *et al*<sup>[35]</sup> reported 292 cases of women fulfilling the Amsterdam criteria, and having an annual ultrasound. No cancer was detected and two interval cancers occurred. The main limitations of this study are outdated methodology for ultrasound and inclusion of low-risk patients. In a prospective study, Rijcken *et al*<sup>[36]</sup> observed 41 women with identified mutation or fulfilling the Amsterdam criteria II. An annual clinical examination was associated with a transvaginal ultrasound and CA125 assay. An endometrial biopsy was performed in case of abnormal bleeding or increased endometrial thickness. One hundred seventy-nine scans were performed, leading to propose 17 endometrial biopsies or curettage. Three atypical hyperplasia were diagnosed and an interval cancer occurred eight months after a normal scan. In the third study conducted in our center, 96 ultrasound/endometrial biopsy assessments were performed in 58 patients. With an average age of 42 years, 75% of patients fulfilled the Amsterdam criteria II and 25% had hMLH1 or hMLH6 gene mutation. The ultrasound was considered normal in the absence of polyp or abnormality with endometrial thickness less than 4 mm in postmenopausal women without hormone replacement treatment or 6 mm in other cases. Endometrial biopsy was performed at the same time. With a median of 51 mo (246 years of exposure), two cancers occurred in this population, both diagnosed by ultrasound. The sensitivity of this review is therefore 100% but with a specificity of only 55%. It is noteworthy that both cancers were symptomatic (bleeding)<sup>[37]</sup>.

### Screening by endometrial biopsy

The value of endometrial biopsy has been reported in three conflicting studies<sup>[38-40]</sup>. Renkonen-Sinisalo *et al*<sup>[38]</sup> studied 175 mutated patients, who were annually monitored by ultrasound and endometrial biopsy. Five hundred and three examinations were performed during 759 years of follow-up. Fourteen cancers were diagnosed in the study: 11 by endometrial biopsy, 2 as interval cancer, respectively 3 and 31 mo after a normal screening, and 1 at the time of prophylactic



hysterectomy. In addition, 14 hyperplasia were found<sup>[38]</sup>. Gerritzen *et al.*<sup>[39]</sup> reported a series of 100 patients fulfilling the Amsterdam criteria, screened by pelvic ultrasound, and endometrial biopsy in 64 patients. The endometrial biopsy revealed 3 atypical hyperplasia and endometrial cancer. The authors concluded that endometrial biopsy improves the detection of premalignant and malignant endometrial lesions. The third study assessed the additional value of endometrial biopsy coupled with pelvic ultrasound in the annual screening for endometrial lesions, comparing two periods (period 1: ultrasound alone and period 2: ultrasound coupled with endometrial biopsy). Seventy-five patients aged over 30 years with LS or a high risk first degree related were included in the study. Four premalignant lesions and 1 endometrial cancer were diagnosed during the first period of the study, and only 2 premalignant lesions were found in the second one, which would not have been missed in the absence of endometrial biopsy. The endometrial cancer was symptomatic. The authors conclude that the endometrial biopsy provides no benefit to annual pelvic ultrasound in the screening of LS. Nevertheless, the study population did not include only mutated patients, who are at higher risk for endometrial lesions<sup>[40]</sup>.

### Screening by hysteroscopy

Diagnostic hysteroscopy has also been proposed as a screening tool in LS<sup>[41-43]</sup>. This examination is done in outpatient clinic, without anaesthesia, and is well tolerated when using flexible hysteroscopy and uterine distension with saline. In addition, it allows targeted biopsies. Our team reported 62 women followed with hysteroscopy and endometrial biopsy at the same time. Three cancers were diagnosed. Hysteroscopy diagnosed the three lesions with a sensitivity of 100%. However, these three patients were symptomatic<sup>[42]</sup>. A second prospective cohort study evaluated the performance of hysteroscopy in the detection of endometrial cancer in LS compared with pelvic ultrasound. Forty-one patients received 69 annual screening visits. Four patients had endometrial cancer or atypical hyperplasia, five endometrial polyps and two endometrial hyperplasia, highlighted on hysteroscopy. Ultrasound detected 2 cancers or atypical endometrial hyperplasia. Hysteroscopy had a specificity of 89.8% comparable to ultrasound but was associated with a higher positive likelihood ratio and a lower negative likelihood ratio. No interval cancer occurred with a 22 mo follow-up. The authors emphasized that hysteroscopy in gynaecological screening of LS is acceptable and has a high diagnostic accuracy for the detection of cancer and atypical endometrial hyperplasia<sup>[43]</sup>.

### Screening by molecular technique

Bladder cancer is a tumour also characterized by microsatellite instability. Several studies have evaluated the analysis of microsatellite instability in urine for the detection of urinary tract tumours and showed that this technique could not only detect recurrence

but also early stage tumours<sup>[44,45]</sup>. Ichikawa *et al.*<sup>[8]</sup> reported a case of endometrial hyperplasia without atypia associated with microsatellite instability and loss of expression of MMR protein. Seven months later, the patient developed an endometrial cancer, suggesting that failure in DNA repair appears early in the process of carcinogenesis.

Our team has reported the feasibility of detection of microsatellite instability in washings of the uterine cavity in patients with endometrial cancer in the context of LS<sup>[46,47]</sup>. MSI analysis in the uterine cavity washings could be a promising tool for early diagnosis of unstable tumours in patients with LS and thereby improve their prognosis. Microsatellite instability analysis can also be performed on endometrial biopsy.

It must be stressed that microsatellite instability analysis can sometimes be difficult, especially in case of *hMSH6* gene mutation<sup>[48,49]</sup>. In this case, it is interesting to investigate by immunohistochemistry a loss of expression of the corresponding MMR protein. Ketabi *et al.*<sup>[50]</sup> estimated the incidence rate of endometrial cancer in prospective cohort of 871 patients and they concluded that surveillance should only be targeted at MMR-mutation carriers.

### Screening for ovarian cancer

Little is known on the benefit of screening for ovarian cancer in LS, and no study has specifically investigated this issue. The only available data are provided by studies investigating screening of endometrial lesions. Dove-Edwin *et al.*<sup>[35]</sup> reported that pelvic ultrasound failed to detect ovarian cancer. Similarly, pelvic ultrasound associated with CA125 assay showed no evidence of ovarian cancer through screening<sup>[36,38]</sup>, while Renkonen-Sinisalo *et al.*<sup>[38]</sup> found 4 interval cancers. Gerritzen *et al.*<sup>[39]</sup> reported one borderline tumour and one malignant ovarian tumour, diagnosed because abnormal scan associated with increased CA125.

### Acceptability and compliance in gynaecological screening

Acceptability of gynaecological screening has been assessed and the patients report that transvaginal ultrasound examination is the most well tolerated, followed by hysterosonography, diagnostic hysteroscopy, and finally endometrial biopsy<sup>[51]</sup>. Ketabi *et al.*<sup>[52]</sup> showed that knowledge of endometrial cancer risk is the most important predictor of their compliance with gynecologic screening. Compliance in gynaecological screening of patients with LS appears crucial, and is fortunately often high (97.1% for Järvinen<sup>[33]</sup>).

## PROPHYLACTIC SURGERY

Surveillance techniques have not shown clinical benefits and potential problems of compliance, risk of false negative cases, and interval cancer associated with screening do justify offering prophylactic surgery to patients<sup>[34,50]</sup>.

The INCa and ESMO recommends prophylactic surgery in women with an identified mutation or a significant risk of cancer, when they have no more desire of pregnancy<sup>[34]</sup>. The reasonable age to offer this surgery is probably in premenopausal women, *i.e.*, 40-45 years, given the median age of endometrial and ovarian cancer reported in the ERISCAM study<sup>[7,34]</sup>. Minimally invasive approach should be preferably used<sup>[34]</sup>.

The indication has to be validated by a multi-disciplinary meeting after psychological counselling. In preoperative consultation, the physicians should inform patients of the induced menopause, its side effects, as well as detail surgery<sup>[34]</sup>.

Prophylactic hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy seems to be the most effective and least expansive preventive measure in patients with LS. This procedure eliminates risk of endometrial and ovarian cancer and any specific gynaecological screening. In a published study of 210 patients with prophylactic surgery, no cases of endometrial cancer and ovarian cancer were recorded among women who did chose this option<sup>[53]</sup>. But Karamurzin *et al.*<sup>[54]</sup> in 2013, analyzed a series of 25 patients and revealed incidental endometrial cancer or endometrial hyperplasia in 24% of cases. Moreover, a recent study suggests that prophylactic surgery does not impact on quality of life in premenopausal woman with LS and women tend not to worry about developing endometrial cancer<sup>[55]</sup>. Nevertheless, Schmeler *et al.*<sup>[53]</sup> reported two cases of primary peritoneal cancer after prophylactic surgery.

## CHEMOPREVENTION OF ENDOMETRIAL CANCER

Women with LS are at high risk for cancer and represent an ideal population for cancer chemoprevention. Epidemiologic studies have shown that progestin-containing oral contraceptives reduce the risk of endometrial cancer in general population. Stoffel *et al.*<sup>[56]</sup> described on short period (3 mo) the effects of progestin containing in oral contraceptive pills or depo-medroxyprogesterone (depo-MPV) on the endometrium of patient with LS. There results showed an endometrial response, suggesting that exogenous progestins may be reasonable chemoprotective agents in this high-risk patient population. But currently, a reduction in incidence of endometrial cancer in this group remains unknown. Research need to elucidate the molecular mechanisms that lead to endometrial carcinogenesis and the impact of hormonal treatment.

## CONCLUSION

Currently, there is no scientific evidence to support gynaecologic screening in patients with LS. Screening is based on annual gynaecological examination, pelvic ultrasound, and endometrial biopsy.

The recommendations are based on expert opinion and multimodal screening in LS seems justified because

of high prevalence of endometrial cancer compared with the general population. The presence of premalignant lesions, abnormal bleeding almost always present at an early stage of the disease, and good prognosis of early stage suggest that patients should be informed about the importance of gynaecological closed surveillance.

Moreover, it seems reasonable to propose prophylactic hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy at the age of 40-45 years, with or without colorectal surgery, in women with an identified mutation or a significant risk of cancer, when they have no more desire of pregnancy.

Epidemiologic studies have shown that progestin-containing oral contraceptives reduce the risk of endometrial cancer in high-risk population. Research needs to elucidate the molecular mechanisms that lead to endometrial carcinogenesis and the impact of hormonal treatment.

A better histological and biological characterization of premalignant and malignant endometrial lesions as well as oncogenesis, including description of onset of microsatellite instability and loss of expression of MMR proteins in endometrial cells appears crucial for a better understanding of the disease and an effective screening.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **Lynch HT**, Krush AJ, Larsen AL, Magnuson CW. Endometrial carcinoma: multiple primary malignancies, constitutional factors, and heredity. *Am J Med Sci* 1966; **252**: 381-390 [PMID: 5922484 DOI: 10.1097/00000441-196610000-00001]
- 2 **Lynch HT**, de la Chapelle A. Hereditary colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **348**: 919-932 [PMID: 12621137 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra012242]
- 3 **Aarnio M**, Sankila R, Pukkala E, Salovaara R, Aaltonen LA, de la Chapelle A, Peltomäki P, Mecklin JP, Järvinen HJ. Cancer risk in mutation carriers of DNA-mismatch-repair genes. *Int J Cancer* 1999; **81**: 214-218 [PMID: 10188721 DOI: 10.1002/(SICI)1097-0215(19990412)81:2<214::AID-IJC8>3.0.CO;2-L]
- 4 **Watson P**, Vasen HF, Mecklin JP, Bernstein I, Aarnio M, Järvinen HJ, Myrhej T, Sunde L, Wijnen JT, Lynch HT. The risk of extra-colonic, extra-endometrial cancer in the Lynch syndrome. *Int J Cancer* 2008; **123**: 444-449 [PMID: 18398828 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.23508]
- 5 **Vasen HF**, Wijnen JT, Menko FH, Kleibeuker JH, Taal BG, Griffioen G, Nagengast FM, Meijers-Heijboer EH, Bertario L, Varesco L, Bisgaard ML, Mohr J, Fodde R, Khan PM. Cancer risk in families with hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer diagnosed by mutation analysis. *Gastroenterology* 1996; **110**: 1020-1027 [PMID: 8612988 DOI: 10.1053/gast.1996.v110.pm8612988]
- 6 **Quehenberger F**, Vasen HF, van Houtwelingen HC. Risk of colorectal and endometrial cancer for carriers of mutations of the hMLH1 and hMSH2 gene: correction for ascertainment. *J Med Genet* 2005; **42**: 491-496 [PMID: 15937084 DOI: 10.1136/jmg.2004.024299]
- 7 **Bonadona V**, Bonaïti B, Olschwang S, Grandjouan S, Huiart L, Longy M, Guimbaud R, Buecher B, Bignon YJ, Caron O, Colas C, Noguès C, Lejeune-Dumoulin S, Olivier-Faivre L, Polycarpe-Osaer F, Nguyen TD, Desseigne F, Saurin JC, Berthet P, Leroux D, Duffour J, Manouvrier S, Frébourg T, Sobol H, Lasset C, Bonaïti-Pellié C. Cancer risks associated with germline mutations in MLH1, MSH2, and MSH6 genes in Lynch syndrome. *JAMA* 2011; **305**: 2304-2310 [PMID: 21642682 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2011.743]
- 8 **Ichikawa Y**, Tsunoda H, Takano K, Oki A, Yoshikawa H. Microsatellite instability and immunohistochemical analysis of MLH1 and MSH2 in normal endometrium, endometrial hyperplasia

- and endometrial cancer from a hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer patient. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 2002; **32**: 110-112 [PMID: 11956307 DOI: 10.1093/jjco/hyf026]
- 9 **Zamecnik M.** Possible precursor of HNPCC-related endometrioid carcinoma of the uterus. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2004; **28**: 1667; author reply 1667 [PMID: 15577693]
  - 10 **Huang M,** Djordjevic B, Yates MS, Urbauer D, Sun C, Burzawa J, Daniels M, Westin SN, Broadus R, Lu K. Molecular pathogenesis of endometrial cancers in patients with Lynch syndrome. *Cancer* 2013; **119**: 3027-3033 [PMID: 23760948 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.28152]
  - 11 **Garg K,** Soslow RA. Lynch syndrome (hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer) and endometrial carcinoma. *J Clin Pathol* 2009; **62**: 679-684 [PMID: 19638537 DOI: 10.1136/jcp.2009.064949]
  - 12 **Walsh CS,** Blum A, Walts A, Alsabeh R, Tran H, Koeffler HP, Karlan BY. Lynch syndrome among gynecologic oncology patients meeting Bethesda guidelines for screening. *Gynecol Oncol* 2010; **116**: 516-521 [PMID: 20034658 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2009.11.021]
  - 13 **Vasen HF,** Watson P, Mecklin JP, Lynch HT. New clinical criteria for hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC, Lynch syndrome) proposed by the International Collaborative group on HNPCC. *Gastroenterology* 1999; **116**: 1453-1456 [PMID: 10348829 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5085(99)70510-X]
  - 14 **Boilesen AE,** Bisgaard ML, Bernstein I. Risk of gynecologic cancers in Danish hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer families. *Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand* 2008; **87**: 1129-1135 [PMID: 18972272 DOI: 10.1080/00016340802443806]
  - 15 **Fishel R,** Lescoe MK, Rao MR, Copeland NG, Jenkins NA, Garber J, Kane M, Kolodner R. The human mutator gene homolog MSH2 and its association with hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer. *Cell* 1993; **75**: 1027-1038 [PMID: 8252616 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(93)90546-3]
  - 16 **Leach FS,** Nicolaides NC, Papadopoulos N, Liu B, Jen J, Parsons R, Peltomäki P, Sistonen P, Aaltonen LA, Nyström-Lahti M. Mutations of a mutS homolog in hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer. *Cell* 1993; **75**: 1215-1225 [PMID: 8261515 DOI: 10.1016/0092-8674(93)90330-S]
  - 17 **Papadopoulos N,** Nicolaides NC, Wei YF, Ruben SM, Carter KC, Rosen CA, Haseltine WA, Fleischmann RD, Fraser CM, Adams MD. Mutation of a mutL homolog in hereditary colon cancer. *Science* 1994; **263**: 1625-1629 [PMID: 8128251 DOI: 10.1126/science.8128251]
  - 18 **Bronner CE,** Baker SM, Morrison PT, Warren G, Smith LG, Lescoe MK, Kane M, Earabino C, Lipford J, Lindblom A. Mutation in the DNA mismatch repair gene homologue hMLH1 is associated with hereditary non-polyposis colon cancer. *Nature* 1994; **368**: 258-261 [PMID: 8145827 DOI: 10.1038/368258a0]
  - 19 **Nicolaides NC,** Papadopoulos N, Liu B, Wei YF, Carter KC, Ruben SM, Rosen CA, Haseltine WA, Fleischmann RD, Fraser CM. Mutations of two PMS homologues in hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer. *Nature* 1994; **371**: 75-80 [PMID: 8072530 DOI: 10.1038/371075a0]
  - 20 **Kolodner RD,** Hall NR, Lipford J, Kane MF, Rao MR, Morrison P, Wirth L, Finan PJ, Burn J, Chapman P. Structure of the human MSH2 locus and analysis of two Muir-Torre kindreds for msh2 mutations. *Genomics* 1994; **24**: 516-526 [PMID: 7713503 DOI: 10.1006/geno.1994.1661]
  - 21 **Akiyama Y,** Sato H, Yamada T, Nagasaki H, Tsuchiya A, Abe R, Yuasa Y. Germ-line mutation of the hMSH6/GTBP gene in an atypical hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer kindred. *Cancer Res* 1997; **57**: 3920-3923 [PMID: 9307272]
  - 22 **Colas C,** Coulet F, Svrcek M, Collura A, Fléjou JF, Duval A, Hamelin R. Lynch or not Lynch? Is that always a question? *Adv Cancer Res* 2012; **113**: 121-166 [PMID: 22429854 DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-394280-7.00004-X]
  - 23 **Shia J,** Black D, Hummer AJ, Boyd J, Soslow RA. Routinely assessed morphological features correlate with microsatellite instability status in endometrial cancer. *Hum Pathol* 2008; **39**: 116-125 [PMID: 17949789 DOI: 10.1016/j.humpath.2007.05.022]
  - 24 **Aysal A,** Karnezis A, Medhi I, Grenert JP, Zaloudek CJ, Rabban JT. Ovarian endometrioid adenocarcinoma: incidence and clinical significance of the morphologic and immunohistochemical markers of mismatch repair protein defects and tumor microsatellite instability. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2012; **36**: 163-172 [PMID: 22189970 DOI: 10.1097/PAS.0b013e31823bc434]
  - 25 **Chui MH,** Ryan P, Radigan J, Ferguson SE, Pollett A, Aronson M, Semotiuk K, Holter S, Sy K, Kwon JS, Soma A, Singh N, Gallinger S, Shaw P, Arseneau J, Foulkes WD, Gilks CB, Clarke BA. The histomorphology of Lynch syndrome-associated ovarian carcinomas: toward a subtype-specific screening strategy. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2014; **38**: 1173-1181 [PMID: 25025451 DOI: 10.1097/PAS.0000000000000298]
  - 26 **Ketabi Z,** Bartuma K, Bernstein I, Malander S, Grönberg H, Björck E, Holck S, Nilbert M. Ovarian cancer linked to Lynch syndrome typically presents as early-onset, non-serous epithelial tumors. *Gynecol Oncol* 2011; **121**: 462-465 [PMID: 21388660 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2011.02.010]
  - 27 **Fidalgo PO,** Cravo ML, Nobre-Leitão C. Re: A National Cancer Institute Workshop on Hereditary Nonpolyposis Colorectal Cancer Syndrome: meeting highlights and Bethesda Guidelines. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1998; **90**: 939-940 [PMID: 9637147 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/90.12.939]
  - 28 **Umar A,** Boland CR, Terdiman JP, Syngal S, de la Chapelle A, Rüschoff J, Fishel R, Lindor NM, Burgart LJ, Hamelin R, Hamilton SR, Hiatt RA, Jass J, Lindblom A, Lynch HT, Peltomäki P, Ramsey SD, Rodriguez-Bigas MA, Vasen HF, Hawk ET, Barrett JC, Freedman AN, Srivastava S. Revised Bethesda Guidelines for hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (Lynch syndrome) and microsatellite instability. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2004; **96**: 261-268 [PMID: 14970275 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djh034]
  - 29 **Cohen SA,** Leininger A. The genetic basis of Lynch syndrome and its implications for clinical practice and risk management. *Appl Clin Genet* 2014; **7**: 147-158 [PMID: 25161364 DOI: 10.2147/TACG.S51483]
  - 30 **Steinke V,** Holzapfel S, Loeffler M, Holinski-Feder E, Morak M, Schackert HK, Görgens H, Pox C, Royer-Pokora B, von Knebel-Doberitz M, Büttner R, Propping P, Engel C. Evaluating the performance of clinical criteria for predicting mismatch repair gene mutations in Lynch syndrome: a comprehensive analysis of 3,671 families. *Int J Cancer* 2014; **135**: 69-77 [PMID: 24493211 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.28650]
  - 31 **Kwon JS,** Scott JL, Gilks CB, Daniels MS, Sun CC, Lu KH. Testing women with endometrial cancer to detect Lynch syndrome. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 2247-2252 [PMID: 21537049 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2010.32.9979]
  - 32 **Vasen HF,** Blanco I, Aktan-Collan K, Gopie JP, Alonso A, Aretz S, Bernstein I, Bertario L, Burn J, Capella G, Colas C, Engel C, Frayling IM, Genuardi M, Heinimann K, Hes FJ, Hodgson SV, Karagiannis JA, Lalloo F, Lindblom A, Mecklin JP, Möller P, Myrhuo T, Nagengast FM, Parc Y, Ponz de Leon M, Renkonen-Sinisalo L, Sampson JR, Stormorken A, Sijmons RH, Tejpar S, Thomas HJ, Rahner N, Wijnen JT, Järvinen HJ, Möslein G. Revised guidelines for the clinical management of Lynch syndrome (HNPCC): recommendations by a group of European experts. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 812-823 [PMID: 23408351 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-304356]
  - 33 **Järvinen HJ,** Renkonen-Sinisalo L, Aktan-Collan K, Peltomäki P, Aaltonen LA, Mecklin JP. Ten years after mutation testing for Lynch syndrome: cancer incidence and outcome in mutation-positive and mutation-negative family members. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; **27**: 4793-4797 [PMID: 19720893 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2009.23.7784]
  - 34 **Colombo N,** Creutzberg C, Amant F, Bosse T, González-Martín A, Ledermann J, Marth C, Nout R, Querleu D, Mirza MR, Sessa C. ESMO-ESGO-ESTRO Consensus Conference on Endometrial Cancer: Diagnosis, Treatment and Follow-up. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2016; **26**: 2-30 [PMID: 26645990 DOI: 10.1097/IGC.0000000000000609]
  - 35 **Dove-Edwin I,** Boks D, Goff S, Kenter GG, Carpenter R, Vasen HF, Thomas HJ. The outcome of endometrial carcinoma surveillance by ultrasound scan in women at risk of hereditary nonpolyposis

- colorectal carcinoma and familial colorectal carcinoma. *Cancer* 2002; **94**: 1708-1712 [PMID: 11920532 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.10380]
- 36 **Rijcken FE**, Mourits MJ, Kleibeuker JH, Hollema H, van der Zee AG. Gynecologic screening in hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2003; **91**: 74-80 [PMID: 14529665 DOI: 10.1016/S0090-8258(03)00371-8]
  - 37 **Lécuru F**, Huchon C, Metzger U, Bats AS, Le Frère Belda MA, Olschwang S, Puig PL. Contribution of ultrasonography to endometrial cancer screening in patients with hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer/Lynch syndrome. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2010; **20**: 583-587 [PMID: 20686377 DOI: 10.1111/IGC.0b013e3181d7283a]
  - 38 **Renkonen-Sinisalo L**, Bützow R, Leminen A, Lehtovirta P, Mecklin JP, Järvinen HJ. Surveillance for endometrial cancer in hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer syndrome. *Int J Cancer* 2007; **120**: 821-824 [PMID: 17096354 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.22446]
  - 39 **Gerritzen LH**, Hoogerbrugge N, Oei AL, Nagengast FM, van Ham MA, Massuger LF, de Hullu JA. Improvement of endometrial biopsy over transvaginal ultrasound alone for endometrial surveillance in women with Lynch syndrome. *Fam Cancer* 2009; **8**: 391-397 [PMID: 19504173 DOI: 10.1007/s10689-009-9252-x]
  - 40 **Helder-Woolderink JM**, De Bock GH, Sijmons RH, Hollema H, Mourits MJ. The additional value of endometrial sampling in the early detection of endometrial cancer in women with Lynch syndrome. *Gynecol Oncol* 2013; **131**: 304-308 [PMID: 23769810 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2013.05.032]
  - 41 **Thorson AG**, Knezetic JA, Lynch HT. A century of progress in hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (Lynch syndrome). *Dis Colon Rectum* 1999; **42**: 1-9 [PMID: 10211513 DOI: 10.1007/BF02235175]
  - 42 **Lécuru F**, Le Frère Belda MA, Bats AS, Tulpin L, Metzger U, Olschwang S, Laurent-Puig P. Performance of office hysteroscopy and endometrial biopsy for detecting endometrial disease in women at risk of human non-polyposis colon cancer: a prospective study. *Int J Gynecol Cancer* 2016; **18**: 1326-1331 [PMID: 18217965 DOI: 10.1111/j.1525-1438.2007.01183.x]
  - 43 **Manchanda R**, Saridogan E, Abdelraheim A, Johnson M, Rosenthal AN, Benjamin E, Brunell C, Side L, Gessler S, Jacobs I, Menon U. Annual outpatient hysteroscopy and endometrial sampling (OHES) in HNPCC/Lynch syndrome (LS). *Arch Gynecol Obstet* 2012; **286**: 1555-1562 [PMID: 22865035 DOI: 10.1007/s00404-012-2492-2]
  - 44 **Steiner G**, Schoenberg MP, Linn JF, Mao L, Sidransky D. Detection of bladder cancer recurrence by microsatellite analysis of urine. *Nat Med* 1997; **3**: 621-624 [PMID: 9176487 DOI: 10.1038/nm0697-621]
  - 45 **Amira N**, Mourah S, Rozet F, Teillac P, Fiet J, Aubin P, Cortesse A, Desgrandchamps F, Le Duc A, Cussenot O, Soliman H. Non-invasive molecular detection of bladder cancer recurrence. *Int J Cancer* 2002; **101**: 293-297 [PMID: 12209982 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.10561]
  - 46 **Bouquier J**, Blons H, Narjoz C, Lécuru F, Laurent-Puig P, Bats AS. Microsatellite instability analysis in uterine cavity washings as a screening tool for endometrial cancer in Lynch syndrome. *Fam Cancer* 2011; **10**: 655-657 [PMID: 21822721 DOI: 10.1007/s10689-011-9470-x]
  - 47 **Bats AS**, Roussel H, Narjoz C, Le Frère-Belda MA, Chamming's F, Blons H, Laurent-Puig P, Lecuru F. Microsatellite instability analysis for the screening of synchronous endometrial and ovarian cancer in Lynch syndrome. *Anticancer Res* 2013; **33**: 3977-3981 [PMID: 24023337]
  - 48 **Verma L**, Kane MF, Brassett C, Schmeits J, Evans DG, Kolodner RD, Maher ER. Mononucleotide microsatellite instability and germline MSH6 mutation analysis in early onset colorectal cancer. *J Med Genet* 1999; **36**: 678-682 [PMID: 10507723]
  - 49 **Wu Y**, Berends MJ, Mensink RG, Kempinga C, Sijmons RH, van Der Zee AG, Hollema H, Kleibeuker JH, Buys CH, Hofstra RM. Association of hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer-related tumors displaying low microsatellite instability with MSH6 germline mutations. *Am J Hum Genet* 1999; **65**: 1291-1298 [PMID: 10521294 DOI: 10.1086/302612]
  - 50 **Ketabi Z**, Gerdes AM, Mosgaard B, Ladelund S, Bernstein I. The results of gynecologic surveillance in families with hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer. *Gynecol Oncol* 2014; **133**: 526-530 [PMID: 24631699 DOI: 10.1016/j.ygyno.2014.03.012]
  - 51 **Nutis M**, Garcia KM, Nuwayhid B, Mulla Z, ElMasri W. Use of ultrasonographic cut point for diagnosing endometrial pathology in postmenopausal women with multiple risk factors for endometrial cancer. *J Reprod Med* 2008; **53**: 755-759 [PMID: 19004400]
  - 52 **Ketabi Z**, Mosgaard BJ, Gerdes AM, Ladelund S, Bernstein IT. Awareness of endometrial cancer risk and compliance with screening in hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer. *Obstet Gynecol* 2012; **120**: 1005-1012 [PMID: 23090516 DOI: 10.1097/AOG.0b013e31826ba2aa]
  - 53 **Schmeler KM**, Lynch HT, Chen LM, Munsell MF, Soliman PT, Clark MB, Daniels MS, White KG, Boyd-Rogers SG, Conrad PG, Yang KY, Rubin MM, Sun CC, Slomovitz BM, Gershenson DM, Lu KH. Prophylactic surgery to reduce the risk of gynecologic cancers in the Lynch syndrome. *N Engl J Med* 2006; **354**: 261-269 [PMID: 16421367]
  - 54 **Karamurzin Y**, Soslow RA, Garg K. Histologic evaluation of prophylactic hysterectomy and oophorectomy in Lynch syndrome. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2013; **37**: 579-585 [PMID: 23426126 DOI: 10.1097/PAS.0b013e3182796e27]
  - 55 **Moldovan R**, Keating S, Clancy T. The impact of risk-reducing gynaecological surgery in premenopausal women at high risk of endometrial and ovarian cancer due to Lynch syndrome. *Fam Cancer* 2015; **14**: 51-60 [PMID: 25342222 DOI: 10.1007/s10689-014-9761-0]
  - 56 **Stoffel EM**, Walsh C. Chemoprevention of endometrial cancer in Lynch syndrome: a step forward. *Cancer Prev Res (Phila)* 2013; **6**: 755-759 [PMID: 23842794 DOI: 10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-13-0238]

**P- Reviewer:** Khajehei M, Wang PH, Yokoyama Y **S- Editor:** Qiu S  
**L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Lu YJ







Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**

8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA

Telephone: +1-925-223-8242

Fax: +1-925-223-8243

E-mail: [bpgoffice@wjgnet.com](mailto:bpgoffice@wjgnet.com)

Help Desk: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx>

<http://www.wjgnet.com>

